

IBM® Workload Scheduler
Administration
Version 10.2.6

Note

Before using this information and the product it supports, read the information in [Notices on page dccix](#).

This edition applies to version 10, release 2, modification level 6 of IBM® Workload Scheduler (program number 5698-T09) and to all subsequent releases and modifications until otherwise indicated in new editions.

Contents

List of Figures.....	viii
List of Tables.....	ix
About this publication.....	xii
What is new in this release.....	xii
Chapter 1. Customizing and configuring IBM Workload Scheduler.....	13
Setting global options.....	13
Global options - summary.....	15
Global options - detailed description.....	27
Setting local options.....	48
Localopts summary.....	49
Localopts details.....	52
Local options file example.....	66
Setting user options.....	70
Multiple product instances.....	71
Configuring the agent.....	71
Configuring general properties [ITA].....	74
Configuring log message properties [JobManager.Logging.cclg].....	75
Configuring trace properties when the agent is stopped [JobManager.Logging.cclg].....	77
Trace configuration for the agent.....	78
Configuring common launchers properties [Launchers].....	81
Configuring properties of the native job launcher [NativeJobLauncher].....	83
Configuring properties of the Java™ job launcher [JavaJobLauncher].....	86
Configuring properties of the Resource advisor agent [ResourceAdvisorAgent].....	87
Configuring properties of the System scanner [SystemScanner].....	89
Configuring environment variables [Env].....	90
Configuring the agent to work with a password vault.....	90
Configuring the agent to work with Kerberos.....	98
Running a script when a job completes.....	101
Regular agent maintenance.....	102
Configuring the dynamic workload broker server on the master domain manager and dynamic domain manager.....	103
Maintaining the dynamic workload broker server on the master domain manager and dynamic domain manager.....	104
Enabling unsecure communication with the dynamic workload broker server.....	105
ResourceAdvisorConfig.properties file.....	106
JobDispatcherConfig.properties file.....	108
BrokerWorkstation.properties file	110
Archiving job data.....	113
Configuring to schedule J2EE jobs.....	113
Configuring to schedule job types with advanced options.....	121
Configuring security roles for users and groups.....	122
Configuring command-line client access authentication.....	124
Connection parameters.....	125
Entering passwords.....	127
An active-active high availability scenario.....	128
IBM Workload Scheduler console messages and prompts.....	133
Setting sysloglocal on UNIX™.....	133
console command.....	133
Automatic encryption for key product files.....	134
Encryption key rotation.....	135
Modifying jobmon service rights for Windows™	136
Chapter 2. Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console.....	137
Launching in context with the Dynamic Workload Console.....	137
Scenarios.....	137
Advanced optional parameters	138
Configuring access to the Dynamic Workload Console.....	146
Configuring a user registry.....	147
Configuring roles to access the Dynamic Workload Console.....	147
Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console for Single Sign-On.....	150
How to configure the Dynamic Workload Console and the master domain manager for Single Sign-On.....	151
How to configure the Dynamic Workload Console 10.2.6 and a master domain manager 9.4.x for Single Sign-On.....	153
Configuring Dynamic Workload Console to connect to a remote SAP system.....	156
Customizing your global settings.....	156
Customize video URLs.....	159
Override graphical view limits.....	159
Plan View in new window.....	160
Plan View auto refresh interval.....	160
Disable and customize NewsFeed function.....	161
Disable and customize the creation of predefined tasks.....	163
Add customized URL to job and job streams.....	163
User registry.....	166
z/OS http connections.....	166
Limit the number of objects retrieved by queries.....	167

Limit task and engine sharing.....	168	Configuring dynamic agent communications through a gateway.....	280
Show all dependencies.....	168	Configuring dynamic agents in high availability through multiple gateways.....	284
Auditing mobile app activity.....	169	Enabling Ports.....	284
Modifying the number of archived plans displayed in the Dynamic Workload Console.....	170	Network operation.....	287
Show or hide predecessors from What-if Analysis Gantt view.....	170	Network processes.....	288
TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample.....	171	Optimizing the network.....	292
Disable the What-if Analysis	175	Data volumes.....	292
Configuring High Availability.....	176	Connectivity.....	293
Configuring Dynamic Workload Console to view reports.....	176	Planning space for queues.....	294
Configuring for an Oracle database.....	177	Tuning mailman servers.....	302
Configuring for a Db2 database in HADR.....	178	Netman configuration file.....	303
Chapter 3. Configuring user authorization (Security file).....	180	Determining internal Symphony table size.....	305
Getting started with security	180	Integrating with SAP and PeopleSoft.....	305
Role-based security model.....	181	UNIX™ access methods.....	306
Configuring role-based security from Dynamic Workload Console.....	182	Access methods.....	309
Configuring role-based security with composer command-line.....	188	Integration with SAP	347
Actions on security objects.....	196	Considerations.....	531
Attributes for object types.....	202	IP address validation.....	532
Specifying object attribute values.....	203	Support for Internet Protocol version 6.....	532
Classic security model.....	207	Operating system configuration (UNIX™ only)....	532
Security management overview.....	207	IP address validation messages.....	533
Updating the security file.....	208	Impact of network changes.....	534
Centralized security management.....	212	Chapter 6. Configuring secure communications.....	536
Configuring the security file.....	213	Managing certificates using Certman.....	536
Sample security file.....	254	Generate new certificates and a Certificate Authority (CA).....	536
Chapter 4. Configuring authentication.....	264	Generate new certificates from an existing Certificate Authority (CA).....	539
Where to configure authentication.....	264	Extract certificates from the keystore and truststore.....	541
Available configurations.....	264	Verify the validity of certificates.....	545
Rules for using a Federated User Registry with IBM Workload Scheduler.....	265	Import certificates into the truststore.....	546
Completing the LDAP configuration.....	265	Remove an alias from the keystore or truststore.....	549
Configuring an IBM Tivoli Directory Server.....	267	Certificate rotation.....	550
Example configurations of LDAP servers for IDS.....	268	Scenario: SSL Communication across the fault-tolerant agent network.....	552
Configuring Microsoft Active Directory.....	270	Using SSL for netman and conman.....	553
Example configurations of LDAP servers for Microsoft Active Directory.....	271	Chapter 7. Data maintenance.....	560
Configuring an OpenID Connect Client.....	274	Backing up and restoring the database.....	560
Chapter 5. Network administration.....	276	Reorganizing the DB2 database.....	562
Network overview.....	276	Maintaining the file system.....	563
Network definition.....	277	Avoiding full file systems.....	563
Network communications.....	278	Log files and archived files.....	568
Network links.....	278	Temporary files.....	574
Working across firewalls.....	279	Managing event message queue file sizes.....	575
		Administrative tasks - DB2®.....	575
		Changing DB2® passwords.....	576

Locating the DB2® tools.....	576	Reporting the changes in the WebSphere Application Server Liberty configuration file.....	641
User permissions for running the DB2® tools.....	576	Reporting the changed host name or IP address in the workstation definition.....	642
Running DB2® maintenance manually.....	577	Reporting the changed host name or IP address of the dynamic workload broker server.....	643
Reorganizing the DB2® database.....	578	Reporting the changed host name or IP address of the dynamic agent.....	644
Monitoring the lock list memory.....	579	Changing the security settings.....	644
Administrative tasks - Oracle.....	581	Managing the event processor.....	645
Customizing your RDBMS server	582	Automatically initializing IBM Workload Scheduler instances.....	646
Connecting the master domain manager to a new database.....	584	Configuring IBM Workload Scheduler using templates.....	648
Connecting the master domain manager to a new database when using pools.....	587	WebSphere Application Server Liberty tasks.....	652
Auditing facilities.....	592	Application server - starting and stopping	652
Database and plan audit.....	593	Application server - automatic restart after failure.....	654
Enabling audit for authentication events.....	601	Application server - encrypting the profile properties files.....	657
Keeping track of database changes using audit reports.....	602	Application server - configuration files backup and restore.....	657
Collecting job metrics.....	607	Application server - changing the host name or TCP/IP ports.....	657
Job metrics queries for DB2.....	607	Application server - changing the trace properties.....	658
Job metrics queries for DB2 for zOS.....	608	Chapter 9. Administering IBM i dynamic environment...	660
Job metrics queries for Oracle database.....	608	Configuring the agent on IBM i systems.....	660
Chapter 8. Administrative tasks.....	609	Configuring log message properties [JobManager.Logging.ccllog].....	661
Switching a domain manager.....	610	Configuring trace properties when the agent is stopped [JobManager.Logging.ccllog].....	662
Simplified procedure for switching a domain manager.....	611	Trace configuration for the agent.....	664
Complete procedure for switching a domain manager.....	612	Configuring common launchers properties [Launchers].....	667
Switching the master to a backup.....	616	Configuring properties of the native job launcher [NativeJobLauncher].....	669
Selecting a workstation for the backup master domain manager.....	617	Configuring properties of the Java™ job launcher [JavaJobLauncher].....	672
Automatic failover.....	619	Configuring properties of the Resource advisor agent [ResourceAdvisorAgent].....	673
Manually switching the master.....	625	Configuring properties of the System scanner [SystemScanner].....	675
Switching a dynamic domain manager for a Z controller.....	628	Configuring to schedule job types with advanced options.....	675
Cloning scheduling definitions from one environment to another.....	629	Chapter 10. Performance.....	677
Changing key IBM Workload Scheduler passwords.....	631	Network traffic.....	677
Changing the WebSphere Application Server Liberty password.....	633	Tracing.....	677
Change password used by command-line clients to access the master domain manager.....	635	Logging.....	677
Change password used by fault-tolerant agent systems to access the master domain manager (for conman).....	635	Symphony file sizing.....	677
Update the engine connection parameters in the GUIs.....	636	Tuning a UNIX™ domain manager to handle large numbers of fault-tolerant agents.....	677
Windows™ - update Windows™ services.....	636	Tuning job processing on a workstation.....	678
Change the IBM Workload Scheduler user definition.....	636	Tuning plan replication.....	679
Unlinking and stopping IBM Workload Scheduler.....	636		
Changing the properties for the database.....	638		
Changing the workstation host name or IP address.....	640		

Tuning the database.....	680
Optimizing the replication of the Symphony file in the database.....	680
Too many manual job submissions.....	680
Too many file dependency checks.....	680
Network configuration availability.....	681
Workload spreading.....	681
Improving job-processing performance.....	682
Mailbox caching - advantages and disadvantages....	682
Setting the synch level parameter.....	683
The fault-tolerant switch manager - impact on performance.....	684
Network Traffic.....	684
Disk Space.....	684
Scalability.....	685
Impact on JnextPlan.....	685
Impact on reporting.....	686
Impact on event rule deployment.....	686
Increasing application server heap size.....	686
Increasing maximum DB2® log capacity.....	687
Oracle tablespace size.....	690
Multiple Dynamic Workload Console production plan reports.....	691
Dynamic Workload Console - adjusting session timeout settings.....	691
Dynamic Workload Console - Increasing application server heap size.....	692
Dynamic Workload Console graphical views.....	693
Using Google Chrome might reduce the Dynamic Workload Console performance.....	694
Chapter 11. Availability.....	695
Resolving user ID account on Windows® operating systems.....	695
Using a temporary directory on UNIX™.....	696
Chapter 12. License Management in IBM License Metric Tool.....	697
Processor Value Unit license model.....	697
Per Job license model.....	701
Using per job queries when upgrading from a version earlier than 9.4 Fix Pack 2.....	708
Notices.....	dccix
Index.....	713

List of Figures

Figure 1: And end-to-end environment configured for high availability.....	129	Figure 25: Managing high priority IDocs overview.....	486
Figure 2: Realm name in the WebSphere administrative console.....	153	Figure 26: A monitor and its MTEs - © SAP AG 2009. All rights reserved.....	497
Figure 3: Export of the ltpa keys file.....	154	Figure 27: Name and description of an MTE - © SAP AG 2009. All rights reserved.....	499
Figure 4: Realm name in the authentication template.....	155	Figure 28: Command syntax.....	504
Figure 5: Password in XOR format.....	155	Figure 29: Command syntax.....	505
Figure 6: IBM Workload Scheduler network domain structure.....	276		
Figure 7: Symphony file synchronization.....	288		
Figure 8: Process creation on domain manager and fault-tolerant agent.....	289		
Figure 9: Typical IBM Workload Scheduler network flows.....	294		
Figure 10: Defining an Extended Agent workstation.....	318		
Figure 11: Defining an Extended Agent job for end-to-end scheduling.....	320		
Figure 12: Command syntax.....	390		
Figure 13: The Variant List panel.....	395		
Figure 14: The Variant Information page of the Variant List panel.....	396		
Figure 15: Job definition syntax.....	400		
Figure 16: The Raise Event panel.....	414		
Figure 17: Job definition syntax.....	419		
Figure 18: The Table Criteria panel.....	445		
Figure 19: The Table Criteria panel.....	448		
Figure 20: Job definition syntax.....	454		
Figure 21: Dynamic Workload Console - Table of results..	459		
Figure 22: Dynamic Workload Console - Details of a process chain job.....	460		
Figure 23: Command syntax.....	474		
Figure 24: Command syntax.....	479		

List of Tables

Table 1: Workload service assurance feature.....	17	Table 26: Actions that users or groups can perform on the different objects.....	195
Table 2: Condition-based workflow automation.....	17	Table 27: Actions that users or groups can perform when designing and monitoring the workload.....	197
Table 3: Event-driven workload automation feature - general.....	18	Table 28: Actions that users or groups can perform when modifying current plan.....	197
Table 4: Event-driven workload automation feature - event mailing.....	18	Table 29: Actions that users or groups can perform when submitting workload	198
Table 5: Event-driven workload automation feature - IBM Z Workload Scheduler plug-in.....	19	Table 30: Actions that users or groups can perform when managing the workload environment.....	199
Table 6: SSL.....	20	Table 31: Actions that users or groups can perform when managing event rules.....	200
Table 7: Job management.....	20	Table 32: Administrative tasks that users or groups can perform	201
Table 8: Job stream management.....	20	Table 33: Actions that users or groups can perform on workload reports.....	201
Table 9: Stageman.....	21	Table 34: Actions that users or groups can perform on folders.....	202
Table 10: Planman.....	21	Table 35: Attributes for security object types.....	203
Table 11: Logging and auditing.....	22	Table 36: Object attribute types for each object type.....	225
Table 12: Cross dependencies.....	22	Table 37: Access keywords for composer actions.....	233
Table 13: ServiceNow.....	23	Table 38: Actions - access keywords.....	235
Table 14: Automatic failover.....	23	Table 39: Calendar - additional access keywords.....	236
Table 15: Licensing configuration.....	24	Table 40: Cpus - additional access keywords.....	237
Table 16: General.....	26	Table 41: Events - access keywords.....	239
Table 17: Valid internal job states.....	29	Table 42: Files - access keywords.....	239
Table 18: Agent configuration parameters.....	102	Table 43: folders - access keywords.....	241
Table 19: J2EEJobExecutorConfig.properties file keywords.....	114	Table 44: Jobs - additional access keywords.....	243
Table 20: Configuration files for job types with advanced options.....	121	Table 45: Parameters - additional access keywords.....	247
Table 21: Menu and Group Permissions.....	149	Table 46: Prompts - additional access keywords.....	247
Table 22: Syntax for special characters.....	164	Table 47: Files- access keywords.....	248
Table 23: Variables used in the URL definition.....	165	Table 48: Resources - additional access keywords.....	249
Table 24: Interaction between <code>enWorkloadServiceAssurance</code> and <code>enWhatIf</code> global options.....	175	Table 49: Run cycle groups- access keywords.....	249
Table 25: Security object types.....	193		

Table 50: Job streams - additional access keywords.....	250	Table 75: Placeholders and counters for extended variants.....	397
Table 51: Users - additional access keywords.....	251	Table 76: Task string parameters for SAP jobs.....	400
Table 52: Variable tables - access keywords.....	252	Table 77: Status transitions in IBM Workload Scheduler (internal status) and the corresponding SAP R/3 status...	412
Table 53: Workload applications - access keywords.....	253	Table 78: Task string parameters for SAP jobs (dynamic definition).....	419
Table 54: Configuration settings.....	282	Table 79: Supported attributes for ABAP step definition...	428
Table 55: Critical flow errors.....	294	Table 80: Supported attributes for external programs and external commands step definition.....	431
Table 56: Queue sizing conditions.....	296	Table 81: Placeholders for job interception template files.....	449
Table 57: Example for the ge operator.....	298	Table 82: Task string parameters for SAP jobs.....	454
Table 58: Example for the le operator.....	299	Table 83: Actions performed when you rerun a process chain job	461
Table 59: Calculation of internal Symphony table.....	305	Table 84: Parameters to define an SAP internetwork dependency	477
Table 60: How to complete the extended agents definition.....	314	Table 85: Internetwork dependency definition and possible resolution.....	478
Table 61: Roles and responsibilities in Access method for PeopleSoft.....	322	Table 86: History table of the SAP events raised.....	483
Table 62: Psagent access method options.....	324	Table 87: SAP event matching with the event rule defined.....	483
Table 63: Task string parameters for PeopleSoft jobs.....	333	Table 88: History table of the SAP events raised.....	484
Table 64: Relationship between the run status, the distribution status, and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status.....	335	Table 89: SAP events matching with the event rule defined.....	484
Table 65: Relationship between the run status and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status.....	336	Table 90: IBM Workload Scheduler fields used to define event rules based on IDocs.....	487
Table 66: Job states and return codes for the PeopleSoft access method.....	339	Table 91: IBM Workload Scheduler fields used to define correlation rules for IDoc events.....	488
Table 67: IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP features.....	348	Table 92: Parameters of IDOCEventGenerated event type.....	489
Table 68: Roles and responsibilities in IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP.....	351	Table 93: Standard outbound IDoc statuses.....	491
Table 69: Access keywords for activities with SAP scheduling objects.....	352	Table 94: Standard inbound IDoc statuses.....	492
Table 70: ABAP/4 modules installed	360	Table 95: Mapping between root context MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields.....	500
Table 71: ABAP/4 modules contents.....	361		
Table 72: r3batch global configuration options.....	369		
Table 73: r3batch local configuration options.....	371		
Table 74: r3batch common configuration options.....	374		

Table 96: Mapping between summary context MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields.....	501	Table 117: Chargeable software components that require software tag deployment on managed nodes.....	698
Table 97: Mapping between object MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields.....	501	Table 118: IBM Workload Scheduler chargeable access methods and application plug-ins.....	700
Table 98: Mapping between attribute MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields.....	502		
Table 99: Alert properties for correlations.....	502		
Table 100: SAP supported code pages.....	509		
Table 101: Miscellaneous troubleshooting items.....	510		
Table 102: Properties for the <code>smseadapter.properties</code> file.....	523		
Table 103: Type of communication depending on the security level value.....	555		
Table 104: Algorithm for calculating the approximate size of the plan data in the Symphony file.....	563		
Table 105: Algorithm for calculating the approximate size of the database data in the Symphony file.....	564		
Table 106: Example for the ge operator.....	566		
Table 107: Example for the le operator.....	567		
Table 108: Log and trace file maintenance.....	569		
Table 109: Complete procedure for switching a domain manager in case of a planned outage.....	612		
Table 110: Complete procedure for switching a domain manager after an unplanned outage.....	614		
Table 111: Configurable properties for automatic switch broker process.....	627		
Table 112: If and where password changes are required..	633		
Table 113: Correspondence between wastools and templates.....	649		
Table 114: Configuration files for job types with advanced options.....	676		
Table 115: Options for tuning job processing on a workstation.....	678		
Table 116: Chargeable software components automatically detected by License Metric Tool.....	697		

About this publication

IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide provides information about the administration of the main components of IBM Workload Scheduler (often called the *engine*).

What is new in this release

Learn what is new in this release.

For information about the new or changed functions in this release, see *IBM Workload Automation: Overview*, section *Summary of enhancements*.

For information about the APARs that this release addresses, see the IBM Workload Scheduler Release Notes and the Dynamic Workload Console Release Notes. For information about the APARs addressed in a fix pack, refer to the readme file for the fix pack.

New or changed content is marked with revision bars.

Chapter 1. Customizing and configuring IBM Workload Scheduler

After installing the product you can customize it to fit your operational requirements. You can also change the customized values at any time. This chapter describes the optional customization steps for IBM Workload Scheduler. It is divided into the following sections:

- [Setting global options on page 13](#)
- [Setting local options on page 48](#)
- [Setting user options on page 70](#)
- [Configuring the dynamic workload broker server on the master domain manager and dynamic domain manager on page 103](#)
- [Configuring the agent on page 71](#)
- [Configuring command-line client access authentication on page 124](#)
- [IBM Workload Scheduler console messages and prompts on page 133](#)

For more information, see the sections about automating production plan processing and managing the production cycle in *User's Guide and Reference* .

Setting global options

Manages the IBM Workload Scheduler global options. You can list, show and change them.

Authorization

You must have the following security permissions for the global options file in the IBM Workload Scheduler security file to work with this command:

- For `optman ls` or `optman show`:

```
FILE NAME=GLOBALOPTS ACCESS=DISPLAY
```

- For `optman chg`:

```
FILE NAME=GLOBALOPTS ACCESS=MODIFY
```

See [Configuring user authorization \(Security file\) on page 180](#) for more information on the security file.

Syntax

optman [-u | -v]

optman [*connectionParams*] **chg** {*option* | *shortName*} = *value*

optman [*connectionParams*] **ls**

optman [*connectionParams*] **show** {*option* | *shortName*}

Arguments

connectionParams

If you are using **optman** from the master domain manager, the connection parameters were configured at installation and do not need to be supplied, unless you do not want to use the default values.

If you are using **optman** from the command line client on another workstation, the connection parameters might be supplied by one or more of these methods:

- Stored in the `localopts` file
- Stored in the `useropts` file
- Supplied to the command in a parameter file
- Supplied to the command as part of the command string

For full details of the connection parameters see [Configuring command-line client access authentication on page 124](#).

chg {option | shortName} = value

Change the value of an option to the new value supplied. The option can either be identified by its full or its short name. See [Global options - summary on page 15](#) for a table showing all of the options with their full and short names, value ranges and default values. See [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#) for a full description of each option.

ls

Lists the current values of all global options.

show {option | shortName}

Displays the current value of the indicated option. The option can either be identified by its full or its short name. See [Global options - summary on page 15](#) for a table showing all of the options with their full and short names, value ranges and default values. See [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#) for a full description of each option.

Comments

Some of the changes are effective immediately, but others require a specific action, such as running JnextPlan, restarting the WebSphere Application Server Liberty. These actions are indicated in the option descriptions. See *User's Guide and Reference* for more information on the JnextPlan command.

Users can decide to maintain an audit trail recording any changes they perform and the related justifications. To enable the justification option, set up in a system shell the IBM Workload Scheduler environment variables listed below before running any **optman** commands:

IWS_DESCRIPTION

Specify the description to be recorded for each change performed by commands in the shell. The maximum length for this value is 512 characters. A warning message displays if you exceed the maximum and excess characters are truncated.

IWS_CATEGORY

Specify the category to be recorded for each change performed by commands in the shell. The maximum length for this value is 128 characters. A warning message displays if you exceed the maximum and excess characters are truncated.

IWS_TICKET

Specify the ticket to be recorded for each change performed by commands in the shell. The maximum length for this value is 128 characters. A warning message displays if you exceed the maximum and excess characters are truncated.

For more information about the justification option, see the section about keeping track of changes in *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

Example**Examples****Example 1: list the global options**

To list all of the global options, when your connection parameters are supplied via the `localopts` and `useropts` files, give the following command:

```
optman ls
```

Example 2: show the value of a global option

To show the current value of the `enCarryForward` global option, identifying it by its short name, give the following command:

```
optman show cf
```

Example 3: change the value of a global option

To change the current value of the `enCarryForward` global option, identifying it by its full name, give the following command:

```
optman chg enCarryForward no
```

Global options - summary

This section summarizes the global options that are managed by `optman`. The columns in the tables have the following meanings:

Description

The brief description of the option

Name

The option as used in the `optman` commands.

Short name

The `shortName` as used in the `optman` commands.

Default

The default value that is applied to the option at installation (if present).

Range

The range or choice of values you can supply (where appropriate).

Units

The units that apply to the default and range.

Effect

How to make any changes effective. The following codes have been used:

E

If you are enabling the option, start the Event Processor. If you are disabling the option, stop the Event Processor.

Imm

The change is effective immediately

Imm (DB)

The change is effective immediately in the database only.

J

Run JnextPlan.

J (Plan)

Run JnextPlan - it makes the change effective in the plan only.

NSJ

The change is effective on the next submit job stream action.

NSM

The change is effective on the next send mail action.

NOC

The change is effective on the next change performed on a security object.

W

Restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

The following tables summarize the global options for managing the features and functions of IBM Workload Scheduler:

Table 1. Workload service assurance feature

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Enable workload service assurance	enWorkloadServiceAssurance	wa	yes	yes, no	boolean	J
Approaching late offset	approachingLateOffset	al	120	>=0	seconds	J or W
Deadline offset	deadlineOffset	do	2	>=0	minutes	J or W
Promotion offset	promotionOffset	po	120	>=0	seconds	J
Enable forecast start time calculation	enForecastStartTime	st	no	yes, no	boolean	imm

Table 2. Condition-based workflow automation

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Name of the job which is automatically added to the plan to run the file monitoring task.	fileStartConditionJobName	fc	file_Start Cond	40 bytes		Imm
Name of the job which is automatically added to the plan to resubmit a new instance of the job stream where the start condition is defined.	resubmitJobName	rj	restart_StartCond	40 bytes		Imm
Default offset set for the start condition deadline.	startConditionDeadlineOffset	cd	2400	0001 - 9959	hhmm	Imm
Prevent job streams from completing in error when the start condition is not met	enStartCondSuccOnDeadline	od	Fresh installation yes	yes - no	boolean	J

Table 2. Condition-based workflow automation (continued)

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
			Upgrade no			

Table 3. Event-driven workload automation feature - general

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Enable event driven workload automation	enEventDrivenWorkloadAutomation	ed	yes	yes, no	boolean	J or E
Rules deployment frequency	deploymentFrequency	df	5	0-60	minutes	Imm
Enable event processor HTTPS protocol	enEventProcessorHttpsProtocol	eh	yes	yes, no	boolean	J
IBM event integration facility port for SSL	eventProcessorEIFSslPort	ef	31131	0 - 65535	port number	W and J
IBM event integration facility port	eventProcessorEIFPort	ee	31131	0 - 65535	port number	W and J
EIF Probe server name (used both for events in TEC and TBSM formats)	TECServerName	th	localhost		name	J
EIF Probe server port (used both for events in TEC and TBSM formats)	TECServerPort	tp	5529	0 - 65535	port number	J

Table 4. Event-driven workload automation feature - event mailing

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Mail sender name	mailSenderName	ms	TWS		name	NSM
SMTP server name	smtpServerName	sn	localhost		name	Imm

Table 4. Event-driven workload automation feature - event mailing (continued)

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
SMTP Server port	smtpServerPort	sp	25	0 65535	port number	NSM
Mail plug-in uses SMTP authentication	smtpUseAuthentication	ua	no	yes, no	boolean	Imm
SMTP user name	smtpUserName	un	<TWS_user>		name	Imm
SMTP user password	smtpUserPassword	up				Imm
Mail plug-in uses SSL	smtpUseSSL	us	no	yes, no	boolean	Imm
Mail plug-in uses TLS protocol	smtpUseTLS	tl	no	yes, no	boolean	Imm

Table 5. Event-driven workload automation feature - IBM Z Workload Scheduler plug-in

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector remote server name	zOSRemoteServerName	zr			name	NSJ
IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector server name	zOSServerName	zs	localhost		name	NSJ
IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector server port	zOSServerPort	zp	31217	0 65535	port number	NSJ
IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector user name	zOSUserName	zu	<TWS_user>		name	NSJ
IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector user password	zOSUserPassword	zw				NSJ

Table 6. SSL

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Enable strong password encryption	enStrEncrypt	se	no	yes, no	boolean	J
Enable the SSL full connection	enSSLFullConnection	sf	no	yes, no	boolean	J
Defines the encryption algorithm used by IBM® Workload Scheduler	useAESEncryptionAlgorithm	ea	N/A	yes, no	boolean	N/A

Table 7. Job management

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Maximum prompts after abend	baseRecPrompt	bp	1000	0 65535	prompts	J
Additional prompts after abend	extRecPrompt	xp	1000	0 65535	prompts	J
Concurrent access to resources	enExpandedResources	er	yes	yes, no	boolean	J
Automatically grant logon as batch	enLogonBatch	lb	no	yes, no	boolean	J
Long duration job threshold	longDurationThreshold	ld	150	100 - 1000	seconds	J or W
User for binding to remote jobs from shadow job	bindUser	bu	<TWS_user>			Imm

Table 8. Job stream management

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Job streams without jobs policy	enEmptySchedsAreSucc	es	no	yes, no	boolean	J

Table 8. Job stream management (continued)

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Prevent job stream without "at" dependency from starting	enPreventStart	ps	yes	yes, no	boolean	J

Table 9. Stageman

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Carry job states	carryStates	cs	null		list of states	J
Enable carry forward	enCarryForward	cf	all	all, no	boolean	J
Enable carry forward for internetwork dependencies	enCFinterNetworkDeps	ci	yes	yes, no	boolean	J
Enable carry forward resource quantity	enCFResourceQuantity	rq	yes	yes, no	boolean	J
Retain rerun job name	enRetainNameOnRerunFrom	rr	no	yes, no	boolean	J
Remove obsolete job streams	untilDays	ud	0	>=0	days	J

Table 10. Planman

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Maximum preproduction plan length	maxLen	xl	8	8 - 365	days	J
Minimum preproduction plan length	minLen	ml	8	7 - 365	days	J

Table 11. Logging and auditing

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Log cleanup frequency	logCleanupFrequency	lc	5	0 - 60	minutes	J
Log history period	logHistory	lh	10	>=0	days	J
Logman minimum and maximum run time policy	logmanMinMaxPolicy	lm	both		literal	J
Logman normal run time calculation policy	logmanSmoothPolicy	lt	-1	-1 - 100	factor	J
Enable database auditing	enDbAudit	da	0	0, 1	boolean	Imm
Type of store to be used to log database audit records	auditStore	as	both	db, file, both		Imm
Audit history period	auditHistory	ah	180	>=1	days	Imm
Enable auditing of database GET operations	enDbGetOpsAudit	dg	1	0, 1	boolean	Imm

Table 12. Cross dependencies

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Number of days for retrying to send notifications about job status changes to the remote engine if the notification fails	notificationTimeout	nt	5	1-90	Number	Imm

Table 13. ServiceNow

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Address of the ServiceNow server	servicenowUrl	nu			name	Imm
User who connects to the ServiceNow server	servicenowUserName	nn			name	Imm
Password associated with the user who connects to the ServiceNow server	servicenowUserPassword	np			name	Imm

Table 14. Automatic failover

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Enables or disables the automatic failover feature which invokes an automatic switch from the master domain manager, event manager, or both, to a backup.	enAutomaticFailover	af	yes	yes, no	boolean	W
Enables or disables automatic failover actions, such as, the automatic switch of the master or automatic restart of the fault-tolerant agent. This option takes effect only if the enAutomaticFailover option is set to yes	enAutomaticFailoverActions	aa	yes	yes, no	boolean	W
A comma-separated list of workstation names, including the current event manager workstation, that serve as backups for the event manager workstation when the automatic failover feature is enabled. If an eligible workstation is defined in a folder, use the composer listws @;showid command to retrieve the ID	workstationEventManagerListInAutomaticFailover	we		comma-separated list of workstation names. The	name	W

Table 14. Automatic failover (continued)

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
of the workstation you plan to define as backup.				maximum length is 256 bytes.		
A comma-separated list of workstations, including the current master domain manager, that serve as backups for the master domain manager when the automatic failover feature is enabled. If an eligible workstation is defined in a folder, use the <code>composer list showid</code> command to retrieve the ID of the workstation you plan to define as backup.	workstationMasterListInAutomaticFailover	wm		comma-separated list of workstation names. The maximum length is 256 bytes.	name	W

Table 15. Licensing configuration

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Type of accepted license for IBM Workload Scheduler	licenseType	ln	ws	ws, wa, byworkstation		J

Table 15. Licensing configuration (continued)

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Specify the default license type for IBM Workload Scheduler workstations.	defaultWksLicenseType	wn	In a Docker environment per Job bin after refresh installation and peer service verification	• PEERSERVICE • PEERJOB		J

Table 15. Licensing configuration (continued)

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
			upgrade. In an on-premises environment peer server			

Table 16. General

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Company name	companyName	cn			name	J
Delete folders	folderDays	fd	10	0 - 10	days	J
Enable centralized security in the classic security model	enCentSec	ts	no	yes, no	boolean	J
Evaluate start-of-day	enLegacyStartOfDayEvaluation	le	no	yes, no	boolean	J
Enable list security check	enListSecChk	sc	no	yes, no	boolean	J (Plan) Imm (DB)

Table 16. General (continued)

Description	Name	Short name	Default	Range	Units	Effect
Enable plan auditing	enPlanAudit	pa	0	0, 1	boolean	Imm
Enable security file creation in the role-based security model	enRoleBasedSecurityFileCreation	rs	no	yes,no	boolean	Imm
Enable extended field support in the security file.	enSecFileExtendedFields	sl	no	yes, no	boolean	NOC
Enable the fault-tolerant switch manager	enSwfaultTol	sw	no	yes, no	boolean	J
Enable time zones	enTimeZone (deprecated)	tz	yes	yes, no	boolean	J (Plan) Imm (DB)
Enable What-if Analysis	enWhatIfAnalysis	wi	yes	yes, no	boolean	J
Ignore calendars	ignoreCals	ic	no	yes, no	boolean	J
Start time of processing day	startOfDay	sd	0000	0000 2359	hhmm	J
Job statistics history period	statsHistory	sh	10	>=0	days	J (Plan) Imm (DB)
Critical Jobs Risk Confidence	riskConfidence	rc	80% in fresh installation, 50% in upgrade	1-99	Number	Imm

Global options - detailed description

This section gives full descriptions of the global options managed by optman:

approachingLateOffset | al

Approaching late offset. Used in workload service assurance. The critical start time of a job in the critical network is the latest time that the job can start without causing the critical job to finish after the deadline. In most cases, a job will start well before the critical start time so that if the job runs longer than its estimated duration, the situation does not immediately become critical. Therefore, if a job has not started and the critical

start time is only a few minutes away, the timely completion of the critical job is considered to be potentially at risk.

The *approachingLateOffset* option allows you to determine the length of time before the critical start time of a job in the critical network at which you are to be alerted to this potential risk. If a job has still not started the specified number of seconds before the critical start time, the job is added to a hot list that can be viewed on the Dynamic Workload Console.



Note: To qualify for addition to the hot list, all time and follow dependencies must have been resolved.

This option is only active if *enWorkloadServiceAssurance* is set to *yes*.

The default is 120 seconds.



Note: Whatever value you set for this option, if IBM Workload Scheduler loses the connection with its database, the default value is applied to critical job processing, and the warning message AWSJCO135W is issued to tell you what has happened.

Run JnextPlan or restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty (stopappserver and startappserver) to make this change effective.

auditHistory | ah

Audit history period. Used in audit management. This setting applies only when the **auditStore** option is set to *db*. Enter the number of days for which you want to save audit record data. Audit records are discarded on a FIFO (first-in first-out) basis.

The default value is 400 days. This option takes effect immediately.

For more information about auditing, see [Auditing facilities on page 592](#).

auditStore | as

Type of store to be used to log database and plan audit records. Enter one of the following:

file

To specify that a flat file in the `<install_dir>/TWSDATA/audit/database` directory on the master domain manager and backup master domain manager is used to store the audit records.

db

To specify that the IBM Workload Scheduler database itself is used to store the audit records. When you select this value, you can view the audit information in the **Versions** tab in the Dynamic Workload Console.

both

To have audit records logged in both the file and the database. When you select this value, you can view the audit information in the **Versions** tab in the Dynamic Workload Console.

The default value is `both`. Any change of this value is effective immediately.



Note: When you upgrade the master domain manager from a previous release, the default value for this global option is changed. The default value is now **both**. The reason for this change is to support the auditing feature which introduces reporting, versioning and rollback functions for database objects. If you customized the default value in the previous release, the value is overwritten with the new value with the exception of the **auditStore** option with the **DB** value assigned. If the **auditStore** option was set to **DB**, this value is maintained and is not overwritten.

For more information about auditing, see [Auditing facilities on page 592](#).

baseRecPrompt | bp

Maximum prompts after abend. Specify the maximum number of prompts that can be displayed to the operator after a job abends.

The default value is `1000`. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

bindUser | bu

User for binding to remote jobs from shadow job. Specify the user ID that is used to bind a shadow job to a remote job during the security check for "cross dependencies". This user must be given at least the following authorizations in the security file:

- *Display* access to the *job* and *schedule* objects that need to be bound
- *List* access to *job* objects that need to be bound

However, the ID does not need to be in the user registry of the engine, nor have a password, as it is only required for authorization purposes.

The default value is the `<TWS_user>`. Any change of this value is effective immediately.

carryStates | cs

Carry job states. A preproduction option that affects the operation of the *stageman* command. Specify the jobs, by state, to be included in job streams that are carried forward. Enclose the job states in parentheses, double quotation marks, or single quotation marks. Commas can be replaced by spaces. The valid internal job states are as follows:

Table 17. Valid internal job states

<i>abend</i>	<i>abenp</i>	<i>add</i>	<i>bound</i>	<i>done</i>	<i>error</i>	<i>exec</i>
<i>fail</i>	<i>hold</i>	<i>intro</i>	<i>pend</i>	<i>ready</i>	<i>rjob</i>	<i>sched</i>
<i>skel</i>	<i>succ</i>	<i>succp</i>	<i>suppr</i>	<i>susp</i>	<i>wait</i>	<i>waitd</i>

Some examples of the option are as follows:

```
carryStates="abend,exec,hold,intro"
carryStates='abend,exec,hold,intro'
```

```
carryStates="abend, exec, hold, intro"
carryStates='abend, exec, hold, intro'
```

An empty list is entered as follows:

```
carryStates=null
```

The default value is *null*, which corresponds to selecting all states. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

companyName | cn

Company name. Specify the name of your company. The maximum length is 40 bytes. If the name contains spaces, enclose the name in double quotation marks ("). If you use the Japanese-Katakana language set, enclose the name within single or double quotation marks.

Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

deadlineOffset | do

Deadline offset. Used in workload service assurance. Used to calculate the critical start of a critical job in the case where a deadline has not been specified neither for the job nor its job stream. In this case the deadline is defaulted to the plan end date and time, plus this offset, expressed in minutes.

This option is only active if *enWorkloadServiceAssurance* is set to *yes*.

The default is 2 minutes.



Note:

1. **Important:** When the plan is extended, the start time of critical jobs with a deadline calculated with this mechanism is automatically changed as a consequence of the fact that it must now match the new plan finishing time.
2. Whatever value you set for this option, if IBM Workload Scheduler loses the connection with its database, the default value is applied to critical job processing, and the warning message AWSJCO135W is issued to tell you what has happened.

Run JnextPlan or restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty (stopappserver and startappserver) to make this change effective.

defaultWksLicenseType / wn

Specify the default licensing model for IBM Workload Scheduler workstations. This option is supported only if the *licenseType* option is set to *byWorkstation* and a specific value was not specified at creation time for each workstation. For more information, see [licenseType | In on page 40](#). Supported values are as follows:

perServer

to specify the IBM Workload Scheduler Processor Value Unit (PVU) pricing.

perJob

to specify the IBM Workload Scheduler Per Job (PJ) pricing.

The default value varies, depending on the environment type:

In a Docker environment

By default, the `defaultWksLicenseType` option is set to `perJob` in a fresh installation and to `perServer` during product upgrade. By default, the `licenseType` option is set to `byWorkstation` in a fresh installation. This setting is not modified during product upgrade. As a result, the value of the `defaultWksLicenseType` option is applied to the creation of all workstation types.

In an on-premises environment

By default, the `licenseType` option is set to `perServer`, and also `defaultWksLicenseType` option is set to `perServer`. Before changing this value, contact your sales representative.

deploymentFrequency | df

Rules deployment frequency. Used in event rule management. Specify the frequency, in minutes, with which rules are to be checked to detect if there are changes to deploy. All active rules (active rules have the `isDraft` property set to `no` in their definition) that have been changed or added since the last deployment are deployed.

Valid values are in the 0-60 minutes range. If you specify 0, the changes are not deployed automatically and you must use the `planman deploy` command.

The default value is 5 minutes. The change is effective immediately.

enAddUser | au

Enable the automatic user addition into the Symphony file. This option enables the automatic addition of a user into the Symphony file after you create or modify the user in the database. If you specify "yes", the user is automatically added to the Plan. If you specify "no", the user is not automatically added to the Plan.

The default value is "yes". Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

enAddWorkstation | aw

Enable the automatic dynamic agent, pool, and dynamic pool workstation addition into the Symphony file.

This option enables the automatic addition of a dynamic agent, pool, or dynamic pool workstation into the Symphony file after you created the workstation in the database. If you specify "yes", the workstation is automatically added to the Plan. If you specify "no", the workstation is not automatically added to the Plan.

The default is "no". Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

For more information about how to use this feature, see *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*.

enAutomaticFailover | af

Enable or disable the automatic failover feature. This option enables or disables the automatic failover feature which invokes an automatic switch from the master domain manager, event manager, or

both, to a backup workstation. Eligible backups for both the master domain manager and the event manager can be specified using the `optman` options, `workstationMasterListInAutomaticFailover` and `workstationEventMgrListInAutomaticFailover`, respectively. For more information about this feature, see [Automatic failover on page 619](#).

A fresh installation of IBM® Workload Scheduler V9.5FP2 or later enables this feature by default (`yes`). This feature is disabled (`no`) when you upgrade to IBM® Workload Scheduler V9.5FP2 or later. Changes to this parameter require restarting WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

enAutomaticFailoverActions | aa

Enable or disable the automatic failover actions. This option enables or disables automatic failover actions, such as, the automatic switch of the master or the automatic restart of the fault-tolerant agent. This option takes effect only if the `enAutomaticFailover` option is set to `yes`. You can set this option to `no` in the case of a planned maintenance window.

By default, this option is set to `yes`. Changes to this parameter require restarting WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

enCarryForward | cf

Enable carry forward. A preproduction option that affects the operation of the `stageman` command. Specify if job streams that did not complete are carried forward from the old to the new production plan (Symphony). Enter `yes` to have incompleted job streams carried forward only if the *Carry Forward* option is enabled in the Job Scheduler definition. Enter `all` to have all incomplete job streams carried forward, regardless of the *Carry Forward* option. Enter `no` to completely disable the *Carry Forward* function. If you run the `JnextPlan -for 0000` command and the *Carry Forward* option is set to either `yes` or `no`, a message is displayed informing you that incompleted job streams might not be carried forward. When the `stageman -carryforward` command is used, it overrides `enCarryForward`. See *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference* for more information. If this option is set to `no`, running jobs are moved to the `USERJOBS` job stream.

The default value is `all`. Run `JnextPlan` to make this change effective.

enCentSec | ts

Enable centralized security. In the classic security model, determine, how the security file is used within the network. Centralized security is not relevant to an end-to-end scheduling environment.

If set to `yes`, the security files of all the workstations of the network can be created and modified only on the master domain manager. In this case, the IBM Workload Scheduler administrator is responsible for their production, maintenance, and distribution.

If set to `no`, the security file of each workstation can be managed by the root user or administrator of the system. The local user can run the `makesec` command to create or update the file.

See [Centralized security management on page 212](#) for more information about centralized security.

The default value is `no`. Run `JnextPlan` to make this change effective.



Note: This option does not apply to role-based security model.

enCFinterNetworkDeps | ci

Enable carry forward for internetwork dependencies. A preproduction option that affects the way stageman handles internetwork dependencies. It specifies if external job streams are carried forward from the old to the new production plan (Symphony file). Enter *yes* to have all external job streams carried forward. Enter *no* to have no external job streams carried forward.

The default value is *yes*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

enCFResourceQuantity | rq

Enable carry forward resource quantity. A preproduction option that affects the way stageman handles resources. Enter *yes* to carry forward the resource quantity from the old production file to the new. Enter *no* to not carry forward the resource quantity. Stageman carries forward resource quantities only if the resource is needed by a job or job stream that is also being carried forward. Otherwise the resource quantities are set to the original value. See *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference* for details on using this feature.

The default value is *yes*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

enDbAudit | da

Enable auditing on information available in the database. Enable or disable auditing on information available in the database. To enable auditing on information available in the database, specify *1*. To disable auditing on information available in the database, specify *0*. Auditing information is logged to a flat file in the *TWA_home/TWS/audit/database* directory, to the IBM Workload Scheduler database itself, or to both. To choose which, set the optman property *auditStore*. Each IBM Workload Scheduler workstation maintains its own log. Only actions are logged, not the success or failure of the action. Installation of dynamic domain managers and agents is not recorded in audit logs.

The default value is *1*. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.



Note: When you upgrade the master domain manager from a previous release, the default value for this global option is changed. The default value is now **1**. The reason for this change is to support the auditing feature which introduces reporting, versioning and rollback functions for database objects. If you customized the default value in the previous release, the value is overwritten with the new value.

For more information about auditing, see [Auditing facilities on page 592](#).

enDbGetOpsAudit

Enable auditing of GET database operations. Enable or disable auditing on database **GET** operations. Disabling this auditing feature might improve performance. All other database operations are not affected. To disable auditing on database **GET** operations, specify *0*. To enable auditing on database **GET** operations, specify *1*. This parameter is effective only *if* general database audit is enabled. **enDbAudit=1**).

The default value is *1*. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

workstationEventMgrListInAutomaticFailover | we

A list of workstations eligible to serve as a backup for the event manager. A comma-separated list of workstations that serve as backups for the event manager, including the current event manager itself, when the automatic failover feature is enabled. The maximum length is 256 bytes. If an eligible workstation is defined in a folder, use the composer `li ws @;showid` command to retrieve the ID of the workstation you plan to define as backup.

If no workstations are specified in this list, then all backup master domain managers in the domain are eligible backups. Changes to this parameter require restarting WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

workstationMasterListInAutomaticFailover | wm

A list of workstations eligible to serve as a backup for the master. A comma-separated list of workstations that serve as backups for the master domain manager, including the current master domain manager itself, when the automatic failover feature (**enAutomaticFailover**) is enabled. The maximum length is 256 bytes. If an eligible workstation is defined in a folder, use the composer `li ws @;showid` command to retrieve the ID of the workstation you plan to define as backup.

If no workstations are specified in this list, then all backup master domain managers in the domain are considered eligible backups. Changes to this parameter require restarting WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

useAESEncryptionAlgorithm | ea

AES algorithm used for passwords Specify whether or not the AES encryption algorithm is used for encrypting passwords. The AES encryption algorithm is a widely adopted encryption algorithm used to secure digital data. It is fast, reliable, and considered one of the most secure symmetric encryption methods available today. It is compliant with FIPS. If set to *yes*, it indicates that user passwords are encrypted with the AES algorithm. If set to *no*, it indicates that a different encryption algorithm is used.

enEmptySchedsAreSucc | es

Job streams without jobs policy. Specify the behavior of job streams without any jobs. If set to *yes*, the job streams that contain no jobs are set to SUCC after their dependencies are resolved. If set to *no*, the job streams are left in READY status.

The default value is *no*. Run `JnextPlan` to make this change effective.

enEventDrivenWorkloadAutomation | ed

Enable event-driven workload automation. Enable or disable the event-driven workload automation feature. To enable, specify *yes*. To disable, specify *no*.

The default value is *yes*.

After disabling, you must run `JnextPlan` and stop the event processing server (with the `conman stopevtp` command).

After enabling, you must run JnextPlan and start the event processing server (with the conman startevtp command).

enEventDrivenWorkloadAutomationProxy | pr

Enable event-driven workload automation proxy. Enable or disable the event-driven workload automation proxy feature. To enable, specify *yes*. To disable, specify *no*.

The default value is *no*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

enEventProcessorHttpsProtocol | eh

Enable event processor HTTPS protocol. Used in event rule management. Enables or disables the use of the HTTPS protocol to connect to the event processor server. To enable, enter *yes*. To disable, enter *no*.

The default value is *yes*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

enExpandedResources

Enables up to 60 concurrent holders for an IBM Workload Scheduler resource. Enter *yes* to enable up to 60 concurrent holders for a resource. Enter *no* to disable the feature and use only 32 holders for a resource.

The default value is *yes*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

enForecastStartTime | st

Enable forecast start time. Only applicable when workload service assurance is enabled (see *enWorkloadServiceAssurance*). Enter *yes* to enable the calculation of the predicted start time of each job when running a forecast plan: this option is recommended if you want to take advantage of the enhanced forecast capability that calculates the start time of each job considering the estimated duration of its predecessor jobs. Enabling this feature could negatively impact the time taken to generate the forecast plan. Enter *no* to disable the calculation of the predicted start time of each job when running a forecast plan.

The default value is *no*. Any change of this value is effective immediately.

When this option is set to *yes*, the **enPreventStart** global option is ignored during the creation of forecast plans.

enLegacyStartOfDayEvaluation | le

Evaluate start-of-day. Specify how the *startOfDay* option is to be managed across the IBM Workload Scheduler network. This is a legacy setting and should always be set to *no* starting from release 9.4.0 and later. If you set this option to *yes*, the *startOfDay* value on the master domain manager is converted to the local time zone set on each workstation across the network. If you set this option to *no*, the *startOfDay* value on the master domain manager is applied as is on each workstation across the network. This option requires that the *enTimeZone* option is set to *yes* to become operational.

The default value is *no*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

enListSecChk | sc

Enable list security check. Control the objects in the database and the plan that a user is permitted to list when running a query on the Dynamic Workload Console or IBM® Workload Scheduler database, for example running

a composer list, or a conman show command. If set to *yes*, objects in the plan returned from a query or show command are shown to the user only if the user has been granted the list permission in the security file. If set to *no*, all objects are shown, regardless of the settings in the security file.



Note: Setting this option to *yes* affects how the graphical user interfaces function for the users defined in the security file.

The default value is *no*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective for the plan. For the database, this option takes immediate effect.

enLogonBatch | lb

Automatically grant logon as batch. This is for Windows® jobs only. If set to *yes*, the logon users for Windows® jobs are automatically granted the right to *Logon as batch job*. If set to *no*, or omitted, the right must be granted manually to each user or group. The right cannot be granted automatically for users running jobs on a backup domain manager, so you must grant those rights manually.

The default value is *no*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

enPlanAudit | pa

Enable plan auditing. Enable or disable auditing on information available in the plan. To enable auditing on information available in the plan, specify *1*. To disable auditing on information available in the plan, specify *0*. Auditing information is logged to a flat file, to the IBM Workload Scheduler database itself, or to both. To define the logging location, set the **auditStore** global option. For more information, see [auditStore | as on page 28](#). The audit file is located in the following path on the master domain manager and backup master domain manager:

Windows

`TWA_home\TWS\audit\database`

UNIX

`TWA_DATA_DIR/audit/database`

For the plan, only actions are logged in the auditing file, not the success or failure of any action.

For more information about auditing, see [Auditing facilities on page 592](#).

The default value is *1*. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.



Note: When you upgrade the master domain manager from a previous release, the default value for this global option is changed. The default value is now **1**. The reason for this change is to support the



auditing feature which introduces reporting, versioning and rollback functions for database objects. If you customized the default value in the previous release, the value is overwritten with the new value.

enPreventStart | ps

Prevent job stream without "at" dependency from starting. Specify if job streams without an *at* dependency are to be prevented from starting immediately, without waiting for the beginning of the day the run cycle specified in the Job Scheduler identifies. Valid values are *yes* and *no*.

The default value is *yes*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

When the **enForecastStartTime** option is set to *yes*, this option is ignored during the creation of forecast plans.

enRetainNameOnRerunFrom | rr

Retain rerun job name. A production option that affects the operation of Batchman, the production control process of IBM Workload Scheduler. Its setting determines if jobs that are rerun with the Conman *rerun* command retain their original job names. To have rerun jobs retain their original job names, enter *yes*. Enter *no* to assign the *rerun from* name to rerun jobs.

The default value is *no*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.



Note: Starting from version 10.1, this option is deprecated and must not be modified. By default, its value is set to **no**.

enRoleBasedSecurityFileCreation | rs

Enable the role-based security model. This option enables the automatic creation of the security file using the role-based security model. You define the role-based security model in the master domain manager database by using the **Manage Workload Security** interface from Dynamic Workload Console or the **composer** command-line program.

The default value is *yes*, which means that the role-based security model is enabled for your installation.

At any time, specify *no* if you want to disable the role-based security model and replace your current security file. You can then continue to use the classic security model, that allows you to update your security file by using `dumpsec` and `makesec` commands from the command line.

For more information about user authorization and classic and role-based security models, [Configuring user authorization \(Security file\) on page 180](#).

Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

enSecFileExtendedFields

Enable extended fields support in the security file. Enable long attribute values for all scheduling objects in the security file. When this option is enabled, it permits the use of the extended version of the security file with the attribute field value length set to 64K rather than 255 bytes.

The default value is *no*. This change becomes effective the first time you edit a security object.

enSSLFullConnection | sf

Enable the SSL full connection. Specify that IBM Workload Scheduler uses a higher level of SSL connection than the standard level. For full details see [Configuring full SSL security on page 556](#). Valid values are *yes* to enable the SSL full connection or *no* to disable the SSL full connection.

The default value is *no*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

enStartCondSuccOnDeadline | od

Prevent job streams from completing in error when the start condition is not met Specify the behavior of the job stream when the start condition is not met and the **Start once** option is not selected. If you set the **Start once** option, this option is ignored. If you set the option to *yes*, when the deadline for the start condition is met, the monitoring job is confirmed in **Successful** status and the job stream is canceled. If you set the option to *no*, the monitoring job is killed, so both the monitoring job and the job stream change to **Error** status.

The default value is *yes* in a fresh installation and *no* in upgrade to maintain compatibility with previous versions. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

enStrEncrypt | se

Enable strong password encryption. Enable or disable strong encryption. When set to the default value **no**, the system uses a proprietary encryption algorithm. Switching the value to **yes** enables the use of the stronger and more reliable AES encryption algorithm.

The default value is **no**. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

enSwfaultTol | sw

Enable the fault-tolerant switch manager. Enable or disable the fault-tolerant switch manager feature. Valid values are *yes* to enable the fault tolerant switch manager, and *no* to disable it. This option has not dynamic capabilities and is not designed to work with broker agents. It applies to fault-tolerant agents. See the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference* for more details.

The default value is *no*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.



Note: Starting from version 10.1, this option is deprecated and must not be modified. By default, its value is set to **no**.

enTimeZone | tz

Enable time zones. Enables the time zone option.



Note: Starting from version 10.1, this option is deprecated and must not be modified. By default, its value is set to **yes**.

enWhatIfAnalysis | wi

Enable What-if Analysis. Enables or disables What-if Analysis, which is the feature that shows plan activities displayed against time and give you a visual representation of your plan at a glance in real time. To enable What-if Analysis, specify *yes*. To disable What-if Analysis, specify *no*. See *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide* for details on using this feature..

The default value is *yes*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

enWorkloadServiceAssurance | wa

Enable workload service assurance. Enables or disables workload service assurance, which is the feature that manages the privileged processing of mission critical jobs and their predecessors. Specify *yes* to enable or *no* to disable.



Note: Before starting to use workload service assurance you must set up the `<TWS_user>` in the security file to have the appropriate access to the objects that this feature will modify - see [The <TWS_user> - special security file considerations on page 253](#)

The default value is *yes*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

eventProcessorEIFSslPort | ef

Tivoli® event integration facility port. Used in event rule management. Specify the port number for SSL where the event processor server receives events from the Tivoli® Event Integration Facility (EIF). Valid values are in the 0-65535 range.

The default value is *31131*. If you change the value, restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty (stopappserver and startappserver) and run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

eventProcessorEIFPort | ee

Tivoli® event integration facility port. Used in event rule management. Specify the port number where the event processor server receives events from the Tivoli® Event Integration Facility (EIF). Valid values are in the 0-65535 range.

The default value is *31131*. If you change the value, restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty (stopappserver and startappserver) and run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

If you use a security firewall, make sure this port is open for incoming and outgoing connections.

extRecPrompt | xp

Additional prompts after abend. Specify an additional number of prompts for the value defined in *baseRecPropmt*. This applies when a job is rerun after abending and the limit specified in *baseRecPropmt* has been reached.

The default value is *1000*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

fileStartConditionJobName | fc

Name of the job in charge of running the file monitoring task . Applicable only if you select file as the start condition type. Specify the name of the job which is automatically added to the plan to run the file monitoring task. This value is used by default if you do not specify any value for the job name when defining the start condition. If you specify a value for the job name, this value is ignored.

The default value is FILE_STARTCOND. The maximum supported length is 40 bytes. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

folderDays | fd

Remove deleted folders, prompts, resources, and workstations from the database. When deleting a folder, a prompt, or resource, if there are still objects in the plan that reference these objects, then another folder, prompt, or resource cannot be renamed with the name of the deleted folder, prompt or resource for the number of days specified by "folderDays?". However, a brand new folder, prompt, or resource can be created with the name of the deleted object.

When deleting a workstation, if the workstation is still in the plan, then another workstation cannot be renamed with the name of the deleted workstation for the number of days specified by the global option folderDays. However, a brand new workstation can be created with the name of the deleted workstation. This behavior applies only to dynamic agents, pools, and dynamic pools.

The default value is 10 days.

ignoreCals | ic

Ignore calendars. A preproduction option that affects the operation of the planman command. Its setting determines if user calendars are copied into the new production plan (Symphony) file. To prevent user calendars from being copied into the new production plan, enter *yes*.

The default value is *no*. See *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.



Note: Starting from version 10.1, this option is deprecated and must not be modified. By default, its value is set to **yes**.

licenseType | ln

Type of accepted license for IBM Workload Scheduler.

Supported values are:

ws

perServer

to specify the IBM Workload Scheduler Processor Value Unit (PVU) pricing.

wa

perJob

to specify the IBM Workload Scheduler Per Job (PJ) pricing.

byWorkstation

to specify that the licensing type (either **perServer** or **perJob**) is specified at creation time for each workstation. When you specify this value, you can define the default type of license for each workstation by setting the **defaultWksLicenseType** option. For more information, see [defaultWksLicenseType / wn on page 30](#). For more information about defining workstations, see the section about workstation definition in *User's Guide and Reference*.

The default value is **perServer**. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective. For additional information about license management and metrics, see [License Management in IBM License Metric Tool on page 697](#).

You can define this option for the following workstation types:

- master domain manager
- fault-tolerant agent
- standard agent
- dynamic agent

logCleanupFrequency | lc

Log cleanup frequency. Used in event rule and audit management . Specify how often the automatic cleanup of log instances is run. Valid values are in the 0-60 minutes range. If you specify 0, the automatic cleanup feature is disabled.

The default value is 5 minutes. This option takes effect immediately.

logHistory | lh

Log history period. Used in event rule management. Enter the number of days for which you want to save rule instance, action run, and message log data. Log instances are discarded on a FIFO (first-in first-out) basis.

The default value is 10 days. This option takes effect immediately.

logmanMinMaxPolicy | lm

Logman minimum and maximum run times policy. Specify how the minimum and maximum job run times are logged and reported by logman. Possible values are:

elapsedtime

The minimum and maximum elapsed runtimes are logged and reported.

cputime

The minimum and maximum CPU run times are logged and reported.

both

Both the minimum and maximum job runtimes are logged and reported.

See *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference* for details on using this feature.

The default value is *both*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

logmanSmoothPolicy | It

Logman normal run time calculation policy. Set the weighting factor that favors the most recent job run when calculating the normal (average) run time for a job. This is expressed as a percentage. For example, specify *40* to apply a weighting factor of 40% to the most recent job run, and 60% to the existing average. See the topic about customizing plan management using global options in *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference* for more information about how to use this option.

The default value is *-1*. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

longDurationThreshold | Id

Long duration job threshold. Specify, when comparing the actual duration of a job to the estimated duration, the threshold over which the job is considered to be of "long duration." The threshold value is expressed as a percentage with respect to the estimated duration. For example, if the threshold is set to *150*, and the actual duration is more than 150% of the estimated duration (it is 50% greater), the job is considered to be a "long duration" job.

If you have the workload service assurance feature enabled, the effect of a "critical" job satisfying the long duration criteria is that the job is inserted automatically into the hot list.

Valid values are between:

100

The minimum value. All jobs that exceed the estimated duration are considered long duration jobs

1000

The maximum value. Only those jobs that last ten times as long as their estimated duration are considered as long duration jobs

The default is *150*.



Note: Whatever value you set for this option, if you have the workload service assurance feature enabled, and IBM Workload Scheduler loses the connection with its database, the default value is applied to critical job processing, and the warning message AWSJC0135W is issued to tell you what has happened.

Run JnextPlan or restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty (stopappserver and startappserver) to make this change effective.

mailSenderName | ms

Mail sender name. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that sends emails via an SMTP server, specify a string to be used as the sender of the emails.

The default value is *TWS*. Changes to this parameter are effective for the next mail send action performed.

maxLen | xl

Maximum preproduction plan length. Specify the maximum length of the preproduction plan in days after it is automatically extended or created. The value for *maxLen* must be greater than or equal to the value for *minLen* and must be in the range of 8 to 365.

The default is 14 days. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

minLen | ml

Minimum preproduction plan length. Specify the minimum length in days of the preproduction plan that can pass after the production plan is created or extended, without extending the preproduction plan. If the days left in the preproduction plan after a JnextPlan are less than the value of this option, the preproduction plan is automatically extended. The value for *minLen* must be less than or equal to the value for *maxLen* and must be in the range of 7 to 365.

The default is 8 days. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

notificationTimeout | nt

Notification timeout. Used in cross dependencies. Specify how many days IBM Workload Scheduler must retry sending notifications about job status changes to the remote engine if the notification fails. When this timeout expires, the job request subscription and the status notifications associated to this job are discarded.

Valid values are in the range of 1 to 90. The default is 5 days. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

promotionOffset | po

Promotion offset. Used in workload service assurance. Specify when a job become eligible for promotion in terms of the number of seconds before its critical start time is reached. Applies only to jobs that are flagged as critical in a job stream definition and to their predecessor jobs. A critical job and its predecessors make up a critical network.

When a predecessor jeopardizes the timely completion of the critical job, it is *promoted*; that is, it is assigned additional resources and its submission is prioritized with respect to other jobs that are out of the critical network. Also critical jobs might be promoted.

The scheduler calculates the critical start time of a critical job by subtracting its estimated duration from its deadline. It calculates the critical start time of a critical predecessor by subtracting its estimated duration from the critical start time of its next successor. Within a critical network the scheduler calculates the critical start time of the critical job first and then works backwards along the chain of predecessors. These calculations are reiterated as many times as necessary until the critical job has run.

This option is only active if *enWorkloadServiceAssurance* is set to *yes*.

The default is 120 seconds.

Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

resubmitJobName | rj

Name of the job in charge of resubmitting the job stream. Specify the name of the Job Stream Submission job which is automatically added to the plan to resubmit a new instance of the job stream where the start condition is defined.

The default value is *MASTERAGENTS#restart_StartCond*, where MASTERAGENTS is the name of the pool workstation on which the Job Stream Submission job runs. The maximum length for the workstation name is 16 bytes, and the maximum length for the job name is 40 bytes. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

resubmitJobUserName | rw

Name of the user in charge of resubmitting the job stream. Specify the user name which owns the Job Stream Submission job. The Job Stream Submission job is automatically added to the plan to resubmit a new instance of the job stream where the start condition is defined.

The default value is *TWS_User*. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately. If the user defined in the **resubmitJobUserName** property does not exist, the user name and password defined on WebSphere Application Server Liberty installed on the master domain manager or backup master domain manager are used. This implies that the user defined in the **resubmitJobUserName** property must be the same both on the master domain manager and on the backup master domain manager, or must be changed immediately after switching the master domain manager.

riskConfidence | rc

Critical Jobs Risk Confidence Specifies when a critical job must be set as **High Risk**, comparing the confidence factor of completing before deadline and the percentage specified in this parameter. If the probability of completing before the deadline is below **riskConfidence**, then the critical job is considered at high risk. Valid values are in the range 1-99. The default value is 80% when you perform a fresh installation. If you upgrade a previous version to the current version, the default value is 50% for maintaining backward compatibility. This option is effective immediately.

servicenowUrl | nu

ServiceNow URL. Used in event rule management. If you use rules that implement an action that opens an incident in ServiceNow (or any other application that can open an incident in the ServiceNow format), specify the ServiceNow URL. You can change this value when you define the action if you want to use a different ServiceNow URL.

The default value is `"http://localhost:8080/api/now/v1/table/incident"`. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

servicenowUserName | nn

ServiceNow user name. Used in event rule management. If you use rules that implement an action that opens an incident in ServiceNow, specify the identifier of the user connecting to the ServiceNow server.

The default value is the IBM Workload Scheduler user on the master domain manager. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

servicenowUserPassword | np

ServiceNow user password. Used in event rule management. If you use rules that implement an action that opens an incident in ServiceNow, specify the password associated with the user connecting to the ServiceNow server.

Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

smtpServerName | sn

SMTP server name. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that sends emails via an SMTP server, specify the name of the SMTP server to be used by the mail plug-in.

The default value is *localhost*. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

smtpServerPort | sp

SMTP Server port. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that sends emails via an SMTP server, specify the port number used to connect to the SMTP server by the mail plug-in. Valid values are in the range 0–65535.

The default value is 25. Changes to this parameter are effective for the next mail send action performed.

smtpUseAuthentication | ua

Mail plug-in uses SMTP authentication. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that sends emails via an SMTP server, specify if the SMTP connection needs to be authenticated. Values are *yes* or *no*.

The default is *no*. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

smtpUserName | un

SMTP server user name. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that sends emails via an SMTP server, specify the SMTP server user name.

The default value is the name of the IBM Workload Scheduler user (the <TWS_user>) on the master domain manager. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

smtpUserPassword | up

SMTP server user password. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that sends emails via an SMTP server, specify the SMTP server user password. The password is stored in an encrypted form.

Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

smtpUseSSL | us

Mail plug-in uses SSL. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that sends emails via an SMTP server, specify if the SMTP connection is to be authenticated via SSL. Values are *yes* or *no*.

The default is *no*. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

smtpUseTLS | tl

Mail plug-in uses TLS protocol. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that sends emails via an SMTP server, specify if the SMTP connection is to be authenticated via the Transport Layer Security (TLS) protocol. Values are *yes* or *no*.

The default is *no*. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

startOfDay | sd

Start time of processing day. Specify the start time of the IBM Workload Scheduler processing day in 24-hour format: *hhmm* (0000-2359).

The default value is 0000 (0:00 a.m.), but if you upgraded your environment to version 10.2.6 starting from a version earlier than version 8.6, the default value is 0600 (6:00 a.m.). If you change this option, you must also change the launch time of the *final* Job Scheduler, which is usually set to one minute before the start time. Run JnextPlan to make the change of *startOfDay* effective.

If you need to modify in a production environment the start of day and the FINAL job stream launch time, run the following command twice:

```
JnextPlan -to newDay newSoD TZ customerTimezone
```

For example, if your timezone is America/Chicago and on the 30th of August you want to modify the start of day from 0400 to 0700, perform the following steps:

1. Verify the current start of day using the optman ls command:

```
optman ls
startOfDay / sd=0400
```

2. Modify the **startOfDay** global option using optman:

```
optman chg sd=0700
```

3. Validate all the job stream definitions to make sure they are compatible with the new **startOfDay** time running the composer command:

```
composer validate <extracted schedule definition>
```

4. Modify the launch time of the *FINAL* and *FINALPOSTREPORTS* job streams modifying the **at** keyword from 0359 to 0659.

5. Run the command `planman showinfo` and look for the production plan end time, for example:

```
production plan end time: 06/22/2024 03:59 tz CST6CDT
```

6. Run the following command twice:

```
JnextPlan -to 06/22/2024 0700 tz America/Chicago
```



Note: The `-to` value must be later than the production plan end time

7. Cancel the previous *FINAL* and *FINALPOSTREPORTS* job streams. This final step prevents the production plan from extending an additional 24 hours.

statsHistory | sh

Job statistics history period. Specify the number of days for which you want to maintain job statistics. Statistics are discarded on a FIFO (first-in first-out) basis. For example, if you leave the default value of 400, statistics are maintained for the last 400 days. This has no effect on job standard list files, which must be removed with the *rmstdlist* command. See the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference* for information about the *rmstdlist* command.

The default value is 400. Run JnextPlan to make this change effective in the plan. For the database, this option takes effect immediately.

startConditionDeadlineOffset | cd

Start condition deadline offset. The default offset set for the start condition deadline in 24 hour format: "hhmm" (0001-9959). Specify the time range during which the start condition is active.

The default value is 2400 and the range is 0001 - 9959. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

untilDays | ud

Remove obsolete job and job stream instances from the plan. If an *until* time (latest start time) has not been specified for a job or job stream, then the default *until* time is calculated adding the value of this option, expressed in number of days, to the scheduled time of the job or job stream. If the *enCarryForward* option is set to *all*, and the number of days specified for *untilDays* is reached, then any job or job stream instance in the plan that ended in error is automatically removed from the plan and not added to the new production plan.

The default value is 0. If the default value is used, then for jobs, no default time is set for the *until* time (latest start time) . For job streams, if the default is used, then the default until time is 2 days.

Run JnextPlan to make this change effective.

workstationLimit | wl

The workstation limit.

Used in the automatic dynamic agent registration. This parameter specifies the dynamic agent workstation limit value that the dynamic agent workstation assumes after the workstation is added to the plan. You can later modify the dynamic agent workstation limit value by using the *conman* command line or the Dynamic Workload Console.

Valid values are in the 0-1024 range.

The default is 100. Changes to this parameter are effective immediately.

zOSRemoteServerName | zr

IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector remote server name. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that submits job streams to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller, enter the name of the controller specified as the engine to the Z connector. It must exactly match the Z connector engine name and is case sensitive.

After changing the value of this parameter, the change becomes effective when the next `submit` action is run.

zOSServerName | zs

IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector server name. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that submits job streams to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller, specify the name or the hostname of the system where the IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector runs. The default value is `localhost`.

After changing the value of this parameter, the change becomes effective when the next `submit` action is run.

zOSServerPort | zp

IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector server port. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that submits job streams to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller, specify the bootstrap port number of the IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector server. Valid values are in the range 0-65535. The default value is 31217.

After changing the value of this parameter, the change becomes effective when the next `submit` action is run.

zOSUserName | zu

IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector user name. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that submits job streams to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller, specify the IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector user name required to access the IBM Z Workload Scheduler engine.

After changing the value of this parameter, the change becomes effective when the next `submit` action is run.

zOSUserPassword | zw

IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector user password. Used in event rule management. If you deploy rules implementing an action that submits job streams to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler controller, specify the IBM Z Workload Scheduler connector user password required to access the IBM Z Workload Scheduler engine. The password is stored in encrypted form.

After changing the value of this parameter, the change becomes effective when the next `submit` action is run.

Setting local options

Set local options, such as general attributes of the workstation for the IBM Workload Scheduler processes, in the `localopts` file. Changes do not take effect until netman is stopped (**conman shut;wait**) and restarted (**StartUp**).

During the installation process, a working copy of the local options file is installed as `TWA_DATA_DIR/localopts`.

The `localopts` file is not modified during the agent upgrade process. The file generated by the upgrade process is saved to the `/config` directory, to maintain your custom values, if any. You can then merge the two files with your customized values and save the resulting file in the `TWA_DATA_DIR` folder.

A template file containing default settings is located in `TWA_DATA_DIR`.



Note: All of the SSL settings in the `localopts` file relate to the network communications and do not relate to the Dynamic Workload Console.

The options in the `localopts` file are described in the following sections:

- [Localopts summary on page 49](#)
- [Localopts details on page 52](#)
- [Local options file example on page 66](#)

Localopts summary

General attributes of the workstation:

thiscpu = *workstation*
merge stdlists = *yes|no*
stdlist width = *columns*
syslog local = *facility*
restricted stdlists = *yes|no*

The attributes of the workstation for the batchman process:

bm check file = *seconds*
bm check status = *seconds*
bm look = *seconds*
bm read = *seconds*
bm stats = *on|off*
bm verbose = *on|off*
bm check until = *seconds*
bm check deadline = *seconds*
bm late every = *minutes*

The attributes of the workstation for the jobman process:

jm job table size = *entries*
jm look = *seconds*
jm nice = *value*
jm promoted nice = *UNIX® and Linux® critical job priority*
jm promoted priority = *Windows® critical job priority*
jm no root = *yes|no*

jm file no root = *yes|no*
jm read = *seconds*
jm loaduserprofile = *on|off*

The attributes of the workstation for the mailman process:

mm response = *seconds*
mm retrylink = *seconds*
mm sound off = *yes|no*
mm unlink = *seconds*
mm cache mailbox = *yes|no*
mm cache size = *bytes*
mm resolve master = *yes|no*
autostart monman = *yes|no*

The attributes of the workstation for the netman process:

nm mortal = *yes|no*
nm port = *port number*
nm read = *seconds*
nm retry = *seconds*

The attributes of the workstation for the writer process:

wr read = *seconds*
wr unlink = *seconds*
wr enable compression = *yes|no*

Optional attributes of the workstation for remote database files

mozart directory = *mozart_share*
parameters directory = *parms_share*
unison network directory = *unison_share*

The attributes of the workstation for the custom formats

date format = *integer*
composer prompt = *key*
conman prompt = *key*
switch sym prompt = *key*

The attributes of the workstation for the customization of I/O on mailbox files

sync level = *low|medium|high*

The attributes of the workstation for networking

tcp timeout = *seconds*
tcp connect timeout = *seconds*

The attributes of the workstation for SSL - General

ssl auth mode = *caonly|string|cpu*
ssl auth string = *string*
SSL FIPS compliance=*yes|no*
SSL config file=*SSL_configuration_file*
nm ssl full port = *value*
nm ssl port = *value*

OpenSSL attributes of the workstation

SSL key = **.pem*
SSL certificate = **.pem*
SSL key pwd = **.sth*
SSL CA certificate = **.crt*
SSL random seed = **.rnd*
SSL cert type = *certificate_type*
SSL ciphers = *SSL_ciphers*
SSL cipher suites = *encryption_algorithms*
SSL version = *ssl_version*
CLI SSL server auth = *yes|no*
CLI SSL ciphers = *ssl_ciphers*
CLI SSL cipher suites = *encryption_algorithms*
CLI SSL version=
CLI SSL server certificate = *file_name*
CLI SSL trusted dir = *directory_name*

Encryption options

encrypt keystore file = *keystore_file*
encrypt keystore pwd = *keystore_password*
encrypt label = *default*
decrypt label list =

The IBM Workload Scheduler instance is a command line client

is remote cli = *yes|no*

Attributes for CLI connections

host = *host_name*
protocol = *protocol*
port = *port number*
proxy = *proxy server*
proxy port = *proxy server port number*
timeout = *seconds*

defaultws = *master_workstation*

useropts = *useropts_file*



Note:

1. The SSL attributes for the command line client connection will depend on which SSL method is in use. They are included in the relevant section and all commence with "cli".
2. The command lines for the dynamic domain manager and backup dynamic domain manager will work only if you configure the **host** and **port** attributes.

Event Management parameters

can be event processor = *yes|no*

Centralized Agent Update parameters

DownloadDir = *directory_name*

Current Folder

current folder = */foldername>*

The attributes of the workstation for the Appserver Watchdog (WebSphere Application Server Liberty)

Application server check attributes on the workstation

appserver check interval = *minutes*

appserver auto restart = *on|off*

appserver min restart time = *minutes*

appserver max restarts = *number*

appserver count reset interval = *hours*



Note: The `localopts` file syntax is not case-sensitive, and the spaces between words in the option names are ignored. For example, you can validly write **is remote cli** as:

- is remote cli
- Is Remote CLI
- isremotcli
- ISREMOTCLI
- isRemoteCLI
- ...IBM

Localopts details

comment

Treats everything from the indicated character (#) to the end of the line as a comment.

appserver auto restart = yes|no

Requests the `appservman` process to automatically start WebSphere Application Server Liberty if it is found down. The default is `yes`.

appserver check interval = minutes

Specifies the frequency in minutes that the `appservman` process is to check that WebSphere Application Server Liberty is still running. The default is 3 minutes.

appserver count reset interval = hours

Specifies the time interval in hours after which the restart count is reset from the last WebSphere Application Server Liberty start. The default is 24 hours.

appserver max restarts = number

Specifies the maximum number of restarting attempts the `appservman` process can make before giving up and exiting without restarting WebSphere Application Server Liberty. The counter is reset if WebSphere Application Server Liberty runs for longer than the `appserver count reset interval` value. The default is 5.

appserver min restart time = minutes

Specifies in minutes the minimum elapsed time the `appservman` process must wait between each attempt to restart the WebSphere Application Server Liberty if it is down. If this value is less than the `appserver check interval`, the WebSphere Application Server Liberty is restarted as soon as it is found down. If it is found down before this time interval (min restart time) has elapsed, `appservman` exits without restarting it. The default is 2 minutes.

autostart monman = yes|no

Used in event rule management. Restarts the monitoring engine automatically when the next production plan is activated (on Windows® also when IBM Workload Scheduler is restarted). The default is `yes`.

bm check deadline = seconds

Specify the minimum number of seconds Batchman waits before checking if a job has missed its deadline. The check is performed on all jobs and job streams included in the Symphony file, regardless of the workstation where the jobs and job streams are defined. Jobs and job streams with expired deadlines are marked as late in the local Symphony file. To obtain up-to-date information about the whole environment, define this option on the master domain manager. Deadlines for critical jobs are evaluated automatically, independently of the **bm check deadline** option. To disable the option and not check deadlines, enter a value of zero, the default value.

bm check file = seconds

Specify the minimum number of seconds Batchman waits before checking for the existence of a file that is used as a dependency. The default is 120 seconds.

bm check status = seconds

Specify the number of seconds Batchman waits between checking the status of an internetwork dependency. The default is 300 seconds.

bm check until = seconds

Specify the maximum number of seconds Batchman waits before reporting the expiration of an Until time for job or Job Scheduler. Specifying a value below the default setting (300) might overload the system. If it is set below the value of Local Option **bm read**, the value of **bm read** is used in its place. The default is 300 seconds.

bm late every = minutes

When an **every** job does not start at its expected start time, **bm late every** specifies the maximum number of minutes that elapse before IBM Workload Scheduler skips the job. This option applies only to jobs defined with **every** option together with the **at** time dependency, it has no impact on jobs that have only the **every** option.

bm look = seconds

Specify the minimum number of seconds Batchman waits before scanning and updating its production control file. If you install the 9.4, FP1 version as a fresh installation, the default value is automatically set to 5 for improving product performance. The previous default value was 15 seconds and is maintained if you perform a product upgrade.

bm read = seconds

Specify the maximum number of seconds Batchman waits for a message in the `intercom.msg` message file. If no messages are in queue, Batchman waits until the timeout expires or until a message is written to the file. If you install the 9.4, FP1 version as a fresh installation, the default value is automatically set to 3 for improving product performance. The previous default value was 10 seconds and is maintained if you perform a product upgrade.

bm stats = on|off

To have Batchman send its startup and shut down statistics to its standard list file, specify **on**. To prevent Batchman statistics from being sent to its standard list file, specify **off**. The default is **off**.

bm verbose = on|off

To have Batchman send all job status messages to its standard list file, specify **on**. To prevent the extended set of job status messages from being sent to the standard list file, specify **off**. The default is **off**.

can be event processor = yes|no

Specify if this workstation can act as event processing server or not. It is set by default to **yes** for master domain managers and backup masters, otherwise it is set to **no**.

CLI SSL ciphers = cipher_class

Specify the cipher class to be used when the command-line client and the server are using SSL authentication. The default is MD5.

If you want to use an OpenSSL cipher class, use the following command to determine the list of available classes:

```
openssl ciphers
```

For a full list of supported ciphers, see [SSL Ciphers](#) and [OpenSSL](#).

CLI SSL cipher suites *suites*

Specify one or more supported algorithms for TLS version 1.3. This option does not apply to TLS version 1.2 or earlier.

CLI SSL server auth = *yes|no*

Specify **yes** if server authentication is to be used in SSL communications with the command line client. The default is **no**.

CLI SSL server certificate = *file_name*

Specify the file, including its full directory path, that contains the SSL certificate when the command-line client and the server use SSL authentication in their communication. There is no default. See [Configuring SSL attributes on page 554](#).

CLI SSL trusted dir = *directory_name*

Specify the directory that contains an SSL trusted certificate contained in files with hash naming (#) when the command-line client and the server are using SSL authentication in their communication. When the directory path contains blanks, enclose it in double quotation marks (""). There is no default.

CLI SSL version *version*

Specify the SSL version to be used. Supported values are:

- **atleast.TLSv1.0**
- **atleast.TLSv1.1**
- **atleast.TLSv1.2**
- **atleast.TLSv1.3**

where you specify the minimum version of the TLS protocol to be used. In this case, IBM® Workload Scheduler uses the specified version of the protocol or a higher version, if supported.

- **max.TLSv1.0**
- **max.TLSv1.1**
- **max.TLSv1.2**
- **max.TLSv1.3**

where you specify the maximum version of the TLS protocol to be used. In this case, IBM® Workload Scheduler uses the specified version of the protocol or a lower version.

- **TLSv1.0**
- **TLSv1.1**
- **TLSv1.2**
- **TLSv1.3**

where you specify the exact version of the TLS protocol to be used. In this case, IBM® Workload Scheduler uses the specified version of the protocol.

composer prompt = *prompt*

Specify the prompt for the composer command line. The prompt can be of up to 10 characters in length. The default is dash (-).

conman prompt = *prompt*

Specify the prompt for the conman command line. The prompt can be of up to 8 characters in length. The default is percent (%).

current folder = */foldername>*

When submitting commands that involve folders from either the composer or conman command line, you can change the default folder or working directory from the root (/) to another folder path so that you can submit commands from the composer or conman command line using relative folder paths.

date format = 0|1|2|3

Specify the value that corresponds to the date format you require. The values can be:

- 0 corresponds to *yy/mm/dd*
- 1 corresponds to *mm/dd/yy*
- 2 corresponds to *dd/mm/yy*
- 3 indicates usage of Native Language Support variables

The default is 1.

decrypt label list

The list of previously used aliases for key encryption. When you modify a key alias for key rotation, store the previous alias in this property. This storage method is useful if the obsolete key is still used in the product. Separate each value with a comma ",". Note that this property is commented. This property is case insensitive. For more information about encryption and key rotation, see [Automatic encryption for key product files on page 134](#).

defaultws = *manager_workstation*

The default workstation when you are accessing using a command line client. Specify the domain manager workstation.

jm file no root = *yes|no*

For UNIX® and Linux® operating systems only, specify **yes** to prevent Jobman from executing commands in file dependencies as **root**. Specify **no** to allow Jobman to execute commands in file dependencies as **root**. The default is **no**.

DownloadDir = *directory_name*

Defines the name of the directory where the fix pack installation package or upgrade elmage is downloaded during the centralized agent update process. If not specified, the following default directory is used:

On Windows operating systems:

TWA_home\TWS\stdlist\JM\download

On UNIX operating systems:

TWA_home/TWS/stdlist/JM/download

encrypt keystore file *file_name*

The path to the keystore PKCS12 file, containing the AES-256 or AES-128 key. The keystore is created automatically at installation time and the related path is inserted in this parameter. If you want to use a different keystore, you can create it and add the path in this option.

encrypt keystore pwd *password*

The path to the keystore stash file.

encrypt label *label*

The label of the key in the keystore. When you modify a key label for key rotation, store the previous label in the **decrypt label list** property, so it can be retrieved if it is still used in the product. This property is case insensitive. For more information about encryption and key rotation, see [Automatic encryption for key product files on page 134](#).

host = *hostname_or_IP_address*

The name or IP address of the host when accessing using a command line client. For **Agents**, the host or ip address of the master is used. For **Backup Master Domain Manager** the value is the default: 127.0.0.1

is remote cli = *yes|no*

Specify if this instance of IBM Workload Scheduler is installed as a command line client (yes).

jm job table size = *entries*

Specify the size, in number of entries, of the job table used by Jobman. The default is 1024 entries.

jm loaduserprofile = *on|off*

Only on Windows operating systems. Specify if the jobman process loads the user profile and its environment variables for the user specified in the logon field of each job, before starting the job on the workstation. Specify **on** to load the user profile on the workstation before running jobs for the logon user; otherwise specify **off**. Roaming profiles are not supported. The default is **on**.

jm look = *seconds*

Specify the minimum number of seconds Jobman waits before looking for completed jobs and performing general job management tasks. The default is 300 seconds.

jm nice = *nice_value*

For UNIX® and Linux® operating systems only, specify the **nice** value to be applied to jobs launched by Jobman to change their priority in the kernel's scheduler. The default is zero.

The **nice** boundary values vary depending upon each specific platform, but generally lower values correspond to higher priority levels and vice versa. The default depends upon the operating system.

Applies to jobs scheduled by the root user only. Jobs submitted by any other user inherit the same **nice** value of the Jobman process.

See also [jm promoted nice on page 58](#).

jm no root = yes|no

For UNIX® and Linux® operating systems only, specify **yes** to prevent Jobman from launching **root** jobs. Specify **no** to allow Jobman to launch **root** jobs. The default is **yes**.

jm promoted nice = nice_value

Used in workload service assurance. For UNIX® and Linux® operating systems only, assigns the priority value to a critical job that needs to be promoted so that the operating system processes it before others. Applies to critical jobs or predecessors that need to be promoted so that they can start at their critical start time.

Boundary values vary depending upon each specific platform, but generally lower values correspond to higher priority levels and vice versa. The default is -1.

Be aware that:

- The promotion process is effective with negative values only. If you set a positive value, the system runs it with the -1 default value and logs a warning message every time Jobman starts.
- An out of range value (for example -200), prompts the operating system to automatically promote the jobs with the lowest allowed **nice** value. Note that in this case no warning is logged.
- Overusing the promotion mechanism (that is, defining an exceedingly high number of jobs as mission critical and setting the highest priority value here) might overload the operating system, negatively impacting the overall performance of the workstation.

You can use this and the [jm nice on page 57](#) options together. If you do, remember that, while **jm nice** applies only to jobs submitted by the root user, **jm promoted nice** applies only to jobs that have a critical start time. When a job matches both conditions, the values set for the two options add up. For example, if on a particular agent the local options file has:

```
jm nice= -2
jm promoted nice= -4
```

when a critical job submitted by the root user needs to be promoted, it is assigned a cumulative priority value of -6.

jm promoted priority = value

Used in workload service assurance. For Windows® operating systems only, sets to this value the priority by which the operating system processes a critical job when it is promoted.

Applies to critical jobs or predecessors that need to be promoted so that they can start at their critical start time.

The possible values are:

- High
- AboveNormal (the default)
- Normal

- BelowNormal
- Low Or Idle

Note that if you set a lower priority value than the one non-critical jobs might be assigned, no warning is given and no mechanism like the one available for **jm promoted nice** sets it back to the default.

jm read = seconds

Specify the maximum number of seconds Jobman waits for a message in the `courier.msg` message file. The default is 10 seconds.

merge stdlists = yes|no

Specify **yes** to have all of the IBM Workload Scheduler control processes, except Netman, send their console messages to a single standard list file. The file is given the name **TWSmerge**. Specify **no** to have the processes send messages to separate standard list files. The default is **yes**.

mm cache mailbox = yes|no

Use this option to enable Mailman to use a reading cache for incoming messages. In this case, only messages considered essential for network consistency are cached. The default is **yes**.

mm cache size = messages

Specify this option if you also use **mm cache mailbox**. The maximum value (default) is **512**.

mm resolve master = yes|no

When set to **yes** the \$MASTER variable is resolved at the beginning of the production day. The host of any extended agent is switched after the next JnextPlan (long term switch). When it is set to **no**, the \$MASTER variable is not resolved at JnextPlan and the host of any extended agent can be switched after a `conman switchmgr` command (short- and long-term switch). Starting from Version 9.5 Fix Pack 2, the default is **no** (for previous releases, it was set to **yes**. When you switch a master domain manager and the original has **mm resolve master** set to **no** and the backup has **mm resolve master** set to **yes**, after the switch any extended agent that is hosted by \$MASTER switches to the backup master domain manager. When the backup master domain manager restarts, the keyword \$MASTER is locally expanded by Mailman. You should keep the **mm resolve master** value the same for master domain managers and backup domain managers.

mm response = seconds

Specify the maximum number of seconds Mailman waits for a response before reporting that a workstation is not responding. The minimum wait time for a response is **90** seconds. The default is 600 seconds.

mm retrylink = seconds

Specify the maximum number of seconds Mailman waits after unlinking from a non-responding workstation before it attempts to link to the workstation again. The default is 600 seconds. The **tomserver** optional mailman servers do not unlink non-responding agents. The link is repetitively checked every 60 seconds, which is the default **retrylink** for these servers.

mm sound off = yes|no

Specify how Mailman responds to a conman **tellop ?** command. Specify **yes** to have Mailman display information about every task it is performing. Specify **no** to have Mailman send only its own status. The default is **no**.

mm symphony download timeout = seconds

Specify the maximum number of minutes Mailman waits after attempting to initialize a workstation on a slow network. If the timeout expires without the workstation being initialized successfully, Mailman initializes the next workstation in the sequence. The default is no timeout (0).

mm unlink = seconds

Specify the maximum number of seconds Mailman waits before unlinking from a workstation that is not responding. The wait time should not be less than the response time specified for the Local Option **nm response**. The default is 960 seconds.

nm mortal = yes|no

Specify **yes** to have Netman quit when all of its child processes have stopped. Specify **no** to have Netman keep running even after its child processes have stopped. The default is **no**.

nm port = port

Specify the TCP port number that Netman responds to on the local computer. This must match the TCP/IP port in the computers workstation definition. It must be an unsigned 16-bit value in the range 1- 65535 (values between 0 and 1023 are reserved for services such as, FTP, TELNET, HTTP, and so on). The default is the value supplied during the product installation. If you disable this port at installation time using the port parameter, this option is automatically set to 0.

If you run event-driven workload automation and you have a security firewall, make sure this port is open for incoming and outgoing connections.

nm read = seconds

Specify the maximum number of seconds Netman waits for a connection request before checking its message queue for **stop** and **start** commands. The default is 10 seconds.

nm retry = seconds

Specify the maximum number of seconds Netman waits before retrying a connection that failed. The default is 800 seconds.

nm SSL full port = port

The port used to listen for incoming SSL connections when full SSL is configured by setting global option `enSSLFullConnection` to `yes` (see [Configuring full SSL security on page 556](#) for more details). This value must match the one defined in the **secureaddr** attribute in the workstation definition in the database. It must be different from the **nm port** local option that defines the port used for normal communication.

**Note:**



1. If you install multiple instances of IBM Workload Scheduler on the same computer, set all SSL ports to different values.
2. If you plan not to use SSL, set the value to 0.

The default value is 31113.

nm SSL port = *port*

The port used to listen for incoming SSL connections, when full SSL is not configured (see [Configuring full SSL security on page 556](#) for more details). This value must match the one defined in the **secureaddr** attribute in the workstation definition in the database. It must be different from the **nm port** local option that defines the port used for normal communication.



Note:

1. If you install multiple instances of IBM Workload Scheduler on the same computer, set all SSL ports to different values.
2. If you plan not to use SSL, set the value to 0.

The default value is 0.

port = *port*

The TCP/IP port number of the protocol used when accessing using a command line client. The default is 31116.

protocol = http|https

The protocol used to connect to the host when accessing using a command line client.

proxy = *proxy_server_hostname_or_IP_address*

The name of the proxy server used when accessing using a command line client.

proxy port = *proxy_server_port*

The TCP/IP port number of the proxy server used when accessing using a command line client.

restricted stdlists = yes|no

Use this option to set a higher degree of security to the `stdlist` directory (and to its subdirectories) allowing only selected users to create, modify, or read files.

This option is available for UNIX workstations only. After you define it, make sure you erase your current `stdlist` directory (and subdirectories) and that you restart IBM Workload Scheduler. The default is `no`.

If the option is not present or if it is set to `no`, the newly created `stdlist` directory and its subdirectories are unaffected and their rights are as follows:

drwxrwxr-x	22	twsm dm staff	4096	Nov 09 12:12
drwxrwxr-x	2	twsm dm staff	256	Nov 09 11:40 2009.11.09

drwxrwxr-x	2	twsm dm staff	4096	Nov 09 11:40	logs
drwxr-xr-x	2	twsm dm staff	4096	Nov 09 11:40	traces

If the option is set to `yes`, these directories have the following rights:

drwxr-x--x	5	twsm dm staff	256	Nov 13 18:15	
rwxr-x--x	2	twsm dm staff	256	Nov 13 18:15	2009.11.13
rwxr-x--x	2	twsm dm staff	256	Nov 13 18:15	logs
rwxr-x--x	2	twsm dm staff	256	Nov 13 18:15	traces

Do the following to define and activate this option:

1. Change the line `restricted stdlists = no` to `restricted stdlists = yes` in your local options file.
2. Stop IBM Workload Scheduler.
3. Stop WebSphere Application Server Liberty if present.
4. Remove the `stdlist` directory (or at least its files and subdirectories).
5. Start IBM Workload Scheduler.
6. Start WebSphere Application Server Liberty if present.

SSL auth mode = `caonly`|`string`|`cpu`

The behavior of IBM Workload Scheduler during an SSL handshake is based on the value of the SSL authentication mode option as follows:

caonly

IBM Workload Scheduler checks the validity of the certificate and verifies that the peer certificate has been issued by a recognized CA. Information contained in the certificate is not examined. The default value.

string

IBM Workload Scheduler checks the validity of the certificate and verifies that the peer certificate has been issued by a recognized CA. It also verifies that the Common Name (CN) of the Certificate Subject matches the string specified into the SSL auth string option. See [SSL auth string = string on page 62](#).

cpu

IBM Workload Scheduler checks the validity of the certificate and verifies that the peer certificate has been issued by a recognized CA. It also verifies that the Common Name (CN) of the Certificate Subject matches the name of the workstation that requested the service.

SSL auth string = `string`

Used in conjunction with the **SSL auth mode** option when the "string" value is specified. The **SSL auth string** (ranges from 1 - 64 characters) is used to verify the certificate validity. The default string is "twsm".

SSL CA certificate = `file_name`

Specify the name of the file containing the trusted certification authority (CA) certificates required for SSL authentication. The CAs in this file are also used to build the list of acceptable client CAs passed to the client

when the server side of the connection requests a client certificate. This file is the concatenation, in order of preference, of the various PEM-encoded CA certificate files.

The default is `/TWS_DATA_DIR/ssl/certs/TWSCliantTrustStore.pem`. This file is part of the SSL configuration distributed with the product to all customers. It is thus not secure and should be replaced with your own secure SSL configuration. See [Configuring SSL attributes on page 554](#).

SSL certificate = *file_name*

Specify the name of the local certificate file used in SSL communication.

The default is `/TWS_DATA_DIR/ssl/certs/TWSCliantTrustStore.pem`. This file is part of the SSL configuration distributed with the product to all customers. It is thus not secure and should be replaced with your own secure SSL configuration. See [Configuring SSL attributes on page 554](#).

SSL cert type = *certificate_type*

Specify the type of the local certificate file used in SSL communication. The default value is P12.

SSL ciphers = *cipher_class*

Define the ciphers that the workstation supports during an SSL connection.

If you want to use an OpenSSL cipher class, use the following command to find out the list of available classes:

```
openssl ciphers
```

For a full list of supported ciphers, see [SSL Ciphers](#) and [OpenSSL](#).

SSL cipher suites *suites*

Specify one or more supported algorithms for TLS version 1.3, This option does not apply to TLS version 1.2 or earlier.

SSL config file *file_name*

Specify the name and path of the OpenSSL configuration file. See OpenSSL documentation for details about the file format and options. If you modify this file, ensure the changes are consistent with the security configuration in your environment.

SSL FIPS compliance= *yes|no*

Specifies whether to enable FIPS compliance. In the current release, FIPS is not supported, so this option must not be changed.

SSL key = *file_name*

The full path to the private key file in **pem** format.

This file is part of the SSL configuration distributed with the product to all customers. It is thus not secure and should be replaced with your own secure SSL configuration. See [Configuring SSL attributes on page 554](#).

SSL key pwd = *file_name*

The full path to the file containing the password encoded in Base64 for the private key.

The default is <TWS_DATA_DIR>/ssl/certs/tls.ssth. This file is part of the SSL configuration distributed with the product to all customers. It is thus not secure and should be replaced with your own secure SSL configuration. See [Configuring SSL attributes on page 554](#).

SSL random seed = *file_name*

Specify the pseudo random number file used by OpenSSL on some operating systems. Without this file, SSL authentication might not work correctly.

The default is <TWS_DATA_DIR>/ssl/certs/tls.rnd. This file is part of the SSL configuration distributed with the product to all customers. It is thus not secure and should be replaced with your own secure SSL configuration. See [Configuring SSL attributes on page 554](#).

SSL version *version*

Specify the SSL version to be used. Supported values are:

- **atleast.TLSv1.0**
- **atleast.TLSv1.1**
- **atleast.TLSv1.2**
- **atleast.TLSv1.3**

where you specify the minimum version of the TLS protocol to be used. In this case, IBM® Workload Scheduler uses the specified version of the protocol or a higher version, if supported.

- **max.TLSv1.0**
- **max.TLSv1.1**
- **max.TLSv1.2**
- **max.TLSv1.3**

where you specify the maximum version of the TLS protocol to be used. In this case, IBM® Workload Scheduler uses the specified version of the protocol or a lower version.

- **TLSv1.0**
- **TLSv1.1**
- **TLSv1.2**
- **TLSv1.3**

where you specify the exact version of the TLS protocol to be used. In this case, IBM® Workload Scheduler uses the specified version of the protocol.

stdlist width = *columns*

Specify the maximum width of the IBM Workload Scheduler console messages. You can specify a column number in the range **1** to **255**. Lines are wrapped at or before the specified column, depending on the presence of imbedded carriage control characters. Specify a negative number or zero to ignore line width. On UNIX®

and Linux® operating systems, you should ignore line width if you enable system logging with the **syslog local** option. The default is 0 columns.

switch sym prompt = *prompt*

Specify a prompt for the conman command line after you have selected a different Symphony file with the **setsym** command. The maximum length is 8 characters. The default is **n%**.

sync level = *low|medium|high*

Specify the rate at which IBM Workload Scheduler synchronizes information written to disk. This option affects all mailbox agents and is applicable to UNIX® and Linux® operating systems only. Values can be:

low

Allows the operating system to handle it.

medium

Flushes the updates to disk after a transaction has completed.

high

Flushes the updates to disk every time data is entered.

The default is **low**.

syslog local = *value*

Enables or disables IBM Workload Scheduler system logging for UNIX® and Linux® operating systems only. Specify **-1** to turn off system logging for IBM Workload Scheduler. Specify a number from **0** to **7** to turn on system logging and have IBM Workload Scheduler use the corresponding local facility (LOCAL0 through LOCAL7) for its messages. Specify any other number to turn on system logging and have IBM Workload Scheduler use the USER facility for its messages. The default is **-1**. See [IBM Workload Scheduler console messages and prompts on page 133](#).

tcp connect timeout = *seconds*

Specify the maximum number of seconds that can be waited to establish a connection through non-blocking socket. The default is 15 seconds.

tcp timeout = *seconds*

Specify the maximum number of seconds that can be waited for the completion of a request on a connected workstation that is not responding. The default is 300 seconds.

this cpu = *workstation_name*

The unique identifier of the workstation. Even when the workstation is subsequently moved to a different folder, the unique identifier remains the same. The name can be a maximum of 16 alphanumeric characters in length and must start with a letter. When a switch is made between the master domain manager and a backup domain manager, using the switchmgr command, the Symphony header value for this cpu is overwritten by the this cpu value in the localopts file. The default is the host name of the computer.

timeout = seconds

The timeout in seconds to await for the server operation completion was reached. The command continues to run on the server until its completion. The default value is 3600 seconds.

unison network directory = directory_name

This parameter applies only to versions of IBM Workload Scheduler prior to version 8.3. Defines the name of the Unison network directory. The default is `TWA_home>/../unison/network`.

useropts = file_name

If you have multiple instances of IBM Workload Scheduler on a system, use this to identify the *useropts* file that is to be used to store the connection parameters for the instance in which this *localops* file is found. See [Multiple product instances on page 71](#) for more details.

wr enable compression = yes|no

Use this option on fault-tolerant agents. Specify if the fault-tolerant agent can receive the Symphony file in compressed form from the master domain manager. The default is **no**.

wr read = seconds

Specify the number of seconds the Writer process waits for an incoming message before checking for a termination request from Netman. The default is 600 seconds.

wr unlink = seconds

Specify the number of seconds the Writer process waits before exiting if no incoming messages are received. The minimum is 120 seconds. The default is 180 seconds.

Local options file example

The following is an example of a default `localopts` file:



Note: Some parameters might not be present depending upon your version and configuration.

Example

```
#####
# Licensed Materials - Property of IBM* and HCL**
# 5698-WSH
# (c) Copyright IBM Corp. 1998, 2016 All rights reserved.
# (c) Copyright HCL Technologies Ltd. 2016, 2024 All rights reserved.
# * Trademark of International Business Machines
# ** Trademark of HCL Technologies Limited
#####
#
# The IBM Workload Scheduler localopts file defines the attributes of this
# workstation, for various processes.
#
#-----
# General attributes of this workstation:
#
thiscpu=GF-UTN-OKG117
```

```

merge stdlists      =yes
stdlist width       =0
syslog local        =-1
restricted stdlists =no
#
#-----
# The attributes of this workstation for the batchman process:
#
bm check file       =120
bm check status     =300
bm look             =5
bm read            =3
bm stats           =off
bm verbose         =off
bm check until      =300
bm check deadline   =0
bm late every       =0
#
#-----
# The attributes of this workstation for the jobman process:
#
jm job table size   =1024
jm look            =300
jm nice            =0
jm promoted nice    =-1    #UNIX
jm promoted priority =AboveNormal #WINDOWS
jm no root         =yes
jm file no root     =no
jm read            =10
jm loaduserprofile =on
#
#-----
# The attributes of this workstation for the TWS mailman process:
#
mm response         =600
mm retrylink        =600
mm sound off        =no
mm unlink           =960
mm cache mailbox    =yes
mm cache size       =512
mm resolve master   =no
autostart monman    =yes
mm symphony download timeout =0
#
#-----
# The attributes of this workstation for the netman process:
#
nm mortal           =no
nm port             =31111
nm read            =10
nm retry            =800
#
#-----
# The attributes of this workstation for the writer process:
#
wr read             =600
wr unlink           =180
wr enable compression =no

```

```

#
#-----
# Optional attributes of this Workstation for remote database files
#
# mozart directory =          /opt/IBM/TWA/TWS/mozart
# parameters directory =     /opt/IBM/TWA
# unison network directory = /opt/IBM/TWA/TWS/./unison/network
#
#-----
# The attributes of this workstation for custom formats
#
date format          =1 # The possible values are 0-yyyy/mm/dd, 1-mm/dd/yyyy, 2-dd/mm/yyyy, 3-NLS.
composer prompt      =-
conman prompt        =%
switch sym prompt    =<n>%
#
#-----
# The attributes of this workstation for the customization of I/O on mailbox files
#
sync level           =low
#
#-----
# The attributes of this workstation for networking
#
tcp timeout           =300
tcp connect timeout   =15
#
#-----
# General Secure options
#
SSL auth mode         =caonly
#
# Use "SSL auth string" only if "SSL auth mode" is set to "string"
#
SSL auth string       =twS
#
## This flag set to "yes" require the FIPS 140-2 policies. The default value is "no".
#
SSL FIPS compliance   =no
#
# This property specify the path to the file containing OpenSSL configuration properties.
#
SSL config file       ="/opt/IBM/TWA/TWSDATA/ssl/openssl.cnf"
#
# Netman full SSL port, use "nm SSL full port"it on if "enSSLFullConnection" is set to "yes"
# the value "0" means port close
#
nm SSL full port      =31113
#
# Netman SSL port
# the value "0" means port close
#
nm SSL port           =0
#
# End General Secure options
#-----
#-----

```



```

# OpenSSL options
#
# This section is ignored for agent dynamic only
#
# when custom certificate are provided in SSL folder by the user,
# these lines are substituted by the installation with correct datadir path
# pointing to the following files: "tls.crt", "tls.sth", "tls.key", "tls.rnd", "ca.crt"

SSL key      = ""
SSL certificate = "/opt/IBM/TWA/TWSDATA/ssl/certs/TWSClientKeyStore.p12"
SSL key pwd   = "/opt/IBM/TWA/TWSDATA/ssl/certs/tls.sth"
SSL CA certificate = "/opt/IBM/TWA/TWSDATA/ssl/certs/TWSClientTrustStore.pem"
SSL random seed = "/opt/IBM/TWA/TWSDATA/ssl/certs/tls.rnd"
SSL cert type      = P12

SSL Ciphers =
SSL Version = atleast.TLSv1.2
#
#CLI SSL server auth =
CLI SSL Ciphers =
CLI SSL cipher suites =
CLI SSL Version = atleast.TLSv1.2
#CLI SSL server certificate =
#CLI SSL trusted dir =
#----- End OpenSSL options -----

#-----
# Encryption options
#
encrypt keystore file = "/opt/IBM/TWA/TWSDATA/ssl/aes/key.p12"
encrypt keystore pwd = "/opt/IBM/TWA/TWSDATA/ssl/aes/key.sth"
encrypt label = "default"
#decrypt label list =
#----- End Encryption options -----

#-----
# The TWS instance has been installed as REMOTE CLI
IS REMOTE CLI = no # yes for a REMOTE CLI installation, no otherwise

#-----
# Attributes for CLI connections
#
# General attributes for CLI connections
#
HOST          = 127.0.0.1      # Master hostname used when attempting a connection.
PROTOCOL      = https         # Protocol used to establish a connection with the Master.
PORT         = 31116          # Protocol port
#PROXY        =
#PROXYPORT    =
TIMEOUT       = 3600           # Timeout in seconds to wait a server response.
#CLI SSL SERVER AUTH = yes

DEFAULTTWS    = GF-UTN-OKG117
USEROPTS      = useropts_twsuser

#-----
# Event Management parameters
#

```

```

CAN BE EVENT PROCESSOR = yes # yes for MDM and BKM, no otherwise

#-----
# Centralized Agent Update
#
#DownloadDir =

#-----
# Current Folder
#
#current folder = /

#-----
# Appserver Watchdog default settings
#
Appserver check interval =          3          #minutes
Appserver auto restart =            yes         #yes/no
Appserver min restart time =        2          #minutes
Appserver max restarts =            5          #restarts number
Appserver count reset interval =    24          #hours

```



Note: The "REMOTE CLI" term indicates the command line client.

Setting user options

Set the user options you require for each user on a workstation in the `useropts` file. Changes do not take effect until IBM Workload Scheduler is stopped and restarted.

The `useropts` file contains values for `localopts` parameters that must be customized for an individual user. Both files are located in the `user_home/.TWS` directory of the user. When IBM Workload Scheduler needs to access data from the `localopts` file, it looks first to see if the property it requires is stored also in the `useropts` file for the current user. The value specified in the `useropts` file always takes precedence over the value in the `localopts` file. If a property is not specified when invoking the command that requires it, or in the `useropts` and `localopts` files, an error is displayed.

The main use of the `useropts` file is to store the user-specific connection parameters for accessing the command line client, for example `conman` or `composer`.

You can define authentication using either the **username** and **password** parameters or the **JWT** parameter:

username

User name used to access the master domain manager. The user must be defined in the security file on the master domain manager. For more information, see the section about configuring user authorization in *Administration Guide*.

password

Password used to access the master domain manager. The presence of the `ENCRYPT` or `AES` label in the password field indicates that the specified setting has been encrypted; if this label is not present, you must exit and access the interface program again to allow the encryption of that field.

JWT

JSON Web Token (JWT) used to access the master domain manager. The **JWT** parameter always takes precedence over the **username** and **password** parameters. If it is incorrect, the connection does not take place, even if the **username** and **password** parameters are present and correct. You retrieve the JWT from the Dynamic Workload Console.

Note that these parameters are not stored in the `localopts` file.

For more information, see [Configuring command-line client access authentication on page 124](#).

A `useropts` file is created for the `<TWS_user>` during the installation, but you must create a separate file for each user that needs to use user-specific parameters on a workstation.

Multiple product instances

Because IBM Workload Scheduler supports multiple product instances installed on the same computer, there can be more than one instance of the `useropts` file per user. This is achieved by giving the `useropts` files for a user different names for each instance.

In the `localopts` file of each instance the option named **`useropts`** identifies the file name of the `useropts` file that has to be accessed in the `user_home/.TWS` directory to connect to that installation instance.

This means that, for example, if two IBM Workload Scheduler instances are installed on a computer and the user `operator` is a user of both instances, you could define the `useropts` credentials as follows:

- In the `localopts` file of the *first* instance the local option `useropts = useropts1` identifies the `operator_home/.TWS/useropts1` file containing the connection parameters settings that user `operator` needs to use to connect to the *first* IBM Workload Scheduler instance.
- In the `localopts` file of the *second* IBM Workload Scheduler instance the local option `useropts = useropts2` identifies the `operator_home/.TWS/useropts2` file containing the connection parameters settings that user `operator` needs to use to connect to the *second* IBM Workload Scheduler instance.

Configuring the agent

The configuration settings of the agent are stored in the `JobManager.ini` file. Starting with version 10.2.4, if you are integrating with a password vault tool, the related configuration is no longer saved in the `JobManager.ini` file. Instead, it is now stored in a profile and, optionally, in a configuration file. For more information, see [Configuring the agent to work with a password vault on page 90](#).

In a distributed environment, if a gateway is configured to allow the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager to communicate with a dynamic agent located behind a network boundary, then the gateway configuration settings of the agent are contained in the `JobManagerGW.ini` file. This file is almost identical to the `JobManager.ini` file, however, only parameters in the `[ITA]`, `[Env]`, and `[ResourceAdvisorAgent]` sections require configuration. For these parameters, definitions are given for both the `JobManager.ini` and `JobManagerGW.ini` files.

To find out where these files are located, see the section about installation paths in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

Only a subset of the available parameters is documented, because some parameters are reserved for internal use.

These files are made up of many different sections. Each section name is enclosed between square brackets and each section includes a sequence of `variable = value` statements.

You can customize properties for the following:

- Event-driven workload automation properties
- Log properties
- Trace properties when the agent is stopped. You can also customize traces when the agent is running using the procedure described in [Configuring trace properties when the agent is running on page 78](#).
- Native job executor
- Java™ job executor
- Resource advisor agent
- System scanner

The log messages are written in the following file:

Windows On Windows operating systems:

```
<TWA_home>\TWS\stdlist\JM\JobManager_message.log
```

UNIX On UNIX and Linux operating systems:

```
<TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/JM/JobManager_message.log
```

The trace messages are written in the following file:

Windows On Windows operating systems:

- <TWA_home>\TWS\stdlist\JM\ITA_trace.log
- <TWA_home>\TWS\stdlist\JM\JobManager_trace.log
- <TWA_home>\TWS\JavaExt\logs\javaExecutor0.log

UNIX On UNIX and Linux operating systems:

- <TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/JM/ITA_trace.log
- <TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/JM/JobManager_trace.log
- <TWA_DATA_DIR>/JavaExt/logs/javaExecutor0.log

Logging information about job types with advanced options

You can use the `logging.properties` file to configure the logging process for job types with advanced options, with the exception of the Executable and Access Method job types.

The `logging.properties` file is located on the IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent, located in the following path:

Windows On Windows operating systems:

`<TWA_home>/TWS/JavaExt/cfg/logging.properties`

UNIX On UNIX and Linux operating systems:

`<TWA_DATA_DIR>/JavaExt/cfg/logging.properties`

After installation, this file is as follows:

```
# Specify the handlers to create in the root logger
# (all loggers are children of the root logger)
# The following creates two handlers
handlers = java.util.logging.ConsoleHandler,
           java.util.logging.FileHandler

# Set the default logging level for the root logger
.level = INFO

# Set the default logging level for new ConsoleHandler instances
java.util.logging.ConsoleHandler.level = INFO

# Set the default logging level for new FileHandler instances
java.util.logging.FileHandler.level
    = ALL
java.util.logging.FileHandler.pattern
    = C:\TWA_home\TWS\JavaExt\logs\javaExecutor%g.log
java.util.logging.FileHandler.limit
    = 1000000
java.util.logging.FileHandler.count
    = 10

# Set the default formatter for new ConsoleHandler instances
java.util.logging.ConsoleHandler.formatter =
    java.util.logging.SimpleFormatter
java.util.logging.FileHandler.formatter =
    java.util.logging.SimpleFormatter

# Set the default logging level for the logger named com.mycompany
com.ibm.scheduling = INFO
```

You can customize:

- The logging level (from INFO to WARNING, ERROR, or ALL) in the following keywords:

`.level`

Defines the logging level for the internal logger.

`com.ibm.scheduling`

Defines the logging level for the job types with advanced options. To log information about job types with advanced options, set this keyword to ALL.

- The path where the logs are written, specified by the following keyword:

```
java.util.logging.FileHandler.pattern
```

Not all the properties in the `JobManager.ini` and `JobManagerGW.ini` files can be customized. For a list of the configurable properties, see the following sections:

- [Configuring log message properties \[JobManager.Logging.cclog\] on page 75](#)
- [Configuring trace properties when the agent is stopped \[JobManager.Logging.cclog\] on page 77.](#)
- [Configuring common launchers properties \[Launchers\] on page 81](#)
- [Configuring properties of the native job launcher \[NativeJobLauncher\] on page 83.](#)
- [Configuring properties of the Java job launcher \[JavaJobLauncher\] on page 86.](#)
- [Configuring properties of the Resource advisor agent \[ResourceAdvisorAgent\] on page 87.](#)
- [Configuring properties of the System scanner \[SystemScanner\] on page 89](#)
- [Configuring environment variables \[Env\] on page 90](#)
- The section about configuring properties of event-driven workload automation [EventDrivenWorkload] in *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Scheduling End-to-end with z-centric Capabilities*

Configuring general properties [ITA]

About this task

In the `JobManager.ini` or `JobManagerGW.ini` file, you can add some general properties to the following section:

```
[ITA]
```

You can add or modify the following properties:

ActionPollers

The number of the thread processes started on the gateway workstation to communicate with the broker server installed on the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager. The default value is 1. Specify this value if you have more than 100 dynamic agents that communicate with the broker server installed on the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager by using the same gateway. Restart the agent after the property change.

http_proxy

The URL of the proxy configured in a distributed environment through which agents or gateways communicate to the broker server installed on the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager. The value is `https_proxy =http://<proxy_workstation>:<proxy_workstation_port>`, where:

- `<proxy_workstation>` is the fully qualified host name of the workstation where the proxy is configured.
- `<proxy_workstation_port>` is the port number of the workstation where the proxy is configured.

Restart the agent after the property change.

DebugDir

You can use this parameter to enable tracing for the dynamic agent to help determine what information is being sent to and from a dynamic agent workstation. Perform the following steps:

1. Create a directory to dump the files sent and received by the dynamic agent, for example `/tmp/DA_DD`. This directory needs to be writable by the user owning the dynamic agent.
2. Add the **DebugDir** parameter to the path of the directory you created, for example:

```
DebugDir = /tmp/DA_DD
```

3. Restart the dynamic agent using the following commands:

```
ShutDownLwa
StartUpLwa
```

Remember to monitor the debug directory on a regular basis to ensure it does not become too large. No automatic check is performed on the debug director. For more information, see [Enable packet tracing for dynamic agent using ITA parameter DebugDir](#).

Configuring log message properties [JobManager.Logging.cclog]

About this task

To configure the logs, edit the [JobManager.Logging.cclog] section in the `JobManager.ini` file. This procedure requires that you stop and restart the IBM Workload Scheduler agent

The section containing the log properties is named:

```
[JobManager.Logging.cclog]
```

You can change the following properties:

JobManager.loggerhd.fileName

The name of the file where messages are to be logged. the default value is

Windows On Windows operating systems

```
TWA_home\stdlist\JM\JobManager_message.log
```

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

```
$(TWA_DATA_DIR)/stdlist/JM/JobManager_message.log
```

JobManager.loggerhd.maxFileBytes

The maximum size that the log file can reach. The default is **1024000** bytes.

JobManager.loggerhd.maxFiles

The maximum number of log files that can be stored. The default is **3**.

JobManager.loggerhd.fileEncoding

By default, log files for the agent are coded in UTF-8 format. If you want to produce the log in a different format, add this property and specify the required codepage.

JobManager.loggerfl.level

The amount of information to be provided in the logs. The value ranges from 3000 to 7000. Smaller numbers correspond to more detailed logs. The default is **3000**.

JobManager.ffdc.maxDiskSpace

Exceeding this maximum disk space, log files collected by the first failure data capture mechanism are removed, beginning with the oldest files first.

JobManager.ffdc.baseDir

The directory to which log and trace files collected by the ffdc tool are copied. The default directory is

Windows On Windows operating systems

<TWA_home>\stdlist\JM\JOBMANAGER-FFDC

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

\$(TWA_DATA_DIR)/stdlist/JM/JOBMANAGER-FFDC

JobManager.ffdc.filesToCopy

Log and trace files (JobManager_message.log and JobManager_trace.log) collected by the ffdc tool located in <TWA_home>\TWS\stdlist\JM. The files are available in the following paths:

Windows On Windows operating systems

- TWA_home\TWS\stdlist\JM\JobManager_message.log
- TWA_home\TWS\stdlist\JM\JobManager_trace.log

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

- \$(TWA_DATA_DIR)/stdlist/JM/JobManager_message.log
- \$(TWA_DATA_DIR)/stdlist/JM/JobManager_trace.log

When a message is logged (JobManager.ffdc.triggerFilter = JobManager.msgIdFilter) that has an ID that matches the pattern "AWSITA*E" (JobManager.msgIdFilter.msgIds = AWSITA*E), which corresponds to all error messages, then the log and trace files (JobManager.ffdc.filesToCopy = "/opt/IBM/TWA_<TWS_user>/TWS/stdlist/JM/JobManager_message.log" "/opt/IBM/TWA_<TWS_user>/TWS/stdlist/JM/JobManager_trace.log") are copied (JobManager.ffdc.className = ccg_ffdc_filecopy_handler) to the directory JOBMANAGER-FFDC (JobManager.ffdc.baseDir = /opt/IBM/TWA_<TWS_user>/TWS/stdlist/JM/JOBMANAGER-FFDC). If the files copied exceed 10 MB (JobManager.ffdc.maxDiskSpace = 10000000), then the oldest files are removed first (JobManager.ffdc.quotaPolicy = QUOTA_AUTODELETE).

Configuring trace properties when the agent is stopped [JobManager.Logging.cclog]

How to configure the trace properties when the agent is stopped.

To configure the trace properties when the agent is stopped, edit the [JobManager.Logging] section in the `JobManager.ini` file and then restart the IBM Workload Scheduler agent.

The section containing the trace properties is named:

```
[JobManager.Logging.cclog]
```

You can change the following properties:

JobManager.trhd.fileName

The name of the trace file. the default path is as follows:

Windows On Windows operating systems

```
TWA_home/TWS/stdlist/JM/JobManager_trace.log
```

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

```
$(TWA_DATA_DIR)/stdlist/JM/JobManager_trace.log
```

JobManager.trhd.maxFileBytes

The maximum size that the trace file can reach. The default is 10240000 bytes.

JobManager.trhd.maxFiles

The maximum number of trace files that can be stored. The default is 5.

JobManager.trfl.level

Determines the type of trace messages that are logged. Change this value to trace more or fewer events, as appropriate, or on request from IBM Software Support. Valid values are:

DEBUG_MAX

Maximum tracing. Every trace message in the code is written to the trace logs.

INFO

All *informational*, *warning*, *error* and *critical* trace messages are written to the trace. The default value.

WARNING

All *warning*, *error* and *critical* trace messages are written to the trace.

ERROR

All *error* and *critical* trace messages are written to the trace.

CRITICAL

Only messages which cause the agent to stop are written to the trace.

The output trace (JobManager_trace.log) is provided in XML format.

After installing the z-centric agent or dynamic agent on Windows 2012, the JobManager_trace.log might not be created. In this case, perform the following procedure:

1. Stop the agent.
2. Create a backup copy of JobManager.ini, and edit the original file by changing the row:

```
JobManager.trhd.className = ccg_multiproc_filehandler
```

to

```
JobManager.trhd.className = ccg_filehandler
```

3. Restart the agent.

Configuring trace properties when the agent is running

Use the **twstrace** command to set the trace on the agent when it is running.

Using the **twstrace** command, you can perform the following actions on the agent when it is running:

- [See command usage and verify version on page 78.](#)
- [Enable or disable trace on page 79.](#)
- Set the traces to a specific level, specify the number of trace files you want to create, and the maximum size of each trace file. See [Set trace information on page 79.](#)
- [Show trace information on page 79.](#)
- Collect trace files, message files, and configuration files in a compressed file using the command line. See [Collect trace information on page 80.](#)
- Collect trace files, message files, and configuration files in a compressed file using the Dynamic Workload Console. See the section about retrieving agent traces from the Dynamic Workload Console in *Troubleshooting Guide*.

You can also configure the traces when the agent is not running by editing the [JobManager.Logging] section in the JobManager.ini file as described in [Configuring the agent on page 71](#). This procedure requires that you stop and restart the agent.

twstrace command

Use the **twstrace** command to configure traces, and collect logs, traces, and configuration files (ita.ini and jobManager.ini) for agents. You collect all the information in a compressed file when it is running without stopping and restarting it.

See command usage and verify version

To see the command usage and options, use the following syntax.

Syntax

```
twstrace -u | -v
```

Parameters

-u

Shows the command usage.

-v

Shows the command version.

Enable or disable trace

To set the trace to the maximum or minimum level, use the following syntax.

Syntax

twstrace -enable | -disable

Parameters

-enable

Sets the trace to the maximum level. The maximum level is **1000**.

-disable

Sets the trace to the minimum level. The minimum level is **3000**.

Set trace information

To set the trace to a specific level, specify the number of trace files you want to create, and the maximum size the trace files can reach, use the following syntax.

Syntax

twstrace [-level <level_number>] [-maxFiles <files_number>] [-maxFileBytes <bytes_number>]

Parameters

-level <level_number>

Sets the trace level. Specify a value in the range from 1000 to 3000, which is also the default value. Note that if you set this parameter to 3000, you have the lowest verbosity level and the fewest trace messages. To have a better trace level, with the most verbose trace messages and the maximum trace level, set it to **1000**.

-maxFiles <files_number>

Specify the number of trace files you want to create.

-maxFileBytes <bytes_number>

Set the maximum size in bytes that the trace files can reach. The default is **1024000** bytes.

Show trace information

To display the current trace level, the number of trace files, and the maximum size the trace files can reach, use the following syntax.

Syntax

twstrace -level | -maxFiles | -maxFileBytes

Parameters

-level

See the trace level you set.

-maxFiles

See the number of trace files you create.

-maxFileBytes

See the maximum size you set for each trace file

Example

Sample

The example shows the information you receive when you run the following command:

```
twstrace -level -maxFiles -maxFileBytes
```

```
AWSITA176I The trace properties are: level="1000",
max files="3", file size="1024000".
```

Collect trace information

To collect the trace files, the message files, and the configuration files in a compressed file, use the following syntax.

Syntax

twstrace -getLogs [-zipFile <compressed_file_name>] [-host <host_name>] [-protocol {http | https}] [-port <port_number>] [-iniFile <ini_file_name>]

Parameters

-zipFile <compressed_file_name>

Specify the name of the compressed file that contains all the information, that is logs, traces, and configuration files (ita.ini and jobManager.ini) for the agent. The default is **logs.zip**.

-host <host_name>

Specify the host name or the IP address of the agent for which you want to collect the trace. The default is **localhost**.

-protocol http|https

Specify the protocol of the agent for which you are collecting the trace. The default is the protocol specified in the .ini file of the agent.

-port <port_number>

Specify the port of the agent. The default is the port number of the agent where you are running the command line.

-iniFile <ini_file_name>

Specify the name of the **.ini** file that contains the SSL configuration of the agent for which you want to collect the traces. If you are collecting the traces for a remote agent for which you customized the security certificates, you must import the certificate on the local agent and specify the name of the **.ini** file that contains this configuration. To do this, perform the following actions:

1. Extract the certificate from the keystore of the remote agent.
2. Import the certificate in a local agent keystore. You can create an ad hoc keystore whose name must be **TWSCClientKeyStore.kdb**.
3. Create an **.ini** file in which you specify:

- **0** in the **tcp_port** property as follows:

```
tcp_port=0
```

- The port of the remote agent in the **ssl_port** property as follows:

```
ssl_port=<ssl_port>
```

- The path to the keystore you created in Step 2 on page 81 in the **key_repository_path** property as follows:

```
key_repository_path=<local_agent_keystore_path>
```

Configuring common launchers properties [Launchers]

About this task

In the **JobManager.ini** file, the section containing the properties common to the different launchers (or executors) is named:

```
[Launchers]
```

The following properties are available:

BaseDir

The installation path of the IBM Workload Scheduler agent. Do not modify this value.

CommandHandlerMinThreads

Indicates the maximum number of commands that can be run on the agent concurrently. Limits to the number of jobs vary depending on the resources of your workstation, however consider that operations on comdhandler are usually short. The default is **20**. Usually, there is no need to modify this setting, even if you plan a very high workload on the agent. You might want to change it if many commands are run concurrently on the agent, for example, many concurrent requests to retrieve job logs.

CommandHandlerMaxThreads

Indicates the maximum number of commands that can be run on the agent concurrently. Limits to the number of jobs vary depending on the resources of your workstation, however consider that operations on comdhandler are usually short. The default is **100**. Usually, there is no need to modify this setting, even if you plan a very high workload on the agent. You might want to change it if many commands are run concurrently on the agent, for example, many concurrent requests to retrieve job logs.

CpaHeartBeatTimeSeconds

The polling interval in seconds used to verify if the **agent** process is still up and running. If the agent process is inactive the product stops also the **JobManager** process. The default is **30**. Modify only if you use dynamic pools with CPU-based requirements or optimization policies. With a lower value, the agent reacts quickly to CPU modifications, but this might cause unstable values in case of CPU spikes. Lower values causes a higher use of resources on the agent.

DirectoryPermissions

The access rights assigned to the agent for creating directories when running jobs. The default is **0755**. Supported values are UNIX-format entries in hexadecimal notation.

DownloadDir

The name of the directory where the fix pack installation package or upgrade elmage for IBM Workload Scheduler fault-tolerant agents or dynamic agents is downloaded during the centralized agent update process. If not specified, the following default directory is used:

On Windows operating systems:

`TWA_home\TWS\stdlist\JM\download`

On UNIX operating systems:

`TWA_DATA_DIR/TWS/stdlist/JM/download`

The centralized agent update process does not apply to z-centric agents.

ExecutorsMaxThreads

Specifies the maximum number of jobs the dynamic agent can run concurrently. For example, to allow the dynamic agent to run a maximum of 500 jobs concurrently, set this parameter to **500**. The default is **400**.

ExecutorsMinThreads

Specifies the minimum number of jobs the dynamic agent can run concurrently. For example, to allow the dynamic agent to run a minimum of 500 jobs concurrently, set this parameter to **500**. The default is **38**. Modify if the number of expected concurrent jobs is much higher than 38. The agent dynamically allocates more threads if necessary, until it reaches the value specified in **ExecutorsMaxThreads**.

FilePermissions

The access rights assigned to the agent for creating files when running jobs. The default is **0755**. Supported values are UNIX-format entries in hexadecimal notation.

MaxAge

The number of days that job logs are kept (in path `TWA_home/TWS/stdlist/JM`) before being deleted. The default is **30**. Possible values range from a minimum of 1 day.

MaxMetricsSizeKBytes

The maximum combined size in kilobytes of both metrics and output properties. This property is not present by default in the `JobManager.ini` file, but can be manually added to help optimize CPU and disk space usage. If you encounter a message similar to the one below, configuring this property might be beneficial:

```
AWSITA447E Failed to add the value for the specified metric or property:
storage capacity for metrics and properties is insufficient.
```

If this property is not present in the `JobManager.ini` file, the default value is 16,384 KB.

NotifierMaxThreads

Notifier threads are in charge of notifying the dynamic workload broker of each status change in a job. This parameter specifies the maximum number of job status changes that can be notified to the dynamic workload broker.

NotifierMinThreads

Notifier threads are in charge of notifying the dynamic workload broker of each status change in a job. This parameter specifies the minimum number of job status changes that can be notified to the dynamic workload broker. The default value is **3**. Modify this parameters only in case of unexpected errors and after consulting with software support team.

SpoolDir

The path to the folder containing the jobstore and outputs. The default is:

Windows On Windows operating systems

`TWA_home/TWS/stdlist/JM`

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`$(TWA_DATA_DIR/stdlist/JM`

StackSizeBytes

The size of the operating system stack in bytes. The default is **DEFAULT**, meaning that the **agent** uses the default value for the operating system. Do not modify this parameter unless instructed to do so by the software support team. Incorrect values can cause the agent to crash.

Configuring properties of the native job launcher [NativeJobLauncher]

About this task

In the `JobManager.ini` file, the section containing the properties of the native job launcher is named:

```
[NativeJobLauncher]
```

You can change the following properties:

AllowRoot

Applies to UNIX™ systems only. Specifies if the root user can run jobs on the agent. It can be `true` or `false`. The default is `false`. This property does not apply to IBM i, use the `AllowQSECOFR` option instead

AllowQSECOFR

Applies to IBM i systems only. Specifies if QSECOFR user can run jobs on the agent. It can be `true` or `false`. The default is `true`. Add a line like `AllowQSECOFR = false` to the JobManager.ini file to deny job execution to QSECOFR.

CheckExec

If `true`, before launching the job, the agent checks both the availability and the execution rights of the binary file. The default is `true`.

DefaultWorkingDir

Specifies the working directory of native jobs. You can also specify the value for the working directory when creating or editing the job definition in the Graphical Designer. When specified in the Graphical Designer, this value overrides the value specified for the **DefaultWorkingDir** property. If you do not specify any working directories, the `<TWS_home>\bin` directory is used.

JobUnspecifiedInteractive

Applies to Windows™ operating systems only. Specifies if native jobs are to be launched in interactive mode. It can be `true` or `false`. The default is `false`.

KeepCommandTraces

Set to `true` to store the traces of the method invocation for actions performed on a job definition, for example, when selecting from a picklist. These files are stored in the path `/opt/IBM/TWA_<TWS_user>/TWS/stdlist/JM/r3batch_cmd_exec`. The default setting is `false`.

KeepJobCommandTraces

Set to `true` to store the traces of the method invocation for actions performed on a job instance, for example, viewing a spool list. These files are stored in the .zip file of the job instance. The default setting is `true`.

LoadProfile

Applies to agents on Windows servers only. Specifies if the user profile is to be loaded. It can be `true` or `false`. The default is `true`.

MonitorQueueName

Specifies the name of the queue where the IBM i jobs are monitored. If you do not specify this property, the default queue (QBATCH) is used.

PortMax

The maximum range of the port numbers used by the task launcher to communicate with the Job Manager. The default is 0, meaning that the operating system assigns the port automatically.

PortMin

The minimum range of the port numbers used by the task launcher to communicate with the Job Manager. The default is 0, meaning that the operating system assigns the port automatically.

PostJobExecScriptPathName

The fully qualified path of the script file that you want to run when the job completes. By default, this property is not present in the `JobManager.ini` file. If you do not specify any file path or the script file doesn't exist, no action is taken.

This property applies to dynamic agent and z/OS agent. For details about running a script when a job completes, see *User's Guide and Reference*.

PromotedNice

Used in workload service assurance. This property is not supported on the Agent for z/OS.

For UNIX and Linux operating systems only, assigns the priority value to a critical job that needs to be promoted so that the operating system processes it before others. Applies to critical jobs or predecessors that need to be promoted so that they can start at their critical start time.

Boundary values vary depending upon each specific platform, but generally lower values correspond to higher priority levels and vice versa. The default is -1.

Be aware that:

- The promotion process is effective with negative values only. If you set a positive value, the system runs it with the -1 default value.
- An out of range value (for example -200), prompts the operating system to automatically promote the jobs with the lowest allowed nice value.
- Overusing the promotion mechanism (that is, defining an exceedingly high number of jobs as mission critical and setting the highest priority value here) might overload the operating system, negatively impacting the overall performance of the workstation.

PromotedPriority

Used in workload service assurance. This property is not supported on the Agent for z/OS.

For Windows operating systems only, sets to this value the priority by which the operating system processes a critical job when it is promoted. Applies to critical jobs or predecessors that need to be promoted so that they can start at their critical start time. Valid values are:

- High
- AboveNormal (the default)
- Normal
- BelowNormal
- Low Or Idle

Note that if you set a lower priority value than the one non-critical jobs might be assigned, no warning is given.

RequireUserName

When `true`, requires that you add the user name in the JSDL job definition.

When `false`, runs with the user name used by job manager, that is:

- `TWS_user` on UNIX™ and Linux™ systems
- The local system account on Windows™ systems

The default is `false`.

RunExecutablesAsIBMiJobs

If you set this property to `true`, you can define IBM i jobs as generic jobs without using the XML definition. Generic jobs are automatically converted to IBM i jobs. As a side effect, generic jobs cannot be run when this parameter is enabled (`RunExecutablesAsIBMiJobs=true`). There is no default value because this property is not listed in the `JobManager.ini` file after the agent installation.

If you set this property to `true`, ensure that the user you used to install the agent has been granted the `*ALLOBJ` special authority.

RunInteractiveJobOnInvalidSession

Applies only to native and executable jobs starting interactive programs running on dynamic agents installed on Windows operating systems. Interactive programs run only if the job user has an active session open when the job runs. If there is no active session for the job user, the job behavior is defined by this property, as follows. Set the property to `true` to enable jobs to start interactive programs even if there is no active session for the job user. Set the property to `false` to prevent jobs from starting interactive programs if there is no active session for the job user.

ScriptSuffix

The suffix to be used when creating the script files. It is:

`.cmd`

For Windows™

`.sh`

For UNIX™

VerboseTracing

Enables verbose tracing. It is set to `true` by default.

Configuring properties of the Java™ job launcher [JavaJobLauncher]

About this task

In the `JobManager.ini` file, the section containing the properties of the Java™ job launcher is named:

```
[JavaJobLauncher]
```

You can change the following property:

JVMOptions

The options to provide to the Java™ Virtual Machine used to start job types with advanced options. Supported keywords for establishing a secure connection are:

- https.proxyHost
- https.proxyPort

Supported keywords for establishing a non-secure connection are:

- Dhttp.proxyHost
- Dhttp.proxyPort

For example, to set job types with advanced options, based on the default JVM http protocol handler, to the unauthenticated proxy server called with name myproxyserver.mycompany.com, define the following option:

```
JVMOptions = -Dhttp.proxyHost=myproxyserver.mycompany.com -Dhttp.proxyPort=80
```

Configuring properties of the Resource advisor agent [ResourceAdvisorAgent]

About this task

In the `JobManager.ini` and `JobManagerGW.ini` files, the section containing the properties of the Resource advisor agent is named:

```
[ResourceAdvisorAgent]
```

You can change the following properties:

BackupResourceAdvisorUrls

The list of URLs returned by the IBM Workload Scheduler master in a distributed environment or by the dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment. The agent uses this list to connect to the master or dynamic domain manager.

CPUScannerPeriodSeconds

The time interval that the Resource advisor agent collects resource information about the local CPU. The default value is every 10 seconds.

FullyQualifiedHostname

The fully qualified host name of the agent. It is configured automatically at installation time and is used to connect with the master in a distributed environment or with the dynamic domain manager in a z/OS or in a distributed environment. Edit only if the host name is changed after installation.

NotifyToResourceAdvisorPeriodSeconds

The time interval that the Resource advisor agent forwards the collected resource information to the Resource advisor. The default value is every 119 seconds.

ResourceAdvisorUrl

JobManager.ini

The URL of the master in a distributed environment, or of the dynamic domain manager in a z/OS or in a distributed environment, that is hosting the agent.

This URL is used until the server replies with the list of its URLs. The value is

`https://$(tdwb_server):$(tdwb_port)/JobManagerRESTWeb/JobScheduler/resource`, where:

\$(tdwb_server)

is the fully qualified host name of the master in a distributed environment or of the dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment.

\$(tdwb_port)

is the port number of the master in a distributed environment or of the dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment.

It is configured automatically at installation time. Edit only if the host name or the port number are changed after installation, or if you do not use secure connection (set to `http`). If you set the port number to zero, the resource advisor agent does not start. The port is set to zero if at installation time you specify that you will not be using the master in a distributed environment or the dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment.

In a distributed environment, if **-gateway** is set to either `local` or `remote`, then this is the URL of the dynamic agent workstation where the gateway resides and through which the dynamic agents communicate. The value is

`https://$(tdwb_server):$(tdwb_port)/ita/JobManagerGW/JobManagerRESTWeb/JobScheduler/resource`, where:

\$(tdwb_server)

The fully qualified host name of the dynamic agent workstation where the gateway resides and through which the dynamic agent communicates with the dynamic workload broker.

\$(tdwb_port)

The port number of the dynamic agent workstation where the gateway resides and through which the dynamic agent communicates with the dynamic workload broker.

JobManagerGW.ini

In a distributed environment, if **-gateway** is set to `local`, then **ResourceAdvisorUrl** is the URL of the master or dynamic domain manager. The value is

`https://$(tdwb_server):$(tdwb_port)/JobManagerRESTWeb/JobScheduler/resource`, where:

\$(tdwb_server)

The fully qualified host name of the master or dynamic domain manager.

`$(tdwb_port)`

The port number of the master or dynamic domain manager.

ScannerPeriodSeconds

The time interval that the Resource advisor agent collects information about all the resources in the local system other than CPU resources. The default value is every 120 seconds.

The resource advisor agent, intermittently scans the resources of the machine (computer system, operating system, file systems and networks) and periodically sends an update of their status to the master or dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment.

The CPU is scanned every `CPUScannerPeriodSeconds` seconds, while all the other resources are scanned every `ScannerPeriodSeconds` seconds. As soon as one of the scans shows a significant change in the status of a resource, the resources are synchronized with the master in a distributed environment or the dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment. The following is the policy followed by the agent to tell if a resource attribute has significantly changed:

- A resource is added or deleted
- A string attribute changes its value
- A CPU value changes by more than `DeltaForCPU`
- A file system value changes by more than `DeltaForDiskMB` megabytes
- A Memory value changes by more than `DeltaForMemoryMB` megabytes

If there are no significant changes, the resources are synchronized with the IBM Workload Scheduler master in a distributed environment or with the dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment every `NotifyToResourceAdvisorPeriodSeconds` seconds.

Configuring properties of the System scanner [SystemScanner]

About this task

In the `JobManager.ini` file, the section containing the properties of the System scanner is named:

```
[SystemScanner]
```

You can change the following properties:

CPUSamples

The number of samples used to calculate the average CPU usage. The default value is 3.

DeltaForCPU

The change in CPU usage considered to be significant when it becomes higher than this percentage (for example, `DeltaForCPU` is 20 if the CPU usage changes from 10 percent to 30 percent). The default value is 20 percent.

DeltaForDiskMB

The change in use of all file system resources that is considered significant when it becomes higher than this value. The default value is 100 MB.

DeltaForMemoryMB

The change in use of all system memory that is considered significant when it becomes higher than this value. The default value is 100 MB.

Configuring environment variables [Env]

About this task

Add the section [Env] to the JobManagerGW.ini configuration file and insert the environment variables that you need in your dynamic scheduling environment.

Configuring the agent to work with a password vault

Configure dynamic agents to work with a password vault by creating a dedicated profile.

About this task

Enhance your password management by configuring dynamic agents to function as proxies to password vaults. You can use a password vault of your choice. If you prefer to use CyberArk, see [Configuring the agent to work with CyberArk on page 91](#).

Perform the following steps:

1. Prerequisites check:

- Ensure all IBM® Workload Scheduler components are at version 10.2.4 or later.
- Ensure at least one profile is present on each agent acting as a proxy.
- The profile is created automatically if you are upgrading from version 10.2.1 and later, otherwise it must be created manually.
- In a z/OS environment, a dynamic domain manager is required.
- If you are using pools, make sure all agents within the pool are correctly configured to integrate with CyberArk. Additionally, verify that all profiles on all agents are identical.

2. **Create a Profile:** On the agent, create a profile located in /home/TWA_DATA_DIR/integrations/vault-profiles using a flat-text editor. If you name the profile `default`, it is selected automatically if no profile is specified in the job definition. You can create multiple profiles for the same password vault or for different password vaults to meet different requirements.

3. **Specify Parameters:** The profile must contain the following parameters:

```
[VaultProfile.Common]
Type =
Description =
PasswordSolver =
ConfigFile =
```

where

Type

Specify the type of password vault to be used. This parameter is a string, and no validations are performed on its contents.

Description

Optionally write a description for the profile.

PasswordSolver

Contains the path to the password vault libraries. Alternatively, you can specify the absolute path to a script that retrieves the desired password from the password vault of your choice. This absolute path is consistent and independent of the current working directory, no matter where the file is located within the agent's file system.

If you plan to use a script to integrate with a password vault rather than a library, you have to write a dedicated script and ensure it returns a string containing the value of the password to be used in the job.

ConfigFile

Specify the name and path of the configuration file for the password vault. Alternatively, you can insert the whole configuration file directly in this parameter.

4. **Job definition creation:** Specify the desired profile when creating the job definition. If you do not specify a profile in the job definition, the default profile is used. For more information about creating the job definition so that the password is retrieved from a password vault, see the topic about obtaining passwords from password vaults in *User's Guide and Reference*.

Configuring the agent to work with CyberArk

Configure dynamic agents to work with CyberArk by creating a dedicated profile.

About this task

If you plan to use CyberArk as your password vault, configure the profile as follows:

```
[VaultProfile.Common]
Type = CyberArk
Description =
PasswordSolver = installation_dir/TWS/integrations/bin/libCyberArkVault.so
ConfigFile = TWA_DATA_DIR/integrations/config
```

Type

Specify the type of password vault to be used. This parameter is a string, and no validations are performed on its contents.

Description

Optionally write a description for the profile.

PasswordSolver

Contains the path to the password vault libraries. For example, you can point to the CyberArk libraries installed by default with the agent in the following paths:

On Windows operating systems

`installation_dir\TWS\integrations\bin\CyberArkVault.dll`

On UNIX operating systems

`installation_dir/TWS/integrations/bin/libCyberArkVault.so`

ConfigFile

Specify the name and full path of the configuration file for the password vault. If you have a `CyberArk.ini` configuration file from a previous installation, merge the contents of the file with the new configuration file. Alternatively, you can insert the whole configuration file directly in this parameter, for example by copying the whole `CyberArk.ini` file in this parameter.

For information about configuring secure communication with CyberArk, see [Configuring secure communication with CyberArk on page 97](#).

What to do next

After the agent is configured, you can proceed to define a job that is designed to securely retrieve passwords from the password vault, as described in the topic about obtaining passwords from password vaults in *User's Guide and Reference*.

Defining parameters in the `CyberArk.ini` file

About this task

Set up the `CyberArk.ini` file to configure password retrieval.

To configure CyberArk, you can use the `CyberArk.ini` template file available in `TWS/integrations/config_tmpl`, as follows:

1. Create a copy of the template file to one of the following paths, depending on your operating system:

Windows On Windows operating systems

`installation_directory\integrations\config`

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_DATA_DIR/integrations/config`

2. On UNIX operating systems, ensure you apply to the new file the same permissions and ownership settings assigned to the `JobManager.ini` file.
3. Fill in the parameters listed below as required.

You can also copy the updated file to a different path and specify the full path in the **ConfigFile** parameter of the profile you plan to use.

In the `CyberArk.ini` file, the following sections and parameters are available:

[CyberArk.Config]

CPAccessLibrary

The full path to the CyberArk proprietary library file.

HandlePasswordChangeInProcess

The operation to be performed if another user changes the password while you are requesting it from CyberArk. Supported values are `true` and `false`.

If you set this property to `true`, the job remains in waiting status and password retrieval is attempted again, based on the values set for the **RetryIntervalForPasswordChangeInProcess** and **RetryAttemptsForPasswordChangeInProcess** parameters.

RetryIntervalForPasswordChangeInProcess

The time interval in seconds IBM® Workload Scheduler waits before sending a new password request to CyberArk.

RetryAttemptsForPasswordChangeInProcess

The number of times IBM® Workload Scheduler retries to obtain the password from CyberArk. If the specified number of retries is exceeded, the operation fails.

[CyberArk.CP.Connection]

This section applies only when you use the **Credential Provider (CP)** and specify the full path to the CyberArk library file in the **CPAccessLibrary** property.

Port

The port that is used to connect to the CP.

ConnectionTimeout

The time interval in seconds IBM® Workload Scheduler waits for the host to answer the connection request.

[CyberArk.CCP.Connection]

This section applies only when you use the **Central Credential Provider (CCP)** and is used when you leave the **CPAccessLibrary** property empty. These properties are mandatory.

Host

The host name of the workstation where CyberArk Central Credential Provider is installed.

Protocol

The protocol used to connect to the host.

Port

The port used to connect to the host.

Path

The path where the REST API is located.

ConnectionTimeout

The time interval in seconds IBM® Workload Scheduler waits for the host to answer the connection request.

Timeout

The time interval in seconds IBM® Workload Scheduler waits for CyberArk to return the password.

FollowLocation

Set this property to `true` to enable the HTTP protocol. You cannot enable the HTTP protocol from the command line. This property instructs the composer command to follow any **Location: header** that the server sends as part of the HTTP header in a 3xx response. The **Location: header** can specify a relative or an absolute URL to follow.

SSLVerifyServer

Specify `yes` if server authentication is to be used in SSL communications.

Proxy

The name of the proxy server used when connecting to the specified host.

ProxyPort

The TCP/IP port number of the proxy server used when connecting to the specified host.

SSLVersion

Specify the SSL version to be used. Supported values are:

- **atleast.TLSv1.0**
- **atleast.TLSv1.1**
- **atleast.TLSv1.2**
- **atleast.TLSv1.3**

where you specify the minimum version of the TLS protocol to be used. In this case, IBM® Workload Scheduler uses the specified version of the protocol or a higher version, if supported.

- **max.TLSv1.0**
- **max.TLSv1.1**
- **max.TLSv1.2**
- **max.TLSv1.3**

where you specify the maximum version of the TLS protocol to be used. In this case, IBM® Workload Scheduler uses the specified version of the protocol or a lower version.

- **TLSv1.0**
- **TLSv1.1**

- **TLSv1.2**
- **TLSv1.3**

where you specify the exact version of the TLS protocol to be used. In this case, IBM® Workload Scheduler uses the specified version of the protocol.

SSLCiphers

Define the ciphers that the workstation supports during an SSL connection.

If you want to use an OpenSSL cipher class, use the following command to find out the list of available classes:

```
openssl ciphers
```

For a full list of supported ciphers, see [SSL Ciphers](#) and [OpenSSL](#).

SSLCipherSuites

Specify one or more supported algorithms for TLS version 1.3. This option does not apply to TLS version 1.2 or earlier.

SSLConfigFile

Specify the name and path of the OpenSSL configuration file. See OpenSSL documentation for details about the file format and options. If you modify this file, ensure the changes are consistent with the security configuration in your environment.

[CyberArk.CCP.Connection.OpenSSL]

For more information about configuring secure communication with CyberArk, see [Configuring secure communication with CyberArk on page 97](#).

SSLKey

The full path to the private key file in **pem** format.

If you use certificates in pem format

Specify the full path to the private key file in **pem** format. For example, if you use certman to generate the certificates, specify in this parameter the full path to the `tls.key` file.

If you use certificates in p12 format

Leave this parameter blank.

SSLKeyPwd

The full path to the file containing the password encoded in Base64 for the private key.

SSLCertificate

Specify the full path to the local certificate file used in SSL communication. You can either use the certificates available on the agent or generate brand new certificates using the certman command, as follows:

you use the certificates available on the agent

Specify in the **SSL certificate** parameter the full path to the certificates, for example `/<TWS_DATA_DIR>/ssl/certs/TWSClientKeyStore.p12`. This ensures secure communication without further steps.

you generate new certificates using certman

1. Generate the certificates using certman, as described in [Managing certificates using Certman on page 536](#)
2. Set the **SSL cert type** parameter to **pem**, which is the format used by certman.
3. Specify in the **SSL certificate** parameter the full path to the `tls.crt` file generated by the certman command.
4. Specify in the **SSLKey** parameter the full path to the private key file.

SSLCertificateType

Specify the type of your private key and certificate file used in SSL communication. Supported formats are **p12** and **pem**.

If the certificate type is in pem format

- Specify the full path to the private key file in the **SSLKey** parameter.
- Specify the full path to the local certificate file in the **SSLCertificate** parameter.

If the certificate type is in p12 format

- Store both private key and certificate in the **p12**.
- Leave the **SSLKey** parameter blank.
- Specify the full path to the local certificate file in the **SSLCertificate** parameter.

SSLCACertificate

Specify the name of the file containing the trusted certification authority (CA) certificates required for SSL authentication. The CAs in this file are also used to build the list of acceptable client CAs passed to the client when the server side of the connection requests a client certificate. This file is the concatenation, in order of preference, of the various PEM-encoded CA certificate files.

SSLRandomSeed

Specify the pseudo random number file used by OpenSSL on some operating systems. Without this file, SSL authentication might not work correctly.

[CyberArk.AppDescs]**AppID**

The unique ID of the application issuing the password request. This parameter is required.

[CyberArk.Query]

Safe

The name of the Safe where the password is stored.

Folder

The name of the folder where the password is stored.

Object

The name of the password object to retrieve.

Username

Defines search criteria according to the **UserName** account property.

Address

Defines search criteria according to the **Address** account property.

PolicyID

Defines the format that will be used in the **setPolicyID** method.

Database

Defines search criteria according to the **Database** account property.

[CyberArk.Query.Result]**NormalizedUsername**

Standardized format of a user name.

What to do next

After the agent is configured, you can proceed to define a job that is designed to securely retrieve passwords from the password vault, as described in the topic about obtaining passwords from password vaults in *User's Guide and Reference*.

Configuring secure communication with CyberArk

About this task

To establish secure communication, you can use several certificate formats. The required configuration varies depending on the format you use, as follows:

If the certificate type is in pem format

- Specify the full path to the private key file in the **SSLKey** parameter.
- Specify the full path to the local certificate file in the **SSLCertificate** parameter.

If the certificate type is in p12 format

- Store both private key and certificate in the **p12**.
- Leave the **SSLKey** parameter blank.
- Specify the full path to the local certificate file in the **SSLCertificate** parameter.

When establishing secure communication with CyberArk, you can encounter one of the following scenarios:

You want to use your own certificates and CA

The following steps apply:

1. Provide CyberArk with your CA, which validates your certificate.
2. CyberArk returns its CA, which validates the certificate from CyberArk.
3. Depending on whether you use certificates in **pem** or **p12** format, specify the following parameters:

certificates in pem format

Specify the full path to the private key file in the **SSLKey** and the full path to the local certificate in the **SSLCertificate** parameters.

certificates in p12 format

- a. Add private key and certificate into a **p12** keystore.
 - b. Specify the full path to the **p12** keystore you just created in the **SSLCertificate** parameter.
 - c. Leave the **SSLKey** parameter blank.
4. Import the CyberArk CA into the **pem** truststore which must be specified in the **SSLCACertificate** parameter in the `CyberArk.ini` file.

You request the certificates from CyberArk

The following steps apply:

1. CyberArk provides you with client certificate and CA certificate.
2. Depending on whether you use certificates in **pem** or **p12** format, specify the following parameters:

certificates in pem format

Specify the full path to the key in the **SSLKey** and the full path to the certificate in the **SSLCertificate** parameters.

certificates in p12 format

- a. Add private key and certificate into a **p12** keystore.
 - b. Specify the full path to the **p12** keystore you just created in the **SSLCertificate** parameter.
 - c. Leave the **SSLKey** parameter blank.
3. Import the CyberArk CA into the **pem** truststore which must be specified in the **SSLCACertificate** parameter in the `CyberArk.ini` file.

Configuring the agent to work with Kerberos

With the Kerberos integration, you can communicate securely over an insecure network by leveraging the Kerberos Authentication Protocol for submitting jobs on dynamic agents.

To configure Kerberos on 64-bit Linux Intel (linux-x86_64) operating systems, you can use the `Kerberos.ini` template file available on dynamic agents in `TWS/integrations/config_tmpl`, as follows:

1. Create a copy of the template file to one of the following paths, depending on your operating system:

Windows On Windows operating systems

`installation_directory\ITA\cpa\config`

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_DATA_DIR/ITA/cpa/config`

2. Ensure you apply to the new file the same permissions and ownership settings assigned to the `JobManager.ini` file.
3. Fill in the parameters listed in [Configuring the Kerberos.ini file on page 99](#) as required.
4. Browse to the `JobManager.ini` file, located in one of the following paths, depending on your operating system:

Windows On Windows operating systems

`installation_directory\ITA\cpa\config`

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_DATA_DIR/ITA/cpa/config`

5. Add the following keys to the **NativeJobLauncher** section in the `JobManager.ini` file:

AuthMethod

The full path to the `libKerberos.so` library file, as follows:
`installation_directory/TWS/bin/libKerberos.so`

IsAuthMethodMandatory

The behavior in case the authentication fails. The default value is **false**: if Kerberos authentication fails, the job continues with the authentication methods provided by the service in use, for example, by requesting the user and password required by SSH. If you set this key to **true** and Kerberos authentication fails, the job fails.

6. Start all processes on the dynamic agent by running the `StartUpLwa` command.

Configuring the Kerberos.ini file

You can configure the following properties in the `Kerberos.ini` file:

Kerberos.Config section

UseDefaultCCache

The credentials cache to be used for storing intermediate objects. The default value is `false`: a cache file is automatically assigned by the `libKerberos.so` library for each job. If you set it to `true`, Kerberos defines the cache location.

KDCCConnectionRetryAttempts

The number of times IBM® Workload Scheduler retries to authenticate with Kerberos, in case the first attempt fails. The default value is 0, which means the integrations tries to authenticate a single time and performs no further attempts.

KDCCConnectionRetryInterval

The time interval in seconds IBM® Workload Scheduler waits before sending a new authentication request to Kerberos. The default value is 5 seconds.

Kerberos.InitCredsOpts section

The following properties are internal Kerberos properties. If you specify a value, it overrides the corresponding setting on Kerberos. If you leave the property blank, the value defined on Kerberos applies. For more information about these properties, see Kerberos documentation.

Proxiable

Whether credentials should be proxiable.

Forwardable

Whether the credentials should be forwardable.

TicketLifetime

The default lifetime for initial ticket requests.

Kerberos.Logging.cilog section

Most of the properties in this section are reserved for internal use and should not be changed. You can configure the following properties:

Kerberos.trfl.level

Determines the type of trace messages that are logged. Change this value to trace more or fewer events, as appropriate, or on request from Software Support. The default value is 3000, which means minimum trace information is captured. To enable maximum level of tracing, set this property to 1000.

Kerberos.trhd.maxFileBytes

The maximum size that the trace file can reach. The default value is 10240000 bytes.

Kerberos.trhd.maxFiles

The maximum number of trace files that can be stored. The default value is 5.

User management

The integration supports two authentication modes:

- You can specify the same user for authenticating to Kerberos and running the job.
- You can specify a user for authenticating to Kerberos and a different user for running the job. In this case, when you create the job definition from the **Workload Designer** or **Graphical Designer**, specify both users in the **Credentials** tab of the job definition with the following syntax:

```
job_user/kerberos_user
```

where

job_user

Is the user running the job

kerberos_user

Is the user authenticating to Kerberos

What to do next

After configuring Kerberos, you can proceed to create job definitions as usual. When you specify a user in the job definition, the Kerberos Authentication Protocol is applied.

The job can run only on the dynamic agent on which you have configured Kerberos.

Running a script when a job completes

In many scenarios, when a job completes, you might want to run one or more actions, by using the information related to the job completion. For this purpose, you can write a script file and store it in a directory of the agent file system. The script is run every time that a job completes, either successfully or unsuccessfully. The script runs with the same credentials as the agent user that is running the job.



Note: The agent user must be authorized to access the script file and its directory.

To provide IBM Workload Scheduler with the path of the script file, you must modify the `JobManager.ini` file as follows:

1. Locate the `JobManager.ini` file on the local agent instance where the script will run. The file is located in the `TWA_home/TWS/ITA/cpa/config` directory on the agent.
2. In the `[NativeJobLauncher]` section of the file, define the value of the **PostJobExecScriptPathName** property, with the fully qualified path of the script file that you want to run when a job completes.
3. Save the changes to the file.

If you do not specify any file path or the script file doesn't exist, no action is taken when the job completes. For details about customizing the **PostJobExecScriptPathName** property, see *Administration Guide*.

The following job variables can be used in the script:

- JOB_ID
- JOB_ALIAS

- JOB_SPOOL_DIR
- JOB_STATUS
- JOB_RETURN_CODE
- JOB_DURATION
- JOB_START_TIME
- JOB_END_TIME

The script is run for any of the following job final statuses:

- SUCCEEDED_EXECUTION
- UNKNOWN
- CANCELLED
- FAILED_EXECUTION

In the `JobManager_message.log`, you are notified via a message if the job started successfully, or if any error prevented the job from starting. To analyze the output of the script execution, you can check the `out.log` file in the `post_script` subdirectory of the job `SpoolDir`.

Regular maintenance

Regular maintenance refers to the mechanisms that are used on your dynamic workstation agents to free up storage space and improve performance.

Unlike IBM Workload Scheduler fault-tolerant agents, where maintenance tasks must be performed manually using the `rmstdlist` utility command, you can have regular maintenance performed on your dynamic agent workstations to keep disk space under control by configuring the following parameters as appropriate.

Table 18. Agent configuration parameters

File	Parameter	Description
JobManager.ini located in the path	MaxAge	The number of days that job logs are kept before being deleted. The default is 2. Possible values range from a minimum of 1 day.
 On UNIX™ operating systems	JobManager.log	The maximum size that the log file can reach. The default is 1024000 bytes.
<code>TWA_DATA_DIR/ITA/cpa/config/JobManager.ini</code>	gerhd.maxFileBytes	
	JobManager.log	The maximum number of log files that can be stored in the
	gerhd.maxFiles	stdlist/JM directory. The default is 3.

Table 18. Agent configuration parameters

(continued)

File	Parameter	Description
Windows On Windows™ operating systems	JobManager.ffdc	The maximum disk space reached, by the log files collected by the First Failure Data Capture tool, after which the oldest files are removed.
<i>TWA_home\TWS\ITA\cpa\config\JobManager.ini</i>	.maxDiskSpace	
	JobManager.trhd	The maximum size that the log file can reach. The default is 10240000 bytes.
	.maxFileBytes	
	JobManager.trhd	The maximum number of log files that can be stored. The default is 5.
	.maxFiles	
logging.properties located in the path	java.util.logging.FileHandler.limit	The maximum amount to write log messages to a file. Default value is 1000000 (bytes)
UNIX On UNIX™ operating systems	java.util.logging.FileHandler.count	The number of output files to cycle through. Default value is 10.
<i>TWA_DATA_DIR/TWS/JavaExt/cfg/</i>		
Windows On Windows™ operating systems		
<i>TWA_home\TWS\JavaExt\cfg</i>		
Logs related to jobs with advanced options.		

Configuring the dynamic workload broker server on the master domain manager and dynamic domain manager

About this task

You can perform these configuration tasks after completing the installation of your master domain manager, dynamic domain manager, and dynamic agents, and any time that you want to change or tune specific parameters in your environment.

The configuration parameters for the dynamic workload broker server are defined by default at installation time. You modify a subset of these parameters using the files that are created when you install dynamic workload broker. The following files are created in the path:

Windows On Windows systems

<TWA_home>\broker\config

UNIX On UNIX systems

<TWA_DATA_DIR>/broker/config

ResourceAdvisorConfig.properties

Contains configuration information about the **Resource Advisor**. For more information, see [ResourceAdvisorConfig.properties file on page 106](#).

JobDispatcherConfig.properties

Contains configuration information about the **Job Dispatcher**. For more information, see [JobDispatcherConfig.properties file on page 108](#).

BrokerWorkstation.properties

Contains configuration information about the broker server. [BrokerWorkstation.properties file on page 110](#)

CLConfig.properties

Contains configuration information for the dynamic workload broker command line. This file is described in the section about Command-line configuration file in *User's Guide and Reference*.

You can modify a subset of the parameters in these files to change the following settings:

- Heartbeat signal from the agents.
- Time interval for job allocation to resources
- Time interval for notifications on resources
- Polling time when checking the status of remote engine workstations
- Maximum number of results when allocating jobs to global resources
- Encryption of any passwords sent in the JSDL definitions
- Time interval for retrying the operation after a **Job Dispatcher** failure
- Time interval for retrying the operation after a client notification failure
- Archive settings for job data
- Job history settings
- Command line properties

The editable parameters are listed in the following sections. If you edit any parameters that are not listed, the product might not work. After modifying the files, you must stop and restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

Maintaining the dynamic workload broker server on the master domain manager and dynamic domain manager

About this task

Because one dynamic workload broker server is installed with your master domain manager and dynamic domain manager, and one server with every backup manager, you have at least two servers present in your IBM Workload Scheduler network. The server running with the master domain manager is the only one active at any time. The servers installed in the backup managers are idle until you switch managers, and the server in the new manager becomes the active server. To have a smooth transition from one server to another, when you switch managers, it is important that you keep the same configuration settings in the `ResourceAdvisorConfig.properties` and `JobDispatcherConfig.properties` files in all your servers. When you make a change in any of these files of your running dynamic workload broker server, remember to apply the same change also in the dynamic workload broker server idling on your backup manager.

Some of the settings for the dynamic workload broker server are stored in the local **BrokerWorkstation.properties** file and also in the IBM Workload Scheduler database. When you switch to the backup master domain manager or dynamic domain manager, the dynamic workload broker server settings are automatically updated on the backup workstation. For more information about the **BrokerWorkstation.properties** file, see [BrokerWorkstation.properties file on page 110](#).



Note: The database is automatically populated with the information from the active workstation, regardless of whether it is the manager or the backup workstation. For example, if you modify the dynamic workload broker server settings on the backup master domain manager or dynamic domain manager, this change is recorded in the database. When you switch back to the manager workstation, the change is applied to the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager and the related local settings are overwritten.

It is important that you also keep the data pertinent to every dynamic workload broker server up-to-date. If you change the host name or port number of any of your dynamic workload broker servers, use the `exportserverdata` and `importserverdata` commands from the dynamic workload broker command line to record these changes in the IBM Workload Scheduler database. For information about these commands, see *Scheduling Workload Dynamically*.

The database records for your workload broker workstations all have `LOCALHOST` as the host name of the workstation. Leave the record as-is. Do not replace `LOCALHOST` with the actual host name or IP address of the workstation. `LOCALHOST` is used intentionally to ensure that the jobs submitted from IBM Workload Scheduler are successfully sent to the new local dynamic workload broker when you switch the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager.

Enabling unsecure communication with the dynamic workload broker server

About this task

By default, the dynamic workload broker server uses secure communication. You might need to enable unsecure communication, even though this type of communication is not recommended.

To enable unsecure communication with the dynamic workload broker server, perform the following steps on the master domain manager:

1. Run the `exportserverdata` command located in `TWA_home/TDWB/bin`:

```
exportserverdata -dbUser db_instance_admin -dbPwd db_instance_admin_pwd
```

2. Open the resulting `server.properties` file in a flat-text editor.

- Copy the following line:

```
https://hostname:port/JobManagerRESTWeb/JobScheduler
```

- Change the copied line by replacing **https** with **http**:

```
http://hostname:port/JobManagerRESTWeb/JobScheduler
```

The file now contains two lines specifying the connection mode, one line specifying the https mode and one line specifying the http mode.

- Save the file.
- Import the new data with the `importserverdata` command located in `TWA_home/TDWB/bin`:

```
importserverdata -dbUsr db_instance_admin -dbPwd db_instance_admin_pwd
```

For more information about the `exportserverdata` and `importserverdata` commands, see *IBM Workload Scheduler: Scheduling Workload Dynamically*.

ResourceAdvisorConfig.properties file

The parameters in this file affect the following dynamic workload broker server settings:

- Heartbeat signal from the agents
- Time interval for job allocation to resources
- Time interval for notifications on resources
- Polling time when checking the status of remote engine workstations
- Maximum number of results when allocating jobs to global resources

You can modify the following parameters in the `ResourceAdvisorConfig.properties` file:

DatabaseCheckInterval

Specifies the time interval within which the dynamic workload broker server checks the availability of the database. The default value is **180** seconds.

ResourceAdvisorURL

Specifies the URL of the **Resource Advisor**.

RaaHeartBeatInterval

Specifies the time interval within which the **Resource Advisor** expects a heartbeat signal from the dynamic agent. The default value is **200** seconds. After the maximum number of retries (specified in the **MissedHeartBeatCount** parameter) is exceeded, the **Resource Advisor** reports the related computer as unavailable. In a slow network, you might want to set this parameter to a higher value. However, defining a higher value might delay the updates on the availability status of computer systems. If, instead, you decrease this value together with the value defined for the **NotifyToResourceAdvisorPeriodSeconds** parameter, this might generate network traffic and increase CPU usage when updating cached data. The value defined in this parameter must be consistent with the **NotifyToResourceAdvisorPeriodSeconds** parameter defined in the `JobManager.ini` file, which defines the time interval for each dynamic agent to send the heartbeat signal to the **Resource Advisor**.

MissedHeartBeatCount

Specifies the number of missed heartbeat signals after which the computer is listed as not available. The default value is 2. In a slow network, you might want to set this parameter to a higher value.

MaxWaitingTime

Specifies the maximum time interval that a job must wait for a resource to become available. If the interval expires before a resource becomes available, the job status changes to Resource Allocation Failure. The default value is 600 seconds. You can override this value for each specific job by using the **Maximum Resource Waiting Time** parameter defined in the Dynamic Workload Console. For more information about the **Maximum Resource Waiting Time** parameter, see the Dynamic Workload Console online help. If you set this parameter to -1, no waiting interval is applied for the jobs. If you set this parameter to 0, the **Resource Advisor** tries once to find the matching resources and, if it does not find any resource, the job changes to the ALLOCATION FAILED status. If you increase this value, all submitted jobs remain in WAITING status for a longer time and the **Resource Advisor** tries to find matching resources according to the value defined for the **CheckInterval** parameter.

CheckInterval

Specifies how long the **Resource Advisor** waits before retrying to find matching resources for a job that did not find any resource in the previous time slot. The default value is 60 seconds.

TimeSlotLength

Specifies the time slot interval during which the **Resource Advisor** allocates resources to each job. Jobs submitted after this interval has expired are considered in a new time slot. The default value is 15 seconds. The default value is adequate for most environments and should not be modified. Setting this parameter to a higher value, causes the **Resource Advisor** to assign resources to higher priority jobs rather than to lower priority jobs when all jobs are trying to obtain the same resource. It might also, however, cause the job resource matching processing to take longer and the resource state updates from agents to be slowed down. Setting this parameter to a lower value, causes the **Resource Advisor** to process the resource matching faster and, if you have a high number of agents with frequent updates, to update the resource repository immediately. If job requirements match many resources, lower values ensure a better load balancing. If most jobs use resource allocation, do not lower this value because the allocation evaluation requires many processing resources.

NotifyTimeInterval

Specifies the interval within which the **Resource Advisor** retries to send notifications on the job status to the **Job Dispatcher** after a notification failed. The default value is 15 seconds. The default value is adequate for most environments and should not be modified.

MaxNotificationCount

Specifies the maximum number of attempts for the **Resource Advisor** to send notifications to the **Job Dispatcher**. The default value is 100. The default value is adequate for most environments and should not be modified.

ServersCacheRefreshInterval

Specifies with what frequency (in seconds) the Resource Advisor checks the list of active and backup dynamic workload broker servers for updates. This list is initially created when the master domain manager is installed, and after that it is updated every time a new backup master is installed and connected to the master domain manager database (the master domain manager and every backup master include also a dynamic workload broker server). When the Resource Advisor agents send their data about the resources discovered in each computer, they are able to automatically switch between the servers of this list, so that the dynamic workload broker server that is currently active can store this data in its Resource Repository. For this reason, the Resource Advisor agents must know at all times the list of all dynamic workload broker servers. The possible values range between 300 (5 minutes) and 43200 (12 hours). The default value is 600 seconds.

StatusCheckInterval

Specifies the time interval in seconds the Resource Advisor waits before polling for the status of a resource. For example this timeout applies when checking the status of a remote engine. The default value is 120 seconds.

After modifying the file, you must stop and restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

JobDispatcherConfig.properties file

The parameters in this file affect the following settings for the dynamic workload broker server installed on a master domain manager or dynamic domain manager:

- Encryption of any passwords sent in the JSDL definitions
- Time interval for retrying the operation after a **Job Dispatcher** failure
- Time interval for retrying the operation after a client notification failure
- Archive settings for job data
- Job history settings
- Gateways and dynamic workload broker server connection settings.

After modifying the file, you must stop and restart the IBM® WebSphere® server.

During the upgrade from version 8.5.1 the values you set for the properties for version 8.5.1 are preserved. The default values for the properties for version 8.6 are different from those in version 8.5.1. If you want to use the version 8.6 defaults, change them manually.

In the `JobDispatcherConfig.properties` file, the following parameters are available:

DatabaseCheckInterval

Specifies the time interval within which the dynamic workload broker server checks the availability of the database. The default value is **180** seconds.

EnablePasswordEncryption

Specifies that any user passwords contained in the JSDL definitions are to be encrypted when the definitions are sent to the agents. The default is `true`. Setting this property to `false` forces the dynamic workload broker server to send the passwords in plain text. This applies to any password field.

RAEndpointAddress

Specifies the URL of the **Resource Advisor**.

JDURL

Specifies the URL of the **Job Dispatcher**.

FailQInterval

Specifies the numbers of seconds for retrying the operation after the following failures:

- Client notification.
- Allocation, Reallocate, Cancel Allocation requests to **Resource Advisor**.
- Any database operation failed for connectivity reasons.

The default value is 30 seconds. Increasing this value improves recovery speed after a failure but can use many system resources if the recovery operation is complex. For example, if the workload broker workstation is processing a new Symphony file, this operation might require some time, so you should set this parameter to a high value. If you are not using workload broker workstation, this parameter can be set to a lower value.

MaxCancelJobAttemptsCount

The maximum number of times the Job Dispatcher attempts to cancel a shadow job or a job running on a dynamic agent when a request to kill the job is made and the kill request cannot be immediately processed. The default is 1440 attempts. The Job Dispatcher attempts to cancel the job every 30 seconds for a maximum number of times specified by this parameter.

MaxNotificationCount

Specifies the maximum number of retries after a client notification failure. The default value is 1440. For example, if the workload broker workstation is processing a new Symphony file, this operation might require some time, so you should set this parameter to a high value. If you are not using the workload broker workstation, this parameter can be set to a lower value.

MoveHistoryDataFrequencyInMins

Specifies how often job data must be deleted. The unit of measurement is minutes. The default value is 60 minutes. Increasing this value causes the **Job Dispatcher** to check less frequently for jobs to be deleted. Therefore, the volume of jobs in the **Job Repository** might increase and all queries might take longer to complete. Dynamic workload broker servers with high job throughput might require lower values, while low job throughputs might require higher values.

SuccessfulJobsMaxAge

Specifies how long successfully completed or canceled jobs must be kept in the **Job Repository** database before being archived. The unit of measurement is hours. The default value is 240 hours, that is ten days.

UnsuccessfulJobsMaxAge

Specifies how long unsuccessfully completed jobs or jobs in unknown status must be kept in the **Job Repository** database before being archived. The unit of measurement is hours. The default value is 720 hours, that is 30 days.

AgentConnectTimeout

Specifies the number of minutes that the dynamic workload broker server waits for a scheduling agent response after it first attempts to establish a connection with that agent. If the agent does not reply within this time, the server does not open the connection. Values range from 0 to 60 (use 0 to wait indefinitely). The default is 3.

AgentReadTimeout

Specifies the number of minutes that the dynamic workload broker server waits to receive data from established connections with a scheduling agent or a gateway. If no data arrives within the specified time, the server closes the connection with the agent. Values range from 0 to 60 (use 0 to wait indefinitely). The default is 3.

GatewayPollingTimeout

Add this parameter to specify the number of minutes that the gateway waits to receive data from established connections with a dynamic workload broker. If no data arrives within the specified time, the gateway closes the connection with the dynamic workload broker. Values range from 1 to 60. The default is 1 minute.

GatewayConnectionTimeout

Add this parameter to specify the number of seconds that the dynamic workload broker server waits for a gateway receiving data after the dynamic workload broker first attempts to send data to the gateway. If the gateway does not reply within this time, the dynamic workload broker does not open the connection. Values range from 1 to 60. The default is 10 seconds.

MaxNumberOfParallelGateways

Add this parameter to specify the number of gateways that dynamic workload broker server can manage without lack of performances. Values range from 3 to 100. The default is 3.

**Note:**

If an unexpected job workload peak occurs and a cleanup of the database is required earlier than the value you specified in the `MoveHistoryDataFrequencyInMins` parameter, you can use the `movehistorydata` command to perform a cleanup before the scheduled cleanup is performed.

BrokerWorkstation.properties file

If you need to make configuration changes to the broker server after the installation has completed, you can edit the `BrokerWorkstation.properties` file. The `BrokerWorkstation.properties` file contains the following configuration properties:

Broker.AuthorizedCNS

The list of prefixes of common names authorized to communicate with the broker server.

Broker.CertificateExpirationInterval

The number of days before the certificate on the agent expires. During this interval, the certificate is set in expiring status and the agent tries to download a new version of the certificate from the master domain manager, if available. Supported values are any integer greater than zero. The default value is 15 days.

Broker.fileproxy.urls

If you defined a stand-alone file proxy using the `fileproxyinst` command, you can optionally use this property to specify the URL of an alternate stand-alone file proxy for high availability configuration. You can implement one of the following configurations:

- Specify one or more proxy servers, separated by commas. If one of the file proxies stops unexpectedly, the other file proxy takes over.
- Specify a load balancer. If one of the file proxies stops unexpectedly, the load balancer switches the workload to one of the available file proxies.

Use the following syntax:

```
[http/https]://[fileproxy host]:[file proxy port]
```

This procedure does not apply if you use the default file proxy installed with each master domain manager.

For more information about the File Transfer integration, see the File Transfer integration on Automation Hub.

For more information about installing the file proxy as a stand-alone component, see the section about the `fileproxyinst` script in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

Broker.jobLog.corePoolSize

The size of the thread pool that serves core services and job log requests. The maximum supported number of concurrent job log requests corresponds to the value set for **Broker.jobLog.corePoolSize** minus 5. For example, if **Broker.jobLog.corePoolSize** is set to 20, the maximum supported number of concurrent job log requests is 15. Issuing a number of concurrent job log requests higher than this value (15 in the example) causes the dynamic domain manager to hang and requires a restart of the application server. The default value, when the property is not specified in the `BrokerWorkstation.properties` file or empty, is 50.

Broker.Workstation.CpuType

The workstation type assigned to the broker server. Supported values are:

- master domain manager (master)
- backup master domain manager (fta)
- dynamic domain manager (fta, broker, agent)
- backup dynamic domain manager (fta, broker, agent)

Broker.Workstation.Enable

A switch that enables or disables the broker server. The value can be `true` or `false`. The default value is `true`.

Set this value to `false` if you decide not to use a broker server. Not using the broker server means that you can submit jobs dynamically on the dynamic workload broker directly (using either the Dynamic Workload Console or the dynamic workload broker command line) without using the scheduling facilities of IBM Workload Scheduler.

Broker.Workstation.Name

The name of the broker server in the IBM Workload Scheduler production plan. This name is first assigned at installation time.

Broker.Workstation.PortSSL

The port used by the broker server to listen to the incoming traffic (equivalent to the Netman port) in SSL mode. It is first assigned at installation time. This port number must always be the same for all the broker servers that you define in your IBM Workload Scheduler network (one with the master domain manager and one with every backup master you install) to ensure consistency when you switch masters.

Broker.Workstation.Port

The port used by the broker server to listen to the incoming traffic (equivalent to the Netman port). It is first assigned at installation time. This port number must always be the same for all the broker servers that you define in your IBM Workload Scheduler network (one with the master domain manager and one with every backup master you install) to ensure consistency when you switch masters.

Broker.Workstation.RetryLink

The number of seconds between consecutive attempts to link to the broker server. The default is 600.

DomainManager.Workstation.Domain

The name of the domain where the broker server is registered.

DomainManager.Workstation.Name

The name of the domain manager workstation.

DomainManager.Workstation.Port

The port of the domain manager workstation.

MasterDomainManager.HostName

The host name of the master domain manager workstation.

MasterDomainManager.HttpsPort

The HTTPS port of the master domain manager workstation.

MasterDomainManager.Name

The name of the master domain manager workstation.

If you need to modify the event processor server, for example to use a load balancer, add the following two keywords in the file:

Broker.Workstation.evtproc.previous_hostname=new_hostname

Specify the previous hostname and the new hostname of the event processor.

Broker.Workstation.evtproc.previous_port=new_port

Specify the previous and new port of the event processor.

After stopping and restarting WebSphere Application Server Liberty, the dynamic domain manager sends the updated information to the dynamic agents.

Archiving job data

Job definitions created using the Dynamic Workload Console are stored in the **Job Repository** database. The **Job Repository** database stores also the jobs created when the job definitions are submitted to the dynamic workload broker.

Job information is archived on a regular basis. By default, successful jobs are archived every 24 hours. Jobs in failed or unknown status are archived by default every 72 hours.

You can configure the time interval after which job data is archived using the following parameters:

- **MoveHistoryDataFrequencyInMins**
- **SuccessfulJobsMaxAge**
- **UnsuccessfulJobsMaxAge**

These parameters are available in the `JobDispatcherConfig.properties` file, as described in [JobDispatcherConfig.properties file on page 108](#). You can also use the `movehistorydata` command to perform a cleanup before the scheduled cleanup is performed.

Configuring to schedule J2EE jobs

About this task

Using the dynamic workload broker component you can schedule J2EE jobs. To do this you must complete the following configuration tasks:

- [Configure the J2EE executor on page 113](#) on every agent on which you submit J2EE jobs.
- [Configure the J2EE Job Executor Agent on page 118](#) on an external WebSphere® Application Server

Configuring the J2EE executor

About this task

To dynamically schedule J2EE jobs, you must configure the following property files on every agent on which you submit J2EE jobs:

- J2EEJobExecutorConfig.properties
- logging.properties
- soap.client.props

These files are configured with default values at installation time. The values that you can customize are indicated within the description of each file.

J2EEJobExecutorConfig.properties file

Use the `J2EEJobExecutorConfig.properties` file to configure the J2EE executor

The file is located in:

Windows On Windows operating systems

`TWA_home>\JavaExtversion_number>\cfg`

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_DATA_DIR>/JavaExt/cfg`

The keywords of this file are described in the following table:

Table 19. J2EEJobExecutorConfig.properties file keywords

Table 19. J2EEJobExecutorConfig.properties file keywords (continued)

Keyword	Specifies...	Default value	Must be customized
	invoker means that dynamic workload broker uses an existing WebSphere® Application Server scheduling infrastructure that is already configured on a target external WebSphere® Application Server.	• <code>indirect</code> keyword • Name of the scheduler: <code>sch/MyScheduler</code> • <code>soap</code> keyword • Host name of the external WebSphere® Application Server instance: <code>washost.mydomain.com</code> • SOAP port of the WebSphere® Application Server instance: <code>8880</code> • Path to the <code>soap.client.props</code> file: <code>TWA_home/TWS/JavaExt/cfg/soap.client.props</code> • Credentials keyword: <code>mycred</code>	• The scheduler name. Replace the <code>sch/MyScheduler</code> string with the JNDI name of the IBM® WebSphere® scheduler that you plan to use. • The host name of the external WebSphere® Application Server instance. • The SOAP port of the external WebSphere® Application Server instance.
connector.direct	The name of the direct communication channel without using the WebSphere® Application Server scheduler. Select a direct invoker to have dynamic workload broker immediately forward the job to the external WebSphere® Application Server instance components (EJB or JMS). When creating the job definition, you can specify if you want to use a direct or indirect connector in the J2EE Application pane in the Application page in the Job Brokering Definition Console, or in the invoker element in the JSDL file. For more	A single line with the following values separated by commas: • <code>direct</code> keyword • The following string: <code>com.ibm.websphere.naming.WsnInitialContextFactory</code> • The following string: <code>corbaloc:iiop:washost.mydomain.com:2809</code>	You must customize the following: • The host name of the external WebSphere® Application Server instance: <code>washost.mydomain.com</code> • The RMI port of the external WebSphere® Application Server instance: <code>2809</code>

Table 19. J2EEJobExecutorConfig.properties file keywords (continued)

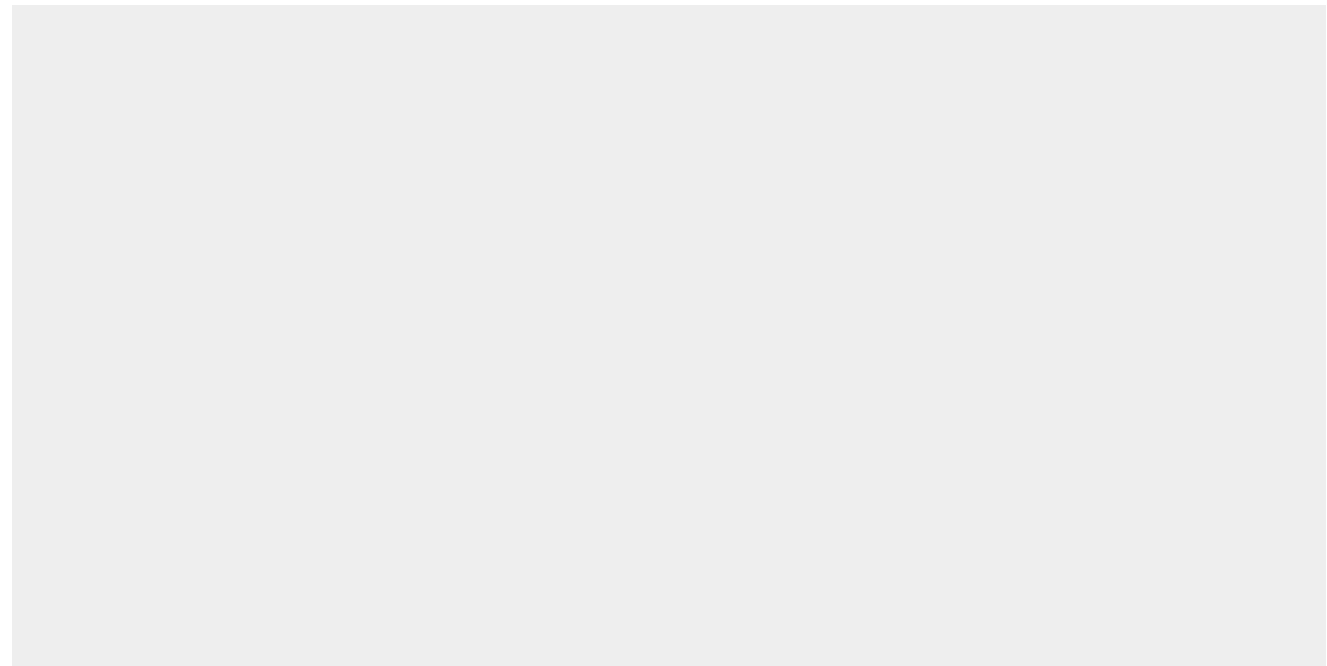
Keyword	Specifies...	Default value	Must be customized
	information about the Job Brokering Definition Console, see the online help.		
trustStore.path	The path to the WebSphere® Application Server trustStore file (this file must be copied to this local path from the WebSphere® Application Server instance).	TWA_home/TWS/JavaExt/cfg/DummyClientTrustFile	You can change the path (TWA_home/TWS/JavaExt/cfg), if you copy the trustStore path from the external WebSphere® Application Server to this path.
trustStore.password	The password for the WebSphere® Application Server trustStore file.	WebAs	Yes

The logging.properties file

About this task

The path to this file is *TWA_home/TWS/JavaExt/cfg/logging.properties* (*TWA_home\TWS\JavaExt\cfg\logging.properties*) on the agent.

After installation, this file is as follows:




```
# Set the default logging level for the logger named com.mycompany
com.ibm.scheduling = INFO
```

You can customize:

- The logging level (from INFO to WARNING, ERROR, or ALL) in the following keywords:

.level

Defines the logging level for the internal logger.

com.ibm.scheduling

Defines the logging level for the job types with advanced options. To log information about job types with advanced options, set this keyword to ALL.

- The path where the logs are written, specified by the following keyword:

java.util.logging.FileHandler.pattern

The soap.client.props file

About this task

The path to this file is as follows:

Windows On Windows operating systems

<TWA_home>\TWS\JavaExt\cfg\soap.client.props

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

<TWA_DATA_DIR>/JavaExt/cfg/soap.client.props

After installation, this file is as follows:

```
# stdin: prompt in command window
# prompt: GUI dialog box; falls back to stdin if GUI not allowed
#
# (So to disable auto prompting, set loginSource to nothing)
#-----
com.ibm.SOAP.loginSource=prompt

#-----
# SOAP Request Timeout
#
# - timeout (specified in seconds [default 180], 0 implies no timeout)
#
#-----
com.ibm.SOAP.requestTimeout=180

#-----
# SSL configuration alias referenced in ssl.client.props
#-----
com.ibm.ssl.alias=DefaultSSLSettings
```

If you want to enable SOAP client security, you must:

1. Change `com.ibm.SOAP.securityEnabled` to `true`
2. Customize:
 - `com.ibm.SOAP.loginUserId` with the true WebSphere Application Server Liberty administrator user ID.
 - `com.ibm.SOAP.loginPassword` with the true WebSphere Application Server Liberty administrator password in {xor} encrypted format. For further details about encrypting and decrypting passwords in xor format, see the documentation, for example [WebSphere {xor} password decoder and encoder](#).

Configuring the J2EE Job Executor Agent

About this task

To set up the environment on the external WebSphere® Application Server, Version 7.0 for the J2EE Job Executor Agent, do the following:

Create a Service Integration Bus

1. Open the WebSphere® Administrative Console (for example, `http://localhost:9060/admin`, depending on the admin port you configured).
2. Expand **Service Integration** and select **Buses**. The Buses window is displayed.
3. Click **New** to display the Buses configuration window.
4. Type a name for the new bus, for example **MyBus** and click **Next** and then **Finish** to confirm.
5. Click the MyBus name and the MyBus properties are displayed.
6. Under Topology, click **Bus Members**. The Buses→MyBus→Bus members window is displayed.
7. Click **Add**, select the **Server** radio button, choose **your_application_server_name**, click **Next**, and then click **Finish**.
8. When the Confirm the addition of a new bus member panel is displayed, click **Finish**.
9. Select **Service Integration** → **Buses** → **MyBus** → **Destinations** → **New**.

10. Select **Queue** as the type and click **Next**
11. Type **BusQueue** as the identifier and assign the queue to a bus member. Click **Next**. In the confirmation panel click **Finish**.

Configure the Default Messaging Service

1. From the left panel of the WebSphere® Administrative Console, expand **Resources** → **JMS** → **JMS Providers**, then click **Default messaging** at the server level as scope.
2. In the **Connection Factories** section, click **New**.
3. On the New JMS connection factory window, type in the following fields:

Name

MyCF

JNDI name

jms/MyCF

Bus name

MyBus

Provider endpoints

<hostname>:<Basic SIB port number>:BootstrapBasicMessaging;<hostname>:<Secure SIB port number>:BootstrapSecureMessaging

4. Select again **Resources** → **JMS** → **JMS Providers** → **Default Messaging** at the server level as scope, locate the section **Destinations**, and click **Queues**. Click **New** and type in the following fields as shown:

Name=MyQueue

JNDI name=jms/MyQueue

Bus name=MyBus

Queue name=BusQueue

Click **Ok**.

5. Select again **Resources** → **JMS** → **JMS Providers** → **Default Messaging** at the server level as scope, and locate the section **Activation Specifications**.

6. Click **JMS activation specification**. Click **New** and type in the following fields as shown:

Name=MyActSpec

JNDI name=eis/MyActSpec

Bus name=MyBus

Destination type=Queue

Destination JNDI name=jms/MyQueue

Click **Ok**.

Configure the Java security

1. Select **Security → Secure Administration, applications and infrastructure**.
2. Locate the **Authentication** section, expand the **Java Authentication and Authorization Service**, and click **J2C authentication data**.
3. Click **New** and type in the following fields as shown:
Alias=*usr*
User ID=*usr*
Password=*pwd*
where *usr* is the user ID authenticated when using connector security and *pwd* is the related password.
4. Click **Ok**.

Create an XA DataSource

1. In the left pane, go to **Resources → JDBC . . → JDBCProviders**. In the resulting right pane, check that the scope is pointing to **your_application_server_name**.
2. Locate the **DERBY JDBC Provider (XA)** entry and click it.
3. Locate the **Additional Properties** section and click **Data Sources**.
4. Click **New** and type in the following fields as shown:
Name = MyScheduler XA DataSource
JNDI name = jdbc/SchedulerXADS
Database name = \${USER_INSTALL_ROOT}/databases/Schedulers/\${SERVER}/SchedulerDB;create=true
5. At the top of the page, click **Test connection button**.
6. Even if you get a negative result, modify the **Database name** field, deleting the part ; create=true. Click **Ok**.

Create a WorkManager

1. In the left pane, go to **Resources → Asynchronous beans → Work managers** and click **New**.
2. type in the following fields as shown:
Name=SchedulerWM
JNDI name=wm/SchedulerWM
3. Click **Ok**.

Create and configure a scheduler

1. In the left pane, go to **Resources → Schedulers** and click **New**.
2. type in the following fields as shown:
Name=MyScheduler
JNDI name=sch/MyScheduler
Data source JNDI name=jdbc/SchedulerXADS
Table prefix=MYSCHED
Work managers JNDI name=wm/SchedulerWM
3. Click **Ok**.
4. Select **MyScheduler** and click **Create tables**.
5. Deploy the test application.

Security order of precedence used for running J2EE tasks

There are three ways of verifying that a task runs with the correct user credentials. Tasks run with specified security credentials using the following methods:

1. Java™ Authentication and Authorization Service (JAAS) security context on the thread when the task was created.
2. `setAuthenticationAlias` method on the `TaskInfo` object.
3. A specified security identity on a `BeanTaskInfo` task `TaskHandler` EJB method.

The authentication methods are performed in the order listed above, so that if an authentication method succeeds, the following checks are ignored. This means that the `usr` and `pwd` credentials defined in **Configure the Java™ security** take precedence over any credentials specified in the tasks themselves.

Configuring to schedule job types with advanced options

About this task

You can define job types with advanced options by using the related configuration files. The options you define in the configuration files apply to all job types with advanced options of the same type. You can override these options when defining the job by using the Dynamic Workload Console or, if you are in a distributed environment, the **composer** command.

Configuration files are available on each dynamic agent in `TWA_home/TWS/JavaExt/cfg` for the following job types with advanced options:

Table 20. Configuration files for job types with advanced options

Job type	File name	Keyword
• Database job type • MSSQL Job	DatabaseJobExecutor.properties	Use the <code>jdbcDriversPath</code> keyword to specify the path to the JDBC drivers. Define the keyword so that it points to the JDBC jar files directory, for example: <pre>jdbcDriversPath=c:\\mydir\\jars\\jdbc</pre> The JDBC jar files must be located in the specified directory or its subdirectories. Ensure you have list permissions on the directory and its sub subdirectories.  Note: For the MSSQL database, use version 4 of the JDBC drivers.
Java™ job type	JavaJobExecutor.properties	Use the <code>jarPath</code> keyword to specify the path to the directory where the jar files are stored.

Table 20. Configuration files for job types with advanced options (continued)

Job type	File name	Keyword
		This includes all jar files stored in the specified directory and all sub directories.
J2EE job type	J2EEJobExecutorConfig.properties	For more information about the J2EE job type, see the topic about configuring to schedule J2EE jobs in the <i>IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide</i> .

Configuring security roles for users and groups

The dynamic workload broker provides a command for managing resources:

resource

to create, modify, associate, query, or set resources online or offline. For more information, see the section about the resource command in *User's Guide and Reference*.

At master domain manager installation time, the `broker_role_mapping.xml` template is created to configure in WebSphere Application Server Liberty the users and groups authorized to use the dynamic workload broker commands. For the configuration procedure, see [Mapping security roles to users and groups in WebSphere Application Server Liberty on page 122](#).

Mapping security roles to users and groups in WebSphere Application Server Liberty

About this task

When the dynamic workload broker instance is installed on your master domain manager, corresponding roles are set up in WebSphere Application Server Liberty. By default, these roles are not used. However, the authorization required to perform any tasks is always validated by WebSphere Application Server Liberty. Users are required to provide credentials for managing resources and job definitions using the resource and jobstore commands. These credentials correspond to existing users defined in the domain user registry or the LDAP server.

To allow users and groups to access the dynamic workload broker functions, they must be mapped to the security roles in WebSphere Application Server Liberty. This mapping allows those users and groups to access applications defined by the role. At installation time, the IBM® Workload Scheduler administrative user (**wauser**) is assigned the **Administrator** role in WebSphere Application Server Liberty. The following roles are also created but they are not assigned to any users nor groups:

Operator

Monitors and controls the jobs submitted.

Administrator

Manages the scheduling infrastructure.

Submitter

Manages the submission of their own jobs and monitors and controls the job lifecycle. This is the typical role for an IBM Workload Scheduler user.

IBM Workload Scheduler acts as submitter of jobs to the IBM Workload Scheduler dynamic agent.

Configurator

Is the entity responsible for running the jobs on a local environment.

To map security roles to users and groups on the WebSphere Application Server Liberty, edit the `broker_role_mapping.xml` file located in `<Liberty_installation_directory>/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins`.

You can edit the file to associate users and groups to the **Operator**, **Administrator**, **Developer**, or **Submitter** roles, as follows:

1. Copy the template file from the `templates` folder to a working folder.
2. Edit the template file in the working folder with the desired configuration.
3. Optionally, create a backup copy of the relevant configuration file present in the `overrides` directory in a different directory. Ensure you do not copy the backup file in the path where the template files are located.
4. Copy the updated template file to the `overrides` folder. Maintaining the original folder structure is not required.
5. Changes are effective immediately.

To enable all users to use the dynamic workload broker commands, remove the comment from the `special-subject` string, otherwise, specify the list of users or groups for each role.

Examples

In the following example, the **Operator** role is associated to user **user1**, the **Submitter** role is associated to all users belonging to **group1**, and the **Configurator** role is associated to all users authenticated by the server:

```
<server>
  <enterpriseApplication id="SchedulerEAR">
    <application-bnd>
      <security-role id="adminRole" name="Administrator">
        <user access-id="{user.twsuser.id}" name="{user.twsuser.id}" />
        <run-as userid="{user.twsuser.id}" password="{user.twsuser.password}"/>
      </security-role>
      <security-role id="operatorRole" name="Operator">
        <user name=?user1?/>
      </security-role>
      <security-role id="submitterRole" name="Submitter">
        <group name=?group1?/>
      </security-role>
      <security-role id="configuratorRole" name="Configurator">
        <special-subject type="ALL_AUTHENTICATED_USERS"/>
      </security-role>
    </application-bnd>
  </enterpriseApplication>
</server>
```

```
</enterpriseApplication>
```

broker_role_mapping.xml file

Example

```
<server>
  <enterpriseApplication id="SchedulerEAR">
    <application-bnd>
      <security-role id="adminRole" name="Administrator">
        <user access-id="${user.twsuser.id}" name="${user.twsuser.id}" />
        <run-as userid="${user.twsuser.id}" password="${user.twsuser.password}"/>

      </security-role>
      <security-role id="operatorRole" name="Operator">

      </security-role>
      <security-role id="submitterRole" name="Submitter">

      </security-role>
      <security-role id="configuratorRole" name="Configurator">

      </security-role>
    </application-bnd>
  </enterpriseApplication>
```

Configuring command-line client access authentication

This section describes how to reconfigure the connection used by the command line client.

The command line client is installed automatically on the master domain manager and on fault-tolerant agents. On the master domain manager you use it to run all of the commands and utilities.

On any other workstation you use it to run one of the following commands:

- **composer**
- **conman**
- **evtdef**
- **logman**
- **optman**
- **planman**
- **sendevent**
- **wappman**

It is configured automatically by the installation process, but if you need to change the credentials that give access to the server on the master domain manager, or you want to use it to access a different master domain manager, modify the **connection parameters** as described in [Connection parameters on page 125](#).



Note:



1. The **connection parameters** are not required to use the local **conman** program on a fault-tolerant agent.
2. The command-line client on the master domain manager uses exactly the same mechanism to communicate with the server as it does when it is installed remotely.

Connection parameters

About this task

The connection parameters can be provided in one of three ways:

Define them as local options in the `localopts` file

All fields except `username` and `password`, can be defined by editing the `TWA_home/TWS/localopts` properties file on the computer from which the access is required. See [Setting local options on page 48](#) for a full description of the file and the properties.

In `localopts` there is a section for the general connection properties, which contains the following:

```
host = host_name
protocol = protocol
port = port number
proxy = proxy server
proxyport = proxy server port number
timeout = seconds
defaultws = master_workstation
useropts = useropts_file
```

In addition, there is a separate set of SSL parameters:

```
CLI SSL server auth = yes|no
CLI SSL cipher = cipher_class
CLI SSL server certificate =certificate_file_name
CLI SSL trusted dir =trusted_directory
```

Store some or all of them as user options in the `useropts` file

As a minimum, the `username` and `password` parameters can be defined in the `user_home/.TWS/useropts` file for the user who needs to make the connection. Also, if you need to personalize for a user any of the properties normally found in the `localopts` file, add the properties to the `useropts` file. The values in the `useropts` file always take precedence over those in the `localopts` file.

The minimum set of properties you would find in `useropts` is as follows:

```
username=user_ID
password=password
```

You can also add the JWT in the `useropts` file. See [Setting user options on page 70](#) for a full description of the file and the properties.

Supply them when you use the command

When you use any of the commands you can add one or more of the connection parameters to the command string. These parameters take precedence over the parameters in `localopts` and `useropts`. This allows you, for

example, to keep the parameters in the **localopts** file and just get users to supply the **username** and **password** parameters when they use one of the commands, avoiding the necessity to store this data in the **useropts** file for each user..

The parameters can either be supplied fully or partially in a file, to which you refer in the command string, or typed directly as part of the command string. The full syntax is as follows:

```
[-file <parameter_file>
|
-host <host_name>]
-port <port_number>]
-protocol {http|https}]
-proxy <proxy_name>]
-proxyport <proxy_port_number>]
-jwt JSON Web Token]
-username <username>]
-password <user_password>]
-timeout <timeout>]
```

-file <parameter_file>

A file containing one or more of the connection parameters. Parameters in the file are superseded if the corresponding parameter is explicitly typed in the command.

-host <host_name>

The host name or IP address of the master domain manager to which you want to connect.

-port <port_number>

The listening port of the master domain manager to which you want to connect.

-protocol {http|https}

Enter either http or https, depending on whether you want to make a secure connection.

-proxy <proxy_name>

The host name or IP address of the proxy server involved in the connection (if any).

-proxyport <proxy_port_number>

The listening port of the proxy server involved in the connection (if any).

[-jwt JSON Web Token]

Specify the JWT to be used for authentication between the master domain manager and agents. You can retrieve the token from the Dynamic Workload Console. This parameter is mutually exclusive with the **username** and **password** parameters. The JWT authentication applies to the commands you launch in the shell where you specify the JWT.

You can use JWT when running the following commands:

- composer
- conman
- wappman

[-username *user_name*]

An IBM Workload Scheduler user with sufficient privileges to perform the operation. This parameter is mutually exclusive with the **jwt** parameter.

[-password *password*]

The password of the IBM Workload Scheduler user. This parameter is mutually exclusive with the **jwt** parameter.

-timeout <*timeout*>

The number of seconds the command line client is to wait to make the connection before giving a timeout error.

**Note:**

From the command line, neither the default workstation, nor the command line client SSL parameters can be supplied. These must always be supplied in either the `localopts` (see [Setting local options on page 48](#)) or the `useropts` file for the user (see [Setting user options on page 70](#)).

For monitoring commands, such as **conman showjobs**, **conman showresources**, and so on, IBM® Workload Scheduler uses the connection parameters of the user logged on to the computer

The command line client needs to assemble a full set of parameters, and it does so as follows:

1. First it looks for values supplied as parameters to the command
2. Then, for any parameters it still requires, it looks for parameters supplied in the file identified by the `-file` parameter
3. Then, for any parameters it still requires, it looks in the `useropts` file for the user
4. Finally, for any parameters it still requires, it looks in the `localopts` file

If a setting for a parameter is not specified in any of these places an error is displayed.

Entering passwords

About this task

Password security is handled as follows:

Password entered in `useropts` file

You type the connection password into the `useropts` file in unencrypted form. When you access the interface for the first time it is encrypted. This is the preferred method.

Password entered in the parameter file used by the command

You type the connection password into the parameter file in unencrypted form. It is not encrypted by using the command. Delete the file after use to ensure password security.

Password entered using the `-password` parameter in the command

You type the password in the command string in unencrypted form. It remains visible in the command window until you clear the command window contents.



Note: On Windows™ workstations, when you specify a password that contains double quotation marks (") or other special characters, make sure that the character is escaped. For example, if your password is `tw$11"tws`, write it as `"tw$11\"tws"` in `useropts`.

An active-active high availability scenario

Implement active-active high availability between the Dynamic Workload Console and the master domain manager so that a switch to a backup is transparent to Dynamic Workload Console users.

Use a load balancer between the Dynamic Workload Console servers and the master domain manager so that in the event the master needs to switch to a backup, the switch is transparent to console users.

Configure the master domain manager and backup master domain managers behind a second load balancer so that the workload is balanced across all backup master domain managers and the master domain manager. Load balancing distributes workload requests across all configured nodes to avoid any single node from being overloaded and avoids a single point of failure.

You might already have installed and configured a number of backup master domain managers, in addition to your master domain manager, that you use for dedicated operations and to alleviate the load on the master domain manager. For example, you might have one dedicated to monitoring activities, another for event management, and perhaps your scheduling activities are run on the master domain manager. Administrators must create engine connections for each of these and users have to switch between engines to run dedicated operations. Should one of them go down, users need to be notified about which engine to use as a replacement and switch to the replacement engine.

To simplify this, configure a load balancer in front of the master domain manager and backup master domain managers so that users are unaware of when a switch occurs and administrators configure a single engine connection in single-sign on that points to the name or IP address and port number of the load balancer and not ever need to know the hostname of the current active master. The load balancer monitors the engine nodes and takes over the task of balancing the workload and the switch to a backup master domain manager is completely transparent to console instance users. Any backup master domain manager can satisfy HTTP requests, even those that can be satisfied only by the active master, such as requests on the plan, because the requests are proxied to and from the active master.

To complete the picture of a full high availability IBM® Workload Scheduler environment, the RDBMS and the Dynamic Workload Console need to be configured in high availability. If your RDBMS includes a high availability disaster recovery (HADR) feature and it is enabled, you can configure the `datasource.xml` file on the WebSphere Application Server Liberty server of the master and backup components to add failover properties. The key-value pairs to set depend on your specific RDBMS. As an example, Db2®'s datasource can be configured with the following set of properties in the XML element named **properties.db2.jcc**:

```
<properties.db2.jcc
  databaseName="TWS"
```

```

user="..."
password="..."
serverName="MyMaster"
portNumber="50000"
clientRerouteAlternateServerName="MyBackup"
clientRerouteAlternatePortNumber="50000"
retryIntervalForClientReroute="3000"
maxRetriesForClientReroute="100"
/>

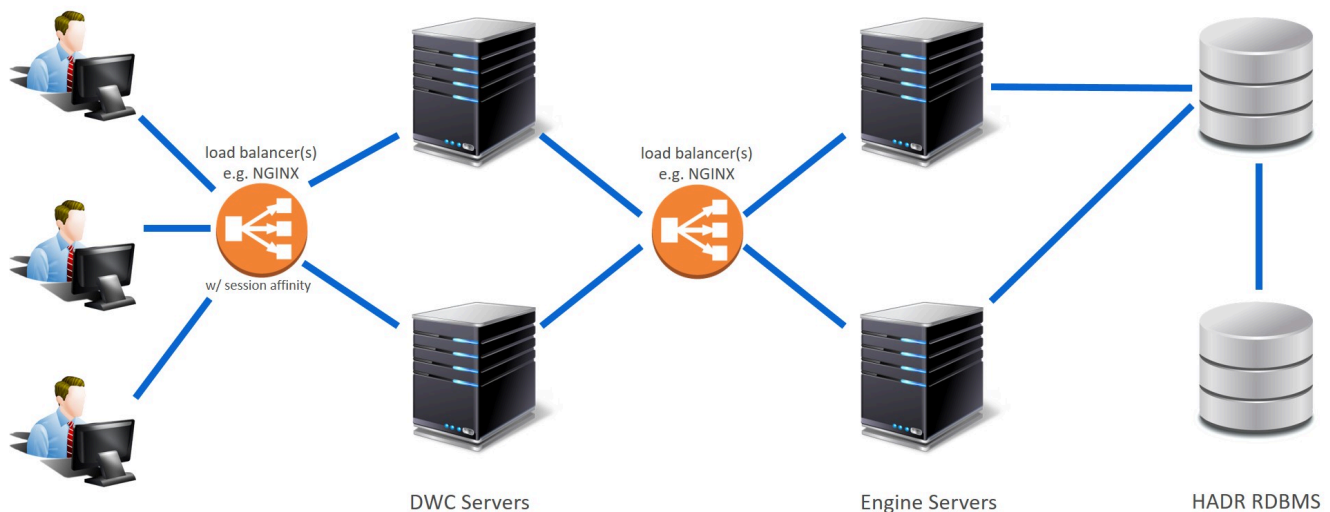
```

For the Dynamic Workload Console, replicate it, and link the consoles to a load balancer that supports session affinity so that requests related to the same user session are dispatched to the same console instance.



Note: If your environment includes the IBM Workload Scheduler Agent for z/OS to schedule jobs (JCL) on the JES2 subsystem of z/OS, ensure that the value for the **host.bootstrap.port.sec** parameter specified in the `ports_variables.xml` file is the same on every workstation hosting the Dynamic Workload Console component in your environment. For more information about the location of the `ports_variables.xml` file, see [Configuring IBM Workload Scheduler using templates on page 648](#).

The following is a sample of the high-level architecture of an active-active high availability system with two load balancers Figure 1. And end-to-end environment configured for high availability



This environment configuration offers numerous benefits:

High availability

The load balancer monitors the nodes and takes care of balancing the workload across the nodes, eliminating the possibility of a node creating a single point of failure.

Scalability

As client requests increase, you can add additional backup master domain manager nodes to the configuration to support the increased workload.

User-friendly

Users are unaware of when a switch occurs to a different node. Administrators do not have to worry about creating new engine connections to run workloads on a different node.

Low overhead

This configuration does not require any manual intervention when nodes become unavailable. Additional flexibility is provided to console instance users who no longer have to run certain operations on dedicated nodes.

Optimization of hardware

Load balancing distributes session requests across multiple servers thereby utilizing hardware resources equally.



Note: When there are multiple Dynamic Workload Console servers connected to a load balancer and one of the servers becomes unavailable, load balancing takes place automatically, however, console users need to perform a page refresh and reopen any tabbed pages that were previously opened.

The following is intended to be a high-level view of the steps required to implement a scenario of this kind. It is an example and is not meant to be a verified procedure.

1. Install a load balancer on a workstation either within the IBM® Workload Scheduler environment or external to the environment. Ports must be open between the load balancer and the Dynamic Workload Console nodes and the engine nodes.
2. Configure multiple Dynamic Workload Console instances in a cluster where the consoles share the same repository settings and a load balancer takes care of dispatching and redirecting connections among the nodes in the cluster. The load balancer must support **session affinity**. See the topic about configuring high availability across multiple Dynamic Workload Console nodes.
3. Exchange certificates between the load balancer and the Dynamic Workload Console and between the second load balancer and the master domain manager and backup master domain manager nodes.
4. Configure the load balancer configuration file with details about the Dynamic Workload Console, master domain manager, and backup master domain managers. The configuration file indicates which nodes (Dynamic Workload Console, master domain manager, and backup master domain managers) are available and the routes to be used to dispatch client calls to the Dynamic Workload Console server nodes.
5. Configure an engine connection that points to the name or IP address of the load balancer, and specify the incoming port number to the load balancer that corresponds to the outgoing port number to the master (default port number 31116). The load balancer must point to the HTTPS of the Dynamic Workload Console and the HTTPS of the master domain manager.
6. Configure an RDBMS in high availability and enable the HADR feature.
7. To configure the Dynamic Workload Console nodes in a cluster behind the load balancer, modify the `ports_config.xml` file as follows:

```
<httpEndpoint host="${httpEndpoint.host}" httpPort="${host.http.port}" httpsPort="${host.https.port}"
  id="defaultHttpEndpoint">
  <httpOptions removeServerHeader="true"/>
```

```
<remoteIp useRemoteIpInAccessLog="true"/>
</httpEndpoint>
```

This solution requires a load balancer that supports session affinity. Nginx is an example of a load balancer of this kind. The following is an abstract from a configuration file for an Nginx load balancer that demonstrates the configuration settings necessary to implement the high availability use case depicted in [Figure 1: And end-to-end environment configured for high availability on page 129](#).

```
user  nginx;
worker_processes  10;  ## Default: 1
worker_rlimit_nofile 8192;

error_log  /var/log/nginx/error.log warn;
pid        /var/run/nginx.pid;

events {
    worker_connections  4096;  ## Default: 1024
}

http {
    include        /etc/nginx/mime.types;
    default_type   application/octet-stream;

    log_format  main  '$remote_addr - $remote_user [$time_local] "$request" '
                      '$status $body_bytes_sent "$http_referer" '
                      '"$http_user_agent" "$http_x_forwarded_for"';

    access_log  /var/log/nginx/access.log  main;

    sendfile    on;

    keepalive_timeout  65;

    upstream wa_console { ##DWC configuration
        ip_hash;
        server  DWC1_HOSTNAME:DWC1_PORT max_fails=3 fail_timeout=300s;
        server  DWC2_HOSTNAME:DWC2_PORT max_fails=3 fail_timeout=300s;
        keepalive 32;
    }

    upstream wa_server_backend_https {
        server  MDM1_HOSTNAME:MDM1_PORT weight=1;
        server  MDM2_HOSTNAME:MDM2_PORT weight=1;
    }

    server{
```

```

listen          443 ssl;

ssl_certificate /etc/nginx/certs/nginx.crt;
ssl_certificate_key /etc/nginx/certs/nginxkey.key;
ssl_trusted_certificate /etc/nginx/certs/ca-certs.crt;
location /
{
    proxy_pass https://wa_console;
    proxy_cache off;

    proxy_set_header Host $host;

    proxy_set_header Forwarded " $proxy_add_x_forwarded_for;proto=$scheme";
    proxy_set_header X-Real-IP $remote_addr;
    proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-For $proxy_add_x_forwarded_for;
    proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-Proto $scheme;
    proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-Host $host;
    proxy_set_header X-Real-IP $remote_addr;
    proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-Port 443;
}
}

server{
    listen          9443 ssl;

    ssl_certificate /etc/nginx/certs/nginx.crt;
    ssl_certificate_key /etc/nginx/certs/nginxkey.key;
    ssl_trusted_certificate /etc/nginx/certs/ca-certs.crt;
    location /
    {
        proxy_pass https://wa_server_backend_https;
        proxy_cache off;
        proxy_set_header Host $host;
        proxy_set_header X-Real-IP $remote_addr;
        proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-For $proxy_add_x_forwarded_for;
        proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-Proto $scheme;
        proxy_set_header X-Forwarded-Host $host;
        proxy_set_header X-Real-IP $remote_addr;

        proxy_set_header Connection "close";
    }
}
}

```

where:

DWCx_HOSTNAME:DWCx_PORT

is the address of the Dynamic Workload Console.

MDMx_HOSTNAME:MDMx_PORT

is the address of the master domain manager.

IBM Workload Scheduler console messages and prompts

The IBM Workload Scheduler control processes (Netman, Mailman, Batchman, Jobman, and Writer) write their status messages (referred to as console messages) to standard list files. These messages include the prompts used as job and Job Scheduler dependencies. On UNIX® and Linux® operating systems, the messages can also be directed to the **syslog** daemon (**syslogd**) and to a terminal running the IBM Workload Scheduler console manager. These features are described in the following sections.

Setting sysloglocal on UNIX™

About this task

If you set **sysloglocal** in the local options file to a positive number, IBM Workload Scheduler's control processes send their console and prompt messages to the **syslog** daemon. Setting it to **-1** turns this feature off. If you set it to a positive number to enable system logging, you must also set the local option **stdlistwidth** to **0**, or a negative number.

IBM Workload Scheduler's console messages correspond to the following **syslog** levels:

LOG_ERR

Error messages such as control process abends and file system errors.

LOG_WARNING

Warning messages such as link errors and stuck job streams.

LOG_NOTICE

Special messages such as prompts and tellops.

LOG_INFO

Informative messages such as job launches and job and Job Scheduler state changes.

Setting **sysloglocal** to a positive number defines the syslog facility used by IBM Workload Scheduler. For example, specifying **4** tells IBM Workload Scheduler to use the local facility LOCAL4. After doing this, you must make the appropriate entries in the **/etc/syslog.conf** file, and reconfigure the syslog daemon. To use LOCAL4 and have the IBM Workload Scheduler messages sent to the system console, enter the following line in **/etc/syslog.conf**:

```
local4    /dev/console
```

To have the IBM Workload Scheduler error messages sent to the **maestro** and **root** users, enter the following command:

```
local4.err    maestro,root
```

The selector and action fields must be separated by at least one tab. After modifying **/etc/syslog.conf**, you can configure the **syslog** daemon by entering the following command:

```
kill -HUP `cat /etc/syslog.pid`
```

console command

About this task

You can use the `conman` **console** command to set the IBM Workload Scheduler message level and to direct the messages to your terminal. The message level setting affects only Batchman and Mailman messages, which are the most numerous. It also sets the level of messages written to the standard list file or files and the **syslog** daemon. The following command, for example, sets the level of Batchman and Mailman messages to **2** and sends the messages to your computer:

```
console sess;level=2
```

Messages are sent to your computer until you either run another **console** command, or exit `conman`. To stop sending messages to your terminal, enter the following `conman` command:

```
console sys
```

Automatic encryption for key product files

Key product files, such as the Symphony file, are automatically encrypted for all fresh installations using AES-256 or AES-128 cryptography starting from version 10.1.

Data breaches are becoming more and more common and pervasive in today's business world. Encryption is a key feature when it comes to protect sensitive data, such as the data at rest stored in your Symphony plan or message queues. For this reason, all fresh installations starting from this release automatically encrypt key product files using AES-256 or AES-128 cryptography.

Data at rest means data is not being accessed or used but instead stored on your computer, external hard drive, cloud storage, server, or database. Encryption at rest ensures that this data is protected and encrypted.

If you want IBM® Workload Scheduler to encrypt files such as the Symphony file, messages queues, and the `useropts` file at runtime, you do not need to take any actions. By default, the product is automatically encrypted without your intervention. You can also define the folder containing the certificates and the certificates password using the **sslpassword** and **sslkeysfolder** parameters when installing the master domain manager and agents, both fault-tolerant agents and dynamic agents.

The following IBM® Workload Scheduler elements are automatically encrypted:

- Symphony file
- messages queues
- `useropts` file
- `jmJobTableDir` directory on dynamic agents

You can also optionally encrypt the following IBM® Workload Scheduler elements:

- SAP (r3batch) options file
- PeopleSoft options file
- secure command if you set the **useaeskeystore** argument. For more information, see the topic about the secure command in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

Information about encryption keys is stored in the following `localopts` properties:

encrypt keystore file *file_name*

The path to the keystore PKCS12 file, containing the AES-256 or AES-128 key. The keystore is created automatically at installation time and the related path is inserted in this parameter. If you want to use a different keystore, you can create it and add the path in this option.

encrypt keystore pwd *password*

The path to the keystore stash file.

encrypt label

The label of the key in the keystore. When you modify a key label for key rotation, store the previous label in the **decrypt label list** property, so it can be retrieved if it is still used in the product. This property is case insensitive.

decrypt label list

The list of previously used aliases for key encryption. When you modify a key alias for key rotation, store the previous alias in this property. This storage method is useful if the obsolete key is still used in the product. Separate each value with a comma ",". Note that this property is commented. This property is case insensitive.

For more information about the `localopts` file, see [Setting local options on page 48](#).

For more information about rotating the keys, see [Encryption key rotation on page 135](#).

Encryption key rotation

Procedure to perform a key rotation.

About this task

You can optionally modify the existing encryption keys by performing a key rotation, for example if the existing keys expire or are no longer secure. Perform the following steps on the master domain manager and on each agent in the environment

1. Generate a new key by running the following keytool command:

```
./keytool -genseckey -alias new_alias_name -keyalg AES -keysize 256
-storepass encrypt_keystore_pwd_in_clear -storetype PKCS12 -keystore encrypt_keystore_file
```

2. Change the `localopts` file as follows:
 - a. Add the previous value of the **encrypt label** parameter to the **decrypt label list** parameter.
 - b. Change the value of the **encrypt label** parameter to *new_alias_name*.

For more information about the `localopts` file, see [Setting local options on page 48](#).

Result

If the keystore does not exist, it is created. If it exists, the new key is added to the keystore.

Results

The current Symphony plan keeps using the previous key. To apply the new setting to the Symphony plan, run a `JnextPlan` command. The message boxes are encrypted immediately and the `useropts` file is encrypted as soon as you save the `localopts` file and launch a CLI command. Key product files are now encrypted with the new key.

Modifying jobmon service rights for Windows™

On Windows™ systems, the IBM Workload Scheduler jobmon service runs in the SYSTEM account with the right **Allow Service to Interact with Desktop** granted to it. You can remove this right for security reasons. However, if you do so, it prevents the service from launching interactive jobs that run in a window on the user's desktop. These jobs will be run, but are not accessible from the desktop or from IBM Workload Scheduler and do not have access to desktop resources. As a result, they may run forever or abend due to lack of resources.

Chapter 2. Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console

This chapter describes how to configure Dynamic Workload Console. It is divided into the following sections:

- [Launching in context with the Dynamic Workload Console on page 137](#)
- [Configuring access to the Dynamic Workload Console on page 146](#)
- [Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console for Single Sign-On on page 150](#)
- [Configuring Dynamic Workload Console to connect to a remote SAP system on page 156](#)
- [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#)
- [Disable the What-if Analysis on page 175](#)
- [Configuring High Availability on page 176](#)
- [Configuring Dynamic Workload Console to view reports on page 176](#)



Note: If, after installing, you have more than one instance of WebSphere Application Server Liberty managing any IBM® Workload Scheduler products, ensure that they share the same LTPA token_keys.

Launching in context with the Dynamic Workload Console

Create a URL to launch the Dynamic Workload Console and have it directly open the results of a particular query.

By accessing the bookmark icon in the page of your interest, you can copy the URL of that page, and then include the copied URL in an external application, for example, to monitor jobs and job streams that are critical to your business, and to quickly and easily manage them.

Open your Dynamic Workload Console pages and access the information you need in just one click.

Launch in context: your environment at your fingertips.

Scenarios

The following main scenarios can be identified:

- Obtain the result of a monitor query on:
 - Jobs
 - Critical jobs
 - Job streams
 - Workstation
 - Workload
 - Existing tasks

For all the scenarios, you must create a basic URL.

Creating a basic URL

About this task

To create a basic URL, you need to define the URL to access the Dynamic Workload Console:

```
https://{WebUIHostname:adminSecurePort}
/console/?pageId=<pageID>
```

where:

WebUIHostname

It is the fully qualified hostname or the IP address of the computer where the Dynamic Workload Console is installed.

adminSecurePort

It is the number of the port on which the Dynamic Workload Console is listening.

pageId

It is the ID of the Dynamic Workload Console page that has to be launched.

Example

```
https://mypc:29443/console/?pageId=manage-roles
```

Advanced optional parameters

Depending on the query whose results you want to view, you can complete your URL with the following parameters:

Mandatory parameters

engineName

Specify the name of one or more engines to be used as filter.

objectType

Specify an object type as filter. The following are the supported object types in the Dynamic Workload Console:

- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobStreamInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.CriticalJobInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.WorkstationInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.PromptInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.ResourceInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.DomainInPlan

plan

Specify a plan name as filter.

query

Specify a query to filter the results.



Note: Special characters must be replaced by encoded values. For example, # (number sign) must be replaced by %23, + (plus sign) must be replaced by %2B.

Example

A query like @!@.@+state=#Waiting must be written like this:

```
@!@.@%2Bstate=%23Waiting
```

Optional parameters

columns

Specify the columns that you want to display in your result table. The following three options are available:

ALL

Display all columns.

DEFAULT

Display only the default columns.

Customized columns

Display the customized column to get a specific column result. For example,

```
"columns": "Status, Internal Status".
```

If not specified, the default columns for this query are shown.

encrypt

Specify if you want to encrypt or not the engine name parameter. If true, the engine name has to be encrypted by using Base64 encode.

taskName

Specify the name of an existing task as filter.



Note: it is not recommended to specify both the taskName and query parameters in the URL. If both parameters are specified, the taskName parameter has the priority.

Monitor Jobs on distributed systems

The following is an example of URL to be launched to directly open the Monitor Workload page and obtain results about jobs on distributed systems.

To create a URL to monitor jobs on a distributed system, specify the following filters:

engineName

Specify the name of one or more engines to be used as filter.

objectType

Specify an object type as filter. The following are the supported object types in the Dynamic Workload Console:

- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobStreamInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.CriticalJobInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.WorkstationInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.PromptInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.ResourceInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.DomainInPlan

plan

Specify a plan name as filter.

query

Specify a query to filter the results.



Note: Special characters must be replaced by encoded values. For example, # (number sign) must be replaced by %23, + (plus sign) must be replaced by %2B.

Example

A query like `@!@.@+state=#Waiting` must be written like this: `@!@.@%2Bstate=%23Waiting`

columns

Specify the columns that you want to display in your result table. The following three options are available:

ALL

Display all columns.

DEFAULT

Display only the default columns.

Customized columns

Display the customized column to get a specific column result. For example, `"columns": "Status, Internal Status"`.

If not specified, the default columns for this query are shown.

encrypt

Specify if you want to encrypt or not the engine name parameter. If true, the engine name has to be encrypted by using Base64 encode.

Example:

```
https://mypc:9449/console?pageId=direct-query&properties={"query": "%2F%40%2F%40%23%2F%40%2F%40.%40", "engineName": "eJxzzUvPzEs1BAAKagKI", "encrypt": true, "plan": "current-plan", "objectType": "com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobInPlan"}
```



```
, "columns": "Status, Internal Status, Folder (Job Stream), Job, Job Type, Workstation (Job), Job Stream, Workstation (Job Stream), Scheduled Time, Not Satisfied Dependencies, Priority, Job number, Earliest Start, Actual Start, Deadline" }
```

Monitor Jobs on z/OS® systems

The following is an example of URL to be launched to directly open the Monitor Workload page and obtain results about jobs on z/OS® systems.

To create a URL to monitor jobs on a z/OS® system, specify the following filters:

engineName

Specify the name of one or more engines to be used as filter.

objectType

Specify an object type as filter. The following are the supported object types in the Dynamic Workload Console:

- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobStreamInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.CriticalJobInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.WorkstationInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.PromptInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.ResourceInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.DomainInPlan

plan

Specify a plan name as filter.

query

Specify a query to filter the results.



Note: Special characters must be replaced by encoded values. For example, # (number sign) must be replaced by %23, + (plus sign) must be replaced by %2B.

Example

A query like `@!@.@+state=#Waiting` must be written like this: `@!@.@%2Bstate=%23Waiting`

columns

Specify the columns that you want to display in your result table. The following three options are available:

ALL

Display all columns.

DEFAULT

Display only the default columns.

Customized columns

Display the customized column to get a specific column result. For example, `"columns": "Status, Internal Status"`.

If not specified, the default columns for this query are shown.

encrypt

Specify if you want to encrypt or not the engine name parameter. If true, the engine name has to be encrypted by using Base64 encode.

Example:

```
https://
mypc:9449/console?pageId=direct-query&properties={"query": "%40!%40", "engineName": "eJyLyI92zUvPzEsFABGsA5M=", "encrypt": true, "plan": "current plan", "objectType": "com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobInPlan", "columns": "Status, Internal Status, Job Number, Job, Workstation, Job stream, Status Details, Scheduled Time, Job Identifier, Error Code, Time Dependent, Earliest Start, Planned Start, Actual Start, Deadline, Critical"}
```

Monitor Critical Jobs

The following is an example of URL to be launched to directly open the Monitor Workload page and obtain results about critical jobs.

To create a URL to monitor critical jobs, specify the following filters:

engineName

Specify the name of one or more engines to be used as filter.

objectType

Specify an object type as filter. The following are the supported object types in the Dynamic Workload Console:

- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobStreamInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.CriticalJobInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.WorkstationInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.PromptInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.ResourceInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.DomainInPlan

plan

Specify a plan name as filter.

query

Specify a query to filter the results.



Note: Special characters must be replaced by encoded values. For example, # (number sign) must be replaced by %23, + (plus sign) must be replaced by %2B.

**Example**

A query like `@!@.@+state=#Waiting` must be written like this: `@!@.@%2Bstate=%23Waiting`

columns

Specify the columns that you want to display in your result table. The following three options are available:

ALL

Display all columns.

DEFAULT

Display only the default columns.

Customized columns

Display the customized column to get a specific column result. For example, `"columns":`

`"Status, Internal Status".`

If not specified, the default columns for this query are shown.

encrypt

Specify if you want to encrypt or not the engine name parameter. If true, the engine name has to be encrypted by using Base64 encode.

Example:

```
https://mypc:9449/console?pageId=direct-query&properties={"query":"%2F%40%2F%40%23%2F%40%2F%40.%40", "engineName": "eJxzzUvPzEs1BAAKagKI", "encrypt": true, "plan": "current-plan", "objectType": "com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.CriticalJobInPlan", "columns": "Risk level, Confidence Factor, Status, Internal Status, Folder (Job Stream), Job, Job Type, Workstation (Job), Job Stream, Workstation (Job Stream), Scheduled Time, Jobs Left on Critical Path, Critical Path Remaining Duration, Estimated Start, Estimated End, Earliest Start, Actual Start, Deadline, Critical Latest Start"}
```

Monitor Job Streams

The following is an example of URL to be launched to directly open the Monitor Workload page and obtain results about job streams.

To create a URL to monitor job streams, specify the following filters:

engineName

Specify the name of one or more engines to be used as filter.

objectType

Specify an object type as filter. The following are the supported object types in the Dynamic Workload Console:

- `com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobInPlan`
- `com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobStreamInPlan`
- `com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.CriticalJobInPlan`
- `com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.WorkstationInPlan`

- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.PromptInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.ResourceInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.DomainInPlan

plan

Specify a plan name as filter.

query

Specify a query to filter the results.



Note: Special characters must be replaced by encoded values. For example, # (number sign) must be replaced by %23, + (plus sign) must be replaced by %2B.

Example

A query like `@!@.@+state=#Waiting` must be written like this: `@!@.@%2Bstate=%23Waiting`

columns

Specify the columns that you want to display in your result table. The following three options are available:

ALL

Display all columns.

DEFAULT

Display only the default columns.

Customized columns

Display the customized column to get a specific column result. For example, `"columns":`

`"Status, Internal Status".`

If not specified, the default columns for this query are shown.

encrypt

Specify if you want to encrypt or not the engine name parameter. If true, the engine name has to be encrypted by using Base64 encode.

Example:

```
https://mypc:9449/console?pageId=direct-query&properties={"query": "%2F%40%2F%40%23%2F%40%2F%40", "engineName": "eJxzzUvPzEs1BAAKagKI", "encrypt": true, "plan": "current-plan", "objectType": "com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobStreamInPlan", "columns": "Status, Internal Status, Folder, Job Stream, Workstation, Scheduled Time, Not Satisfied Dependencies, Total Jobs, Successful Jobs, Jobs Limit, Priority, Earliest Start, Actual Start, Deadline"}
```

Monitor Workstations

The following is an example of URL to be launched to directly open the Monitor Workload page and obtain results about workstations.

To create a URL to monitor workstations, specify the following filters:

engineName

Specify the name of one or more engines to be used as filter.

objectType

Specify an object type as filter. The following are the supported object types in the Dynamic Workload Console:

- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.JobStreamInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.CriticalJobInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.WorkstationInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.PromptInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.ResourceInPlan
- com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.DomainInPlan

plan

Specify a plan name as filter.

query

Specify a query to filter the results.



Note: Special characters must be replaced by encoded values. For example, # (number sign) must be replaced by %23, + (plus sign) must be replaced by %2B.

Example

A query like `@!@.@+state=#Waiting` must be written like this: `@!@.@%2Bstate=%23Waiting`

columns

Specify the columns that you want to display in your result table. The following three options are available:

ALL

Display all columns.

DEFAULT

Display only the default columns.

Customized columns

Display the customized column to get a specific column result. For example, `"columns":
"Status, Internal Status"`.

If not specified, the default columns for this query are shown.

encrypt

Specify if you want to encrypt or not the engine name parameter. If true, the engine name has to be encrypted by using Base64 encode.

Example:

```
https://mypc:9449/console?pageId=direct-query&properties={"query":"%2F%40%2F%40","engineName":"eJxzzUvPzEs1BAAKagKI","encrypt":true,"plan":"current-plan","objectType":"com.ibm.tws.objects.plan.WorkstationInPlan","columns":["Link Status,Folder,Workstation,Agent Running,Writer Running,Start Time,Run Number,Limit,Domain,Type,Version"]}
```

Existing task

The following is an example of URL to be launched to directly open the Monitor Workload page and obtain results about an existing task.

About this task

To create a URL to monitor an existing task, specify the following filters:

taskName

Specify the name of an existing task as filter.



Note: it is not recommended to specify both the taskName and query parameters in the URL. If both parameters are specified, the taskName parameter has the priority.

Example:

```
https://mypc:9449/console?pageId=direct-query&properties={"taskName":"MyTask"}
```

Configuring access to the Dynamic Workload Console

As soon as you finish installing the Dynamic Workload Console, you can launch it by logging in at the following link:

```
https://<your_ip_address>:9443/console/login.jsp
```

You can access the Dynamic Workload Console from any computer in your environment using a web browser through the secure HTTPS protocol and using the credentials specified at installation time.

By default, the Dynamic Workload Console is configured to use a local file-based user repository. Users defined in the user registry can log in to the Dynamic Workload Console and need to be associated to a role to be able access the Dynamic Workload Console features (see [“Configuring roles to access the Dynamic Workload Console on page 147.”](#))

If you use a central user registry that is based on the Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) to manage users and groups and provide single sign-on, then you can set up an LDAP server and create an LDAP user registry to use with the Dynamic Workload Console. You can implement an LDAP user repository in place of the default file-based user registry by configuring the sample authentication templates provided in XML format. The following are the supported LDAP servers and the corresponding sample template that can be configured to replace the configuration file currently in use:

- File-based: `auth_basicRegistry_config.xml`
- IBM® Directory Server: `auth_IDS_config.xml`
- OpenLDAP: `auth_OpenLDAP_config.xml`
- Windows™ Server Active Directory: `auth_AD_config.xml`

In addition you can also add a line

See [Configuring IBM Workload Scheduler using templates on page 648](#) for more information about the templates and the location.



Note: If two or more instances of Dynamic Workload Console share the same database repository for their settings, but they are not configured to be in a High Availability configuration, they all must be at the same fix pack level.

Configuring a user registry

To use LDAP user registry, users and groups must be created by the system administrator in the chosen LDAP server database.

Configuring user registries for the Dynamic Workload Console and all other IBM Workload Scheduler components is described in Configuring LDAP described in *Planning and Installation Guide*.

Configuring roles to access the Dynamic Workload Console

During the Dynamic Workload Console installation, new predefined roles are created. They determine which console panels are available to a user, and therefore which activities that user can perform from Dynamic Workload Console. More roles can be created and customized according to business needs. For more information about the creation of customized roles, see the section about customizing roles in *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*

Tip

It is not necessary to assign a role to every single user. If the user registry already contains groups of users that are properly defined for using the console, it is possible to assign roles to groups too. If groups are not available in the user registry, then the special role **all authenticated users** can be used to assign roles to *all* the users at once.

To assign roles to a default groups of users that are properly defined for using the console, add this property to the authentication file in use.

```
<jndiEntry jndiName="all.authenticated.users" value="my-group" />
```

Within the Dynamic Workload Console, you can create your own custom views to enable users to see all or a subset of IBM Workload Scheduler pages. To do it, you must have the **Administrator** role and perform the following steps:

1. Open the `authentication_config.xml` located in the following path:

UNIX**On UNIX operating systems**

`DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides`

Windows**On Windows operating systems**

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides`

2. Add the entity specifying username and password in users or groups.
3. Open **Dynamic Workload Console > Administration > Manage Roles**
4. Click `Entities` to associate the user or the group you have created to one of the roles from the list.
5. Add the entity and save.

The following lists the predefined roles created in WebSphere Application Server Liberty for accessing the IBM Workload Scheduler environments using Dynamic Workload Console:

API User

Users in this group can use only the Dynamic Workload Console APIs to perform the available actions. Logging to the Dynamic Workload Console through a Web browser would not give them access to any feature. For more details about the Dynamic Workload Console APIs, see `https://<DWC_hostname>:<port>/dwc/api`.

Administrator

Users with this role can see the entire portfolio and use all features of the Dynamic Workload Console.

Users with this group can also access and use all features of the Self-Service Catalog and the Self-Service Dashboards mobile applications. From the Self-Service Catalog mobile application, these users can create and edit catalogs, create and edit services, add services to catalogs, submit services associated to job streams, and share catalogs and services with other users. From the Self-Service Dashboards mobile application, these users can create and edit dashboards to filter for jobs and workstations, display a dashboard of results, perform recovery actions on a single result.

From the Manage Roles panel, the administrator can add entities, manage pinned pages and shared boards.

Analyst

Users in this group can manage Dynamic Workload Console reports and user preferences.

Broker

Users in this group can define Broker settings, create and manage Broker jobs and resources, and monitor Broker computers and resources.

Developer

Users in this group can create, list, and edit workload definitions, workstations, and event rule definitions in the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

Mobile User

Users in this group can manage the Self-Service Catalog and the Self-Service Dashboards mobile applications but the actions they can perform are limited to submitting service requests (job streams) from the Self-Service Catalog and , from the Self-Service Dashboards mobile application, displaying a dashboard of results and performing recovery actions on them.

Operator

Users in this group can see Dynamic Workload Console:

- All Monitor tasks.
- Jobs and job streams to be submitted on request
- Set User Preferences

The following table lists some entries of the navigation toolbar, and some activities that you can perform on the Dynamic Workload Console. Beside each item, the table shows the groups whose users are authorized to access them.

Table 21. Menu and Group Permissions

Menu Item	Groups with Permission
Quick Start	Administrator
All Configured Tasks	Administrator, Operator
Manage Workload Reports	Administrator, Analyst
Design -> Workload Definitions	Administrator Developer
Planning & Submission -> Workload Forecast	Administrator, Operator
Administration -> Workload Submission	Administrator Operator
Monitoring & Reporting	Administrator, Operator
Design -> Workload Definitions	Administrator
Reporting	Administrator, Analyst

Table 21. Menu and Group Permissions (continued)

Menu Item	Groups with Permission
Security ->Manage Engines	Administrator
Security -> Manage Settings	Administrator
Administration → Broker Settings; Design → Broker Design; Monitoring & Reporting → Broker Monitoring	Administrator, Broker

Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console for Single Sign-On

Single Sign-On (SSO) is a method of access control that allows a user to authenticate once and gain access to the resources of multiple applications sharing the same user registry.

This means that using SSO you can run queries on the plan or manage object definitions on the database accessing the engine without authenticating, automatically using the same credentials you used to log in to the Dynamic Workload Console.

The same is true when working with the Self-Service Catalog and Self-Service Dashboards apps from a mobile device. If the Dynamic Workload Console has been configured to use SSO, then these apps automatically use the same credentials used to log in to the Dynamic Workload Console.

After completing the installation or upgrade, you can set up Single Sign-On (SSO) for the Dynamic Workload Console and master domain manager using either an LTPA registry or a basic user registry. To achieve this, Dynamic Workload Console and master domain manager need to use the same user registry. Additionally, ensure that the contents of the `ltpa.keys` file are identical on both the Dynamic Workload Console and the master domain manager. The `ltpa.keys` file is located in the following path:

```
usr/servers/engineServers/resources/security
```

The Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP) is an application protocol for querying and modifying directory services running over TCP/IP - see the information about configuring a common LDAP for both the master and console in the post-installation section of the *Planning and Installation Guide* for more details.

If you configured Dynamic Workload Console to use Single Sign-On with an engine, then, the following behavior is applied:

If engine connection has the user credentials specified in its definitions

These credentials are used. This behavior regards also engine connections that are shared along with their user credentials.

If the user credentials are not specified in the engine connection

The credentials you specified when logging in to Dynamic Workload Console are used. This behavior regards also shared engine connections having unshared user credentials.

For detailed information about how to configure SSO using an LTPA token or an MP-JWT token, see [How to configure the Dynamic Workload Console and the master domain manager for Single Sign-On on page 151](#).

How to configure the Dynamic Workload Console and the master domain manager for Single Sign-On

Configure the Dynamic Workload Console and the master domain manager for Single Sign-On.

About this task

You can configure Single Sign-On using a Lightweight Third-Party Authentication (LTPA) token or an MP-JWT token.



Note: When implementing a configuration in Single Sign-On, ensure you have not specified the engine credentials in the **Manage Engine** section.

Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console for Single-Sign-On with an LTPA token

About this task

To enable Single Sign-On between the Dynamic Workload Console and master domain manager, perform the following steps:

1. Configure an authentication provider for the Dynamic Workload Console as explained in the post-installation section of the *Planning and Installation Guide*.
2. Create the Access Control list for the authentication provider user or group. For example, to give full access on domain and folders to the LDAP group perform the following steps:
 - a. From the Dynamic Workload Console open the **Manage Workload Security** panel and select **Give access to users and groups**.
 - b. Select the LDAP group from the drop-down list and **FULLCONTROL** in the field **Role**.
 - c. Select **Domain** and assign **ALLOBJECTS**.
 - d. **Save and create new**
 - e. Select the LDAP group from the drop-down list and **FULLCONTROL** in the field **Role**.
 - f. Select **Folder** and assign the root by clicking **/**.
 - g. **Save**
3. Ensure that the `ltpa.keys` file on both the Dynamic Workload Console and the master domain manager are identical, copying the file from one instance to the other. The file is located as follows:

Dynamic Workload Console

```
DWC_home/usr/servers/dwcServer/resources/security
```

master domain manager

```
TWA_home/usr/servers/engineServer/resources/security
```

4. Restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty on both the master domain manager and the Dynamic Workload Console by running `stopAppServer` and `startAppServer`.

Configuring the Dynamic Workload Console for Single Sign-On with an MP-JWT token

About this task

Perform the following steps:

1. Configure an authentication provider for the Dynamic Workload Console as explained in the topic about configuring a user registry in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.
2. Browse to the following folder on the Dynamic Workload Console:

UNIX

On UNIX operating systems

`DWC_home/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates`

Windows

On Windows operating systems

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\templates`

3. Copy the `jwtssso.xml` template file to the `overrides` folder on Dynamic Workload Console:

UNIX

On UNIX operating systems

`DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides`

Windows

On Windows operating systems

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides`

4. Edit the `jwtssso.xml` template file adding the IP address and port number of the Dynamic Workload Console in the `dwc.url` and `dwc.portNumber` variables:

```
<variable name="dwc.url" value="localhost"/>
<variable name="dwc.portNumber" value="9443"/>
```

5. Copy the updated `jwtssso.xml` also to the `overrides` folder on the master domain manager to which you want to connect the Dynamic Workload Console in Single Sign-On. The path varies based on your operating system, as follows:

UNIX

On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/overrides`

Windows

On Windows operating systems

`TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\overrides`

6. Create the Access Control list for the authentication provider user or group. For example, to give full access on folders to an LDAP group perform the following steps:
 - a. From the Dynamic Workload Console open the **Manage Workload Security** panel and select **Give access to users and groups**.
 - b. Select the LDAP group from the drop-down list and **FULL_CONTROL** in the field **Role**.
 - c. Select **Folder** and assign the root by clicking `/`.
 - d. **Save**

How to configure the Dynamic Workload Console 10.2.6 and a master domain manager 9.4.x for Single Sign-On

How to configure the Dynamic Workload Console 10.2.6 and a master domain manager 9.4.x for Single Sign-On.

Before you begin

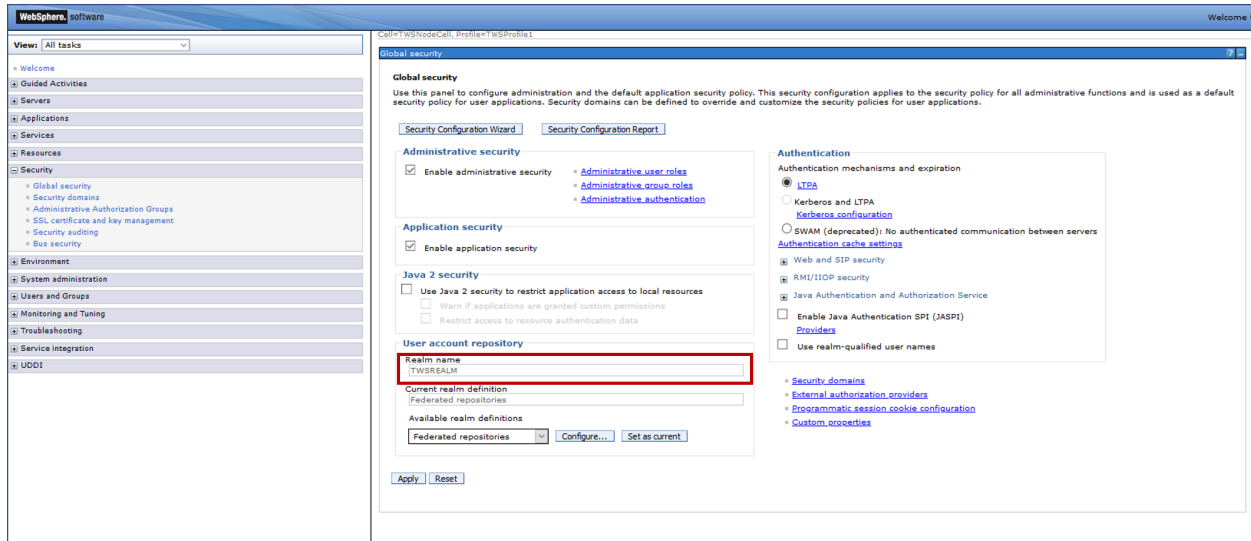
Ensure that the master domain manager V9.4.x is configured to use a Lightweight Directory Access Protocol (LDAP). The LDAP should be the same one already configured and used by the Dynamic Workload Console 10.2.6. For further information about how to configure an LDAP, see the section about configuring a user registry in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

About this task

To configure the Dynamic Workload Console 10.2.6 and the master domain manager V9.4.x for Single Sign-On, perform the following steps:

1. Access the **WebSphere administrative console** of the master domain manager V9.4.x and go to **Global security** in the **Security** section.
2. In the Global security panel, take note of the value for the **Realm name** in the *User account repository* section. The realm name is required later in this section.

Figure 2. Realm name in the WebSphere administrative console



3. In *Authentication*, select **LTPA** as the authentication mechanism, and enter a password to export the Ltpa keys.



Note: Take note of the password. The password you enter is required later during the import.

Figure 3. Export of the ltpa keys file

The screenshot shows the WebSphere software interface. On the left is a navigation pane with a tree view containing categories like 'Welcome', 'Guided Activities', 'Servers', 'Applications', 'Services', 'Resources', 'Security', 'Environment', 'System administration', 'Users and Groups', 'Monitoring and Tuning', 'Troubleshooting', 'Service integration', and 'UDDI'. The 'Security' category is expanded, showing sub-items like 'Global security', 'Security domains', 'Administrative Authorization Groups', 'SSL certificate and key management', 'Security auditing', and 'Bus security'. The main content area is titled 'Global security > LTPA'. It contains a description of LTPA, a 'Key generation' section with a 'Generate keys' button, an 'LTPA timeout' section with a '720 minutes' input field, and a 'Cross-cell single sign-on' section. In the 'Cross-cell single sign-on' section, there are fields for 'Password', 'Confirm password', and 'Fully qualified key file name' (containing '/tmp/ltpa_keys'). There are 'Import keys' and 'Export keys' buttons. The 'Export keys' button is highlighted with a red rectangular box. At the bottom of the section are 'Apply', 'OK', 'Reset', and 'Cancel' buttons.

- Before replacing the existing ltpa on the Dynamic Workload Console 10.2.6, create a backup copy in a different directory. The existing ltpa keys file can be found in the following path:

UNIX

```
DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/resources/security/
```

Windows

```
DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\resources\security\
```

- Rename the exported ltpa keys file to **ltpa.keys** and copy it to the same path as the existing file on the Dynamic Workload Console 10.2.6.
- Open the authentication configuration file previously customized to enable the LDAP for the Dynamic Workload Console 10.2.6, and ensure that the realm name is the same as the one specified for the master domain manager V9.4.x (see [Step 2 on page 153](#)). The authentication configuration file is located in the following path:

UNIX

```
DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides/
```

Windows

```
DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides\
```

Figure 4. Realm name in the authentication template

```

59 <federatedRepository searchTimeout="20m">
60   <primaryRealm name="TWSREALM" allowOpIfRepoDown="true">
61     <participatingBaseEntry name="o=BasicRealm"/>
62     <participatingBaseEntry name="{ldap.base.DN}"/>
63     <uniqueGroupIdMapping inputProperty="uniqueName" outputProperty="uniqueName"/>
64     <groupSecurityNameMapping inputProperty="cn" outputProperty="cn"/>
65     <groupDisplayNameMapping inputProperty="cn" outputProperty="cn"/>
66     <userDisplayNameMapping inputProperty="principalName" outputProperty="principalName"/>
67     <userSecurityNameMapping inputProperty="principalName" outputProperty="principalName"/>
68     <uniqueUserIdMapping inputProperty="uniqueName" outputProperty="uniqueName"/>
69   </primaryRealm>
70 </federatedRepository>
71

```

Where *TWSREALM* is the default realm name.

7. Add the password in XOR format in the **ssl_config.xml** as follows:

- a. Copy the **ssl_config.xml** file from the following path:

UNIX

`DWC_home/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/defaults/`

Windows

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\defaults\`

- b. Paste the **ssl_config.xml** file in the following path:

UNIX

`DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides/`

Windows

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides\`

- c. Open the **ssl_config.xml** file and enter the password in XOR format. The password is the one you specified for the master domain manager V9.4.x during the export (see [Step 3 on page 153](#)).

Figure 5. Password in XOR format

```

1 <server description="sslSettings">
2
3
4 <jndiEntry id="keyStore.location" jndiName="keyStore.location" decode="false" value="{keyStore.location}"/>
5 <jndiEntry id="keyStore.password" jndiName="keyStore.password" decode="false" value="{keyStore.password}"/>
6 <jndiEntry id="trustStore.location" jndiName="trustStore.location" decode="false" value="{trustStore.location}"/>
7 <jndiEntry id="trustStore.password" jndiName="trustStore.password" decode="false" value="{trustStore.password}"/>
8
9
10 <keyStore id="twaKeyStore" location="{keyStore.location}" password="{keyStore.password}" type="{keyStore.type}" pollingRate="5s" updateTrigger="{keyStore.trigger}" />
11 <keyStore id="twaTrustStore" location="{trustStore.location}" password="{trustStore.password}" type="{trustStore.type}" pollingRate="5s" updateTrigger="{trustStore.trigger}" />
12 <ssl id="twaSSLSettings" keyStoreRef="twaKeyStore" trustStoreRef="twaTrustStore" sslProtocol="TLSv1.2" clientAuthenticationSupported="true"/>
13 <sslDefault sslRef="twaSSLSettings"/>
14 <https keyStoreRef="{keyStoreRef}" trustStoreRef="{trustStoreRef}" keyFile="{server.config.dir}/resources/security/https.keys" expiration="1440"/>
15 <webAppSecurity ssoUseDomainFromURL="false"/>
16 <httpSession invalidationTimeout="5h" invalidateOnUnauthorizedSessionRequestException="true"/>
17
18 </server>

```

8. Restart the Dynamic Workload Console 10.2.6.

Results

You successfully configured the Dynamic Workload Console 10.2.6 and the master domain manager V9.4.x for Single Sign-On.

Configuring Dynamic Workload Console to connect to a remote SAP system

You can create a new SAP connection.

About this task

The purpose of the following scenario is to show how to create a new SAP connection in the context of an example.

The scope of the scenario is to create a new SAP connection named "S4HANA" with the workstation named "DYN_AGENT", using an options file named "FILE_AGENT1_r3batch.opts".

1. Create a new SAP connection as follows:
 - a. From the **Administration** menu, click **Manage SAP Connections** page, and then select the engine.
 - b. Click **New Connection**.
 - c. In **SAP Connection Name**, type S4HANA.
 - d. In **Workstation**, click the **lookup** icon, search the workstation named "DYN_AGENT", and select it.
 - e. In **Option file**, click the **lookup** icon, search the option file named "FILE_AGENT1_r3batch.opts", and select it.
 - f. Test the connection.
2. Click **Ok** to save it.

Results

You successfully created a SAP connection named "S4HANA", and now you can start creating, scheduling, and control your SAP jobs directly from the IBM® Workload Scheduler.

Customizing your global settings

How to customize global settings.

About this task

To customize the behavior of the Dynamic Workload Console, you can optionally configure some advanced settings. These settings are specified in a customizable file named `TdwcGlobalSettings.xml.template`.

By default, the customizable file is copied into the following path after you install the Dynamic Workload Console:

Windows On Windows operating systems:

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\registry\TdwcGlobalSettings.xml.template`

UNIX On UNIX and Linux operating systems:

`DWC_home/usr/servers/dwcServer/registry/TdwcGlobalSettings.xml.template`

If you have Administrator privileges, you can modify the file to replace default values with customized ones and enable commented sections. To enable commented sections, remove the tags that enclose the section. You then save the file locally with the name `TdwcGlobalSettings.xml`.

You can add and modify some customizable information, such as:

- The URLs that link to videos in the Dynamic Workload Console. For example, you can link to a company intranet server to view help videos rather than to a public video site.
- The maximum number of objects to be shown in the graphical views.
- The setting to display the plan view in a new window.
- The auto refresh interval for the **Show Plan View** graphical view.
- The creation of predefined tasks.
- The URLs where you can store customized documentation about your jobs or job streams to associate customized documentation to them.
- The current user registry in use.
- The timeout to read and write information on a IBM® Z Workload Scheduler engine.
- The maximum number of objects to be retrieved with a query, the maximum number of rows to display in a table, and the maximum number of direct queries to maintain in history.
- Allowing or preventing users from sharing tasks and engine connections.
- The display of all dependencies, both satisfied and unsatisfied.
- The use of audit files to track activities in the Self-Service Catalog and Self-Service Dashboards mobile applications.
- Displaying or hiding all predecessors from the What-if Analysis Gantt view.

This file is accessed at each login, and all configurations specified in the file are immediately applied, except for the **precannedTaskCreation** property. This property is read only when a user logs in for the first time and is then used whenever this user logs in again.

You can use any text or XML editor to edit this file, but ensure that you save it as a valid XML file.

The file is organized into sections that group similar properties. An explanation of each section is available in the file. For more information, see [TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#).

Sections can also be repeated multiple times in the same file and applied differently to different user roles. To apply a section only to the users belonging to a role, the section must be included within the tags `<settings role="user_role">` and `</settings>`, where:

`<user_role>`

The user for which the enclosed configuration must be applied. The default value is all users, unless otherwise specified.

Only one **settings** section can be specified for each role. If a user has more than one role, the settings associated to the higher role are used.

To edit the file, proceed as follows:

1. Stop WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base using the following command:

UNIX UNIX™

Stop the application server

```
./stopAppServer.sh [-direct]
```

Windows Windows™

Stop the application server

```
stopAppServer.bat [-direct  
                  [-wlpHome <installation_directory>]  
                  [-options <parameters>]]
```

as described in the section about starting and stopping WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base in *Administration Guide*.

2. Log in as root or Administrator to the Dynamic Workload Console.
3. Browse to

Windows On Windows operating systems:

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\registry\TdwGlobalSettings.xml.template`

UNIX On UNIX and Linux operating systems:

`DWC_home/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates/TdwGlobalSettings.xml.template`

4. Edit the file as necessary, rename it to `TdwGlobalSettings.xml` and save it.
5. Start WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base using the following command:

UNIX UNIX™

Start the application server

```
./startAppServer.sh [-direct]
```

Windows Windows™

Start the application server

```
startAppServer.bat [-direct]
```

as described in the section about starting and stopping WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base in *Administration Guide*.

Example:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>  
<tdwc>  
.  
.  
<settings>
```

```

<graphViews>
<property name="planViewNewWindow" value="true"/>
</graphViews>
</settings>

<settings role="TWSWEBUIOperator">
<graphViews>
<property name="planViewNewWindow" value="false"/>
</graphViews>
</settings>
.
.
</tdwc>

```

To view the complete syntax for the file, see [TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#).

Customize video URLs

This section shows how you should customize your URLs that link video content in the Dynamic Workload Console so that you can link to a company intranet server to view help videos rather than a public video site.

The `_baseUrl` prefix will be added to all your video URLs . If you do not specify a link for your video the default setting will automatically be used.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>
.
.
<settings>
-<videoGallery>
<property name="_baseUrl" value=""></property>
<property name="depLoop" value=""></property>
<property name="highlightRelDep" value=""></property>
<property name="viewDepPrompt" value=""></property>
<property name="usingImpactView" value=""></property>
<property name="createUseTasks" value=""></property>
<property name="weAddRemoveFile" value=""></property>
<property name="weCreateDeps" value=""></property>
<property name="weAddJob" value=""></property>
<property name="weHighlightDeps" value=""></property>
<property name="weCreateJCL" value=""></property>
</videoGallery>

```

Override graphical view limits

This section contains the configuration parameters that apply to the graphical views in the plan, such as the maximum number of objects shown in each view.

planViewMaxJobstreams

The maximum number of job streams displayed in the Plan View. Default value is **1000**. Values greater than **1000** are not supported.

preProdPlanViewMaxJobstreams

The maximum number of job streams displayed in the preproduction plan view. Default value is **1000**. Values greater than **1000** are not supported.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>
.
.
  <settings>
    <graphViews>
      <property name="planViewMaxJobstreams" value="1000"></property>
      <property name="preProdPlanViewMaxJobstreams" value="1000"></property>
    </graphViews>
  </settings>
.
.
</tdwc>
```

See [TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

Plan View in new window

This section is used to prevent Internet Explorer 7 from freezing while using the Plan View. To solve the problem, set value to **true**.

planViewNewWindow

Set it to **true** if you want the plan view to be displayed in a new window each time it is launched. Default value is **false**.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>
.
.
  <settings>
    <graphViews>
      <property name="planViewNewWindow" value="true"/>
    </graphViews>
  </settings>
</tdwc>
```

See [TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

Plan View auto refresh interval

Use this section to change the default setting of the auto refresh interval for the Show Plan View graphical view for all users. By default, the auto refresh interval is 300 seconds (five minutes).

PlanViewAutorefresh

The graphical representation of the Plan View is automatically refresh every 300 seconds by default. To change this setting, edit the value assigned to the **DefaultTime** property. The minimum value you can set is 30 seconds. Any value specified below this value is reset to 30 seconds. You must restart the Dynamic Workload Console application server after modifying this value.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>
.
.
  <settings>
<PlanViewAutorefresh>
<property name="DefaultTime" value="300"/>
</PlanViewAutorefresh>
.
.
  </settings>
</tdwc>
```

See [TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

Disable and customize NewsFeed function

This section contains the configuration details to be constantly up-to-date with product information.

FeedURL

Contains the URL from which you receive news and updates. Default value is: <https://community.ibm.com/community/user/legacy>

FeedType

A string that identifies the format of update information. Default value is **JSONP**.

PollInterval

The interval in seconds between two checks for updates. Default value is **600**.

PollInitialDelay

An initial delay in seconds before the first attempt to read the news feeds. After the initial load, the poll interval is used. Default value is **120**.

NewsFeed

Property used to add further customized news feeds. Specify the format and address of the file that contains the customized communication. Supported formats are RSS 2.0 and ATOM 1.0. You must write the communication in ATOM 1.0 or RSS 2.0 format and store this file in the an HTTP server complying with the *same origin policy*. For browser security reasons, this policy permits to access information only on server using the same protocol, hostname and port number as the one to which you are connected. Optionally, if you want to store your customized feed on an external server, you must configure an HTTP reverse proxy server mapping the external server address.

```
<property name="NewsFeed" type="RSS"
value="http://DWC_hostname:portnumber.com/news.rss" />
```



Note: To specify multiple feeds, you must specify multiple **NewsFeed** properties.

NewsFeedCategory

The name of the customized information. It can be used to identify informational, warning or alert messages, for example. The path to an image can also be added to better identify the information with an icon.

To add more category images, specify a list of properties named **NewsFeedCategory**, for example:

```
<property name="NewsFeedCategory" value="my company info"
icon="http://www.my.company.com/info.png" />
<property name="NewsFeedCategory" value="my company alert"
icon="http://www.my.company.com/alert.png" />
```

If no customized feed is specified, the default feed is used, which retrieves the latest product information from official support sites. To disable any notification, comment the entire section. To disable only external notifications about product information updates, assign an empty string as value to the **FeedURL** property of **JSONP** feed like:

```
<property name="FeedURL" type="JSONP" value="" />
```

Example:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>
.
.
  <settings>
    <NewsFeed>
      <property name="NewsFeed" type="RSS"
value="http://www.DWC_hostname:portnumber.com/my_rss.xml" />
      <property name="NewsFeed" type="ATOM"
value="http://www.DWC_hostname:portnumber.com/my_atom.xml" />

      <property name="PollInterval" value="600" />
      <property name="PollInitialDelay" value="1" />

      <property name="FeedURL" type="JSONP" value="" />

      <property name="NewsFeedCategory"
value="my company info" icon="http://www.DWC_hostname:portnumber.com
/info.png" />
      <property name="NewsFeedCategory"
value="my company alert" icon="http://www.DWC_hostname:portnumber.com
/alert.png" />

    </NewsFeed>
  </settings>
.
.
</tdwc>
```

See [TdwGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

Disable and customize the creation of predefined tasks

This section defines the environment for which predefined tasks are created.

precannedTaskCreation

Some predefined tasks are created by default and are available when you log in to the console. There is a predefined Monitor task for every object, for both z/OS® and distributed engines. Default value is **all**. To change this setting, use one of the following values:

all

All predefined tasks are created. This is the default.

distributed

Only predefined tasks for distributed engines are created

zos

Only predefined tasks for z/OS engines are created

none

No predefined task is created.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>
.
.
  <settings>
    <application>
      <property name="precannedTaskCreation" value="all"/>
    </application>
  </settings>
.
.
</tdwc>
```

See [TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

Add customized URL to job and job streams

This section contains URLs where you can store customized documentation about your jobs or job streams. By default, this setting is not specified. If you want to associate customized documentation to a job or job stream, use this setting to specify the external address where this information is located.

If you want to specify a URL where customized documentation for a job and job stream is stored, uncomment the section lines, specify the required URL, and optionally assign a name to the UI label by specifying a value for the customActionLabel property. By default this name is **Open Documentation**. This label is then displayed in the **More Actions** menus in Monitor Jobs and Monitor Job Streams tasks, as well as in the graphical views of the plan (in the object's tooltips, context menus and

properties). In this example, selecting **Open Documentation** accesses the relevant documentation making it possible to open the documentation while monitoring your job or job stream in the plan.

To implement this setting, assign values to the following keywords:

customActionLabel

The name of the action displayed in menus, object properties, and tooltips to access customized documentation about your jobs or job streams. By default this name is "Open Documentation" unless you customize the name with this keyword.

jobUrlTemplate

The address of your job documentation. No default value available.

jobstreamUrlTemplate

The address of your job stream documentation. No default value available.

Consider the following example:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>
.
.
<settings>
  <twsobjectDoc>
    <property name="jobstreamUrlTemplate"
      value="http://www.yourhost.com/tws/docs/${js_encoded_folder_path}${js_name_w}"/>
    <property name="jobUrlTemplate"
      value="http://www.yourhost.com/docs/jobs/${job_name_w}"/>
    <property name="customActionLabel" value="Your Custom Label Name"/>
  </twsobjectDoc>
</settings>
.
.
</tdwc>
```

See [TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

These properties must be valid URLs, containing one or more of the variables listed in the table below.

If you use any of the following special characters in the URL, you must write them as follows:

Table 22. Syntax for special characters

Special characters	Write them as...
<i>quote (")</i>	\"
<i>apostrophe (')</i>	'
<i>ampersand (&)</i>	&
<i>less than (<)</i>	<
<i>greater than (>)</i>	>

Table 22. Syntax for special characters (continued)

Special characters	Write them as...
<i>backslash</i> (\)	\\

Multiple variables can be included in a URL and must be specified using the following syntax: `${variable}`:

Table 23. Variables used in the URL definition

Name	Object	Description
job_number_w	Job z/OS®	The number of the job
job_wkst_w	Job	The name of the workstation on which the job runs and the folder where it is stored, if any.
job_jsname_w	Job	The name of the job stream that contains the job and the folder where it is stored, if any.
job_jswkst_w	Job	The name of the job stream that contains the job and the folder where it is stored, if any.
job_actualarrival_w	Job z/OS®	The actual start time of the job (date format: YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss)
job_actualend_w	Job z/OS®	When the job actually completed (date format: YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss)
job_starttime_w	Job	The start time of the job (date format: YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss)
job_id_w	Job	The ID of the job
job_returncode_w	Job	The return code of the job
js_name_w	Job stream	The name of the job stream that contains the job
js_wkst_w	Job stream	The name of the job stream that contains the job and the folder where it is stored, if any.
js_id_w	Job stream	The job stream ID
js_latest_start_w	Job stream	The latest time at which a job stream can start (date format: YYYY-MM-DDThh:mm:ss)
engine_name_w	Engine	The name of the engine connection
engine_host_w	Engine	The hostname of the engine connection
engine_port_w	Engine	The port number of the engine connection
engine_plan_w	Engine	The ID of selected plan
engine_serv_w	Engine	The remote server name of the engine connection

User registry

Use this section to configure some properties related to the User Registry in use.

groupIdMap

The property groupIdMap is related to the groups of User Registry, and can be modified to map and display the specified value of each group. By default the common name of the group is displayed.

importSettingsMaxFileSize

The property importSettingsMaxFileSize is related to the "Manage settings" > "Import Settings" functionality and defines the max file size of the uploaded TDWCSettings.xml. KB is the unit of measure, and by default, it is set to 102400 KB (100 MB). If you need to upload a property file bigger than 100MB, you can increase this value, but for security purposes, it is strongly suggested to revert the file size back to the default value once the import has been performed.

Examples:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>
.
.
<settings>
<security>
<property name="groupIdMap" value="cn"></property>
<property name="importSettingsMaxFileSize" value="102400"></property>
</security>
</settings>
.
.
</tdwc>
```

Therefore, if you need to change the default value "cn" to "racfid", you can define this property as follows:

```
<property name="groupIdMap" value="racfid"></property>
```

See the section about the TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample in *Administration Guide* to view the complete syntax for the file.

or see the section about user settings in *IBM Workload Automation: Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide* to manage Dynamic Workload Console settings.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

z/OS http connections

Use this section to configure the timeout to read and write information on IBM® Z® Workload Scheduler engine. When you connect to the IBM® Z® Workload Scheduler engine to retrieve a list of defined objects, you receive an error message if the list is not returned within the timeout period. The value is expressed in milliseconds.

Example:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>
.
```

```

.
<settings>
<http>
<property name="zosHttpTimeout" value="90000" />
</http>
.
.
</settings>
</tdwc>

```

See [TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

Limit the number of objects retrieved by queries

Use this section to configure: the number of results displayed for Monitor tasks, the maximum number of rows to display on each page, and the number of direct queries to maintain in history.

If you want to limit the number of results produced by your queries, you can specify the maximum number of items that must be retrieved using the `monitorMaxObjectsPM` property.



Note: `monitorMaxObjectsPM` property only limits the number of results for archived plans queries. The property does not affect current plan queries.

For Multiple engine tasks, this limit is applied to each engine included in the query. Therefore, if you specify a limit of 500 results and, for example, you run a Monitor jobs on multiple engine task on three engines, the results produced by your query will be no more than 500 *for each engine*, for a maximum of 1500 rows.



Note: This setting does not apply to Monitor critical jobs tasks.

To set the maximum number of rows to display in a table view, configure the `maxRowsToDisplay` property.

To set the maximum number of direct queries to maintain in history, configure the `maxHistoryCount` property. These queries are available from the pull-down for the Query field on the Monitor Workload page.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>
.
.
<settings>
  <monitor>
    <property name="monitorMaxObjectsPM" value="2000"></property>
  </monitor>

  <ph rev="v92"><monitor>
    <property name="maxRowsToDisplay" value="25"></property>
  </monitor>

  <monitor>
    <property name="maxHistoryCount" value="100"></property>

```

```

    </monitor>
  </ph>
</settings>

<settings>
  <search>
    <property name="search_max_limit" value="1500"></property>
  </search>
</settings>
.
.
</tdwc>

```

See [TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

Limit task and engine sharing

Use this section to prevent users from sharing tasks and engines.

By default there is no limit to task and engine sharing and all users are authorized to share their tasks and engine connections. If you want to change this behavior, preventing users from sharing tasks and engines, set this property to **true**.

The property default value is **false**, set it to **true** to enable the limit:

limitShareTask

Set to true to prevent users from sharing tasks.

limitShareEngine

Set to true to prevent users from sharing engine connections.

```

<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>
.
.
<settings>
  <security>
    <property name="limitShareTask"      value="false" />
    <property name="limitShareEngine"    value="false" />
  </security>
</settings>
.
.
</tdwc>

```

See [TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

Show all dependencies

This section defines whether to show all dependencies displayed, regardless of their being satisfied or not.

ShowDependencies

When you open the dependencies panel from Monitor jobs and Monitor job streams task results, by default only **Not Satisfied** dependencies are shown. Uncomment this section and leave the value set to **"true"** to have all dependencies displayed, regardless of their being satisfied or not. Possible values are:

true

All dependencies displayed, regardless of their being satisfied or not.

false

Only not satisfied dependencies are displayed.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>

.
.
.
<settings>
  <ShowDependencies>
    <property name = "AlwaysShowAllDependencies"
      value="true"></property>
  </ShowDependencies>
</settings>
.
.
.
</tdwc>
```

See [TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

Auditing mobile app activity

This section defines whether to track activities performed in the Self-Service Dashboards application in an auditing log file.

For information about the name and location of the log file, see the logs and traces section in the *Troubleshooting Guide*.

SSAuditing

This value is set to **"true"** by default so that operations performed in the Self-Service Dashboards application are written to a log file. The log file contains information such as creation, modification and deletion dates, the operations performed in the mobile apps, and the user performing the operations. Possible values are:

true

Operations performed in the Self-Service Dashboards application are tracked in an auditing log file.

false

Operations performed in the Self-Service Dashboards application are not tracked in an auditing log file.

SSAuditingLogSize

The maximum size of a log file in KB. When a log file reaches the maximum size, the system rolls that log file over and creates a new file. By default, the maximum size of a log file is 100 KB.

SSAuditingLogFiles

The default number of log files to create. When this number is met and the latest log file reaches its maximum size, the system deletes the oldest log file and rolls the latest file over and creates a new file.

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>
.
.
  <settings>
    <SSCAuditing>
      <property name = "SSAuditing"          value="true"></property>
      <property name = "SSAuditingLogSize"   value="100"></property>
      <property name = "SSAuditingLogFiles"  value="2"></property>
    </SSCAuditing>
  </settings>
.
.
</tdwc>
```

See [TdwGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

Modifying the number of archived plans displayed in the Dynamic Workload Console

You can modify the number of archived plans displayed in the Monitor Workload view of the Dynamic Workload Console. The default number is 30 plans.

To modify the default number, configure the following property in the **TdwGlobalSettings.xml** file:

```
<monitor>
  <property name="maxArchivedPlan" value="30"></property>
</monitor>
```

See [TdwGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

Show or hide predecessors from What-if Analysis Gantt view

When you have hundreds of predecessors, you can optimize performance by excluding them from the What-if Analysis Gantt view. By default, all predecessors are loaded into the What-if Analysis Gantt view. To exclude them, uncomment this section and leave the default setting of the property **whatIfAutoLoadPreds** to "false". To revert back to the default behavior either set the property to "true" or comment the section again in the **TdwGlobalSettings.xml** file.

To modify the default setting, configure the following property in the **TdwGlobalSettings.xml** file:

```
<WhatifAnalysis>
  <property name = "whatIfAutoLoadPreds" value="false"></property>
```

```
</WhatifAnalysis>
```

See [TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample on page 171](#) to view the complete syntax for the file.

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

TdwcGlobalSettings.xml sample

The following example is a sample of the file:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<tdwc>

  <!--
  #####
  ##### SETTINGS FOR ALL USERS #####
  #####
  -->
  <settings>

    <!--
    #####
    ##### CUSTOMIZE LINKS TO VIDEOS #####
    #####
    -->
    <!--
    This section shows how you should customize your URLs that link video content in
    the Dynamic Workload Console so that you can link to a company intranet server
    to view help videos rather than a public video site.

    ### This prefix "_baseUrl" will be added to all video URLs ###

    ### Links to videos, missing entries or empty (blank) values are not considered ###

    ##### Graphical view: detect loop #####
    ##### Graphical view: highlight and release dependencies #####
    ##### Graphical view: reply to prompt dependency #####
    ##### Graphical view: using the impact view #####
    ##### Table: creating and using tasks #####
    ##### Workload editor: add and remove a file dependency #####
    ##### Workload editor: create a dependency #####
    ##### Workload editor: add a job #####
    ##### Workload editor: highlight dependencies #####
    ##### Workload editor: creating a z/OS job #####
    -->

    <!--
    <videoGallery>
      <property name="_baseUrl" value=""></property>
      <property name="depLoop" value=""></property>
      <property name="highlightRelDep" value=""></property>
      <property name="viewDepPrompt" value=""></property>
      <property name="usingImpactView" value=""></property>
      <property name="createUseTasks" value=""></property>
      <property name="weAddRemoveFile" value=""></property>
      <property name="weCreateDeps" value=""></property>
      <property name="weAddJob" value=""></property>
      <property name="weHighlightDeps" value=""></property>
      <property name="weCreateJCL" value=""></property>
    </videoGallery>
    -->
    <!--
    #####
    ##### GRAPHICAL VIEW SETTINGS #####
    #####
    -->
    <!--
    This section specifies the maximum number of objects shown in each graphical view.
    Default value is 1000 for all properties.
    -->
    <!--
    <graphViews>
      <property name="planViewMaxJobstreams" value="1000"></property>
      <property name="preProdPlanViewMaxJobstreams" value="1000"></property>
    </graphViews>
    -->
    <!--
    ##### AutoLayout configuration #####
    -->
```

nodeSep: a number of pixels representing the separation between adjacent nodes in the same rank. Default is 30
 edgeSep: a number of pixels representing the separation between adjacent edges in the same rank. Default is 0
 rankSep: a number of pixels representing the separation between ranks. Default is 0
 rankDir: direction of the layout (Possible values are: "TB" (top-to-bottom), "BT" (bottom-to-top), "LR" (left-to-right), "RL" (right-to-left)). Default is TB
 marginX: a number of pixels representing the separation between adjacent nodes in the same rank. Default is 100
 marginY: number of pixels to use as a margin around the top and bottom of the graph. Default is 100
 setLinkVertices: If set to true the layout will adjust the links by setting their vertices. It defaults to false.
 If the option is defined as a function it will be used to set the vertices of links at the end of the layout.

```
-->
<!--
<AutoLayout>
  <property name="nodeSep" value="30"/>
  <property name="edgeSep" value="0"/>
  <property name="rankSep" value="0"/>
  <property name="rankDir" value="TB"/>
  <property name="marginX" value="100"/>
  <property name="marginY" value="100"/>
  <property name="setLinkVertices" value="false"/>
</AutoLayout>
-->
<!--
#####
#####          PLAN VIEW IN NEW WINDOW          #####
#####
-->
<!--
This section is used to prevent Internet Explorer 7 from freezing while using the Plan View. To solve the problem, set value
Default value is false
-->
<!--
  <graphViews>
    <property name="planViewNewWindow" value="true"/>
  </graphViews>
-->
<!--
#####
#####          DISABLE /CUSTOMIZE CREATION OF PREDEFINED TASKS          #####
#####
-->
<!--
To avoid or customize the creation of predefined tasks at first logon.
Possible values are:
    all          both distributed and z/OS tasks are created. This is the default value
    none         no task is created
    distributed   only distributed tasks are created
    zos          only z/OS tasks are created
-->
<!--
  <application>
    <property name="precannedTaskCreation" value="all"/>
    <property name="updateWorkstationMaxNumber" value="20"/>
  </application>
-->

<!--
  <PositionSorting>
    <property name="enabled" value="true"/>
  </PositionSorting>
-->

<!--
#####
#####          ADD A CUSTOM DOCUMENTATION URL TO JOB/JOBSTREAM          #####
#####
-->
<!--
This section contains URLs where you can store customized documentation about your jobs or job streams.
By default this setting is not specified. If you want to associate customized documentation to a job or
job stream, use this setting to specify the external address where this information is located.
If you want to specify a URL to be opened as related documentation for jobs and job streams,
uncomment the section lines so that a new action, Open Documentation, is inserted in the More Actions
menu for Monitor Jobs and Monitor Job Streams tasks. The new action links to the specified URL

You can customize the URL template by using variables. The variables have the following syntax
    ${<variable_name>}

For the complete list of variables, please refer to the documentation.

-->
<!--
  <twsobjectDoc>
    <property name="jobstreamUrlTemplate" value="http://www.yourhost.com/tws/docs/jobstream/${js_name_w}" />
    <property name="jobUrlTemplate" value="http://www.yourhost.com/docs/jobs/${job_name_w}" />
    <property name="customActionLabel" value="Custom Action" />
  </twsobjectDoc>
-->
```



```

<!--
#####
#####                      USER REGISTRY                      #####
#####
In this section you can configure properties related to the User Registry in use.

The property groupIdMap is related to the groups of User Registry, and can be modified
to map and display the specified value of each group. By default the common name
of the group is displayed.

The property importSettingsMaxFileSize is related to the "Manage settings" > "Import Settings"
functionality and defines the max file size of the uploaded TDWCSets.xml.
KB is the unit of measure, and by default, it is set to 102400 KB (100 MB).
If you need to upload a property file bigger than 100MB, you can increase this value, but
for security purposes, it is strongly suggested to revert the file size back to the default
value once the import has been performed.
-->

<!--
  <security>
    <property name="groupIdMap" value="cn"></property>
    <property name="importSettingsMaxFileSize" value="102400"></property>
  </security>
-->

<!--
#####
#####                      Z/OS HTTP CONNECTIONS                      #####
#####
Use this section to increase or decrease timeout for http connection in Z/OS
environment. Change this setting if you receive a connection timeout
using plugin actions/picklists.

The setting is in milliseconds.
-->

<!--
  <http>
    <property name="zosHttpTimeout" value="90000" />
  </http>
-->

<!--
#####
#####          LIMIT THE NUMBER OF OBJECTS RETURNED BY THE QUERIES          #####
#####
Use this section to configure: the number of results displayed for Monitor tasks, the maximum number of rows
to display on each page, and the number of direct queries to maintain in history.
This setting applies to all tasks except for Monitor critical jobs and Monitor jobs on multiple engines.
If you want to limit the number of results produced by your queries, you can specify the maximum number of items that must be retrieved.
To set the maximum number of rows to display in a table view, configure the maxRowsToDisplay property.
To set the maximum number of direct queries to maintain in history, configure the maxHistoryCount property.
These queries are available from the pull-down for the Query field on the Direct Query page.
The property maxRowInfoNumber indicates the maximum number of objects to which actions can be performed in the plan.

-->

<!--
  <monitor>
    <property name="monitorMaxObjectsPM" value="2000"></property>
  </monitor>
  <monitor>
    <property name="maxRowsToDisplay" value="25"></property>
  </monitor>
-->

<!--
You modify the number of archived plans displayed in the Monitor Workload view of the Dynamic
Workload Console. The default number is 30 plans.
-->

<!--
  <monitor>
    <property name="maxArchivedPlan" value="30"></property>
  </monitor>
-->

<!--
  <monitor>
    <property name="maxHistoryCount" value="100"></property>
  </monitor>
-->

<!--
Custom SQL report HTML format maximum limit. The default limit is 10000.
-->

<!--
  <monitor>
    <property name="SQL_REPORT_HTML_FORMAT_RESULT_MAX_NUMBER" value="10000"></property>
-->

```

```

</monitor>
-->
<!--
<monitor>
  <property name="PROMPT_FILTER" value="true"></property>
</monitor>
-->
<!--
<settings>
  <search>
    <property name="search_max_limit" value="500"></property>
  </search>
</settings>
-->
<!--
<monitor>
  <property name="maxRowInfoNumber" value="100"></property>
</monitor>
-->
<!--
Increase the share maximum limit to share engines, boards, queries, and data sources.
-->
<!--
<ShareLimit>
  <property name = "MaxShareCount" value="1000"></property>
</ShareLimit>
-->
<!--
#####
#####          LIMIT TASK AND ENGINE SHARING          #####
#####
#####

Use this section to prevent users from sharing tasks and engines.
By default there is no limit to task and engine sharing and all users are authorized to share
their tasks and engine connections. If you want to change this behavior, preventing users from
sharing tasks and engines, set this property to true. The property default value is false,
set it to true to enable the limit:

-->
<!--
  <security>
    <property name="limitShareTask"      value="false" />
    <property name="limitShareEngine"    value="false" />
  </security>
-->

<!--
#####
#####          CHANGE DEFAULT BEHAVIOR FOR DEPENDENCIES PANEL          #####
#####
#####

Use this section to change the default behavior of the UI when displaying
dependencies in the dependencies panel. By setting this value to true, by default,
all dependencies are displayed, and not just the unsatisfied ones.

-->
<!--
  <ShowDependencies>
    <property name = "AlwaysShowAllDependencies" value="true"></property>
  </ShowDependencies>
-->

<!--
#####
#####          CHANGE DEFAULT BEHAVIOR FOR SSC AND SSD AUDITING          #####
#####
#####
Use this section to change the default behavior of the auditing of activities performed
using the Self-Service Catalog and the Self-Service Dashboards applications. By default,
auditing is enabled. You can also set the maximum size of the log file before it rolls
over to a new log file, and the maximum number of log files maintained.
Note: This section is valid only for the Self-Service Catalog V9.x, not for the latest one.
-->
<!--
  <SSCAuditing>
    <property name = "SSAuditing"      value="true"></property>
    <property name = "SSAuditingLogSize" value="100"></property>
    <property name = "SSAuditingLogFiles" value="2"></property>
  </SSCAuditing>
-->

<!--
#####
#####          URL FOR AGENT LICENSE          #####
#####
#####
Use this section to change the default Agent License URL.
-->
<!--
  <AgentLicense>

```

```

    <property name = "URL" value="Workload Automation SaaS agent license document"></property>
  </AgentLicense>
-->

</settings>

<!--
#####
##### SETTINGS FOR ALL Administrators users #####
#####
-->
<settings role="Administrator">
<!-- Put here setting to be applied only to users with Administrator role -->
</settings>
<!--
#####
##### SETTINGS FOR ALL Operators users #####
#####
-->
<settings role="Operator">
</settings>
<!--
#####
##### SETTINGS FOR ALL Configurator users #####
#####
-->
<settings role="Configurator">
</settings>
<!--
#####
##### SETTINGS FOR ALL Developer users #####
#####
-->
<settings role="Developer">
</settings>
<!--
#####
##### SETTINGS FOR ALL Analyst users #####
#####
-->
<settings role="Analyst">
</settings>

</tdwc>

```

For more information about how to customize global settings, see [Customizing your global settings on page 156](#).

Disable the What-if Analysis

You can disable the What-if Analysis in your environment by setting the **optman** `enWhatIf | wi` global option to *no* (default value is *yes*).

The `enWhatIf | wi` global option interacts with the `enWorkloadServiceAssurance | wa` global option, which enables or disables privileged processing of mission-critical jobs and their predecessors. For details about this interaction, see the following table.

Table 24. Interaction between `enWorkloadServiceAssurance` and `enWhatIf` global options

Options	Interaction
<code>enWorkloadServiceAssurance wa</code> is set to <i>yes</i>	Both the Workload service assurance and the What-if Analysis features are fully enabled in your environment.
<code>enWhatIf wi</code> is set to <i>yes</i>	
<code>enWorkloadServiceAssurance wa</code> is set to <i>yes</i>	The Workload service assurance is enabled. The What-if Analysis feature is disabled and an exception is issued if you try to use it.
<code>enWhatIf wi</code> is set to <i>no</i>	

Table 24. Interaction between `enWorkloadServiceAssurance` and `enWhatIf` global options (continued)

Options	Interaction
<code>enWorkloadServiceAssurance</code> <code>wa</code> is set to <i>no</i> <code>enWhatIf</code> <code>wi</code> is set to <i>yes</i>	The Workload service assurance is partially enabled, just to allow the What-if Analysis feature to work properly. This means that: • The Workload service assurance is disabled and an exception is issued if you try to use it. • No critical job is added to the plan.
<code>enWorkloadServiceAssurance</code> <code>wa</code> is set to <i>no</i> <code>enWhatIf</code> <code>wi</code> is set to <i>no</i>	Both the Workload service assurance and the What-if Analysis features are disabled in your environment.

Configuring High Availability

How to configure, change, and share your settings repository.

Performance can be highly improved by configuring multiple Dynamic Workload Console instances in a High Availability configuration, so as to have multiple console instances working at the same time and with the same repository settings.

The Dynamic Workload Console is set to be always in High Availability and a front-end Network Dispatcher must be set up to handle and distribute all incoming session requests.

If you use a Dynamic Workload Console in High Availability configuration, when you connect to a Dynamic Workload Console you are not actually connecting to a specific console but to a load balancer that dispatches and redirects the connections among the nodes in the configuration. Therefore, for example, if a node fails, new user sessions are directed to other active nodes in the configuration.

To implement this kind of configuration, the Administrator must ensure that the `datasource.xml`, located in the following path `opt/wa/DWC/DWC_DATA/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides`, has the same configuration on every Dynamic Workload Console in the cluster.

Configuring Dynamic Workload Console to view reports

This topic describes the configuration steps that you perform to be able to see the reports from the Dynamic Workload Console, if are using an Oracle database.

To access the databases where reports are stored, you must have the following prerequisites:

- A user ID and password to access the database
- A working connection between the Dynamic Workload Console and the database

Perform the following step on the system where the IBM Workload Scheduler engine is running:

- [Configuring for an Oracle database on page 177](#)
- [Configuring for a Db2 database in HADR on page 178](#)

Configuring for an Oracle database

About this task

Actions taken on IBM Workload Scheduler engine:

For Oracle, the IT administrator, or the IBM Workload Scheduler IT administrator, or both working together, do the following:

1. Use the **TWS Oracle user** specified during the master domain manager installation or perform the following steps to create a new user:
 - a. Create a database user authorized to access the database and specify a password.
 - b. Launch the following script:

```
<TWA_home>/TWS/dbtools/Oracle/scripts/dbgrant.bat/.sh
<ID_of_user_to_be_granted>
<database_name>
<database_admin_user> <password>
```

where the variables are as follows:

<TWA_home>

The IBM Workload Automation instance directory

<ID_of_user_to_be_granted>

The ID of the user created in step [1.a on page 177](#), who is going to be granted the access to the reports

<database_name>

The name of the database, as created when the master domain manager was installed

<database_schema_owner> <password>

The user ID and password of the database schema owner.

2. Define a valid connection string to the database:

- a. Browse to the following path:

On Windows operating systems

<TWA_home>\usr\servers\engineServer\resources\properties

On UNIX operating systems

<TWA_DATA_DIR>/usr/servers/engineServer/resources/properties

- b. Ensure that the following property is set in the `TWSConfig.properties` file to point to the Oracle JDBC URL:

```
com.ibm.tws.webui.oracleJdbcURL
```

For example:

```
com.ibm.tws.webui.oracleJdbcURL=
jdbc:oracle:thin:@//9.132.235.7:1521/orcl
```

The Oracle JDBC URL is also to be specified in the **PARAM_DataSourceUrl** property in the `.\config\common.properties` file. The `common.properties` file is required when setting up for command line reporting. For more information about this file, see [Setting up for command line audit reporting on page 603](#) and the section about setting up for command line batch reporting in *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*.

- c. Restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty .

Actions taken on the Dynamic Workload Console:

1. Log on to the Dynamic Workload Console.
2. In the navigation bar, select **Administration > Manage Engines**. The Manage Engines panels opens.
3. Select the engine you defined or create another engine. The Engine Connection properties panel is displayed.
4. In Database Configuration for Reporting, do the following:
 - a. Check **Enable Reporting** to enable the engine connection you selected to run reports.
 - b. In **Database User ID and Password**, specify the database user and password that you authorized to access reports.

Configuring for a Db2 database in HADR

Configure Db2 for generating Dynamic Workload Console reports when Db2 is configured for HADR

About this task

You can optionally configure Db2 in HADR configuration so that you can connect to the secondary database if the primary database becomes unreachable.

To configure Db2 for generating reports when Db2 is configured for HADR, perform the following steps

1. Stop WebSphere Application Server Liberty, as described in [Application server - starting and stopping on page 652](#).
2. Browse to the following paths, depending on your operating system:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

```
TWA_home/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/templates
```

Windows On Windows operating systems

```
TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\templates
```

3. Copy the `datasource.xml` file to a working location and edit it by adding the following strings:

```
<variable name="db.clientRouteAlternateServerName" value="secondary_database"/>
<variable name="db.clientRouteAlternatePortNumber" value="secondary_database_port_number"/>
```

4. You also need to add the call to the above variables. To perform this operation, modify the string:

```
<jndiEntry value="jdbc:db2://${db.serverName}:${db.portNumber}/${db.databaseName}" jndiName="db.url"/>
```

as follows:

```
:clientRerouteAlternateServerName=${db.clientRerouteAlternateServerName};clientRerouteAlternatePortNumber=${db.clientRerouteAlternatePortNumber};"
```

. The resulting string must be as follows:

```
<jndiEntry
  value="jdbc:db2://
${db.serverName}:${db.portNumber}/${db.databaseName}:clientRerouteAlternateServerName=${db.clientRerouteAlternateServerName};clientRerouteAlternatePortNumber=${db.clientRerouteAlternatePortNumber};"
  jndiName="db.url"/>
```

5. Copy the edited file to the following paths:

UNIX

On UNIX operating systems

TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/overrides

Windows

On Windows operating systems

TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\overrides

6. Start WebSphere Application Server Liberty, as described in [Application server - starting and stopping on page 652](#).

Results

You have now configured your Db2database in HADR.

For more information about HADR configuration, see [An active-active high availability scenario on page 128](#). For more information about templates, see [Configuring IBM Workload Scheduler using templates on page 648](#).

Chapter 3. Configuring user authorization (Security file)

This chapter describes how to manage the authorizations to access scheduling objects assigned to IBM Workload Scheduler users.

Getting started with security

The way IBM Workload Scheduler manages security is controlled by a configuration file named **security file**. This file controls activities such as:

- Linking workstations.
- Accessing command-line interface programs and the Dynamic Workload Console.
- Performing operations on scheduling objects in the database or in the plan.

The security file for a fresh installation is located in the following path:

For a fresh installation of version 9.5.x or later

```
TWA_DATA_DIR
```

```
TWA_home\TWS
```

Upgraded environment originating from a version earlier than 9.5:

```
TWA_home/TWS
```

```
TWA_home\TWS
```

The security file contains some predefined access definitions:

- A full access definition for the user who installed the product, *<TWS_user>*.
- An access definition for the system administrator (root on UNIX™ or Administrator on Windows™).
- The following access definitions for the Dynamic Workload Console:
 - Analyst
 - Administrator
 - Operator
 - Developer

As you continue to work with the product, you might want to add more users with different roles and authorization to perform specific operations on a defined set of objects.

By default, the security model enabled when you perform a fresh installation is role-based. You can update your *security file* according to the role-based security model. The role-based security model allows you to update your *security file* with the security objects (domains, roles, and access control lists) that you define in the master domain manager database. You can define your security objects by using the **Manage Workload Security** interface from Dynamic Workload Console or the **composer** command-line program. The role-based security model is enabled through the setting of the **optman** `enRoleBasedSecurityFileCreation` global option. By default this option is set to `yes`. To use the classic security model instead, change the value to `no`. For details about updating the security file according to the role-based security model, see [Role-based](#)

[security model on page 181](#). For more information about the `enRoleBasedSecurityFileCreation` global option, see [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#).

If you are upgrading IBM Workload Scheduler version 9.3 or earlier, you might want to continue to use the classic security model that allows you to update the security file by using `dumpsec` and `makesec` commands from the command line. To continue to use the classic security model, the `enRoleBasedSecurityFileCreation` global option must be set to `no`. A new security file is then created and updated with the security objects (domains, roles, and access control lists) that you define in the master domain manager database by using the **Manage Workload Security** interface from Dynamic Workload Console or the **composer** command-line program. For details about updating the security file according to the classic security model, see [Classic security model on page 207](#).

Changes to `enRoleBasedSecurityFileCreation` global option are effective immediately. For details about the `enRoleBasedSecurityFileCreation` global option, see [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#).



Note: The role-based security model and the classic security model are mutually exclusive.

Starting from version 9.5, Fix Pack 3, the term **\$SLAVES**, which applies to all fault-tolerant agents in both the classic and role-based security models, was replaced with the term **\$AGENTS** with the same scope. No change is required to your existing scripts nor environments.

Role-based security model

The security objects that you define by using the **Manage Workload Security** interface from Dynamic Workload Console, or the **composer** command-line program, are:

Access control lists

Each access control list is defined assigning roles to users or groups, on a specific security domain or folder.

Folders

Each folder has its own level of authorization that defines the set of actions that users or groups can perform on each folder.

Security roles

Each role represents a certain level of authorization and includes the set of actions that users or groups can perform.

Security domains

Each domain represents the set of scheduling objects that users or groups can manage.

You save the definitions of your security objects in the master domain manager database. If the role-based security model is enabled for your system (see [Getting started with security on page 180](#)), whenever you need to update the security objects, your *security file* is updated and converted into an encrypted format (for performance and security), replacing the previous file. The system uses this encrypted *security file* from that point onwards.

Each time a user runs IBM Workload Scheduler programs, commands, and user interfaces, the product compares the name of the user with the user definitions in the *security file* to determine if the user has permission to perform those activities, on the specified scheduling objects, in a certain security domain.

When the security file is updated on the master domain manager, the security settings on the master domain manager are automatically synchronized with the backup master domain manager.



Note: The role-based security model does not support centralized security management on fault-tolerant agents. On fault-tolerant agents, the security is managed locally on each workstation.

Configuring role-based security from Dynamic Workload Console

About this task

This section explains how to create and modify the security objects by using the **Manage Workload Security** interface from Dynamic Workload Console.

To create or modify security objects, you must have permission for the **modify** action on the object type **file** with attribute **name=security**.

When working with the role-based security from the Dynamic Workload Console, be aware that access to security objects is controlled by an "optimistic locking" policy. When a security object is accessed by user "A", it is not actually locked. The security object is locked only when the object update is saved by user "A", and then it is unlocked immediately afterward. If in the meantime, the object is accessed also by user "B", he receives a warning message saying that the object has just been updated by user "A", and asking him if he wants to override the changes made by user "A", or refresh the object and make his changes to the updated object.

Managing access control list

About this task

Create an access control list by assigning security roles to users or groups, in a certain security domain or in one or more folders.

You can:

- Give access to user or group.
- View access for user or group.
- View access for Security Domain or folders.
- Manage accesses.

Give access to user or group

About this task

To give access to users or groups complete the following procedure:

1. From the navigation toolbar, click **Administration**.
2. In the **Workload Environment Design**, select **Manage Workload Security**.

Result

The Manage Workload Security panel opens.

3. From the drop-down list, select the IBM Workload Scheduler engine on which you want to manage security settings.
4. In the Access Control List section, click **Give access to user or group**.

Result

The Create Access Control List panel opens.

5. Enter the user name or the group name, the assigned roles, and the security domain or enter the folders assigned. For each Access Control List you can associate one or more folders.
6. Click **Save** to save the access definition in the database.
7. Click **Save and Create New** to save the access definition in the database and proceed to create a new access definition.
8. Click **Save and Exit** to save the access definition in the database and return to the Manage Workload Security panel.

Results

The access definition has now been added to the database. If the **optman** `enRoleBasedSecurityFileCreation` global option is set to yes, the access definition is activated in your security file.

View access for user or group

About this task

From Manage Workload Security, you can also view the access for users or groups.

1. In the Access Control List section of the Manage Workload Security panel, click **View access for user or group**.

Result

The input field for the user or group name is displayed.

2. Enter the user or group name and click **View**.

Result

The user or group access, with the assigned roles, to the related security domains is displayed.

View access for Security Domain

About this task

From Manage Workload Security, you can also view the access to a certain security domain.

1. In the Access Control section of the Manage Workload Security panel, click **View access for Security Domain**.

Result

The input field for the security domain name is displayed.

2. Enter the security domain name and click **View**.

Result

The list of users or groups, with the assigned roles, that have access to the specified security domain is displayed.

Manage accesses

About this task

From Manage Workload Security, you can also **remove** and **edit** existing access control lists.

1. In the Access Control List section of the Manage Workload Security panel, click **Manage Accesses**.

Result

The list of users or groups, with the assigned roles, that have access to the different security domains is displayed.

2. Select the access control list that you want to manage.
3. Select the action that you want to run on the selected access control list.

If you select the **edit** action, you can change only the roles associated with the access control list. You cannot change the associated domain. If you want to change the domain, you must **remove** the access control list and redefine the access control list with a new domain.

Managing folders

About this task

Folders help you to organize jobs and job streams into different categories. You can create folders with different levels of authorization that define the set of actions that users or groups can perform on each folder. More than one folder can be associated to the same Access Control List, and the level of security is also applied to the sub-folders.

You can also grant a user administrator privileges on a folder and its sub-folders so that this user can then create access control lists, with a dedicated role to manage the objects contained in the folder. See [Granting administrator permissions to a user on a folder on page 185](#).

Creating, renaming, or deleting a folder

About this task

To create, rename, or delete a folder:

1. From the navigation toolbar, click **Administration**.
2. In the **Security**, select **Manage Workload Security**.
3. From the drop-down list, select the IBM Workload Scheduler engine on which you want to manage security settings.

Result

The Manage Workload Security panel opens.

4. In the folders section, click **Manage Folder**.

Result

The **Manage Folders** panel opens. From this panel you can:

- Use the search box to search folders and job streams in the current view.
- Create a folder or subfolder, rename or delete a folder.

Granting administrator permissions to a user on a folder

About this task

The IBM Workload Scheduler administrator can grant administrator permissions to a user on a folder so that the user can freely define access control lists for other users on the same folder or any sub-folders. Users can then access the objects in the folder or sub-folders in accordance with the access permissions they have on the objects.

 **Tip:** Users with the FULLCONTROL security role assigned automatically have administrator rights on folders.

The following scenario demonstrates how Tim, the IBM Workload Scheduler administrator, grants Linda, the application administrator (app1_admin user), permissions on the folder named /PRD/APP1/, and how Linda grants access to Alex, the application user, to work with the objects defined in /PRD/APP1/FINANCE:

1. Tim, the IBM Workload Scheduler administrator, grants Linda, the app1_admin user, administrator permissions on the folder, /PRD/APP1/, through the definition of an access control list and by modifying her currently assigned role, APPADMIN. Optionally, Tim can create a new role with the appropriate permissions to achieve the same result.
 - a. From the **Manage Workload Security** page, Tim selects **Manage roles**.
 - b. He then selects her current role from the list, APPADMIN and clicks **Edit**.
 - c. He gives this role administrator permissions on folders by selecting **Delegate folder permission (folder - acl)** in the **Administrative Tasks** section and clicks **Save and Exit**.
 - d. Tim then creates an access control list for Linda, the app1_admin user. From the **Manage Workload Security** page, Tim selects **Give access to users or groups**.
 - e. From the **Create Access Control List** page, Tim selects **User name** from the drop-down and enters Linda's user name, app1_admin in the text box.
 - f. In the **Role** text box, Tim enters the APPADMIN role he modified earlier.
 - g. In the text box next to the **Folder** selection, Tim enters the folder path of the folders on which he wants to grant Linda permissions, /PRD/APP1/.

Result

Linda, the app1_admin user, with the APPADMIN role assigned, can now access the entire /PRD/APP1/ hierarchy, can create new folders in this path, and can assign access to these folders to other users.

2. Linda needs to give application users such as Alex, access to the objects in the /PRD/APP1/FINANCE folder. She creates a new access control list on the folder for the application user and assigns a role to this user.
 - a. From the **Manage Workload Security** page, Linda selects **Give access to users or groups** from the **Access Control List** section.
 - b. On the **Create Access Control List** page, Linda selects **User name** from the drop-down and enters the user name for Alex, the application user, app1_user.
 - c. Since Linda cannot create new roles, she specifies an existing role in the Role text box. Only Tim, the IBM Workload Scheduler administrator, can create new roles.
 - d. In the text box next to the **Folder** selection, Linda enters the folder path to the new sub-folder she created and to which Alex requires access: /PRD/APP1/FINANCE.

Result

Alex now can access the /PRD/APP1/FINANCE folder. He does not have access permissions on the /PRD/APP1 folder.

Managing security domains

Managing security domains

About this task

A security domain represents the set of objects that users or groups can manage. For example, you can define a domain that contains all objects named with a prefix 'AA'. If you want to specify different security attributes for some or all of your users, you can create additional security domains based on specific matching criteria.

You can filter objects by specifying one or more attributes for each security object type. You can include or exclude each attribute from the selection. For example, you can restrict access to a set of objects having the same name or being defined on the same workstation, or both.

For the attributes that you can specify for each security object type, see [Attributes for security object types on page 202](#).

For the values that you can specify for each object attribute, see [Specifying object attribute values on page 203](#).

You can create new security domains or manage existing security domains.

Create new security domain

About this task

To create a new security domain from the Dynamic Workload Console, complete the following procedure:

1. From the navigation toolbar, click **Administration**.
2. In the **Security**, select **Manage Workload Security**.

Result

The Manage Workload Security panel opens.

3. From the drop-down list, select the IBM Workload Scheduler engine on which you want to manage security settings.
4. In the Security Domains section, click **Create new Security Domain**.

Result

The security domain creation panel opens.

5. Enter the name of the security domain that you are creating and, optionally, the domain description.
6. Select the type of security domain that you want to define:

Simple

To define a filtering rule that applies to all object types. Events and actions are excluded from this filtering rule.

Complex

To define different filtering rules for different object types.

7. Use object filtering to select the set of security objects that users or groups can manage in the security domains that you are defining. You can use the wildcard character (*) when defining object attributes.

8. Click **View** to see the mapping between the set of security objects that you are assigning to the domain and the corresponding set of security objects in the classic security model.
9. Click **Save** to save the security domain definition in the database.
10. Click **Save and Exit** to save the security domain definition in the database and then exit.

Results

The security domain has now been added to the database. If the **optmanenRoleBasedSecurityFileCreation** global option is set to yes, the security domain is activated in your security file.

Edit security domain

About this task

From Manage Workload Security, you can also **remove**, **edit**, and **duplicate** existing security domains.

1. In the Security Domains section of the Manage Workload Security panel, click **Manage Security Domain**.

Result

The list of the available security domains is displayed.

2. Select the security domains that you want to manage.
3. Select the action that you want to run on the selected security domains.

Managing security roles

About this task

A security role represents a certain level of authorization and includes the set of actions that users or groups can perform on a set of object types.

For the list of actions that users or groups can perform on the different objects, for each IBM Workload Scheduler task, see [Actions on security objects on page 196](#).

A set of predefined security roles is available in the master domain manager database after the product has been installed:

- A full access definition for the user who installed the product, TWS_user with the default security role assigned named `FULLCONTROL`.
- An access definition for the system administrator, root on UNIX or Administrator on Windows.

You can create new security roles or manage existing security roles.

Create new role

About this task

To create a new security role from the Dynamic Workload Console, complete the following procedure:

1. From the navigation toolbar, click **Administration**.
2. In the **Security** select **Manage Workload Security**.

Result

The Manage Workload Security panel opens.

3. From the drop-down list, select the IBM Workload Scheduler engine on which you want to manage security settings.
4. In the Roles section, click **Create new role**.

Result

The Create Role panel opens.

5. Enter the name of the security role that you are creating and, optionally, the role description.
6. For each of the IBM Workload Scheduler tasks, assign the level of access for performing certain actions on specific object types to the security role. You can assign a predefined or a custom level of access.
7. Click **Show Details** to see the permissions associated to a predefined level of access, or to define your custom level of access. Tooltips are available to explain what a certain permission means for a particular object type.
8. Click **View** to see the mapping between the set of permissions that you are assigning and the corresponding set of permissions in the classic security model.
9. Click **Save** to save the security role definition in the database.
10. Click **Save and Exit** to save the security role definition in the database and return to the Manage Workload Security panel.

Results

The security role has now been added to the database. If the **optman** `enRoleBasedSecurityFileCreation` global option is set to yes, the security role is activated in your security file.

Manage roles

About this task

From Manage Workload Security, you can also **remove**, **edit**, and **duplicate** existing roles.

1. In the Roles section of the Manage Workload Security panel, click **Manage roles**.

Result

The list of the available security roles is displayed.

2. Select the security roles that you want to manage.
3. Select the action that you want to run on the selected roles.

Configuring role-based security with composer command-line

About this task

This section explains how to create or modify the security objects in the database, by using the **composer** command line interface.

To define security objects in the database, see:

[Access control list definition on page 189](#)

[Security domain definition on page 190](#)

[Security role definition on page 193](#)

To manage security objects in the database, see the section about managing objects with composer command-line, in the *User's Guide and Reference*.

To define or modify security objects, you must have permission for the **modify** action on the object type **file** with attribute **name=security**.

Security access control list definition

In the role-based security model, an access control list assigns security roles to users or groups, in a certain security domain or on a specific folder or folder hierarchy. You can include multiple security access control list definitions in the same text file, along with security domain definitions and security role definitions.

Each security access control list definition has the following format and arguments:

Syntax

```
accesscontrollist for security_domain_name
    user_or_group_name [security_role [, security_role]...]
    [user_or_group_name [security_role [, security_role]...]...]...
end
```

[**securitydomain** ...]

[**securityrole** ...]

```
accesscontrollist folder folder_name
    user_or_group_name [security_role [, security_role]...]
    [user_or_group_name [security_role [, security_role]...]...]...
end
```

Arguments

security_domain_name

Specifies the name of the security domain on which you are defining the access control list.

***user_or_group_name* [*security_role* [, *security_role*]**

Assigns one or more security roles to a certain user or group, on the specified security domain.

folder_name

Specifies the name of the folder to which you can associate an access control list. If the access control list is associated to a folder, then the security roles are valid for all of the objects contained in the folder. When specifying folder names, ensure you include a forward slash (/) before the folder name. Include a forward slash

after the folder name to indicate that the access control list is defined only on the folder specified, excluding any sub-folders. A folder name without a final forward slash indicates that the access control list is defined on the folder, as well as on any sub-folders.

Associating an access control list to a folder is a quick and easy method to grant access to all of the objects defined in a folder. If, instead, you need to restrict access to a subset of objects in the folder (for example, objects with a certain name, or specific userlogon, cpu or jcl), then using an access control list associated to a security domain is more effective. With security domains you can filter objects by specifying one or more attributes for each security object type.

See the following composer commands documented in the *User's Guide and Reference* when working with folders: Chfolder, Listfolder, Mkfolder, Rmfolder, and Renamefolder.

Example

Examples

The following example defines:

- An access control list on the `SECDOM1` domain
- An access control list on `SECDOM2` domain
- An access control list on the folder `/FOL1/FOL2/`
- An access control list on the folder `/APPS/APP1` and any sub-folders, if present, for example, `/APPS/APP1/APP1A`.

```
ACCESSCONTROLLIST FOR SECDOM1
  USER1 SECR0LE1, SECR0LE2, SECR0LE3
  USER2 SECR0LE4
  USER3 SECR0LE2, SECR0LE4
END

ACCESSCONTROLLIST FOR SECDOM2
  USER1 SECR0LE1, SECR0LE2
  USER2 SECR0LE3
END

ACCESSCONTROLLIST FOLDER /FOL1/FOL2/
  USER1 SECR0LE1
END
ACCESSCONTROLLIST FOLDER /APPS/APP1
  USER1 SECR0LE1
END
```

Security domain definition

In the role-based security model, a security domain represents the set of objects that users or groups can manage. For example, you can define a domain that contains all objects named with a prefix 'AA'. If you want to specify different security attributes for some or all of your users, you can create additional security domains based on specific matching criteria. You can filter objects by specifying one or more attributes for each security object type. You can include or exclude each attribute

from the selection. For example, you can restrict access to a set of objects having the same name or being defined on the same workstation, or both.

You can include multiple security domain definitions in the same text file, along with security role definitions and access control list definitions.

By default, a security domain named ALLOBJECTS is available. It contains all scheduling objects and cannot be renamed nor modified. If you try to rename it, a copy of the domain is created with the new name.

Each security domain definition has the following format and arguments:

Syntax

Each attribute can be included or excluded from the selection using the plus (+) and tilde (~) symbols.

```
securitydomain security_domain_name
  [description "description"]
  [common [[+|~]object_attribute [= value | @[, value | @]...]]]
  [object_type [[+|~]object_attribute [= value | @[, value | @]...]]]
  [object_type [[+|~]object_attribute [= value | @[, value | @]...]]]...
end

[securityrole ...]

[accesscontrollist ...]
```

Arguments

securitydomain *security_domain_name*

Specifies the name of the security domain. The name must start with a letter, and can contain alphanumeric characters, dashes, and underscores. It can contain up to 16 characters.

description "*description*"

Provides a description of the security domain. The description can contain up to 120 alphanumeric characters. The text must be enclosed within double quotes.

common [[+|~]*object_attribute* [= *value* | @[, *value* | @]...]]

Provides object attributes that are common to all the security object types.

object_type [[+|~]*object_attribute* [= *value* | @[, *value* | @]...]]

For each object type, specifies the attributes that apply to that object type and the related values. Each attribute can be included or excluded from the selection using the plus (+) and tilde (~) symbols. Wildcard (@) is supported for the attribute value: *object_attribute* =@ means that all the objects matching the object attribute must be included in the domain. For the use of wildcard (@), see the examples below.

For the attributes that you can specify for each security object type, see the section about managing security with the Dynamic Workload Console, in the *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

For the values that you can specify for each object attribute, see the section about managing security with the Dynamic Workload Console, in the *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

Example

Examples

The following example defines a security domain named `SECDOM1` and a security domain named `SECDOM2`:

```
securitydomain SECDOM1
description "Sample Security Domain1"
job      cpu = $THISCPU, # The workstation where the user logs on
          $MASTER, # The master workstation
          $AGENTS, # Any fault tolerant agent
          $REMOTES # Any standard agent
          cogs@    # Any workstation whose name starts with "cogs"
+ folder = / # Jobs defined in any folder
+ cpufolder = / # Workstations defined in any folder
+ name = A@    # Any job whose name starts with "A"
~ name = A2@   # but doesn't start with A2
+ jcltype = SCRIPTNAME # Allow only SCRIPTNAME type of job definition
+ jcltype = DOCOMMAND # Allow only DOCOMMAND type of job definition
+ logon = $USER, # Streamlogon is the conman/composer user
          $OWNER, # Streamlogon is the job creator
          $JCLOWNER, # Streamlogon is the OS owner of the file
          $JCLGROUP # Streamlogon is the OS group of the file
~ logon = root, twsuser # The job cannot logon as "root" or "twsuser"
+ jcl = "/usr/local/bin/@" # The jobs whose executable file that is
present in /usr/local/bin
~ jcl = "@rm@" # but whose JSDL definition does not contain the
string "rm"
end

securitydomain SECDOM2
description "Sample Security Domain2"
common      cpu=@+name=@
userobj     cpu=@ + cpufolder = /
job         cpu=@+ folder = / + cpufolder = /
schedule    cpu=@+name=AP@+ folder = / + cpufolder = /
resource    cpu=@ + folder = / + + cpufolder = /
prompt      folder = /
file        name=@
cpu         cpu=@ + folder = /
parameter   cpu=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = /
calendar    folder = /
report      name=@
eventrule   name=@ + folder = /
action      provider=@
event       provider=@
varitable   name=@ + folder = /
wkldapp     name=@ + folder = /
runcygrp    name=@ + folder = /
lob         name=@
folder      name=/
end
```

Security role definition

In the role-based security model, a security role represents a certain level of authorization and includes the set of actions that users or groups can perform. You can include multiple security role definitions in the same text file, along with security domain definitions and access control list definitions.

Each security role definition has the following format and arguments:

Syntax

```
securityrole security_role_name
  [description "description"]
    object_type access[=action[,action]...]
    [object_type access[=action[,action]...]...]
end

[securitydomain ...]

[accesscontrollist ...]
```

Arguments

securityrole*securityrolename*

Specifies the name of the security role. The name must start with a letter, and can contain alphanumeric characters, dashes, and underscores. It can contain up to 16 characters.

description "*description*"

Provides a description of the security role. The description can contain up to 120 alphanumeric characters. The text must be enclosed within double quotes.

object_type **access**[=*action*[,*action*]...]

For each object type, specifies a list of actions that users or groups can perform on that specific object type.

[Table 25: Security object types on page 193](#) shows the different object types and how they are referenced with **composer** and with the Dynamic Workload Console:

Table 25. Security object types

Object type - composer	Object type - Dynamic Workload Console	Description
action	Actions	Actions defined in scheduling event rules
calendar	Calendars	User calendars
cpu	Workstations	Workstations, domains, and workstation classes
event	Events	Event conditions in scheduling event rules

Table 25. Security object types
(continued)

Object type - composer	Object type - Dynamic Workload Console	Description
eventrule	Event Rules	Scheduling event rule definitions
file	Files	IBM Workload Scheduler database files
folder	Folders	The folder within which jobs and job streams are defined.
job	Jobs	Scheduled jobs and job definitions
parameter	Parameters	Local parameters
prompt	Prompts	Global prompts
report	Reports	The following reports in Dynamic Workload Console: RUNHIST Job Run History RUNSTATS Job Run Statistics WWS Workstation Workload Summary WWR Workstation Workload Runtimes SQL Custom SQL ACTPROD Actual production details (for current and archived plans) PLAPROD Planned production details (for trial and forecast plans)
resource	Resources	Scheduling resources
runcygrp	Run Cycle Groups	Run cycle groups
schedule	Job Streams	Job streams
userobj	User Objects	User objects
variable	Variable Tables	Variable tables

Table 25. Security object types
(continued)

Object type - composer	Object type - Dynamic Workload Console	Description
wkldappl	Workload Application	Workload application

Table 26: Actions that users or groups can perform on the different objects on page 195 shows the actions that users or groups can perform on the different objects.

Table 26. Actions that users or groups can perform on the different objects

Actions that users or groups can perform on the different objects			
acl	deldep	modify	stop
add	delete	release	submit
adddep	display	reply	submitdb
altpass	fence	rerun	unlink
altpri	kill	resetfta	unlock
build	limit	resource	use
cancel	link	run	
confirm	list	shutdown	
console	manage	start	

For the actions that users or groups can perform on a specific object type, for each of the IBM Workload Scheduler task, see the section about managing security roles with the Dynamic Workload Console, in the *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

Example

Examples

The following example defines security role `SECROLE1` and security role `SECROLE2`:

```
SECURITYROLE SECROLE1
DESCRIPTION "Sample Security Role"
SCHEDULE ACCESS=ADD,ADDDEP,ALTPRI,CANCEL,DELDEP,DELETE,
          DISPLAY,LIMIT,MODIFY,
RELEASE
RESOURCE ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,RESOURCE,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
PROMPT ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,REPLY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
```

```

FILE          ACCESS=BUILD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,UNLOCK
FOLDER        ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK,ACL
CPU           ACCESS=LIMIT,LINK,MODIFY,SHUTDOWN,START,STOP,UNLINK,LIST,UNLOCK,RUN
PARAMETER     ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,LIST,UNLOCK
CALENDAR      ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
REPORT        ACCESS=DISPLAY
EVENTRULE     ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,LIST,UNLOCK
ACTION        ACCESS=DISPLAY,SUBMIT,USE,LIST
EVENT         ACCESS=USE
VARIABLE      ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
WKLDAPPL      ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,LIST,UNLOCK
RUNCYGRP      ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
LOB           ACCESS=USE
END

SECURITYROLE SECROLE2
DESCRIPTION "Sample Security Role"
SCHEDULE     ACCESS=ADD,ADDDEP,ALTPRI,CANCEL,DELDEP,DELETE,
              DISPLAY,LIMIT,MODIFY,
RELEASE
RESOURCE     ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,RESOURCE,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
PROMPT       ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,REPLY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
END

```

The following example defines a new security role `APP_ADMIN`, for the user `APP1_ADMIN` and assigns administrator permissions on the folder hierarchy `/PRD/APP1/`, so that the `APP1_ADMIN` user can create access control lists to give other users access to the objects in this folder or its sub-folders:

Security role definition

```

SECURITYROLE APP_ADMIN
DESCRIPTION "Security Role"
JOB   ADD,MODIFY,SUBMITDB,USE,ADDDEP,RUN,RELEASE,REPLY,DELETE,DISPLAY,
      CANCEL,SUBMIT,CONFIRM,RERUN,LIST,DELDEP,KILL,UNLOCK,ALTPRI
SCHEDULE ADD,ADDDEP,ALTPRI,CANCEL,DELDEP,DELETE,DISPLAY,LIMIT,MODIFY,RELEASE
FOLDER   ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK,ACL

```

Security file

```

USER APP_ADMINofAPP1
CPU=@+LOGON="APP_ADMIN"
BEGIN
JOB   FOLDER="/PRD/APP1/", "/PRD/APP1" + CPUFOLDER = / ACCESS=ADD,ADDDEP,
      ALTPRI,CANCEL,SUBMIT,
      CONFIRM,RERUN,LIST,DELDEP,KILL,UNLOCK,ALTPRI
SCHEDULE FOLDER="/PRD/APP1/", "/PRD/APP1" + CPUFOLDER = / ACCESS=ADD,ADDDEP,
      ALTPRI,CANCEL,DELDEP,
      DELETE,DISPLAY,LIMIT,MODIFY,RELEASE
FOLDER NAME="/PRD/APP1/", "PRD/APP1" ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,USE,
      LIST,UNLOCK,ACL

```

Actions on security objects

The following tables show the actions that users or groups can perform on the different object types, for each IBM Workload Scheduler task. See in parenthesis the corresponding *actions* and *objects* values that you must use when defining role-based security with **composer** command line interface.

Table 27. Actions that users or groups can perform when designing and monitoring the workload

Design and Monitor Workload	
Actions that users or groups can perform	Security object types
List (list)	Jobs (job)
Display (display)	Job Streams (schedule)
Create (add)	User Objects (userobj)
Delete (delete)	Prompts (prompt)
Modify (modify)	Resources (resource)
Use (use)	Calendars (calendar)
Unlock (unlock)	Run Cycle Groups (runcygrp)
Actions on remote workstations while modeling jobs (cpu-run)	Variable Tables (vartable)
	Workload Application (wkldappl)
	Workflow Folders (folder)
	Parameters (parameter)

 **Note:** See in parenthesis the corresponding *actions* and *objects* values that you must use when defining role-based security with the **composer** command-line interface.

Table 28. Actions that users or groups can perform when modifying current plan

Modify current plan
Actions that users or groups can perform on the current plan
Add job stream dependency (schedule - adddep)
Add job dependency (job - adddep)
Remove job dependency (job - deldep)
Remove job stream dependency (schedule - deldep)
Change job priority (job - altpri)
Change job stream priority (schedule - altpri)
Cancel job (job - cancel)
Cancel job stream (schedule - cancel)
Rerun job (job - rerun)

Table 28. Actions that users or groups can perform when modifying current plan
(continued)

Modify current plan
Actions that users or groups can perform on the current plan
Confirm job (job - confirm)
Release job (job - release)
Release job stream (schedule - release)
Kill jobs (job - kill)
Reply to prompts (prompt - reply)
Reply to job prompts (job - reply)
Reply to job stream prompts (schedule - reply)
Alter user password (userobj - altpass)
Change jobs limit (schedule - limit)
Actions on job remote system (job - run)
Change resource quantity (resource - resource)



Note: See in parenthesis the corresponding *actions* and *objects* values that you must use when defining role-based security with the **composer** command line interface.

Table 29. Actions that users or groups can perform when submitting workload

Submit Workload
Workload definitions that can be added to the current plan
Only existing job definitions (job - submitdb)
Existing jobs definitions and ad hoc jobs (job - submit)
Existing job stream definitions (schedule - submit)

Table 29. Actions that users or groups can perform when submitting workload
(continued)

Submit Workload

Workload definitions that can be added to the current plan



Note: See in parenthesis the corresponding *actions* and *objects* values that you must use when defining role-based security with the **composer** command line interface.

Table 30. Actions that users or groups can perform when managing the workload environment

Manage Workload Environment

Actions that users or groups can perform on workstations, domains, and workstation classes

List workstations (cpu - list)

Display workstation details (cpu - display)

Create workstations (cpu - add)

Delete workstations (cpu - delete)

Modify workstations (cpu - modify)

Use workstations (cpu - use)

Unlock workstations (cpu - unlock)

Start a workstation (cpu - start)

Stop a workstation (cpu - stop)

Change limit (cpu - limit)

Change fence (cpu - fence)

Shutdown (cpu - shutdown)

Reset FTA (cpu - resetfta)

Link (cpu - link)

Unlink (cpu - unlink)

Use 'console' command from conman (cpu - console)

Upgrade workstation (cpu - manage)

Table 30. Actions that users or groups can perform when managing the workload environment
(continued)

Manage Workload Environment	
Actions that users or groups can perform on workstations, domains, and workstation classes	
	Note: See in parenthesis the corresponding <i>actions</i> and <i>objects</i> values that you must use when defining role-based security with the composer command line interface.

Table 31. Actions that users or groups can perform when managing event rules

Manage Event Rules	
Actions that users or groups can perform on event rules	
List event rules (eventrule - list)	
Display event rules details (eventrule - display)	
Create event rules (eventrule - add)	
Delete event rules (eventrule - delete)	
Modify event rules (eventrule - modify)	
Use event rules (eventrule - use)	
Unlock event rules (eventrule - unlock)	
Display actions in the event rules (action - display)	
Monitor triggered actions (action - list)	
Use action types in the event rules (action - use)	
Submit action (action - submit)	
Use events in the event rules (event - use)	
Use a File Monitor event on the workstation where the file resides. (event - display)	

Table 31. Actions that users or groups can perform when managing event rules
(continued)

Manage Event Rules	
Actions that users or groups can perform on event rules	
	Note: See in parenthesis the corresponding <i>actions</i> and <i>objects</i> values that you must use when defining role-based security with the composer command line interface.

Table 32. Administrative tasks that users or groups can perform

Administrative Tasks	
Administrative tasks that users or groups can perform	
View configuration (dump security and global options) (file - display)	
Change configuration (makesec, optman add) (file - modify)	
Delete objects definitions (file - delete)	
Unlock objects definitions (file - unlock)	
Allow planman deploy, prodsked and stageman (file - build)	
Delegate security on folders (folder - acl)	
	Note: See in parenthesis the corresponding <i>action</i> and <i>object</i> values that you must use when defining role-based security with the composer command-line interface.

Table 33. Actions that users or groups can perform on workload reports

Workload Reports	
Actions that users or groups can perform on workload reports	
Generate workload reports (display report)	Reports in Dynamic Workload Console
	RUNHIST
	Job Run History
	RUNSTATS
	Job Run Statistics
	WWS
	Workstation Workload Summary
	WWR
	Workstation Workload Runtimes

Table 33. Actions that users or groups can perform on workload reports
(continued)

Workload Reports	
Actions that users or groups can perform on workload reports	
	SQL
	Custom SQL
	ACTPROD
	Actual production details (for current and archived plans)
	PLAPROD
	Planned production details (for trial and forecast plans)



Note: See in parenthesis the corresponding *actions* and *objects* values that you must use when defining role-based security with the **composer** command line interface.

Table 34. Actions that users or groups can perform on folders.

Folders	
Actions that users or groups can perform on folders	
Access folders	
chfolder (display)	
listfolder (list or list and display)	
mkfolder (modify)	
rmfolder (delete)	
renamefolder (add)	



Note: See in parenthesis the corresponding *actions* and *objects* values that you must use when defining role-based security with the **composer** command line interface.

Attributes for security object types

Table 35: [Attributes for security object types on page 203](#) shows the attributes that you can specify for each security object type (see in parenthesis the corresponding object type and object attribute that you must use when defining security objects with the **composer** command line interface).

Table 35. Attributes for security object types

Security object type	Attribute Name (name)	Workstation (cpu)	Custom (custom)	JCL (jcl)	JCLtype (jcltype)	Logon (logon)	Provider (provider)	Type (type)	Host (host)	Port (port)	Folder (folder)	CPU Folder (cpu folder)
Actions (action)							✓	✓	✓	✓		
Calendars (calendar)	✓										✓	
Workstations (cpu)	✓							✓			✓	
Events (event)			✓				✓	✓				
Event rules (eventrule)	✓										✓	
Files (file)	✓											
Jobs (job)	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓					✓	✓
Parameters (parameter)	✓	✓									✓	✓
Prompts (prompt)	✓										✓	
Reports (report)	✓											
Resource (resource)	✓	✓									✓	
RunCycle groups (runcygrp)	✓										✓	
Job streams (schedule)	✓	✓									✓	✓
User objects (userobj)		✓				✓						✓
Variable tables (var table)	✓										✓	
Workload applications (wkldappl)	✓										✓	
Folders (folder)	✓											

For the values that are allowed for each object attribute, see [Specifying object attribute values on page 203](#).

Specifying object attribute values

The following values are allowed for each object attribute (see in parenthesis the corresponding object type and object attribute for the **composer** command line interface):

Name (name)

Specifies one or more names for the object type.

- For the Files (file) object type, the following values apply:

globalopts

Allows the user to set global options with the `optman` command. The following access types are allowed:

- Display access for `optman ls` and `optman show`
- Modify access for `optman chg`

prodsked

Allows the user to create, extend, or reset the production plan.

security

Allows the user to manage the security file.

Symphony

Allows the user to run **stageman** and **JnextPlan**.

trialsched

Allows the user to create trial and forecast plans or to extend trial plans.



Note: Users who have restricted access to files should be given at least the following privilege to be able to display other object types that is, Calendars (calendar) and Workstations (cpu):

```
file name=globalopts action=display
```

- For the **Variable Tables (variable)** object type, you can use the \$DEFAULT value for the **Name (name)** attribute to indicate the default variable table. This selects the table that is defined with the `isdefault` attribute.

Workstation (cpu)

Specifies one or more workstation, domain, or workstation class name. Workstations and workstation classes can optionally be defined in a folder. If this attribute is not specified, all defined workstations and domains can be accessed. Workstation variables can be used:

\$MASTER

The IBM Workload Scheduler master domain manager.

\$AGENTS

Any fault-tolerant agent.

\$REMOTES

Any standard agent.

\$THISCPU

The workstation on which the user is running the IBM Workload Scheduler command or program.

If you use the **composer** command line to define security domains, the following syntax applies:

```
cpu=[folder/]workstation]...
```

folder=foldername

Scheduling objects such as, jobs, job streams, and workstations, to name a few, can be defined in a folder. A folder can contain one or more scheduling objects, while each object can be associated to only one folder. The default folder is the root folder (/).

cpufolder=foldername

The folder within which the workstation or workstation class is defined.

Custom (custom)

Use this attribute to assign access rights to events defined in event plug-ins. The precise syntax of the value depends on the plug-in. For example:

- Specify different rights for different users based on SAP R/3 event names when defining event rules for SAP R/3 events.
- Define your own security attribute for your custom-made event providers.
- Specify the type of event that is to be monitored. Every event can refer to an event provider.

If you use **composer** command line to define security domains, the following syntax applies:

```
custom=value[,value]...
```

JCL (jcl)

Specifies the command or the path name of a job object's executable file. If omitted, all defined job files and commands qualify.

You can also specify a string that is contained in the task string of a JSDL definition to be used for pattern matching.

If you use **composer** command line to define security domains, the following syntax applies:

```
jcl="path" | "command" | "jsdl"
```

JCL Type (jcltype)

Specifies that the user is allowed to act on the definitions of jobs that run only scripts (if set to scriptname) or commands (if set to docommand). Use this optional attribute to restrict user authorization to actions on the definitions of jobs of one type only. Actions are granted for both scripts and commands when JCL Type (jcltype) is missing.

A user who is not granted authorization to work on job definitions that run either a command or a script is returned a security error message when attempting to run an action on them.

If you use **composer** command line to define security domains, the following syntax applies:

```
jcltype=[scriptname | docommand]
```

Logon (logon)

Specifies the user IDs. If omitted, all user IDs qualify.

You can use the following values for the **Logon (logon)** attribute to indicate default logon:

\$USER

Streamlogon is the conman/composer user.

\$OWNER

Streamlogon is the job creator.

\$JCLOWNER

Streamlogon is the OS owner of the file.

\$JCLGROUP

Streamlogon is the OS group of the file.

If you use **composer** command line to define security domains, the following syntax applies:

```
logon=username[,username]...
```

Provider (provider)

For **Actions (action)** object types, specifies the name of the action provider.

For **Events (event)** object types, specifies the name of the event provider.

If **Provider (provider)** is not specified, no defined objects can be accessed.

If you use **composer** command line to define security domains, the following syntax applies:

```
provider=provider_name[,provider_name]...
```

Type (type)

For **Actions (action)** object types, is the `actionType`.

For **Events (event)** object types, is the `eventType`.

For **Workstations (cpu)** object types, the permitted values are those used in composer or the Dynamic Workload Console when defining workstations, such as `manager`, `broker`, `fta`, `agent`, `s-agent`, `x-agent`, `rem-eng`, `pool`, `d-pool`, `cpuclass`, and `domain`.



Note: The value `master`, used in conman is mapped against the `manager` security attributes.

If **Type (type)** is not specified, all defined objects are accessed for the specified providers (this is always the case after installation or upgrade, as the type attribute is not supplied by default).

If you use **composer** command line to define security domains, the following syntax applies:

```
type=type[,type]...
```

Host (host)

For **Actions (action)** object types, specifies the TEC or SNMP host name (used for some types of actions, such as sending TEC events, or sending SNMP). If it does not apply, this field must be empty.

If you use **composer** command line to define security domains, the following syntax applies:

```
host=host_name
```

Port (port)

For **Actions (action)** object types, specifies the TEC or SNMP port number (used for some types of actions, such as sending TEC events, or sending SNMP). If it does not apply, this field must be empty.

If you use **composer** command line to define security domains, the following syntax applies:

```
port=port_number
```

Classic security model

A template file named `TWA_home/TWS/config/Security.conf` is provided with the product. During installation, a copy of the template file is installed as `TWA_home/TWS/Security.conf`, and a compiled, operational copy is installed as `TWA_home/TWS/Security`.

This version of the file contains a full access definition for the user who installed the product, `<TWS_user>`, and the system administrator (root on UNIX™ or Administrator on Windows™), who are the only users defined and allowed to connect to the user interfaces and to perform all operations on all scheduling resources.

Within the IBM Workload Scheduler network, using the security file you can make a distinction between local **root** users and the **root** user on the master domain manager by allowing local **root** users to perform operations affecting only their login workstations and providing the master domain manager **root** user the authorizations to perform operations affecting any workstation across the network.

As you continue to work with the product you might want to add more users with different roles and authorization to perform specific operations on a defined set of objects.

Do not edit the original `TWA_home/TWS/config/Security.conf` template, but follow the steps described in [Updating the security file on page 208](#) to make your modifications on the operational copy of the file.

Security management overview

The way IBM Workload Scheduler manages security is controlled by a configuration file named **security file**. This file controls activities such as:

- Linking workstations.
- Accessing command-line interface programs and the Dynamic Workload Console.
- Performing operations on scheduling objects in the database or in the plan.

In the file you specify for each user what scheduling objects the user is allowed to access, and what actions the user is allowed to perform on those objects. You can determine access by object type (for example, workstations or resources) and, within an object type, by selected attributes, such as the object's name or the workstation in the object's definition. You can use wildcards to select related sets of objects. Access rights can be granted on an "included" or an "excluded" basis, or a combination of both.

Whenever you need to change access permissions you modify the configuration file and convert it into an encrypted format (for performance and security), replacing the previous file. The system uses this encrypted *security file* from that point onwards.

Each time a user runs IBM Workload Scheduler programs, commands, and user interfaces, the product compares the name of the user with the user definitions in the *security file* to determine if the user has permission to perform those activities on the specified scheduling objects.

By default, the security on scheduling objects is managed locally on each workstation. This means that the system administrator or the `<TWS_user>` who installed the product on that system can decide which IBM Workload Scheduler users defined on that system can access which scheduling resources in the IBM Workload Scheduler network and what actions they can perform.

Alternatively, you can centralize control of how objects are managed on each workstation. This can be configured by setting the **enCentSec** global option. In this scenario, you configure all user permissions in the *security file* on the master domain manager. The encrypted version of the file is distributed automatically every time you run **JnextPlan**, so that all workstations have the file locally to determine the permissions of the users on that workstation.

For more information about centralized security, see [Centralized security management on page 212](#). For more information about global options, see [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#).

Updating the security file

About this task

By default, every workstation in an IBM Workload Scheduler network (domain managers, fault-tolerant agents, and standard agents) has its own security file. You can maintain that file on each workstation, or, if you enable centralized security management, you can create a security file on the master domain manager and copy it to each domain manager and agent, ensuring that all IBM Workload Scheduler users are assigned the required authorization in the file (see [Centralized security management on page 212](#)). Whether working on an agent workstation for an individual security file, or on the master domain manager to modify a centralized file, the steps are just the same; all that changes are the number of users you are defining - just those on the local system or all in the IBM Workload Scheduler network.

If you are updating or upgrading your fault-tolerant agents to version 9.5 Fix Pack 2 or later, you must manually update the security file on the fault-tolerant agents in your environment to add access to folders for all of the scheduling objects that can be defined or moved into folders. These updates are especially important if you plan to use the command line on the fault-tolerant agents to perform operations on the objects in folders. More specifically, if centralized security is enabled (`enCentSec / ts = YES`), then you must first update or upgrade all of the fault-tolerant agents in your environment to version 9.5 Fix Pack 2 or later before you begin using the folder feature. If centralized security management is not enabled

(enCentSec / ts = NO), all stanzas that reference CPU are automatically updated to include folder access, for example, `CPU CPU=@+FOLDER="/"`, unless you use wildcard characters (@) as matching criteria in your stanzas, for example, `CPU CPU=@HR`. In this case, if you want to be able to move these CPUs into folders, then you need to manually update those stanzas to include access to all folders, `CPU CPU=@HR+FOLDER="/"`.

Neither the IBM Workload Scheduler processes nor the WebSphere Application Server Liberty infrastructure needs to be stopped or restarted to update the security file. You just need to close any open conman user interfaces before running `makesec`.

To modify the security file, perform the following steps:

1. Configure the environment, running one of the following scripts:

In UNIX®:

- `./TWA_home/TWS/tws_env.sh` for Bourne and Korn shells
- `./TWA_home/TWS/tws_env.csh` for C shells

In Windows®:

- `TWA_home\TWS\tws_env.cmd`

2. Navigate to the following directory from where you can submit the `dumpsec` and `makesec` commands:

UNIX

`TWA_home/TWS`

Windows

`TWA_home\TWS`

3. Run the `dumpsec` command to decrypt the current security file into an editable configuration file. See [dumpsec on page 210](#).
4. Modify the contents of the editable security configuration file using the syntax described in [Configuring the security file on page 213](#).
5. Close any open conman user interfaces using the **exit** command.
6. Stop any connectors on systems running Windows™ operating systems.
7. Run the `makesec` command to encrypt the security file and apply the modifications. See [makesec on page 211](#).
8. If you are using local security, the file will be immediately available on the workstation where it has been updated.

If you are using centralized security (see [Centralized security management on page 212](#)), perform the following steps:

- a. If you are using a backup master domain manager, copy the file to it.
- b. Distribute the centralized file manually to all fault-tolerant agents in the network (not standard, extended, or broker agents), and store it in the following directory:

For a fresh installation of version 9.5.x or later

`TWA_DATA_DIR`

```
TWA_home\TWS
```

Upgraded environment originating from a version earlier than 9.5:

```
TWA_home/TWS
```

```
TWA_home\TWS
```

c. Run JnextPlan to distribute the Symphony file that corresponds to the new Security file.

See [dumpsec on page 210](#) and [makesec on page 211](#) for a full description of the commands.

dumpsec

Writes in an editable format the information contained in the compiled and encrypted security file. The output file can be edited and then used as input for the **makesec** command which compiles and activates the modified security settings.

Authorization

You must have **display** access to the security file and write permission in the *TWA_home/TWS* directory from where the command *must* be run.

Syntax

dumpsec **-v** | **-u**

dumpsec *security_file* [**>** *output_file*]

Comments

If no arguments are specified, the operational security file is sent to stdout. To create an editable copy of the security file, redirect the output of the command to an output file, using the redirect symbol.

Arguments

-v

Displays command version information only.

-u

Displays command usage information only.

security_file

Specifies the name of the security file to dump.

[> *output_file*]

Specifies the name of the output file, If omitted, the security file is output to the stdout.

Example

Examples

The following command dumps the operational security file (*TWA_home/TWS/Security*) to a file named **mysec**:

```
dumpsec > mysec
```

The following command dumps a security file named **sectemp** to **stdout**:

```
dumpsec sectemp
```

makesec

Compiles security definitions and installs the security file. Changes to the security file are recognized as soon as **makesec** has completed, or, in the case of centralized security, after **JnextPlan** has distributed it.



Note: Before running the **makesec** command, stop conman, and, on systems running Windows® operating systems, any connectors.

Authorization

You must have **modify** access to the security file and read permission in the *TWA_home/TWS* directory from where the command *must* be run.

Syntax

makesec **-v** | **-u**

makesec [**-verify**] *in_file*

Comments

The **makesec** command compiles the specified file and installs it as the operational security file (*../TWA_home/TWS/Security*). If the **-verify** argument is specified, the file is checked for correct syntax, but it is not compiled and installed.

Arguments

-v

Displays command version information only.

-u

Displays command usage information only.

-verify

Checks the syntax of the user definitions in *in_file*. The file is not compiled and installed as the security file.

in_file

Specifies the name of a file or set of files containing user definitions. Syntax checking is performed automatically when the security file is installed.

Example

Examples

Example 1: Modifying the security file definitions - full scenario

The following example shows how to modify the security file definitions:

1. An editable copy of the operational security file is created in a file named `tempsec` with the `dumpsec` command:

```
dumpsec > tempsec
```

2. The user definitions are modified with a text editor:

```
edit tempsec
```

3. The file is then compiled and installed with the **makesec** command:

```
makesec tempsec
```

Example 2: Compiling user definitions from multiple files

The following command compiles user definitions from the fileset `userdef*` and replaces the operational security file:

```
makesec userdef*
```

Centralized security management

An IBM Workload Scheduler environment where centralized security management is enabled is an environment where all workstations share the same security file information contained in the security file stored on the master domain manager and the IBM Workload Scheduler administrator on the master domain manager is the only one who can add, modify, and delete entries in the security file valid for the entire IBM Workload Scheduler environment.

This is configured with the **enCentSec** global option. By default the value assigned to the **enCentSec** option is **no**.

To set central security management, the IBM Workload Scheduler administrator must run the following steps on the master domain manager:

1. Use the **optman** command line program, to set the value assigned to the **enCentSec** global property to **yes**. For information on how to manage the global properties using **optman**, see [Setting global options on page 13](#).
2. Save the information in the security file into an editable configuration file using the [dumpsec on page 210](#) command.
3. Set the required authorizations for all IBM Workload Scheduler users, as described in [Configuring the security file on page 213](#)
4. Close any open **conman** user interfaces using the **exit** command.
5. Stop any connectors on systems running Windows® operating systems.
6. Compile the security file using the [makesec on page 211](#) command.
7. If you are using a backup master domain manager, copy the compiled security file to it as soon as possible.
8. Distribute the compiled security file to all the workstations in the environment and store it in their `TWA_home/TWS` directories.

9. Run **JnextPlan** to update the security information distributed with the *Symphony* file.

The value of the checksum of the newly compiled security file is encrypted and loaded into the *Symphony* file and distributed to all the workstations in the IBM Workload Scheduler network.

On each workstation, when a link is established or when a user connects to a user interface or attempts to issue commands on the plan, either with **conman** or the Dynamic Workload Console, IBM Workload Scheduler compares the value of the checksum in the security file delivered with the *Symphony* file with the value of the checksum of the security file stored on the workstation. If the values are equal, the operation is allowed. If the values are different, the operation fails and a security violation message is issued.

Centralized security usage notes

The following are some considerations to be aware of if centralized security management is enabled in your IBM Workload Scheduler environment.

When centralized security is enabled (enCentSec / ts = YES), and you plan to start using the folder feature to define or move scheduling objects into dedicated folders, then you must first update or upgrade all of the fault-tolerant agents in your environment to version 9.5 Fix Pack 2 or later. If centralized security management is not enabled (enCentSec / ts = NO), all stanzas that reference CPU are automatically updated to include folder access, for example, `CPU CPU=@+FOLDER="/"`, unless you use wildcard characters (@) as matching criteria in your stanzas, for example, `CPU CPU=@HR`. In this case, if you want to be able to move these CPUs into folders, then you need to manually update those stanzas to include access to all folders, `CPU CPU=@HR+FOLDER="/"`.

In a network with centralized security management, two workstations are unable to establish a connection if one of them has **enCentSec** turned off in its *Symphony* file or if their security file information does not match.

The only exception to the security file matching criteria introduced by the centralized security management mechanism is that a workstation must always accept incoming connections from its domain manager, regardless of the result of the security file matching process.

Centralized security does not apply to IBM Workload Scheduler operations for which the *Symphony* file is not required. Commands that do not require the *Symphony* file to run use the local security file. For example, the `parms` command, used to modify or display the local parameters database, continues to work according to the local security file, even if centralized security is active and the local security file differs from the centralized security rules.

If a workstation's security file is deleted and re-created, the checksum of the new security file will not match the value in the *Symphony* file. In addition, a run-number mechanism associated with the creation process of the *Symphony* file ensures prevention from tampering with the file.

Configuring the security file

In the security file you can specify which scheduling objects a user can manage and how. You define these settings by writing user definitions. A user definition is an association between a name and a set of users, the objects they can access, and the actions they can perform on the specified objects.

When defining user authorization consider that:

- When commands are issued from the **composer** command line program, the user authorizations are checked in the security file of the master domain manager since the methods used to manage the entries in the database are invoked on the master domain manager. Therefore the user must be defined:
 - As system user on the system where the master domain manager is installed.
 - In the security file on the master domain manager with the authorizations needed to run the allowed commands on the specific objects.
- When commands are issued from the **conman** command line program, the user must be authorized to run the specific commands in the security file both on the connecting workstation and on the master domain manager where the command actually runs.

The security file is parsed one line at a time, thus any given line in the security file has been assigned a maximum length of 32768 characters. Since during the encryption process (makesec), one extra character is added to any string value in order to store its length, the number of "visible" characters could actually be more or less than 32768. As an example, consider the following line:

```
CPU=@+LOGON=test1, test2
```

The actual number of characters written into the encrypted Security file is determined according to this formula:

```
"CPU=" : 2 chars (token)
"@ " : 2 chars (1 + 1 for the length)
"LOGON=" : 2 chars (token)
"test1," : 7 chars (6 + 1 for the length) (string)
"test2" : 6 chars (5 + 1 for the length) (string)
-----
total : 19 chars
```

However, if counting the actual number of visible characters, there are 23 characters including the single space between test1 and test2 and the comma separating them.



Note: The "CPU" and "LOGON" each have a real length of two characters even though they actually have three and five characters respectively. This is because certain keywords are "tokenized." This can actually help reduce the apparent character count in this case.

The configuration of the security file is described in these sections:

- [Security file syntax on page 215](#)
- [Specifying user attributes on page 216](#)
- [Specifying object types on page 223](#)
- [Specifying object attributes on page 225](#)
- [Specifying access on page 230](#)
- [The <TWS_user> - special security file considerations on page 253](#)

Security file syntax

The syntax of the security file is as follows:

Syntax

[# comment]

user *definition_name* *user_attributes*

begin *[* comment]*

object_type [*object_attributes*]. **access**[=*keyword*[,*keyword*]...]

[*object_type* [*object_attributes*]. **access**[=*keyword*[,*keyword*]...]]...

end | **continue**

Arguments

[# | *] comment

All text following a pound sign or an asterisk and at least one space is treated as a comment. Comments are not copied into the operational security file installed by the **makesec** command.

user *definition_name*

Specifies the name of the user definition. The name can contain up to 36 alphanumeric characters and must start with an alphabetic character.

user_attributes

Contains one or more attributes that identify the user or users to whom the definition applies. For details of how to define user attributes, see [Specifying user attributes on page 216](#).

begin

Begins the part containing object statements and accesses within the user definition.

object_type

Identifies the type of object (for example: workstation, resource, or prompt) to which access is to be given for the specified user or users. All object types that the specified user or users needs to access must be explicitly defined. If they are not, no access will be given. For details of how to define object types, see [Specifying object types on page 223](#).

object_attributes

Contains one or more attributes that identify the specific objects of the defined object type to which the same access is to be given. If no object attributes are defined, access is given to all objects of the defined object type. For details of how to define object attributes, see [Specifying object attributes on page 225](#).

access[=keyword[,keyword]...]

Describes the access to the specified objects given to the selected users. If none is specified (by specifying just the keyword "access") no access is given to the associated objects. If **access=@** then all access rights are assigned to the specified users. For details of how to define access, see [Specifying access on page 230](#).

continue

Allows a user to inherit authorization from multiple *stanzas*. Add the `Continue` keyword before the `Begin` keyword of each subsequent *stanza* to request that IBM Workload Scheduler must not stop at the first *stanza*, but must continue including also the following *stanzas* that match the user definition. The user gets the accesses for the first matching entry of each *stanza*. For an example of the use of the `Continue` keyword, see [Users logged into multiple groups \[continue keyword\] on page 259](#).

end

Terminates the user definition. The users defined in the user definition that terminates with an `end` statement do not match any subsequent user definition.

Wildcards

The following wildcard characters are permitted in user definition syntax:

?

Replaces one alphanumeric character.

@

Replaces zero or more alphanumeric characters.

For information about variables supplied with the product that can be used in object attributes, refer to [Using variables in object attribute definitions on page 230](#). Refer to [Sample security file on page 254](#) for an example on how to use variables.

Specifying user attributes

The user attributes define *who* has the access that is going to be subsequently defined. They can identify one user, a selection of users, a group of users, a selection of groups of users, or all users. You can also exclude one or more specific users or groups from a selection. As well as being identified by logon ID and group name, users can also be described by the workstation from which they log on. And finally, you can mix selection criteria, for example selecting all users in a named group that can access from a set of workstations identified by a wildcard, but excluding a specific set of users identified by their logon IDs.

A user must be uniquely identified. If different users have the same identifier, an error is issued when `makesec` command is run. You must edit the security file by using `dumpsec` command, assign a unique identifier to users, and rerun the `makesec` command.

The general syntax

You make this selection by specifying one or more user attributes. Each user attribute is specified as follows:

user_attribute_type=value

user_attribute_type

Can be *cpu* (workstation), *group*, or *logon*

value

Identifies an individual *cpu* (workstation), *group*, or *logon*, or, by using wildcards, can identify a set of any of these.

Including or excluding

Each attribute can be *included* or *excluded* from the selection.

Thus, for each *attribute type*, your options are one of the following:

Include all

This is the default. Thus, for example, if you want to include all *groups*, you need add no user attribute with respect to any group.

Include a selection

This can be defined in one of these ways:

- By specifically including users you want to select (individuals or one or more sets)
- By specifically excluding (from the *include all* default) all users you do *not* want to select
- By specifically including a set of users and then excluding some of those contained in the set

Which of these options you choose is determined by which is easier to specify.

Using the include or exclude symbols

Include

Precede the user attribute expression by a plus (+) sign. All users identified by the expression will be selected, unless they are also selected by an *exclude* expression. If the first attribute in your definition is an *include*, it does not need to have a (+) sign defined, because the sign is implicit.

The default (if you specify no user attributes) is to include all users, on all workstations, in all groups, so if you want to define, for example, all users except one named user, you would just supply the *exclude* definition for the one user.

Exclude

Precede the user attribute expression by a tilde (~) sign. All users identified by the expression will *never* be selected, regardless of if they are identified by any *include* expressions.

Selection expressions

You can use the following different types of selection expression:

Basis selection expressions

Include only one attribute

user_attribute_type=value

For example, to include one named user logon ID, and exclude all other users:

```
logon=jsmith1
```

Exclude one attribute

~user_attribute_type=value

For example, to exclude one set of logon IDs identified by a wildcard (those that start with the letter "j"), but include all others:

```
~logon=j@
```

Include only several attributes of the same type

user_attribute_type=value[,value]...

For example, to include three specific users and exclude all others:

```
logon=jsmith1,jbrown1,jjones1
```

Exclude several attributes of the same type

~user_attribute_type=value[,value]...

For example, to exclude three specific users and include all others:

```
~logon=jsmith1,jbrown1,jjones1
```

Complex selection expressions

Include users identified by different selection expressions

basic_selection_expression[+basic_selection_expression]...

The selection expressions can be of the same or a different attribute type:

Same attribute type

An example of the same attribute type is the following, which selects all the groups beginning with the letter "j", as well as those with the letter "z":

```
group=j@+group=z@
```

If the first selection identifies 200 users, and the second 300, the total users selected is 500.

Different attribute type

An example of selection expressions of a different attribute type is the following, which selects all the groups beginning with the letter "j", as well as all users with IDs beginning with a "6":

```
group=j@+logon=6@
```

If the first selection identifies 200 users, and the second 20, of whom 5 are also in the first group, the total users selected is 5.

Exclude users identified in one selection expressions from those identified in another

basic_selection_expression[~basic_selection_expression]...

Same attribute type

The selection expressions can be of the same attribute type, provided that the second is a subset of the first. An example of the same attribute type is the following, which selects all the workstations beginning with the letter "j", but excludes those with a "z" as a second letter:

```
group=j@~group=jz@
```

If the first selection identifies 200 users, and the second 20, the total users selected is 180. Note that if the second expression had not been a subset of the first, the second expression would have been ignored.

Different attribute type

Selection expressions of a different attribute type do not have to have a subset relationship, an example being the following, which selects the group "mygroup", but excludes from the selection all users in the group with IDs beginning with a "6":

```
group=mygroup~logon=6@
```

If the first selection identifies 200 users, and the second 20, of whom 5 are also in the first group, the total users selected is 195.

Multiple includes and excludes

You can link together as many include and exclude expressions as you need to identify the precise subset of users who require the same access. The overall syntax is thus:

[~]user_attribute_type=value[,value]... [{+|~}user_attribute_type=value[,value]...



Note: Making your *first* user attribute an *exclude* means that *all* user attributes of that type are selected *except* the indicated *value*. Thus, *~user_attribute_type=value* equates to the following:

user_attribute_type=@~same_user_attribute_type=value

However, if you use this syntax, you cannot, and do not need to, specifically add "*+user_attribute_type=@*", after the negated item, so you do not define:



`~user_attribute_type=value+same_user_attribute_type=@`

Order of user definition

You must order user definitions from most specific to least specific. IBM Workload Scheduler scans the security file from top-down, with each user ID being tested against each definition in turn. If the user ID is satisfied by the definition, it is selected, and the matching stops.

For example:

Incorrect:

```
#First User Definition in the Security File
USER TwsUser
CPU=@+LOGON=<TWS_user>
Begin
job name=@ access=modify
End

#Second User Definition in the Security File
USER Twsdomain:TwsUser
CPU=@+LOGON=TWSDomain\\<TWS_user>
Begin
job name=@ access=display
End
```

The definitions are intended to determine the following:

1. Users on all workstations with a logon of "TWS_user" will be given "modify" access to all jobs
2. Users on all workstations with a logon of "TWSDomain\TWS_user" will be given "display" access to all jobs

However, all users with a logon of "TWS_user" will satisfy the first rule, regardless of their domain, and will be given "modify" access to all jobs. This is because defining a user without its domain is a shorthand way of defining that user ID in *any* domain; it is the equivalent of "@\TWS_User". So the second rule will never be satisfied, for any user, because the matching for the "TWS_user" stops after a successful match is made.

Correct

```
#First User Definition in the Security File
USER Twsdomain:Tws_User
CPU=@+LOGON="TWSDomain\\<TWS_user>"
Begin
job name=@ access=display
End

#Second User Definition in the Security File
USER Tws_User
CPU=@+LOGON=<TWS_user>
Begin
job name=@ access=modify
End
```


By putting the more specific definition first, both object access definitions are applied correctly.

See [Sample security file on page 254](#) for a practical example.

User attribute types - detailed description

The *user_attribute_types* and their associated *values* can be any of the following:

cpu={[/folder/]workstation|/[/folder/]workstation|/[/@]}

where:

workstation

Specifies the workstation on which the user is logged in. Wildcard characters are permitted. The following IBM Workload Scheduler variables can be used:

\$master

Means that the user is logged in on the IBM Workload Scheduler master domain manager.

\$manager

Means that the user is logged in on the IBM Workload Scheduler domain manager.

\$thiscpu

Means that the user is logged in on the IBM Workload Scheduler workstation on which the security check is running.

@

Specifies that the user is accessing IBM Workload Scheduler with the Dynamic Workload Console, or is logged in on any IBM Workload Scheduler workstation.

group=groupname

Specifies the name of the group of which the user is a member. Available for UNIX™ users. Wildcard characters are permitted.

logon={user name|@}

where:

user name

Specifies the user ID with which the user is logged in on a IBM Workload Scheduler workstation. Wildcard characters are permitted. The **cpu=** attribute must be set to a specific workstation name (no wildcards) or @.

The *user name* value can have one of the following formats:

user name

The Windows user. For example if you use the *user1* value in the logon field, in the *Security* file you have the following line:

```
.....
logon=user1
.....
```

domain\user name

The user belongs to a Windows domain. Insert the escape character '\' before the '\' character in the domain\user name value. For example if you use the MYDOMAIN\user1 value in the logon field, in the Security file you have the following line:

```
.....
logon=MYDOMAIN\user1
.....
```

user name@internet_domain

The user belongs to an internet domain. The user name is in User Principal Name (UPN) format. UPN format is the name of a system user in an email address format. The user name is followed by the "at sign" followed by the name of the Internet domain with which the user is associated.

Insert the escape character '\' before the '@' character in the user name@internet_domain value. For example if you use the administrator@bvt.com value in the logon field, in the Security file you have the following line:

```
.....
logon=administrator\@bvt_env.com
.....
```

For more information about the use of the wildcard with the domain\user name and user name@internet_domain format in the Security file, see [Sample security file on page 254](#).



Note:

1. If the WebSphere Application Server Liberty security configuration option **useDomainQualifiedUserNames** is set to *true*, each user ID defined in the security file must have the format domain\username to use the product from one of the following:

- **composer**
- **Dynamic Workload Console**
- **logman**
- **optman**
- **planman**

For more information on WebSphere Application Server Liberty security configuration, see [Changing the security settings on page 644](#).



2. If the user is defined on a Windows™ 2003 system, or when upgrading the Windows™ operating system from an older version to one of those mentioned above, make sure you add the **Impersonate a client after authentication** right to the user settings.

@

Specifies any user logged in with any name or being a member of any IBM administrators group.

Specifying object types

Specify one or more object types that the user or users in the associated user definition is authorized to access. If you specify the object type but no attributes, the authorized actions defined for the user with the **access** keyword apply to all the objects of that type defined in the IBM Workload Scheduler domain. If an object type from the following list is omitted for a user or users, no objects of that type can be accessed.

The object types are the following:

action

Actions defined in scheduling event rules

calendars

User calendars

cpu

Workstations, domains and workstation classes

event

Event conditions in scheduling event rules

eventrule

Scheduling event rule definitions

file

IBM Workload Scheduler database file

folder

The folder within which scheduling objects such as, jobs, job streams, and workstations, to name a few, are defined.

job

Scheduled jobs and job definitions

parameter

Local parameters.

prompt

Global prompts

report

The reports on the Dynamic Workload Console that have the following *names*:

RUNHIST

Job Run History

RUNSTATS

Job Run Statistics

WWS

Workstation Workload Summary

WWR

Workstation Workload Runtimes

SQL

Custom SQL

ACTPROD

Actual production details (for current and archived plans)

PLAPROD

Planned production details (for trial and forecast plans)

Permission to use these reports is granted by default to the *<TWS_user>* on fresh installations.

resource

Scheduling resources

runcygrp

Run cycle groups

schedule

Job streams

userobj

User objects

variable

Variable tables. This includes authorization to the variable definitions in the tables.

wkldappl

Workload applications

Specifying object attributes

Specify one or more attributes that identify a set of objects that the user of the user definition is authorized to access. If you specify the object type but no object sets, the authorized actions defined for the user with the **access** keyword apply to all the objects of that type defined in the IBM Workload Scheduler domain.

The general syntax

Each object attribute is specified as follows:

object_attribute=value

object_attribute

Object attributes differ according to the object. All objects can be selected by *name*, but some, *jobs*, for example, can be selected by the *workstation* on which they run. See [Object attribute on page 225](#) for full details of which attributes are available for each object type.

value

Identifies an individual object, or, by using wildcards, a set of objects. See [Specifying object attributes on page 225](#) for full details of which attributes are available for each object type.

Object attribute

[Specifying object attributes on page 225](#) lists object attributes that are used to identify a specific set of objects from all objects of the same type. For example, access can be restricted to a set of resource objects having the same name or being defined on the same workstation, or both.

Table 36. Object attribute types for each object type

Attribute Object	name	cpu	folder	cpu folder	custom	jcl	jcltype	logon	provider	type	host	port
action									✓	✓	✓	✓
calendar	✓		✓									
cpu (workstation)		✓		✓						✓		
event					✓				✓	✓		
eventrule	✓		✓									
file	✓											
folder	✓											
job	✓	✓	✓	✓		✓	✓	✓				
lob	✓											
parameter	✓	✓	✓	✓								

Table 36. Object attribute types for each object type (continued)

Attribute	name	cpu	folder	cpu folder	custom	jcl	jcltype	logon	provider	type	host	port
prompt	✓		✓									
report	✓											
resource	✓	✓	✓	✓								
runcygrp	✓		✓									
schedule (job stream)	✓	✓	✓	✓								
userobj		✓		✓				✓				
variable	✓		✓									
wkldappl	✓		✓									

**Note:**

- Granting access to a workstation class or a domain means to give access just to the object itself, and grant no access to the workstations in the object.
- When you specify access rights on a folder, the access rights apply also to all sub-folders.

Including or excluding

Each attribute can be *included* or *excluded* from the selection using the plus (+) and tilde (~) symbols, in the same way as for the user attributes.

Selection expressions

The detailed syntax and use of the selection expressions for objects is the same as that used to select users:

```
[~]object_attribute=value[,value]...[+|~]object_attribute=value[,value]...
```

Order of object definition

You must order object definitions from most specific to least specific, in the same way as for user attributes. For example,

Incorrect

```
job name=@ access=display
job name=ar@ access=@
```

In this case, a job with the name beginning with "ar" would satisfy the first definition, and so would be given the display access, not all access.

Correct

```
job name=ar@ access=@
job name=@ access=display
```

Ensure that you order object definitions from most specific to least specific also when you use the `Continue` keyword.

The `Continue` keyword allows a user to inherit authorization from multiple *stanzas*. The user receives accesses as defined in the first matching entry of each *stanza* that matches the user definition. For an example of a security file with the `Continue` keyword, see [Users logged into multiple groups \[continue keyword\] on page 259](#)

Specifying object attribute values

The following describes the values allowed for each object attribute type:

name=name[,name]...

Specifies one or more names for the object type. Wildcard characters are permitted. Multiple names must be separated by commas.

- The following values apply to the file object type:

globalopts

Allows the user to set global options with the `optman` command. Gives the following access types:

- Display access for `optman ls` and `optman show`
- Modify access for `optman chg`

prodsked

Allows the user to create, extend, or reset the production plan.

security

Allows the user to manage the security file.

Symphony

Allows the user to run **stageman** and **JnextPlan**.

trialsched

Allows the user to create trial and forecast plans or to extend trial plans.



Note: Users who have restricted access to files should be given at least the following privilege to be able to display other objects (ie. calendars and cpus):

```
file name=globalopts access=display
```

- For the event object type use one or more of the event type names listed in the *TWSObjectsMonitor* events table or the *FileMonitor* events table in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*.

- For the action object type use one or more of the action type names listed in the table *Action types by action provider* in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*.
- For the **variable** object type, you can use the \$DEFAULT value for the **name** attribute to indicate the default variable table. This selects the table defined with the `isdefault` attribute.

cpu=workstation + folder=foldername

Specifies one or more workstation, domain, or workstation class names. Workstations and workstation classes can optionally be defined in a folder; if defined, the folder can be specified in the folder attribute. Wildcard characters are permitted. Multiple names must be separated by commas. If this attribute is not specified, all defined workstations and domains can be accessed. Workstation variables can be used - see [Using variables in object attribute definitions on page 230](#).

folder=foldername

Scheduling objects such as, jobs, job streams, and workstations, to name a few, can be defined in a folder. A folder can contain one or more scheduling objects, while each object can be associated to only one folder. The default folder is the root folder (/).

cpufolder=foldername

The folder within which the workstation or workstation class is defined.

custom=value[,value]...

Use this attribute to assign access rights to events defined in event plug-ins. The precise syntax of the value will depend on the plug-in. For example:

- Specify different rights for different users based on SAP R/3 event names when defining event rules for SAP R/3 events.
- Define your own security attribute for your custom-made event providers.
- Specify the type of event that is to be monitored. Every event can be referred to an event provider.

jcl="path" | "command" | "jsdl"

Specifies the command or the path name of a job object's executable file. The command or path must be enclosed in double quotation marks (" "). Wildcard characters are permitted. If omitted, all defined job files and commands qualify.

You can also specify a string contained in the task string of a JSDL definition to be used for pattern matching. Ensure that the string begins and ends with the @ wildcard character and that it is entirely enclosed in double quotation marks as follows: "@my_string>@".

jcltype=[scriptname | docommand]

Specifies that the user is allowed to act on the definitions of jobs that run only scripts (if set to scriptname) or commands (if set to docommand). Use this optional attribute to restrict user authorization to actions on the definitions of jobs of one type or the other only. Actions are granted for both scripts and commands when jcltype is missing.

A user who is not granted authorization to work on job definitions that run either a command or a script is returned a security error message when attempting to run an action on them.

logon=*username*[,...]

Specifies the user IDs. Wildcard characters are permitted. Multiple names must be separated by commas. If omitted, all user IDs qualify.

The user ID can be a Windows domain user or an internet domain user and must be defined in one of the following formats:

domain\user name

The user belongs to a Windows domain. Insert the escape character '\' before the '\' character in the domain\user name value. For example if you use the MYDOMAIN\user1 value in the logon field, in the Security file you have the following line:

```
.....
logon=MYDOMAIN\user1
.....
```

user name@internet_domain

The user belongs to an internet domain. The user name is in User Principal Name (UPN) format. UPN format is the name of a system user in an email address format. The user name is followed by the "at sign" followed by the name of the Internet domain with which the user is associated.

Insert the escape character '\' before the '@' character in the user name@internet_domain value. For example if you use the administrator@bvt.com value in the logon field, in the Security file you have the following line:

```
.....
logon=administrator\@bvt_env.com
.....
```

provider=*provider_name*[,...]

For **action** object types, specifies the name of the action provider.

For **event** object types, specifies the name of the event provider.

Wildcard characters are permitted. Multiple names must be separated by commas. If **provider** is not specified, no defined objects can be accessed.

type=*type*[,...]

For **action** object types, is the `actionType`.

For **event** object types, is the `eventType`.

For **cpu** object types, the permitted values are those used in composer or the Dynamic Workload Console when defining workstations, such as `manager`, `broker`, `fta`, `agent`, `s-agent`, `x-agent`, `rem-eng`, `pool`, `d-pool`, `cpuclass`, and `domain`.



Note: The value `master`, used in `conman` is mapped against the `manager` security attributes.

Wildcard characters are permitted. Multiple names must be separated by commas. If **type** is not specified, all defined objects are accessed for the specified providers (this is always the case after installation or upgrade, as the type attribute is not supplied by default).

host=host_name

For **action** object types, specifies the TEC or SNMP host name (used for some types of actions, such as sending TEC events, or sending SNMP). If it does not apply, this field must be empty.

port=port_number

For **action** object types, specifies the TEC or SNMP port number (used for some types of actions, such as sending TEC events, or sending SNMP). If it does not apply, this field must be empty.

Using variables in object attribute definitions

The following variables supplied with the product can be used in object attributes:

Workstation identifiers

\$master

The IBM Workload Scheduler master domain manager.

\$manager

The IBM Workload Scheduler domain manager.

\$thiscpu

The workstation on which the user is running the IBM Workload Scheduler command or program.

Variable table identifiers

\$default

The name of the current default variable table.

Specifying access

About this task

Specify the type of access the selected users are allowed to have to the specified objects as follows:

`access[=keyword[,keyword]...]`

- To specify that no actions are permitted, use **access=**
- To specify that all actions are permitted, use **access=@**
- To specify any other access, consult the access tables, by object type, below.

How the access tables are organized

The access tables for object types are as follows:

Object types - calendar, cpu, eventrule, folder, job, prompt, resource, run cycle group, schedule, userobj, variable - using in composer on page 232

Most of the **composer** and GUI database maintenance actions are common to most objects, so they are listed in a table of common object access keywords.

Object type - action on page 235

This gives the access rights for action objects, which are not included in the common table.

Object type - calendar on page 236

This gives the access rights for calendars, which are different or additional to those in the common table.

Object type - cpu on page 237

This gives the access rights for workstations (cpus), which are different or additional to those in the common table.

Object type - event on page 239

This gives the access rights for events, which are different or additional to those in the common table.

Object type - file on page 239

This gives the access rights for files, which are different or additional to those in the common table.

Object type - folder on page 240

This gives the access rights for folders, which are different or in addition to those in the common table.

Object type - job on page 243

This gives the access rights for jobs, which are different or additional to those in the common table.

Object type - parameter on page 247

This gives the access rights for local parameters, which are not included in the common table.

Object type - prompt on page 247

This gives the access rights for prompts, which are different or additional to those in the common table.

Object type - report on page 248

This gives the access rights for reports, which are different or additional to those in the common table.

Object type - resource on page 248

This gives the access rights for resources, which are different or additional to those in the common table.

Object type - run cycle group on page 249

This gives the access rights for run cycle groups, which are different or additional to those in the common table.

Object type - schedule on page 250

This gives the access rights for job streams (schedules), which are different or additional to those in the common table.

Object type - userobj on page 251

This gives the access rights for userobj, which are different or additional to those in the common table.

Object type - vartable on page 252

This gives the access rights for variable tables, which are not included in the common table.

Object type - workload application on page 253

This gives the access rights for workload applications, which are not included in the common table.

Object types - calendar, cpu, eventrule, folder, job, prompt, resource, run cycle group, schedule, userobj, vartable - using in composer

The following table gives the access keywords required to use composer to work with objects of the following types:

- calendar
- cpu
- eventrule
- folder
- job
- prompt
- resource
- run cycle group
- schedule
- userobj
- vartable



Note:

- The `parameter` keyword is reserved for parameters created and managed in a local parameter database with the `parms` utility command.

For more information about `parms`, see the related section in the *User's Guide and Reference*.



- If you plan to upgrade your environment from a previous version of IBM® Workload Scheduler and use event-driven workload automation, you need to manually add the `display` access keyword to all workstations on which you plan to define File Monitor events.

For more information about event-driven workload automation, see the related section in the *User's Guide and Reference*.

Table 37. Access keywords for composer actions

		Activity	Access keywords required
Composer	add	Add new object definitions in the database from a file of object definitions. Unlock access is needed to use the <code>;unlock</code> attribute. For variable tables, to <i>add</i> individual variable entries within a table, the table must have <i>modify</i> access. To add a CPU object as a member of a workstation class, you must add <i>use</i> access to the CPU object.	add, modify, unlock
	add event rule	Add an event rule of type File Monitor.	display
	create	Create a text file of object definitions in the database. Modify access is need to use the <code>;lock</code> attribute. For variable tables, create individual variable entries within the table.	display, modify
	delete	Delete object definitions from the database. For variable tables, to <i>delete</i> individual variable entries within a table, the table must have <i>modify</i> access.	delete
	display	Display object definitions in the database.	display
	extract	Extract a text file of object definitions from the database.	display
	list	List object definitions in the database.	If the enListSecChk global option is set to <i>yes</i> on the master domain manager then, either <i>list</i> , or <i>list</i> and <i>display</i> are required.
	lock	Lock object definitions in the database.	modify

Table 37. Access keywords for composer actions (continued)

		Activity	Access keywords required
	modify	Modify object definitions in the database. Definitions are extracted into a file. After you have edited the file the definitions are used to replace the existing ones. For variable tables, to <i>modify</i> individual variable entries within a table, the table must have <i>modify</i> access.	add, modify
	new	Create object definitions in the database from a template.	add, modify
	print	Print object definitions in the database.	display
	rename	Rename object definitions in the database. You need add access to the new object and delete and display access to the old object.	add, delete, display
	replace	Replace object definitions in the database. Unlock access is needed to use the <code>;unlock</code> attribute.	add, modify, unlock
	unlock	Unlock object definitions in the database. For variable tables, unlocking a table unlocks all the variables contained therein. Unlocking a variable unlocks the entire table where it is defined.	unlock
Dynamic Workload Console	Add event rule	Add an event rule of type File Monitor.	display
	Create object in database	Add new object definitions in the database.	add
	Delete object in database	Delete object definitions from the database. Unlock access is needed to use the <code>;unlock</code> option.	delete
	Display object in database	Display object definitions in the database.	display
	List object in database	List object definitions in the database.	display
	Modify object in database	Modify object definitions in the database. Unlock access is needed to use the <code>;unlock</code> option.	modify
	Unlock object in database	Unlock object definitions in the database locked by another user.	unlock
	Perform operations for job types with advanced options, both those supplied	Perform operations for job types with advanced options in the database.	run

Table 37. Access keywords for composer actions (continued)

		Activity		Access keywords required
		with the product and the additional types implemented through the custom plug-ins. You can define and perform operations on job types with advanced options with the Workload Designer.		
Using the workload service assurance feature	All activities	For any user to perform any workload service assurance activities, the <i><TWS_user></i> must have the following access keywords for all <i>cpu</i> , <i>job</i> , and <i>schedule</i> objects:		display, modify, list

Example

To allow a user to use the composer list, display, and modify actions on event rules, specify:

```
eventrule      access=add,display,modify
```

Object type - action

The following table gives the access keywords required for actions:

Table 38. Actions - access keywords

		Activity	Access keywords required
Dynamic Workload Console	Display action instances		display
	List action instances.		list
Dynamic Workload Console	Use these specific action types in event rule definitions.		use

conman

Table 38. Actions - access keywords (continued)

Activity		Access keywords required
- For actions with provider <code>TWSAction</code> and types <code>sbj</code>, <code>sbd</code>, or <code>sbs</code>, you must set this keyword in combination with the <code>submit</code> access keyword for the specific jobs and job streams specified in the action. - For actions with provider <code>TWSAction</code> and type <code>reply</code>, you must set this keyword in combination with the <code>reply</code> access keyword set for the specific prompts specified in the action.		
The <code><TWS_user></code> of the workstation running the event processing server must have these <code>submit</code> and <code>reply</code> authorizations, otherwise the event processing server will not be able to run this type of actions.		

Example

To allow a user to use the Dynamic Workload Console to list action instances, specify:

```
action      access=list
```

Object type - calendar

The following table gives the additional access keywords required to work with calendars, other than those described in [Table 37: Access keywords for composer actions on page 233](#):

Table 39. Calendar - additional access keywords

Activity		Access keywords required
Composer	Use calendars in:	use
Dynamic Workload Console	- job streams - run cycles - run cycle groups	

Example 1

To allow a user to only use calendars when working with job streams in any of the interfaces, specify:


```
calendar      access=use
```

Example 2

To allow a user to display, list, and print calendars, and use them when working with job streams in any of the interfaces, specify:

```
calendar      access=display,use,list
```

Object type - cpu

The following table gives the additional access keywords required to work with cpus (includes workstations, domains, and workstation classes), other than those described in [Table 37: Access keywords for composer actions on page 233](#):

Table 40. Cpus - additional access keywords

		Activity	Access keywords required
Dynamic Workload Console	conman	View and send messages to the IBM Workload Scheduler conman console.	console
	deployconf	Force update the monitoring configuration file for the event monitoring engine.	start
	fence	Alter workstation job fences in the production plan.	fence
	limit cpu	Alter workstation job limits in the production plan.	limit
	link	Open workstation links.	link
	resetfta	Generates an updated Sinfonia file and sends it to a fault-tolerant agent on which the Symphony file has corrupted.	resetfta
	showcpus	Display workstations, domains and links in the plan.	list
	shutdown	Shut down IBM Workload Scheduler processing.	shutdown
	start	Start IBM Workload Scheduler processing.	start
	startappserver	Start the application server.	start
	starteventprocessor	Start the event processor server.	start
	startmon	Start the event monitoring engine.	start
	stop	Stop IBM Workload Scheduler processing.	stop
	stop;progressive	Stop IBM Workload Scheduler processing progressively.	stop
	stopappserver	Stop the application server.	stop
	stopeventprocessor	Stop the event processor server.	stop

Table 40. Cpus - additional access keywords (continued)

		Activity	Access keywords required
	stopmon	Stop the event monitoring engine.	stop
	switcheventprocessor	Switch the event processor server from the master domain manager to the backup master domain manager or vice versa.	start, stop
	switchmgr	Switch the domain manager functionality to a workstation.	start, stop
	unlink	Close workstation links.	unlink
	upgrade	Install a fix pack or upgrade to a later version fault-tolerant agents and dynamic agents.	manage
Startup	Start IBM Workload Scheduler processing.		start
Using the workload service assurance feature	All activities	For any user to perform any workload service assurance activities, the <code><TWS_user></code> must have the following access keywords:	display, modify, list
Submit a job	When submitting a job defined in a folder, <code>use</code> access is required on the workstation (cpu) where the job is defined, in addition to access to the folder and the objects it contains.		use
Submit a job stream	When submitting a job stream defined in a folder, <code>use</code> access is required on the workstation (cpu) where the job is defined, in addition to access to the folder and the objects it contains.		
Composer	Use a File Monitor event on the workstation where the file resides.		display
Dynamic Workload Console			



Note: If you plan to upgrade your environment from a previous version of IBM® Workload Scheduler and use event-driven workload automation, you need to manually add the `display` access keyword to all workstations on which you plan to define File Monitor events.

For more information about event-driven workload automation, see the related section in the *User's Guide and Reference*.

Example

To allow a user to display, list, and print workstation, workstation class, and domain definitions, link and unlink workstations, and access all workstations defined in the root (/) folder, specify:

```
cpu    name = @ + folder = /    access=display,link,unlink
```

Object type - event

The following table gives the access keywords required to work with events:

Table 41. Events - access keywords

Activity		Access keywords required
Composer	Use an event in an event rule definition.	use
Dynamic Workload		
Console		



Note: If you plan to upgrade your environment from a previous version of IBM® Workload Scheduler and use event-driven workload automation, you need to manually add the `display` access keyword to all workstations on which you plan to define File Monitor events.

For more information about event-driven workload automation, see the related section in the *User's Guide and Reference*.

Example

To allow a user to use an event in an event rule definition, specify:

```
event    access=use
```

Object type - file

The following table gives the access keywords required to work with files (valid only for the command line).

You must specify the [file names on page 227](#) to which the type of access applies.

Table 42. Files - access keywords

Activity		Access keywords required
<code>dumpsec</code>	Create a text file of the settings contained in the compiled security file.	display
<code>JnextPlan</code>	Generate the production plan.	build
<code>makesec</code>	Compile the security file from a text file of the settings.	modify
<code>optman</code>	<code>ls</code> List all global options.	display

Table 42. Files - access keywords (continued)

		Activity	Access keywords required
	show	Show the details of a global option.	display
	change	Change the details of a global option.	modify
planman	deploy	Manually deploy event rules.	build
prodsked		Work with the production plan.	build
stageman		Carry forward incomplete job streams, archive the old production plan, and install the new production plan.	build
agent_certificate		Download certificates and JWT when installing dynamic agents	display
CREATEPERSONAL APIKEY		Create personal API Key. This allows the CLI or API user access CLIs and APIs.	display
CREATESERVICEAPIKEY		Create service API keys. Only administrators should have this permission.	display
LISTALLAPIKEYS		Allows listing all API Keys in the database. This allows administrators list and then revoke existing API Keys. Without this permission, single users will be able to list ONLY API Keys with same UPN (User Personal Name) as their username (personally-owned API Keys) and service API Keys they have created (personally-owned Service API Keys).	display
DELETEALLAPIKEYS		Allows deleting all API Keys in the database. This allows administrators revoke existing API Keys.	display

Example 1

To allow a user to manage the globalopts file, specify:

```
file name=globalopts access=display,modify
```

Example 2

To allow a user to run **JnextPlan**, specify:

```
file access=build
```



Note: The user will also be able to run **planman deploy**, **prodsked**, and **stageman**.

Object type - folder

The following table gives the additional access keywords required to work with folders, in addition to those common to most objects described in [Table 37: Access keywords for composer actions on page 233](#):

Table 43. folders - access keywords

		Activity	Access keywords required
Composer	chfolder	Change the current folder or working directory.	display
	listfolder	Lists folders defined in the database.	list, or list and display
	mkfolder	Creates a new folder definition in the database.	add
	rmfolder	Deletes folders defined in the database.	delete
	renamefolder	Renames a folder definition in the database.	delete access to the folder with the old name, and add access to the folder with the new name
Conman	Chfolder	Changes the working directory or current directory.	display
	Listfolder	Lists folders defined in the plan.	list, or list and display

See [Example on page 241](#) for detailed examples about how to restrict access to folders.

For more information about designing workflow folders, see the related section in *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

Example

The following examples demonstrate how to restrict access to specific folders. Even with access to a folder, a user still needs additional rights to work with the objects defined in it. When submitting a job or job stream defined in a folder, `use` access is required on the workstation (cpu) where the job is defined, in addition to access to the folder and the objects it contains.

IBM® Workload Scheduler administrator can grant administrator permissions to a user on a folder, `ACL`, so that the user can freely assign access control lists to other users on the same folder or any sub-folders. Users can then access the objects in the folder or sub-folders. For more information about delegating administrator access to users and groups on a folder, see the related topic in the *Administration Guide*.

Examples

Tim the IBM® Workload Scheduler administrator, delegates Linda, the `app1_admin` user, permissions on the folder `/PRD/APP1` and any sub-folders, by assigning her the `ACL` access on the folder. With this access, Linda can create access control lists to grant access to the folder or sub-folders to other users with a predefined role. The following is the security file for Linda, the `app1_admin` user:

```
#####
#   Sample Security File
#####
USER APPADMINofPRDAPP1  cpu=JUPITER+LOGON=app1_admin
begin
#  OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES                      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
#  -----
job            cpu=JUPITER  + folder = "/PRD/APP1","/PRD/APP1/"
               access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
schedule       cpu=JUPITER  + folder = "/PRD/APP1","/PRD/APP1/"
               access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
folder         name="/PRD/APP1","/PRD/APP1/"
               access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock,acl
```

User jsmith is granted unrestricted access to jobs and job streams defined in the folder named APPS and on the workstation named JUPITER, specify:

```
#####
#   Sample Security File
#####
user jsmith  cpu=JUPITER
begin
#  OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES                      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
#  -----
job            cpu=JUPITER  + folder = /APPS/  access=@
schedule       cpu=JUPITER  + folder = /APPS/  access=@
cpu            cpu=JUPITER+LOGON=jsmith        access=use
folder         name=/APPS/                     access=add,delete,display,
               modify,use,list,unlock,acl
```

To allow a user to have the specified rights on any folder, the root folder and any sub-folders, specify:

```
folder  name=/      access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
```

To grant a user access only to the root folder (/), you can omit specifying the folder object in the security file. This is the same behavior as in security files for releases prior to Version 9.5. After upgrading to Version 9.5, all of the objects are moved to the root folder, so if you continue to use your old security file which does not include the v95fp1 attribute or object (for example, for jobs, JOB CPU=@ ACCESS=ADD, ADDDEP, ..., RERUN, SUBMIT, USE, LIST, UNLOCK, then users have access to only the root (/) folder by default.

To allow a user to have the specified rights only on the "APPS" folder, specify:

```
folder  name=/APPS/      access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
```

To allow a user to have the specified rights on the folder "APPS" and its sub-folders, specify:

```
folder  name=/APPS      access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
```

To allow a user to have the specified rights only on folder "APP1" and its sub-folders, specify:

```
folder  name=/APPS/APP1      access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
```

To allow a user to have all rights on the folder "APPS" and on the folder "APP2" and its sub-folder, but no rights on APP1, specify:

folder	name=/APPS/	access=@
folder	name=/APPS/APP1/APP2	access=@

Object type - job

The following table gives the additional access keywords required to work with jobs, other than those described in [Table 37: Access keywords for composer actions on page 233](#):

Table 44. Jobs - additional access keywords

		Activity	Access keywords required
Composer	Use jobs in job streams.		use
Dynamic Workload Console	Also, if a job is used as a recovery job in a job definition, the user must have "use" access to the definition of the job identified as the recovery job.		
Conman	adddep	Add dependencies to jobs in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	adddep
Dynamic Workload Console	altpri	Alter the priority of jobs in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	altpri
	cancel job	Cancel jobs in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	cancel
	confirm	Confirm completion of jobs in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	confirm
	deldep job	Delete dependencies from jobs in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	deldep
	display	Display jobs in the plan.	display
	Hold	Hold a job to prevent it from running	adddep
	kill	Kill running jobs.	kill
	release job	Release jobs from dependencies in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	release
	reply	Reply to job prompts in the production plan.	reply
	rerun	Rerun jobs in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	rerun; submitdb
	To use the from argument, you must have submitdb access to the job.		
	showjobs	Display information about jobs in the production plan.	list

Table 44. Jobs - additional access keywords (continued)

		Activity	Access keywords required
Conman Dynamic Workload Console	submit docommand	Submit commands as jobs or recovery jobs into the production plan. If the submit also identifies a second job with the "ALIAS" or "RECOVERYJOB" arguments, the user must have "submit" access to that other job, as well Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	submit
	submit file	Submit files as jobs or recovery jobs into the production plan. If the submit also identifies a second job with the "ALIAS" or "RECOVERYJOB" arguments, the user must have "submit" access to that other job as well. Not valid for workstations in an end-to-end environment.	submit
	submit job	Submit jobs or recovery jobs into the production plan. If the submit also identifies a second job with the "ALIAS" or "RECOVERYJOB" arguments, the user must have "submit" access to that other job as well. If the job is defined in a folder, then use access is required on the workstation (cpu) where the job is defined, in addition to access to the folder itself and the objects it contains. Not valid for workstations in an end-to-end environment.	submit
		Restricts the submission action to jobs defined in the database. With this authorization level a user cannot submit ad hoc jobs. Use this keyword to allow a user to submit only jobs defined in the database. Use the submit keyword to allow a user to submit both defined and ad hoc jobs. Users granted only submitdb rights:	submitdb

Table 44. Jobs - additional access keywords (continued)

			Access keywords required
Activity			
• Cannot run submit docommand and submit file successfully • Are displayed tasks related to ad hoc job submission on the graphical user interfaces, but if they run them, are returned error messages for lacking the submit access right.			
	submit sched	Submit job streams into the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	submit
	Hold	Hold a job to prevent it from running	adddep
Dynamic Workload Console	For critical jobs on which you run any of the following actions:	The predecessors are listed regardless of the fact that this authorization might not be extended to them. However, if you want to run any further action on any of the listed predecessors, this will require that you have the proper authorization.	list
	• Display hot list • Display critical path • Display incomplete predecessors • Display completed predecessors		
Using the workload service assurance feature	All activities	For any user to perform any workload service assurance activities, the <code><TWS_user></code> must have the following access keywords:	display, modify, list

Example 1

To allow a user to manage only job dependencies for jobs defined in the root (/) folder, specify:

```
job      access=adddep,deldep
```

Example 2

To allow a user to only manage critical jobs defined in the root (/) folder, specify:

```
job          access=list,altpri
```

Example 3

User `administrator` is granted add, modify, and display rights for all job definitions defined in the folder named "APPS" and any sub-folders, on workstations defined in the root (/) folder, and is therefore permitted to create and modify job definitions that run scripts or commands as needed, with no restriction:

```
USER TWSADMIN
CPU=@+LOGON=administrator
BEGIN
JOB CPU=@ + FOLDER = /APPS + CPUFOLDER = / ACCESS=ADD,MODIFY,DISPLAY,...
[...]
```

```
END
```

User `sconnor` is granted the same rights for jobs that match the condition `jcltype=scriptname`, which means that he can create or modify only job definitions that run scripts and cannot change any of them into a job that runs a command. He can also access all workstation defined in the root (/) folder:

```
USER RESTRICTED
CPU=@+LOGON=sconnor
BEGIN
JOB CPU=@+JCLTYPE=SCRIPTNAME + FOLDER = /APPS + CPUFOLDER = / ACCESS=ADD,MODIFY,DISPLAY,...
[...]
```

```
END
```

Example 4

User `administrator` is granted submit permission for all jobs defined in all folders ("/"), and is therefore permitted to submit jobs defined in the database and ad hoc, with no restriction:

```
USER TWSADMIN
CPU=@+LOGON=administrator
BEGIN
JOB CPU=@ + FOLDER = / + CPUFOLDER = / ACCESS=ADD,ADDDEP,...,RERUN,SUBMIT,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
[...]
```

```
END
```

User `jsmith` is granted submitdb permission for all jobs defined in all folders, allowing her to submit all jobs defined in the database, but she is not permitted to run ad hoc job submissions. She also has access to workstations in the /MYCPUS folder:

```
USER RESTRICTED
CPU=@+LOGON=jsmith
BEGIN
JOB CPU=@ + FOLDER = / + CPUFOLDER = /MYCPUS ACCESS=ADD,ADDDEP,...,RERUN,SUBMITDB,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
[...]
```

```
END
```

Object type - parameter

The following table gives the access keywords required to work with parameters:



Note: Starting from version 8.5, the `parameter` keyword is reserved for parameters created and managed in a local parameter database with the `parms` utility command. See the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference* for details on `parms`.

Table 45. Parameters - additional access keywords

Activity		Access keywords required
<code>parms</code>	Manage local parameter definitions.	<code>display</code>

Example

To allow a user to perform all activities on parameters and with access to all workstations defined in the root (/) folder, specify:

```
parameter + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
```

Object type - prompt

The following table gives the additional access keywords required to work with prompts, other than those described in [Table 37: Access keywords for composer actions on page 233](#):

Table 46. Prompts - additional access keywords

Activity		Access keywords required
Composer	Use prompts when defining or submitting jobs and job streams	<code>use</code>
Dynamic Workload Console		
Conman	<code>adddep</code> Use prompts when adding dependencies to jobs in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	<code>use</code>
Dynamic Workload Console	<code>recall</code> Display prompts waiting for a response.	<code>display</code>
	<code>reply</code> Reply to a job or Job Scheduler prompt.	<code>reply</code>
	<code>showprompts</code> Display information about prompts.	<code>list</code>

Table 46. Prompts - additional access keywords (continued)

Activity		Access keywords required
submit docommand	Use prompts when submitting commands as jobs into the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	use
submit file	Use prompts when submitting files as jobs into the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	use
submit job	Use prompts when submitting jobs into the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	use
submit sched	Use prompts when submitting job streams into the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	use

Example

To allow a user to perform all activities on prompts except reply to them, specify:

```
prompt      access=use,display,list
```

Object type - report

The following table gives the access keywords required to work with reports.

Table 47. Files- access keywords

Activity		Access keywords required
Dynamic Workload Console	Display reports on page 224 on Dynamic Workload Console.	display

Example

To allow a user to display reports on the Dynamic Workload Console, specify:

```
report      access=display
```

Object type - resource

The following table gives the additional access keywords required to work with resources, other than those described in [Table 37: Access keywords for composer actions on page 233](#):

Table 48. Resources - additional access keywords

		Activity	Access keywords required
Composer		Use resources when defining or submitting jobs and job streams	use
Dynamic Workload Console			
Conman	adddep	Use resources when adding dependencies to jobs in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	use
Dynamic Workload Console	resource	Change the number of units of a resource on a workstation.	resource
	showresources	Display information about resources.	list
	submit	Use resources when submitting commands as jobs into the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	use
	docommand		
	submit file	Use resources when submitting files as jobs into the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	use
	submit job	Use resources when submitting jobs into the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	use
	submit sched	Use resources when submitting job streams into the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	use

Example

To allow a user to display information about resources defined in the root folder, and change the units of a resource on a workstation defined in the root folder (/), but not to use them in any other scheduling objects or actions, specify:

```
resource + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=list,resource
```

Object type - run cycle group

The following table gives the access keywords required to work with run cycle groups:

Table 49. Run cycle groups- access keywords

		Activity	Access keywords required
Composer		Use run cycle groups in job streams.	use

Table 49. Run cycle groups- access keywords (continued)

Activity		Access keywords required
Dynamic Workload Console		

Example

To allow a user to create and delete a run cycle group, specify:

```
runcygrp      access=add,delete
```

Object type - schedule

The following table gives the additional access keywords required to work with job streams, other than those described in [Table 37: Access keywords for composer actions on page 233](#):

Table 50. Job streams - additional access keywords

Activity			Access keywords required
Conman Dynamic Workload Console	adddep	Add dependencies to job streams in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	adddep
	altpri	Alter the priority of job streams in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	altpri
	cancel sched	Cancel job streams in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	cancel
	deldep sched	Delete dependencies from job streams in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in end-to-end environment.	deldep
	display	Display job streams in the plan. .	display
	limit sched	Modify the limit for jobs concurrently running within a Job Scheduler.	limit
	release sched	Release job streams from dependencies in the production plan. Not valid for workstations in an end-to-end environment.	release
	reply	Reply to job stream prompts in the production plan.	reply
	showschedules	Display information about job streams in the production plan.	list
	submit sched	Submit job streams into the production plan.	submit

Table 50. Job streams - additional access keywords (continued)

		Activity	Access keywords required
		If the submit also identifies a second job stream with the "ALIAS" argument, the user must have "submit" access to that other job stream as well.	
		If the job stream is defined in a folder, then <code>use</code> access is required on the workstation (cpu) where the job stream is defined, in addition to access to the folder itself and the objects it contains.	
		Not valid for workstations in an end-to-end environment.	
Using the workload service assurance feature	All activities	For any user to perform any workload service assurance activities, the <code><TWS_user></code> must have the following access keywords:	display, modify, list

Example

To allow a user to perform all actions on job streams defined in the "test" folder and its sub-folders, except submit and release, and access to all workstations defined in the root (/) folder, specify:

```
schedule folder = /test + CPUFOLDER = / access=adddep,altpri,cancel,deldep,display,
limit,reply,list
```

Object type - userobj

The following table gives the additional access keywords required to work with users, other than those described in [Table 37: Access keywords for composer actions on page 233](#):

Table 51. Users - additional access keywords

		Activity	Access keywords required
Composer	Modeling of job types with advanced options	When defining job types with advanced options allows the modeler to specify in the credentials section of the job that the <code>user name</code> and <code>password</code> values required to submit the job are resolved at run time with values extracted from the database and defined with the User definition composer commands (<code>username</code> and <code>password</code>) or Dynamic Workload Console panel.	use
Dynamic Workload Console			

Table 51. Users - additional access keywords (continued)

Activity			Access keywords required
Note that on dynamic agents User definitions can be used regardless of the operating system.			
Conman	altpass	Alter user passwords in the plan.	altpass
Dynamic Workload			
Console			

Example

The following access definition allows a user to:

- List and modify user information, including passwords in the database (display, modify, and altpass).
- When defining job types with advanced options on dynamic agents, to specify in the credentials section of the job that the user name and password values required to submit the job are resolved at run time with values extracted from the database and defined with the User definition (use).

```
userobj      access=display,modify,altpass,use,list
```

Object type - vartable

The following table gives the access keywords for using variable tables and the variables they contain (this includes the global variables)

Table 52. Variable tables - access keywords

Activity		Access keywords required
Composer	Use variable tables in run cycles, run cycle groups, job streams, and workstations	use
Dynamic Workload		
Console		

Example

To allow a user only to use variable tables when defining other scheduling objects, specify:

```
vartable     access=use
```


Object type - workload application

The following table gives the access keywords required to work with workload applications:

Table 53. Workload applications - access keywords

			Access keywords required
		Activity	
Dynamic Workload Console	add	Add new workload applications templates to the database. Unlock access is needed to use the <code>;unlock</code> attribute.	add, unlock
	create	Create a workload application template in the database. Modify access is needed to use the <code>;lock</code> attribute.	display, modify
	delete	Delete a workload application template from the database.	delete
	display	Display a workload application template.	display
	list	List workload application templates in the database.	list
	lock	Lock workload application templates in the database.	modify
	modify	Modify a workload application template in the database.	add, modify
	new	Create a workload application template in the database.	add, modify
	rename	Rename workload application templates in the database. The user needs add access to the new object and delete and display access to the old object.	add, delete, display
	replace	Replace workload application templates in the database. Unlock access is needed to use the <code>;unlock</code> attribute.	add, modify, unlock
	unlock	Unlock workload application templates in the database.	unlock

Example

To allow a user to create and delete a workload application, specify:

```
wkldappl      access=add,delete
```

The <TWS_user> - special security file considerations

The <TWS_user> is a special user, and requires special consideration for the security file.

Required access for the <TWS_user> for workload service assurance

For any user to perform Workload service Assurance activities, the <TWS_user> must have *display*, *modify* and *list* access keywords assigned for all *job*, *schedule* and *cpu* objects.

New <TWS_user> in migrated Security file

If you change the <TWS_user> of your environment, for example, as you might do when performing a parallel upgrade, and then you migrate the Security file (to preserve your settings) you must set up the new <TWS_user> in the Security file in advance, with all its required access rights, before attempting to start IBM Workload Scheduler.

Update definitions for Windows domain <TWS_user> in the Security file after upgrade to version 10.2.6

Due to new support of the UPN Windows user, if you have Windows domain users that are defined in the logon fields as `domain\username`, after performing an upgrade to version 10.2.6, update the Security file before starting the IBM Workload Scheduler instance. Insert the escape character '\' before the '\' character in the `domain\username` value.

For example, if you use the `MYDOMAIN\user1` value in the logon field, after the upgrade, in the Security file you must update the line in following way:

```
.....
logon=MYDOMAIN\\user1
.....
```

Sample security file

This section contains a sample security file divided into sections for each different class of user.

Note that the order of definitions is from most to least-specific. Because of the order, *TWS_users* and **root** users are matched first, followed by users in the **sys** group, and then users in the **mis** group. All other users are matched with the last definition, which is the least specific.

TWS_users and root users logged in on the master domain manager

user mastersm cpu=\$master + logon=<TWS_user>,root

```
#####
#   Sample Security File
#####
# APPLIES TO TWS_users AND ROOT USERS LOGGED IN ON THE
# MASTER DOMAIN MANAGER.
user mastersm  cpu=$master + logon=<TWS_user>,root
begin
# OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
# -----
job           cpu=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = /  access=@
schedule     cpu=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = /  access=@
resource     + folder = / + cpufolder = /      access=@
prompt       + folder = /                      access=@
file          access=@
calendar     + folder = /      access=@
cpu          cpu=@ + folder = /                  access=@
parameter    name=@ ~ name=r@ + folder = / + cpufolder = /  access=@
userobj       cpu=@ + logon=@ + cpufolder = /      access=@
eventrule    name=@ + folder = /      access=add,delete,display,modify,list,unlock
action       provider=@      access=display,submit,use,list
```

```

event      provider=@      access=use
report     name=@          access=display
runcygrp   name=@    + folder = /      access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
varitable  name=a@,$default + folder = /  access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
wkldappl   name=@    + folder = /      access=add,delete,display,modify,list,unlock
lob        name=@          access=use
folder     name=/          access=@
end

```

This user definition applies to GUI and CLI access for *TWS_users* and **root** users logged into a master domain manager. They are given unrestricted access to all objects, except parameters that have names beginning with **r**. Access to the **r** parameters is given only to users in the **mis** group. They are the only ones who can generate all kinds of plans and who can create, update, and delete event rule definitions.

All users have access to all variable tables beginning with "a" and to the default table, irrespective of the default variable table name.

TWS_users and root users logged in on any domain manager (other than the master)

user testerlondon cpu=\$manager + logon=<TWS_user>,root

```

#####
#      Sample Security File
#####
# APPLIES TO TWS_users AND ROOT USERS LOGGED IN ON ANY
# DOMAIN MANAGER.
user testerlondon  cpu=$manager + logon=<TWS_user>,root
begin
#  OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
#  -----
job            cpu=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=add,delete,display
schedule      cpu=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=add,delete,display
resource       + folder = / + cpufolder = /      access=@
prompt        + folder = /      access=@
file          name=prodsked  access=build, display
file          name=trialsked access=build, display
calendar      + folder = /      access=@
cpu           cpu=@ + folder = /      access=@
parameter     name=@ ~ name=v@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
userobj       cpu=@ + logon=@ + cpufolder = /  access=@
eventrule     name=@ + folder = /      access=add,delete,display,modify,list,unlock
action        provider=@      access=display,submit,use,list
event         provider=@      access=use
report        name=@          access=display
runcygrp      name=@ + folder = /      access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
varitable     name=a@,$default + folder = /  access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
wkldappl      name=@ + folder = /      access=add,delete,display,modify,list,unlock
lob           name=@          access=use
folder        name=/          access=@
end

```

This user definition applies to GUI and CLI access for *TWS_users* and **root** users logged into any domain manager other than the master. They are given unrestricted access to all objects, except parameters that have names beginning with **v**, and jobs

and jobs streams to which they have limited access. They can access all workstations defined in the root folder (/). They can generate all types of plans and can create, update, and delete event rule definitions defined in the root folder.

All users have access to all variable tables beginning with "a" and to the default table, irrespective of the default variable table name.

TWS_users and root users logged in on any workstation other than any domain manager

user sm ~CPU=\$MANAGER logon=<TWS_user>,root

```
#####
# APPLIES TO TWS_users AND ROOT USERS LOGGED IN ON ANY
# WORKSTATION OTHER THAN THE MASTER DOMAIN MANAGER.
user sm logon=<TWS_user>,root
begin
# OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
# -----
job           cpu=$thiscpu + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
schedule      cpu=$thiscpu + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
resource      cpu=$thiscpu + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
prompt        + folder = /      access=@
calendar      + folder = /      access=@
cpu           cpu=$thiscpu + folder = /      access=@
parameter     cpu=$thiscpu ~ name=r@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
action        provider=@      access=display,submit,use,list
event         provider=@      access=use
report        name=RUNHIST,RUNSTATS access=display
runcygrp      name=@ + folder = / access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
file          name=globalopts access=display
lob           name=@          access=use
folder        name=/myfolder  access=@
end
```

This user definition applies to *TWS_users* and **root** users to whom definition (1) does not apply, which are those who are logged in on any workstation other than the master domain manager or any other domain manager. They are given unrestricted access to all objects on their login workstation. Note that prompts, files, and calendars are global in nature and are not associated with a workstation.

They can use event rules, but are not allowed to create, update, or delete event rule definitions.

Users logged into the sys group on the master domain manager

user masterop cpu=\$master + group=sys

```
#####
# APPLIES TO USERS LOGGED INTO THE SYS GROUP ON THE
# MASTER DOMAIN MANAGER.
user masterop cpu=$master + group=sys
begin
# OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
# -----
job           cpu=@ + logon="TWS_domain\<TWS_user>"
              + folder = / access=@
job           cpu=@ + logon=root + folder = /
```

```

                                + cpufolder = /
                                access=adddep,altpri,cancel,confirm,
                                deldep,release,reply,rerun,submit,use
job      cpu=@ + logon=@ ~ logon=root + folder = /
                                + cpufolder = /
                                access=add,adddep,altpri,cancel,confirm,deldep,
                                release,reply,rerun,submit,use
schedule cpu=$thiscpu + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
schedule cpu=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = /
                                access=adddep,altpri,cancel,
                                deldep,limit,release,submit
resource + folder = / access=add,display,resource,use
file      name=globalopts access=display
file      name=prodsked access=display
file      name=symphony access=display
file      name=trialsched access=build, display
calendar + folder = / access=display,use
cpu       cpu=@ + folder = / access=@
parameter name=@ ~ name=r@ + folder = / access=@
report    name=RUNHIST,RUNSTATS access=display
wkldappl  name=@ + folder = / access=add,delete,display,modify,list,unlock
lob        name=@ access=use
folder    name=/ access=@
end

```

This user definition applies to users logged into the **sys** group on the master domain manager. They are given a unique set of access capabilities. Multiple object statements are used to give these users specific types of access to different sets of objects. For example, there are three job statements:

- The first job statement permits unrestricted access to jobs that run on any workstation (@) under the user's name (*TWS_domain\<TWS_user>*).
- The second job statement permits specific types of access to jobs that run on any workstation and that run as **root**.
- The third job statement permits specific types of access to jobs that run on any workstation. Jobs that run as root are excluded.

They are the only users defined on the master domain manager, different from maestro or root, who can generate trial and forecast plans.

Users logged into the sys group on any workstation other than the master domain manager

user op ~cpu=\$master group=sys

```

#####
# APPLIES TO USERS LOGGED INTO THE SYS GROUP ON ANY
# WORKSTATION OTHER THAN THE MASTER DOMAIN MANAGER
user op group=sys
begin
# OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
# -----
job           cpu=$thiscpu + logon=@ + folder = /
                                + cpufolder = / access=@
job           cpu=$thiscpu + logon=root + folder = /

```

```

                                + cpufolder = /
                                access=adddep,altpri,cancel,confirm,deldep,
                                release,reply,rerun,submit,use
job      cpu=$thiscpu ~ logon=root + folder = /
                                + cpufolder = /
                                access=adddep,altpri,cancel,confirm,deldep,
                                release,reply,rerun,submit,use
schedule cpu=$thiscpu + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
resource + folder = /          access=add,display,resource,use
runcygrp name=@ + folder = /   access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
prompt   + folder = /          access=add,display,reply,use
calendar + folder = /          access=use
cpu       cpu=$thiscpu + folder = / access=console,fence,limit,
                                link,start,stop,unlink
parameter name=@ ~ name=r@ + folder = / access=@
wkldappl  name=@ + folder = /   access=add,delete,display,modify,list,unlock
lob        name=@          access=use
folder     name=/          access=@
end

#####

```

This user definition applies to **sys** group users to whom definition (3) does not apply, which are those who are logged in on any workstation other than the master domain manager. They are given a set of access capabilities similar to those in definition (3). The exception is that access is restricted to objects on the user's login workstation (**\$thiscpu**).

Users logged into the *mis* group on any workstation

user misusers group=mis

```

#####
# APPLIES TO USERS LOGGED INTO THE MIS GROUP ON
# ANY WORKSTATION.
user misusers  cpu=@          group=mis
begin
# OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
# -----
job           cpu=$thiscpu + folder = /
              + logon=@ + cpufolder = /      access=@
job           cpu=$thiscpu + folder = /
              + logon=@
              ~ logon=root + cpufolder = /      access=submit,use
schedule      cpu=$thiscpu + folder = /
              + cpufolder = / access=add,submit,modify,display
cpu           cpu=@ + type=agent,s-agent,fta + folder = /
              access=console,fence,limit,link,start,stop,unlink
parameter     name=r@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
parameter     name=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=display
runcygrp      name=@ + folder = / access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
folder        name=/          access=@
end

#####

```

This user definition applies to users logged into the **mis** group on workstations defined in the root folder. They are given a limited set of access capabilities to fault-tolerant, standard, and dynamic agents. Resources, prompts, files, calendars, and

workstations are omitted, which prevents access to these objects. These users are given unrestricted access to parameters with names that begin with *r*, and that are defined in the root folder, but can only display other parameters.

Users logged into multiple groups [continue keyword]

This is an example of a security file where the `continue` keyword is used. This kind of security file allows a user to inherit authorization from multiple *stanzas*. The user gets the accesses for the first matching entry of each *stanza* that matches the user definition.

user misusers cpu@ group=mis

```
#####
# User misusers USER DEFINITION APPLIES TO USERS LOGGED IN TO
# THE MIS GROUP ON ANY WORKSTATION.
#
# User dbusers USER DEFINITION APPLIES TO USERS LOGGED IN TO
# THE DB GROUP ON ANY WORKSTATION.
#
# User default USER DEFINITION APPLIES TO ALL USERS.
#

user misusers  cpu=@          group=mis
begin
# OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
# -----
job           cpu=@ + name=mis@ + folder = /
              + cpufolder = / access=@
schedule     name=mis@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
parameter    name=mis@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
continue
folder       name=/          access=@

user dbusers  cpu=@          group=db
begin
# OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
# -----
job           cpu=@ + name=db_@ + folder = /
              + cpufolder = / access=@
schedule     name=db_@ + folder = /
              + cpufolder = / access=@
parameter    name=db_@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
continue
folder       name=/          access=@

user default  cpu=@ + logon=@
begin
# OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
# -----
parameter    name=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=display
folder       name=/          access=@
end

#####
```

Users that belong only to the *mis* group get access to all objects that have a name starting with the *mis* prefix, as specified in the `user misusers` user definition. In addition, the `user default` user definition gives them display access to all parameters.

Users that belong only to the *db* group get access to all objects that have a name starting with the *db_* prefix, as specified in the `user dbusers` user definition. In addition, the `user default` user definition gives them display access to all parameters.

Users that belong to both the *mis* and the *db* groups get access to the objects that have a name starting with the *mis* prefix and to the objects that have a name starting with the *db_* prefix, as specified in the `user misusers` and in the `user dbusers` user definitions. In addition, the `user default` user definition gives them display access to all parameters. Access to jobs, job streams, workstations, and parameters is limited to only those defined in the root (/) folder.

You must order definitions from most specific to least specific. The `user default` user definition gives generic accesses, and must be therefore specified at the end of the file.

All other users logged in on any workstation

`user default cpu=@ + logon=@`

```
#####
# APPLIES TO ALL OTHER USERS LOGGED IN ON ANY
# WORKSTATION.
user default  cpu=@ + logon=@
begin
# OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
# -----
job           cpu=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
schedule      cpu=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
resource      + folder = / + cpufolder = /          access=@
prompt        + folder = /          access=@
file          access=@
calendar      + folder = /          access=@
cpu           cpu=@ + folder = / access=@
parameter     name=@ ~ name=r@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
userobj       cpu=@ + logon=@ + cpufolder = / access=@
eventrule     name=@ + folder = / access=add,delete,display,modify,list,unlock
action        provider=@          access=display,submit,use,list
event         provider=@          access=use
report        name=@              access=display
runcygrp      name=@              access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
vartable      name=a@,$default + folder = / access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
wkldappl     name=@ + folder = / access=add,delete,display,modify,list,unlock
lob           name=@              access=use
folder        name=/              access=@
end
#####
```

They are given unrestricted access to all objects, except parameters that have names beginning with *r*. They are the only ones who can generate all kinds of plans and who can create, update, and delete event rule definitions. All users have access to all variable tables beginning with "a" and to the default table, irrespective of the default variable table name. Access to most scheduling objects is limited to those defined in the root (/) folder.

All domain1.com windows users logged in on any workstation

user cpu=@ + logon =@\@domain1.com

```
#####
# APPLIES TO ALL OTHER USERS IN THE 'domain1.com' INTERNET DOMAIN LOGGED IN ON ANY
# WORKSTATION.
user default  cpu=@ + logon=@\@domain1.com
begin
# OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
# -----
job           cpu=@ + logon =a@\@domain1.com + folder = /
              + cpufolder = /   access=display
job           cpu=@ + folder = /
              + cpufolder = /   access=@
schedule      + folder = / + cpufolder = /   access=@
resource      + folder = / + cpufolder = /   access=@
prompt        + folder = /   access=@
file          access=@
calendar      + folder = /   access=@
cpu           cpu=@ + folder = /   access=@
parameter     name=@ ~ name=r@ + folder = / + cpufolder = /   access=@
userobj       cpu=@ + logon=@ + cpufolder = /   access=@
eventrule     name=@ + folder = /   access=add,delete,display,modify,list,unlock
action        provider=@   access=display,submit,use,list
event         provider=@   access=use
report        name=@   access=display
runcygrp      name=@ + folder = /   access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
variable      name=g@,$default + folder = /   access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
wkldappl      name=@ + folder = /   access=add,delete,display,modify,list,unlock
lob           name=@   access=use
folder        name=/   access=@
end
#####
```

Windows Users in domain1.com whose name begins with 'a' can display only jobs and can manage parameters which name does not begin with r. All other domain1.com Windows users that are logged in on any workstation are given access to all objects defined in the root (/) folder, and to parameters that have names beginning with r. They are the only ones who can generate all kinds of plans and who can create, update, and delete event rule definitions. All users have access to all variable tables beginning with "g" and to the default table, irrespective of the default variable table name.

All MYWINDOM windows users logged in on any workstation

user default cpu=@ + logon=MYWINDOM\ \@

```
#####
# APPLIES TO ALL "MYWINDOM" WINDOWS USERS LOGGED IN ON ANY
# WORKSTATION.
user default  cpu=@ + logon=MYWINDOM\ \@
begin
# OBJECT      ATTRIBUTES      ACCESS CAPABILITIES
# -----
job           cpu=@ + folder = /
              + cpufolder = /   access=@
schedule      cpu=@ + folder = /
              + cpufolder = /   access=@
```

```

resource      + folder = / + cpufolder = /   access=@
prompt        + folder = /                   access=@
file           access=@
calendar      + folder = /                   access=@
cpu           cpu=@ + folder = /             access=@
parameter     name=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / access=@
userobj       cpu=@ + logon =MYWINDOM\\r@ + cpufolder = / access=display
userobj       cpu=@ + logon=@ + cpufolder = / access=@
eventrule     name=@ + folder = /           access=add,delete,display,modify,list,unlock
action        provider=@                     access=display,submit,use,list
event         provider=@                     access=use
report        name=@                         access=display
runcygrp      name=@ + folder = /           access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
variable     name=g@,$default + folder = /   access=add,delete,display,modify,use,list,unlock
wkldappl      name=@ + folder = /           access=add,delete,display,modify,list,unlock
lob           name=@                         access=use
folder        name=/                         access=@
end
#####

```

Windows Users in MYWINDOM whose name begins with 'r' can display only userjobs. All others MYWINDOM Windows user that are logged in on any workstation are given unrestricted access to all objects. Access to workstations is limited to workstations defined in the root (/) folder. Access to scheduling objects that can be defined in folders is limited to the root (/) folder, as specified. For example, access to prompts is limited to prompts defined in the root folder `prompt + folder = / access=@`. They are the only ones who can generate all kinds of plans and who can create, update, and delete event rule definitions. All users have access to all variable tables beginning with "g" and to the default table, irrespective of the default variable table name.



Note: Starting with version 9.2, due to support of the Windows users in User Principal Name (UPN) format, you have to specify the windows domain users in a different way in the Security file. In the same example for the previous version you have the following syntax:

```

user default  cpu=@ + logon=MYWINDOM\@
.....
userjob       cpu=@ + logon =MYWINDOM\r@ access=display

```

Security file on the master domain manager to install fix packs or upgrade fault-tolerant agents and dynamic agents

user MAESTRO CPU=@+LOGON=tw94user,Administrator

```

#####
# APPLIES TO tw94user and Administrator LOGGED IN ON ANY WORKSTATIONS.
#####
USER MAESTRO
  CPU=@+LOGON=tw94user,Administrator
BEGIN
  USEROBJ CPU=@ + cpufolder = / ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,USE,ALTPASS,LIST,UNLOCK
  JOB     CPU=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = /
          ACCESS=ADD,ADDDEP,ALTPRI,CANCEL,CONFIRM,DELDEP,DELETE,DISPLAY,
          KILL,MODIFY,RELEASE,REPLY,RERUN,SUBMIT,USE,LIST,UNLOCK,SUBMITDB,RUN
  SCHEDULE CPU=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = /
          ACCESS=ADD,ADDDEP,ALTPRI,CANCEL,DELDEP,DELETE,DISPLAY,LIMIT,

```

```

        MODIFY,RELEASE,REPLY,SUBMIT,LIST,UNLOCK
RESOURCE CPU=@ + folder = / + cpufolder = / ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,
        RESOURCE,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
PROMPT      ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,REPLY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
FILE  NAME=@ ACCESS=BUILD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,UNLOCK
CPU    CPU=@  + folder = /
        ACCESS=ADD,CONSOLE,DELETE,DISPLAY,FENCE,LIMIT,LINK,
        MODIFY,SHUTDOWN,START,STOP,UNLINK,LIST,UNLOCK,RUN,RESETFTA,MANAGE
PARAMETER CPU=@ + cpufolder = / ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,LIST,UNLOCK
CALENDAR      ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
REPORT  NAME=@ ACCESS=DISPLAY
EVENTRULE NAME=@ ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,LIST,UNLOCK
ACTION   PROVIDER=@ ACCESS=DISPLAY,SUBMIT,USE,LIST
EVENT    PROVIDER=@ ACCESS=USE
VARTABLE NAME=@ ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
WKLDAPPL NAME=@ ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,LIST,UNLOCK
RUNCYGRP NAME=@ ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
LOB      NAME=@ ACCESS=USE
folder   NAME=/ ACCESS=@
END
#####

```

The default MAESTRO definition applies to Dynamic Workload Console and CLI access for `tw94user` and `Administrator` users logged into any workstation in the network. They can install a fix pack or upgrade to a later version fault-tolerant agents and dynamic agents in the network simultaneously.

For more information about this feature, see the section about centralized agent update in *Planning and Installation Guide*.

Chapter 4. Configuring authentication

This section describes how to configure authentication using, amongst other methods, the popular LDAP (Lightweight Directory Access Protocol). It is divided into these main topics:

- [Where to configure authentication on page 264](#)
- [Available configurations on page 264](#)
- [Rules for using a Federated User Registry with IBM Workload Scheduler on page 265](#)
- [Completing the LDAP configuration on page 265](#)
- [Configuring an IBM Tivoli Directory Server on page 267](#)
- [Configuring Microsoft Active Directory on page 270](#)
- [Configuring an OpenID Connect Client on page 274](#)

Where to configure authentication

Authentication must be configured for each WebSphere Application Server Liberty profile, following these rules:

To authenticate command-line users

For users of the command-line, the command-line client, and the command-line as clients connected to the master domain manager using HTTP or HTTPS, the same authentication method must be configured for the following components:

- Master domain manager
- Backup master domain manager

To authenticate Z connector users

The Z connector is always installed on the same instance as the Dynamic Workload Console. You do not need to separately configure authentication for it.

To authenticate dynamic domain manager users

The same authentication method must be configured for each dynamic domain manager and its corresponding backup dynamic domain manager. This authentication method does not need to be the same as that used for the master domain manager.

Available configurations

On installation, all IBM Workload Scheduler components that use WebSphere Application Server Liberty are configured by default to use a local file-based user repository. For information about supported authentication mechanisms in WebSphere Application Server Liberty see the section about authenticating users in WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

You can implement an LDAP-based user repository by configuring the sample authentication templates provided in XML format.

If you choose to enable an LDAP-based user repository, for your convenience, a set of sample configuration templates are provided in XML format. See [Configuring IBM Workload Scheduler using templates on page 648](#) for a list of the templates. You can further customize the templates by adding additional elements to the XML files. For a full list of the elements that you can configure to complement or modify the configuration, see the section about LDAP user registry in WebSphere Application Server Liberty documentation.

Rules for using a Federated User Registry with IBM Workload Scheduler

This section describes the simple rules you must follow when configuring IBM Workload Scheduler to use a Federated User Registry:

No duplicate User IDs

You can define any number of user registries in a Federated User Registry. However, no user ID must be present in more than one registry and no user ID must be present twice in the same registry. Thus, if you configure multiple user registries it is because you have users in different non-inclusive groups that use different user registries and which need to access IBM Workload Scheduler.

Completing the LDAP configuration

About this task

After you have configured the WebSphere Application Server Liberty to use a new authentication configuration, whichever configuration method you used, you must also update the security file, and propagate the changes in your environment.

Updating the security file

About this task

If you use the classic security model, you need to update the IBM Workload Scheduler security file to allow users to access IBM Workload Scheduler objects. For more information, see the section about updating the security file in *Administration Guide*. The following example shows an updated security file, where the user `TEST_LDAP` has been added to the `USER MAESTRO` section:

```
USER MAESTRO
CPU=@+LOGON=tw83,Administrator,administrator,TEST_LDAP
BEGIN
USEROBJ CPU=@ ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,ALTPASS,UNLOCK,LIST
JOB      CPU=@ + FOLDER = / ACCESS=ADD,ADDDEP,ALTPRI,CANCEL,CONFIRM,DELDEP,DELETE,DISPLAY,KILL,
          MODIFY,RELEASE,REPLY,RERUN,SUBMIT,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
SCHEDULE CPU=@ + FOLDER = / ACCESS=ADD,ADDDEP,ALTPRI,CANCEL,DELDEP,DELETE,
          DISPLAY,LIMIT,MODIFY,RELEASE,REPLY,SUBMIT,LIST,UNLOCK
RESOURCE CPU=@ + FOLDER = / + CPUFOLDER = / ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,RESOURCE,
          USE,LIST,UNLOCK
PROMPT   + FOLDER = / ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,REPLY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK
FILE     NAME=@ ACCESS=CLEAN,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,UNLOCK
CPU      CPU=@ + FOLDER = / ACCESS=ADD,CONSOLE,DELETE,DISPLAY,FENCE,LIMIT,LINK,MODIFY,
          SHUTDOWN,START,STOP,UNLINK,LIST,UNLOCK
PARAMETER CPU=@ + FOLDER = / + CPUFOLDER = / ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,UNLOCK,LIST
CALENDAR + FOLDER = / ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,USE,UNLOCK,LIST
```

```
FOLDER      NAME=/      ACCESS=ADD,DELETE,DISPLAY,MODIFY,USE,LIST,UNLOCK, ACL
END
```

In this example, the `useDomainQualifiedUserNames` security property is set to `false` therefore the user name has been specified without the domain.

Propagating the changes

About this task

Propagate the changes you have made as follows:

1. If your changes involved changing the primary WebSphere Application Server Liberty administrator, then update the `wa_user.xml` file with the credentials. The `wauser_variables.xml` file can be found in the path:

UNIX

Dynamic Workload Console

```
DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides
```

master domain manager

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/overrides
```

Windows

Dynamic Workload Console

```
DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides
```

master domain manager

```
TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\overrides
```

- a. Copy the `wauser_variables.xml` file for both the Dynamic Workload Console and the master domain manager to a temporary directory.
 - b. Create a copy of the original `wauser_variables.xml` file for both the Dynamic Workload Console and the master domain manager in another directory for backup purposes.
 - c. Edit the files in the temporary directory with the updated information about the primary WebSphere Application Server Liberty administrator.
 - d. Copy the updated `wauser_variables.xml` files to the `overrides` directory on both the Dynamic Workload Console and the master domain manager.
2. Update the `USERNAME` and `PASSWORD` fields in the `useropts` file on every command-line client that points to your workstation.
 3. Update the `USERNAME` and `PASSWORD` fields in the `useropts` file on every fault-tolerant agent in your environment that has an `HTTP/HTTPS` connection defined in `localopts` that points to your workstation. The `HTTP/HTTPS` connection is used to submit a predefined job or job stream.
 4. Update the `USERNAME` and `PASSWORD` fields in the engine connection parameters on every connected Dynamic Workload Console.

Example



Note: To change the `useropts` file, change the `USERNAME` and type the new `PASSWORD` in plain text between double quotation marks. The password will be encrypted the first time you log in.

Configuring an IBM Tivoli Directory Server

Enable web single sign-on and use IBM Tivoli Directory Server as an identity provider.

About this task

Client applications, for example, the Dynamic Workload Console, can verify the identity of a user by relying on authentication from IBM Tivoli Directory Server. You can configure the WebSphere Application Server Liberty server to function as IBM Tivoli Directory Server to take advantage of web single sign-on and to use IBM Tivoli Directory Server as an identity provider.

To simplify the configuration of the WebSphere Application Server Liberty server, a sample configuration file in XML format is provided named `auth_IDS_config.xml`.

Update the configuration file with the details about your identity provider.

- a. Copy the template file to a working directory. The template is located in the following path:

UNIX

```
DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates/authentication
```

Windows

```
DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\templates\authentication
```

- b. Edit the template file in the working directory with the desired configuration.
- c. Optionally, create a backup copy of the configuration file `authentication_config.xml` present in the `overrides` directory in a different directory.
Ensure you do not copy the backup file in the path where the template files are located.
- d. The `overrides` directory is located in the following path:

UNIX

```
DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides
```

Windows

```
DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides
```

- e. Copy the updated template file to the `overrides` directory, renaming it to `authentication_config.xml` to override the original `authentication_config.xml` file.

Alternatively, if you prefer maintaining the original name of the template, ensure you delete `authentication_config.xml` after you have copied the updated template file to the `overrides` directory to avoid conflicts.

- f. Stop and restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty using the `stopappserver` and `startappserver` commands located in `TWA_home/appservertools`.

What to do next

For more detailed information about the IBM Tivoli Directory Server parameters and values to configure in the `auth_IDS_config.xml` file, see the related WebSphere Application Server Liberty documentation at [Configuring LDAP user registries in Liberty](#).

Example configurations of LDAP servers for IDS

Refer to this template if you are using an IBM Tivoli Directory Server (IDS). This file describes a default configuration. For more advanced and specific configurations, refer to the relevant WebSphere Application Server Liberty documentation, for example at [Configuring LDAP user registries in Liberty](#) or to your LDAP administrator.

IBM Directory Server

```
<server description="federated_basicLDAP">

  <variable name="admin.group.name" value="Admins"/>

  <variable name="ldap.base.DN" value=""/>

  <variable name="ldap.port" value=""/>

  <variable name="ldap.host" value=""/>

  <variable name="ldap.adminDN" value=""/>

  <variable name="ldap.password" value=""/>

  <jndiEntry value="${admin.group.name}" jndiName="admin.group.name" />

  <administrator-role>
    <group>${admin.group.name}</group>
  </administrator-role>

  <federatedRepository searchTimeout="20m">
    <primaryRealm name="TWSRealm" allowOpIfRepoDown="true">
      <participatingBaseEntry name="o=BasicRealm"/>
    </primaryRealm>
  </federatedRepository>
</server>
```



```

        <participatingBaseEntry name="{ldap.base.DN}"/>
        <uniqueGroupIdMapping inputProperty="uniqueName" outputProperty="uniqueName"/>
        <groupSecurityNameMapping inputProperty="cn" outputProperty="cn"/>
        <groupDisplayNameMapping inputProperty="cn" outputProperty="cn"/>
        <userDisplayNameMapping inputProperty="principalName" outputProperty="principalName"/>
        <userSecurityNameMapping inputProperty="principalName" outputProperty="principalName"/>
        <uniqueUserIdMapping inputProperty="uniqueName" outputProperty="uniqueName"/>
    </primaryRealm>
</federatedRepository>

<ldapRegistry
  baseDN="{ldap.base.DN}"
  ldapType="IBM Tivoli Directory Server"
  port="{ldap.port}"
  host="{ldap.host}"
  id="ldap"
  bindDN="{ldap.adminDN}"
  bindPassword="{ldap.password}"
  searchTimeout="20"
  sslEnabled="false"
  sslRef="twasSLSettings"
  userFilter="(&(uid=%v)(objectclass=ePerson))"
  groupFilter="(&(cn=%v)(|(objectclass=groupOfNames)
    (objectclass=groupOfUniqueNames)(objectclass=groupOfURLs)))"
  userIdMap="*:uid"
  groupIdMap="*:cn"
  groupMemberIdMap="mycompany-allGroups:member;
    mycompany-allGroups:uniqueMember;
    groupOfNames:member;
    groupOfUniqueNames:uniqueMember">
  <ldapEntityType name="Group">
    <objectClass>groupOfNames</objectClass>
  </ldapEntityType>
  <ldapEntityType name="PersonAccount">
    <objectClass>inetOrgPerson</objectClass>
  </ldapEntityType>
  <ldapEntityType name="OrgContainer">
    <objectClass>organization</objectClass>
    <objectClass>organizationalUnit</objectClass>
    <objectClass>domain</objectClass>
    <objectClass>container</objectClass>
  </ldapEntityType>

</ldapRegistry>
basicRegistry id="basic" realm="BasicRealm">

  user name="{user.twsuser.id}" password="{user.twsuser.password}"/>

  group name="{admin.group.name}">
    member name="{user.twsuser.id}"/>
</group>

```

```
</basicRegistry>

</server>
```

Configuring Microsoft Active Directory

Enable web single sign-on and use Microsoft Active Directory as an identity provider.

About this task

Client applications, for example, the Dynamic Workload Console, can verify the identity of a user by relying on authentication from Microsoft Active Directory. You can configure the WebSphere Application Server Liberty server to function as Microsoft Active Directory to take advantage of web single sign-on and to use Microsoft Active Directory as an identity provider.

To simplify the configuration of the WebSphere Application Server Liberty server, a sample configuration file in XML format is provided named `auth_AD_config.xml`.

Update the configuration file with the details about your identity provider.

- a. Copy the template file to a working directory. The template is located in the following path:

UNIX

```
DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates/authentication
```

Windows

```
DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\templates\authentication
```

- b. Edit the template file in the working directory with the desired configuration.
- c. Optionally, create a backup copy of the configuration file `authentication_config.xml` present in the `overrides` directory in a different directory.
Ensure you do not copy the backup file in the path where the template files are located.
- d. The `overrides` directory is located in the following path:

UNIX

```
DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides
```

Windows

```
DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides
```

- e. Copy the updated template file to the `overrides` directory, renaming it to `authentication_config.xml` to override the original `authentication_config.xml` file.

Alternatively, if you prefer maintaining the original name of the template, ensure you delete `authentication_config.xml` after you have copied the updated template file to the `overrides` directory to avoid conflicts.

- f. Stop and restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty using the `stopappserver` and `startappserver` commands located in `TWA_home/appservertools`.

What to do next

For more detailed information about Microsoft Active Directory parameters and values to configure in the `auth_AD_config.xml` file, see the related WebSphere Application Server Liberty documentation, for example [Configuring LDAP user registries in Liberty](#).

Example configurations of LDAP servers for Microsoft Active Directory

Refer to this template if you are using Microsoft Active Directory. This file describes a default configuration. For more advanced and specific configurations, refer to the relevant WebSphere Application Server Liberty documentation at [Configuring LDAP user registries in Liberty](#) or to your LDAP administrator.

```
<server description="federated_basicLDAP">

  <!--
  This variable specifies the group name containing the primary DWC's Administrator users.
  It can be a group defined in file based userRegistry (into <basicRegistry> section) or in your LDAP-based
  directory services authentication.
  -->
  <variable name="admin.group.name" value="Admins"/>

  <!--
  The value of your Base distinguished name (DN) of the directory service, which indicates the starting point
  for LDAP searches in the directory service.
  Sample: <variable name="ldap.base.DN" value="o=domain,c=us"/>
  -->
  <variable name="ldap.base.DN" value="DC=TWS,DC=COM"/>

  <!--
  The Port number of the LDAP server.
  Sample: <variable name="ldap.port" value="389"/>
  -->
  <variable name="ldap.port" value="389"/>

  <!--
  The Address of the LDAP server in the form of an IP address or a domain name service (DNS) name.
  Sample: <variable name="ldap.host" value="host.domain.com"/>
  -->
  <variable name="ldap.host" value="<your_host_name>"/>

  <!--
  The Distinguished name (DN) for the application server, which is used to bind to the directory service.
  Specify a user defined in Microsoft Active Directory Server with look-up rights.
  Sample: <variable name="ldap.adminDN" value="cn=testuser,o=domain,c=us"/>
  -->
  <variable name="ldap.adminDN" value="CN=Operators,DC=TWS,DC=COM"/>
```

```

<!--
The Distinguished name (DN) for the application server, which is used to bind to the directory service.
You can use the liberty provided tool <wlp_dir>/bin/securityUtility to know the encrypted value
of your password.
1. run: <wlp_dir>/bin/securityUtility encode mypassword
2. output: {xor}MiYvPiwsKDA0w==
3. fill the value field with the printed output value
Sample: <variable name="ldap.password" value="{xor}MiYvPiwsKDA0w==" />
-->
<variable name="ldap.password" value="" />

<jndiEntry value="\${admin.group.name}" jndiName="admin.group.name" />

<!-- Assign 'admin' to Administrator -->
  <administrator-role>
    <group>\${admin.group.name}</group>
  </administrator-role>

<!--
Details about how to configure LDAP registry and federate it with basic registry, can be found following this
link:

https://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/en/SSAW57\_liberty/com.ibm.websphere.wlp.nd.multipatform.doc/ae/twlp\_sec\_ldap.html

https://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/en/SSEQTP\_liberty/com.ibm.websphere.wlp.doc/ae/cwlp\_repository\_federation.html

To troubleshoot any LDAP authentication issues, copy trace.xml in overrides with the following
traceSpecification:
  traceSpecification="com.ibm.ws.security.wim.*=all:com.ibm.websphere.security.wim.*=all"
-->
<federatedRepository searchTimeout="20m">
  <primaryRealm name="TWSRealm" allowOpIfRepoDown="true">
    <participatingBaseEntry name="o=BasicRealm"/>
    <participatingBaseEntry name="\${ldap.base.DN}"/>
    <uniqueGroupIdMapping inputProperty="uniqueName" outputProperty="uniqueName"/>
    <groupSecurityNameMapping inputProperty="cn" outputProperty="cn"/>
    <groupDisplayNameMapping inputProperty="cn" outputProperty="cn"/>
    <userDisplayNameMapping inputProperty="principalName" outputProperty="principalName"/>
    <userSecurityNameMapping inputProperty="principalName" outputProperty="principalName"/>
    <uniqueUserIdMapping inputProperty="uniqueName" outputProperty="uniqueName"/>
  </primaryRealm>
</federatedRepository>

<!--
Note for LDAP directory service configured in SSL:
1. the settings sslEnabled to "true"
2. Import the LDAP certificate in trustStore used by the server,
   (it is defined in configDropins/defaults/ssl_comfig.xml file, the default one is
   resources/security/TWSServerTrustFile).
   For importing the exported LDAP certificate your_ldap.cert run
   $JAVA_HOME/bin/keytool -import -file ./your_ldap.cert -alias ldapCA -keystore
   resources/security/TWSServerTrustFile
-->
<ldapRegistry id="AD"
  host="\${ldap.host}" port="\${ldap.port}" ignoreCase="true"

```

```

    baseDN="${ldap.base.DN}"
    bindDN="${ldap.adminDN}"
    bindPassword="${ldap.password}"
    ldapType="Microsoft Active Directory"
    sslEnabled="false"
    sslRef="twasSLSettings">
<activeFilters
    userFilter="(&(sAMAccountName=%v)(objectcategory=user))"
    groupFilter="(&(cn=%v)(objectcategory=group))"
    userIdMap="*:sAMAccountName"
    groupIdMap="*:cn"
    groupMemberIdMap="memberOf:member" >
</activeFilters>
</ldapRegistry>

<basicRegistry id="basic" realm="BasicRealm">
    <!-- DO NOT DELETE -->
    <user name="${user.twsuser.id}" password="${user.twsuser.password}"/>
    <!-- END DO NOT DELETE -->
    <group name="${admin.group.name}">
        <member name="${user.twsuser.id}"/>
    </group>

    <!-- Sample for adding other users or group in file based user registry. -->
    <!--
    <user name="nonadmin" password="nonadmin"/>
    <user name="analyst" password="analyst"/>
    <user name="developer" password="developer"/>
    <user name="configurator" password="configurator"/>
    <user name="operator" password="operator"/>
    <group name="Admins">
        <member name="${user.twsuser.id}"/>
    </group>
    -->
</basicRegistry>

</server>

```

If you have nested groups in your Microsoft Active Directory, ensure you set the `recursiveSearch` property in the `ldapRegistry id="AD"` section to `true`, as follows:

```

.....
<ldapRegistry id="AD"
    host="${ldap.host}" port="${ldap.port}" ignoreCase="true"
    baseDN="${ldap.base.DN}"
    bindDN="${ldap.adminDN}"
    bindPassword="${ldap.password}"
    ldapType="Microsoft Active Directory"
        recursiveSearch="true"
    sslEnabled="false"
    sslRef="twasSLSettings">
.....
</ldapRegistry>

```

Configuring an OpenID Connect Client

Enable web single sign-on and use the OpenID Connect Provider as an identity provider.

About this task

Client applications, for example, the Dynamic Workload Console, can verify the identity of a user by relying on authentication from an OpenID Connect Provider. You can configure the WebSphere Application Server Liberty server to function as an OpenID Connect Client to take advantage of web single sign-on and to use the OpenID Connect Provider as an identity provider.

To simplify the configuration of the WebSphere Application Server Liberty server, a sample configuration file in XML format is provided named `openid_connect.xml`.

Update the configuration file with the details about your identity provider.

- a. Copy the template file to a working directory. The template is located in the following path:

UNIX

```
DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates/authentication
```

Windows

```
DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\templates\authentication
```

- b. Edit the template file in the working directory with the desired configuration.
- c. Optionally, create a backup copy of the configuration file `authentication_config.xml` present in the `overrides` directory in a different directory.
Ensure you do not copy the backup file in the path where the template files are located.
- d. The `overrides` directory is located in the following path:

UNIX

```
DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides
```

Windows

```
DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides
```

- e. Copy the updated template file to the `overrides` directory, renaming it to `authentication_config.xml` to override the original `authentication_config.xml` file.
Alternatively, if you prefer maintaining the original name of the template, ensure you delete `authentication_config.xml` after you have copied the updated template file to the `overrides` directory to avoid conflicts.
- f. Stop and restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty using the `stopappserver` and `startappserver` commands located in `TWA_home/appservertools`.

What to do next

For more detailed information about the OpenID parameters and values to configure in the `openid_connect.xml` file, see the related WebSphere Application Server Liberty documentation at [Configuring an OpenID Connect Client in Liberty](#).

Chapter 5. Network administration

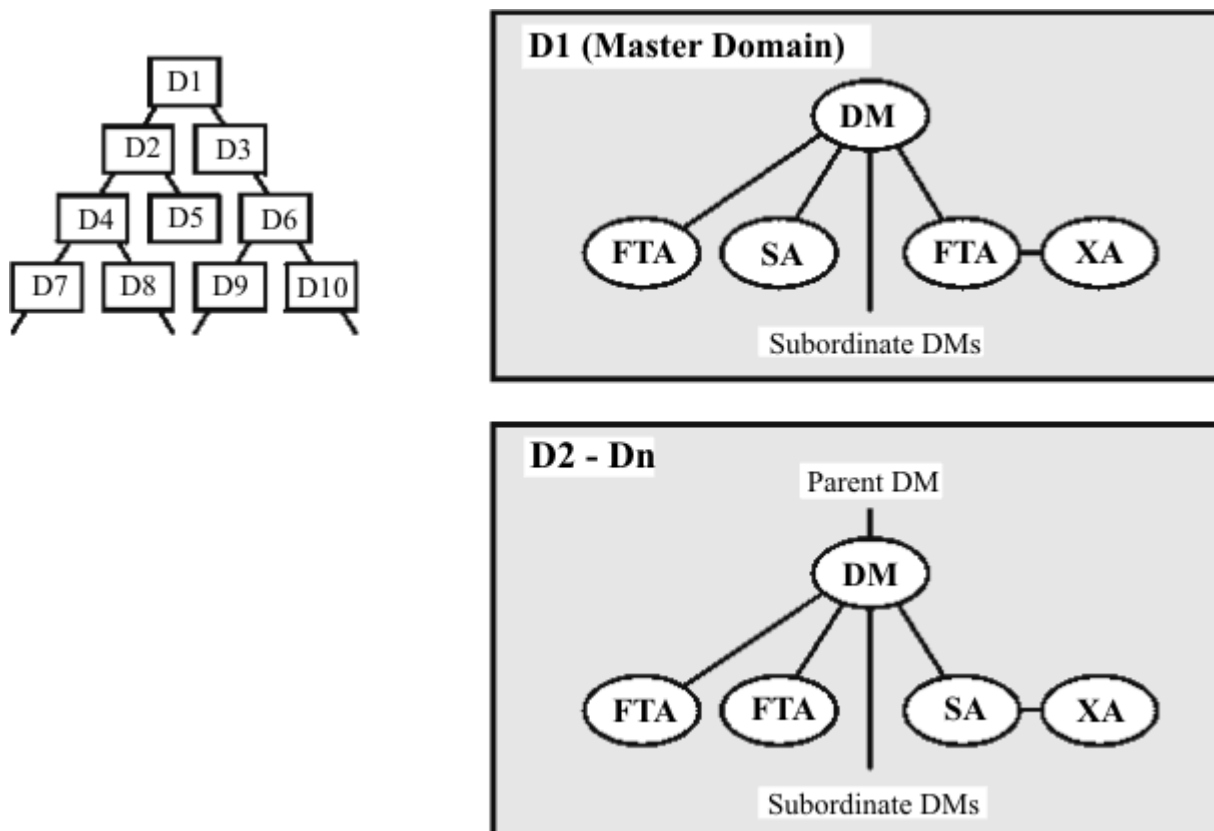
This chapter describes how to administer the IBM Workload Scheduler network. It has the following topics:

- [Network overview on page 276](#)
- [Network definition on page 277](#)
- [Network communications on page 278](#)
- [Network operation on page 287](#)
- [Support for Internet Protocol version 6 on page 532](#)
- [Optimizing the network on page 292](#)
- [Netman configuration file on page 303](#)
- [Integrating with SAP and PeopleSoft on page 305](#)
- [IP address validation on page 532](#)
- [Impact of network changes on page 534](#)

Network overview

A IBM Workload Scheduler network consists of one or more domains arranged hierarchically. A IBM Workload Scheduler domain is a logical grouping of workstations, consisting of a domain manager and a number of agents.

Figure 6. IBM Workload Scheduler network domain structure



Network definition

Domain

A named group of IBM Workload Scheduler workstations consisting of one or more agents and a domain manager. All domains have a parent, except the master domain.

Master domain

The topmost domain in an IBM Workload Scheduler network.

Master domain manager

The domain manager in the topmost domain of an IBM Workload Scheduler network. It contains the centralized master files used to document scheduling objects. It creates the Production Control file (Symphony) at the start of each production period and performs all logging and reporting for the network. See also Domain Manager.

Backup master domain manager

A fault-tolerant agent capable of assuming the responsibilities of the master domain manager.

Parent domain

The domain directly above the current domain. All domains, except the master domain, have a parent domain. All communications to/from a domain is rooted through the parent domain manager.

Domain Manager

The management hub in a domain. All communications in and from the agents in a domain is routed through the domain manager. See also Master Domain Manager.

Backup domain manager

A fault-tolerant agent capable of assuming the responsibilities of its domain manager.

Fault-tolerant agent

An agent workstation capable of resolving local dependencies and launching its jobs in the absence of a domain manager.

Standard agent

An agent workstation that launches jobs only under the direction of its domain manager.

Extended agent

An agent workstation that launches jobs only under the direction of its host. Extended agents can be used to interface IBM Workload Scheduler with non-IBM Workload Scheduler systems and applications

Dynamic agent

A workstation that manages a wide variety of job types, for example, specific database or FTP jobs, in addition to existing job types. This workstation is automatically created and registered when you install the dynamic agent. Because the installation and registration processes are performed automatically, when you view the agent in the Dynamic Workload Console, it results as updated by the Resource Advisor Agent. You can group agents in pools and dynamic pools.

In a simple configuration, dynamic agents connect directly to a master domain manager or to a dynamic domain manager. However, in more complex network topologies, if the network configuration prevents the master domain manager or the dynamic domain manager from directly communicating with the dynamic agent, then you can configure your dynamic agents to use a local or remote gateway.

Host

The scheduling function required by extended agents. It can be performed by any IBM Workload Scheduler workstation, except another extended agent.

Network communications

In a IBM Workload Scheduler network, agents communicate with their domain managers, and domain managers communicate with their parent domain managers. There are basically two types of communications that take place:

- Start-of-production period initialization (distribution of new Symphony file)
- Scheduling events in the form of change-of-state messages during the production period

Before the start of each new production period, the master domain manager creates a production control file called Symphony. Then, IBM Workload Scheduler is restarted in the network, and the master domain manager sends a copy of the new Symphony file to each of its automatically-linked agents and subordinate domain managers. The domain managers, in turn, send copies to their automatically-linked agents and subordinate domain managers. Agents and domain managers that are not set up to link automatically are initialized with a copy of Symphony as soon as a link operation is run in IBM Workload Scheduler.

Once the network is started, scheduling messages, like job starts and completions, are passed from the agents to their domain managers, through parent domain managers to the master domain manager. The master domain manager then broadcasts the messages throughout the hierarchical tree to update the Symphony files of all domain managers and the domain managers forward the messages to all fault-tolerant agents in their domain running in *FullStatus* mode.

Network links

Links provide communications between IBM Workload Scheduler workstations in a network. Links are controlled by the AUTO Link flag, and the Console Manager **link** and **unlink** commands. When a link is open, messages are passed between two workstations. When a link is closed, the sending workstation stores messages in a local pobox file and sends them to the destination workstation when the link is reopened.

This means that when links are closed, the message queues fill up with messages for the inaccessible workstations. To maximize the performance of IBM Workload Scheduler, monitor workstations for closed links and attempt to reopen them as soon as possible.



Note: Extended agents do not have links. They communicate with their domain managers through their hosts.

To have a workstation link opened automatically, turn on the AUTO Link flag in the workstation's definition. The link is first opened when IBM Workload Scheduler is started on the Master Domain workstation. If the subdomain manager

and workstations are not initialized and their AUTO Link flag is on, the master domain manager attempts to link to its subordinates and begin the initialization processes. If the AUTO Link flag is turned off, the workstation is only initialized by running a **link** command from the master domain manager. After the workstation is initialized, it automatically starts and issues a link back to its domain manager.

If you stop a workstation, the links from it to other workstations are closed. However, the links from the other workstations to it remain open until either one of the following situations occurs:

- The stopped workstation is restarted and a **link** command is issued
- The other workstations' **mailman** processes time out, and perform an **unlink** for the workstation

When the **link** command is issued and the connection has been established, if the domain manager does not receive any reply within the timeout period, the `chkhltst` service is automatically invoked by **mailman**.

This service verifies that the workstation mailbox can be successfully read, and checks if there are errors in the mailbox header. Resulting information is logged in the `TWSMERGE.log` file of the domain manager as follows:

- If a file system error occurs while opening the mailbox, the following message is reported: `AWSDY126E An error occurred opening the Mailbox.msg file in CPU_NAME.`
- If an error occurs while opening the mailbox because **mailman** is reading the mailbox, the following message is reported: `AWSDY123I The Mailbox.msg file in CPU_NAME is correctly read by Mailman.`
- If the mailbox is correctly opened, but an error occurs while reading the header, the following message is reported: `AWSDY125E An error occurred reading the header of the Mailbox.msg file in CPU_NAME.`
- If the mailbox is correctly opened and no error occurs while reading the header, the following message is reported: `AWSDY124W The Mailbox.msg file in CPU_NAME is not read by Mailman.`

This service can also be launched manually by using the **conman** command. See the *IBM Workload Scheduler User's Guide and Reference* for more details.

To be certain that inter-workstation communication is correctly restored, you can issue a **link** command after restarting a workstation.

Working across firewalls

In the design phase of a IBM Workload Scheduler network, the administrator must know where the firewalls are positioned in the network, which fault-tolerant agents and which domain managers belong to a particular firewall, and which are the entry points into the firewalls. When this has been clearly understood, the administrator should define the **behindfirewall** attribute for some of the workstation definitions in the IBM Workload Scheduler database. In particular, if a workstation definition is set with the **behindfirewall** attribute to ON, this means that there is a firewall between that workstation and the IBM Workload Scheduler master domain manager. In this case, the workstation-domain manager link is the only link allowed between the workstation and its domain manager.

All IBM Workload Scheduler workstations should be defined with the **behindfirewall** attribute if the link with the corresponding domain manager, or with any domain manager in the IBM Workload Scheduler hierarchy right up to the master domain manager, is across a firewall.

When mapping an IBM Workload Scheduler network over an existing firewall structure, it does not matter which fault-tolerant agents and which domain managers are on the secure side of the firewall and which ones are on the non secure side. Firewall boundaries should be the only concern. For example, if the master domain manager is in a non secure zone and some of the domain managers are in secured zones, or vice versa, does not make any difference. The firewall structure must always be considered starting from the master domain manager and following the IBM Workload Scheduler hierarchy, marking all the workstations that have a firewall between them and their corresponding domain manager.

For all workstations with **behindfirewall** set to ON, the conman **start** and **stop** commands on the workstation, and the **showjobs** commands are sent following the domain hierarchy, instead of making the master domain manager or the domain manager open a direct connection to the workstation. This makes a significant improvement in security.

This attribute works for multiple nested firewalls as well. For extended agents, you can specify that an extended agent workstation is behind a firewall by setting the **behindfirewall** attribute to ON, on the host workstation. The attribute is read-only in the plan; to change it in the plan, the administrator must update it in the database and then re-create the plan.

See the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference* for details on how to set this attribute.

Configuring dynamic agent communications through a gateway

In some complex network topologies, the master domain manager or the dynamic domain manager are prevented from directly communicating with the dynamic agent.

Before you begin

In a simple configuration, dynamic agents connect directly to the master domain manager or to the dynamic domain manager. However, in more complex network topologies, if the network configuration prevents the master domain manager or the dynamic domain manager from directly communicating with the dynamic agent, for example, if the agents are behind a firewall and need to communicate through the internet, or if they need to communicate with a Network Address Translation (NAT) process, then you can configure your dynamic agents to use a local or remote gateway.

About this task

You can set up your dynamic agents to use a gateway for communication with the master domain manager or to the dynamic domain manager when you install a dynamic agent, or you can configure a gateway subsequent to the installation.

For information about the gateway parameters available with the installation of a dynamic agent, see the section about agent installation parameters in *Planning and Installation Guide*.

To configure an existing dynamic agent to communicate to its master domain manager or dynamic domain manager through a local gateway, perform the following configuration steps:

1. Edit the `JobManager.ini` file on the dynamic agent workstation that you want to configure to communicate through a gateway. Edit the `[ResourceAdvisorAgent]` section so that the value of the **ResourceAdvisorURL** parameter is `https://$(tdwb_server):$(tdwb_port)/ita/JobManagerGW/JobManagerRESTWeb/JobScheduler/resource`, where, `$(tdwb_server)` and `$(tdwb_port)` correspond to the host name and port of the gateway that you want to use for communication with the master domain manager or the dynamic domain manager.
2. Stop and start the dynamic agent to implement the changes.

Results

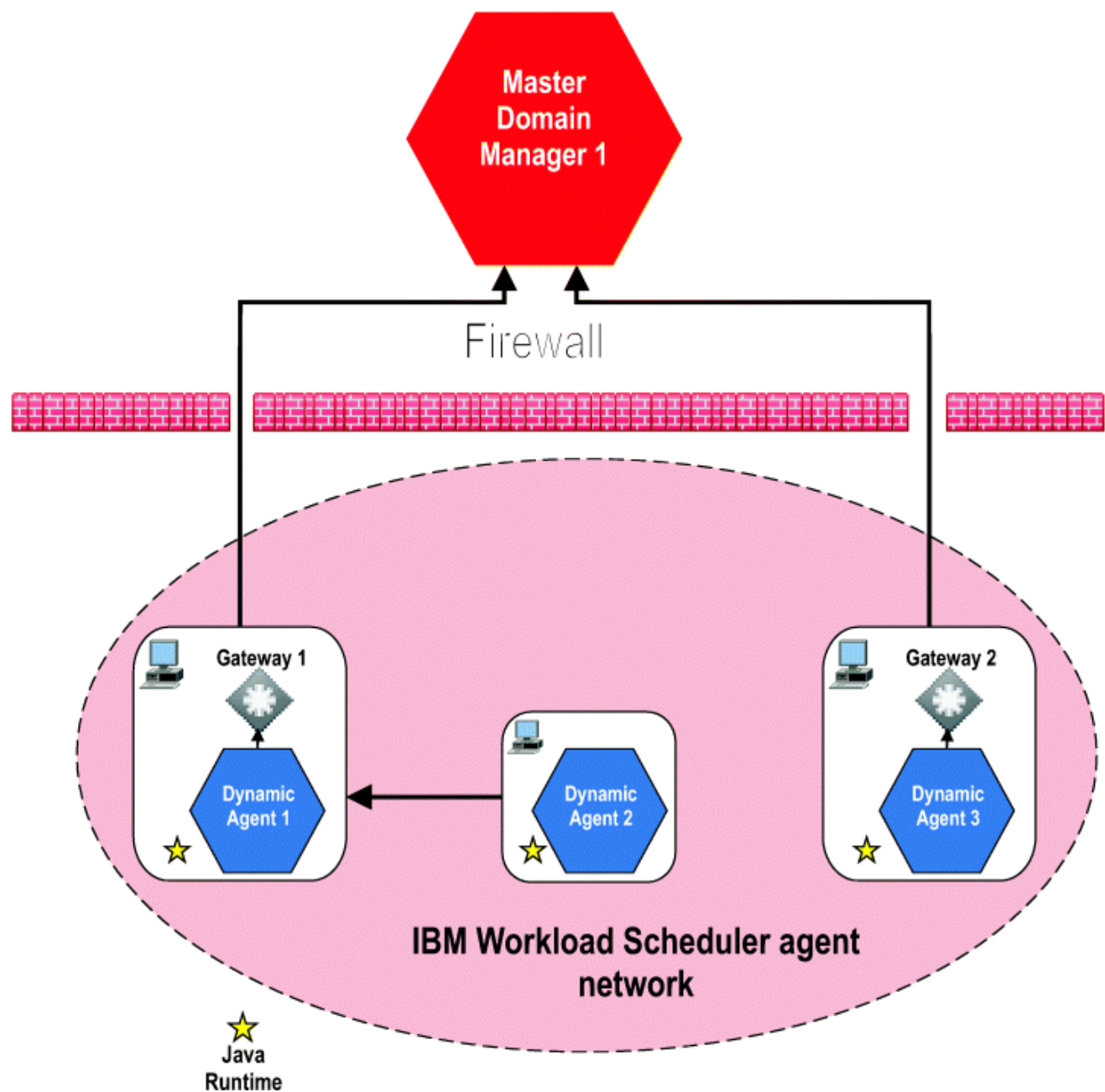
The master domain manager or dynamic domain manager can now communicate with the dynamic agent workstation through the gateway. You can also configure the agents in high availability, as described in [Configuring dynamic agents in high availability through multiple gateways on page 284](#).



Note: If you have more than 100 dynamic agents that communicate through one single gateway to the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager, in the `JobManagerGW.ini` file on the dynamic agent workstation where the gateway resides, set the `ActionPollers` parameter as described in [Configuring general properties \[ITA\] on page 74](#).

Example

The following diagram depicts a network topology where the master domain manager communicates to the dynamic agents, located behind a firewall, through a gateway configured on one of the dynamic agents.



The following are the configuration settings used in the network topology depicted in the figure:

Table 54. Configuration settings

Dynamic Agent	Configur ation File	Parameter	Value
Dynamic Agent 1 - Local gateway	JobManage r.ini	Section [ResourceAdvisorAgent] ResourceAdvisorUrl	<code>https:// \$(tdwb_server) : \$(tdwb_port)/ita/ JobManagerGW/</code>

Table 54. Configuration settings (continued)

Dynamic Agent	Configuration File	Parameter	Value
			<pre>JobManagerRESTWeb/ JobScheduler/resource</pre>
			where, \$(tdwb_server) The host name of the Dynamic Agent 1 workstation. \$(tdwb_port) The port number of the Dynamic Agent 1 workstation.
Dynamic Agent 2 - Remote gateway	JobManager.ini	Section [ResourceAdvisorAgent] ResourceAdvisorUrl	<pre>https:// \$(tdwb_server): \$(tdwb_port)/ita/ JobManagerGW/ JobManagerRESTWeb/ JobScheduler/resource</pre>
			where, \$(tdwb_server) The host name of the Dynamic Agent 1 workstation. \$(tdwb_port) The port number of the Dynamic Agent 1 workstation.
Dynamic Agent 3 - Local gateway	JobManager.ini	Section [ResourceAdvisorAgent] ResourceAdvisorUrl	<pre>https:// \$(tdwb_server): \$(tdwb_port)/ita/ JobManagerGW/ JobManagerRESTWeb/ JobScheduler/resource</pre>
			where, \$(tdwb_server) The host name of the Dynamic Agent 3 workstation. \$(tdwb_port) The port number of the Dynamic Agent 3 workstation.

What to do next

For more information about the parameters in the `JobManager.ini` and `JobManagerGW.ini` files, see [Configuring the agent on page 71](#).

To see an example of the installation parameters that must be specified to configure a gateway when installing a dynamic agent, see the section containing example dynamic agent gateway installations in the *Planning and Installation Guide*.

Configuring dynamic agents in high availability through multiple gateways

About this task

You can configure agents to communicate through as gateway, as described in [Configuring dynamic agent communications through a gateway on page 280](#). You can also configure high availability by defining a list of backup gateways to be used by the agents in case the primary gateway encounters an error.

To define a list of backup gateways, perform the following steps on each dynamic agent configured to act as a gateway:

1. Stop the agent by running the `ShutDownLwa` command, as described in the topic about the `ShutDownLwa` command in *User's Guide and Reference*.
2. Browse to the `JobManagerGW.ini` file on the dynamic agent configured to act as a gateway. The `JobManagerGW.ini` is located in the following paths:

UNIX

On UNIX™ operating systems

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/ITA/cpa/config/JobManagerGW.ini
```

Windows

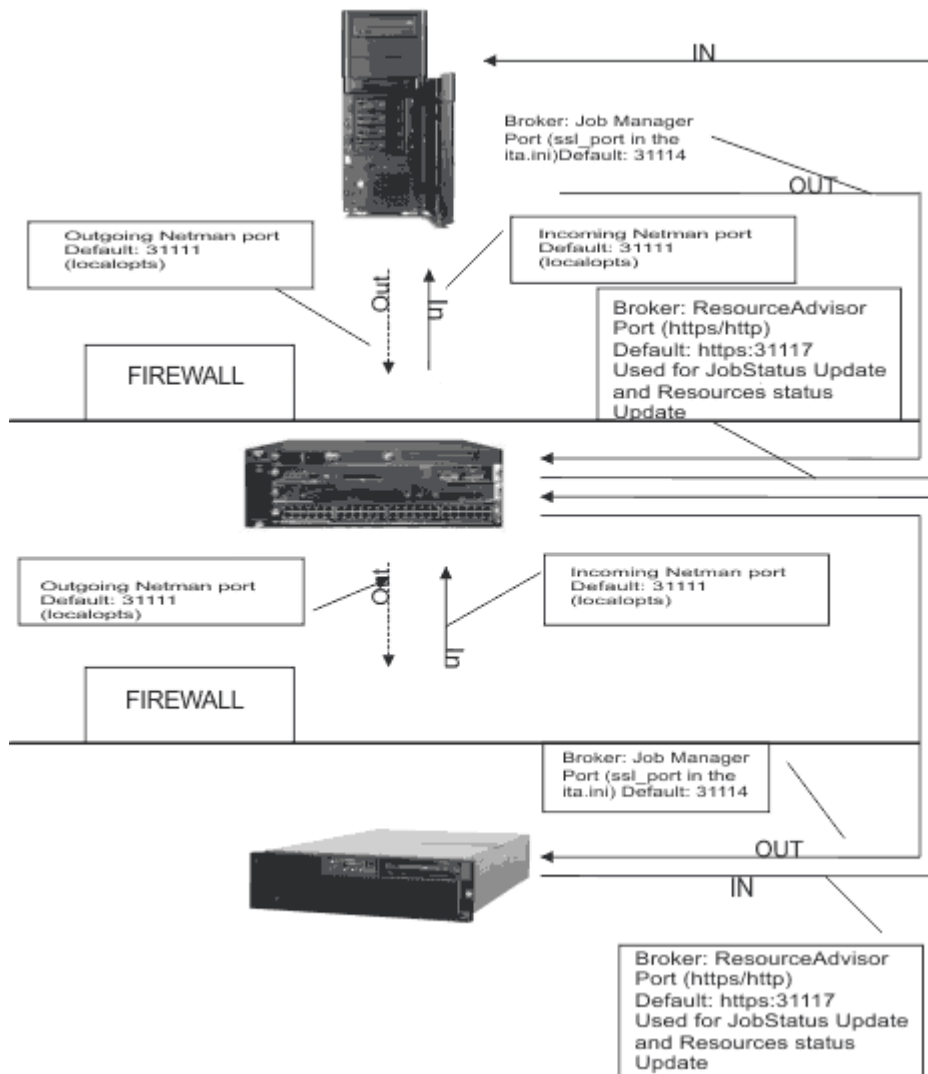
On Windows™ operating systems

```
TWA_home\TWS\ITA\cpa\config\JobManagerGW.ini
```

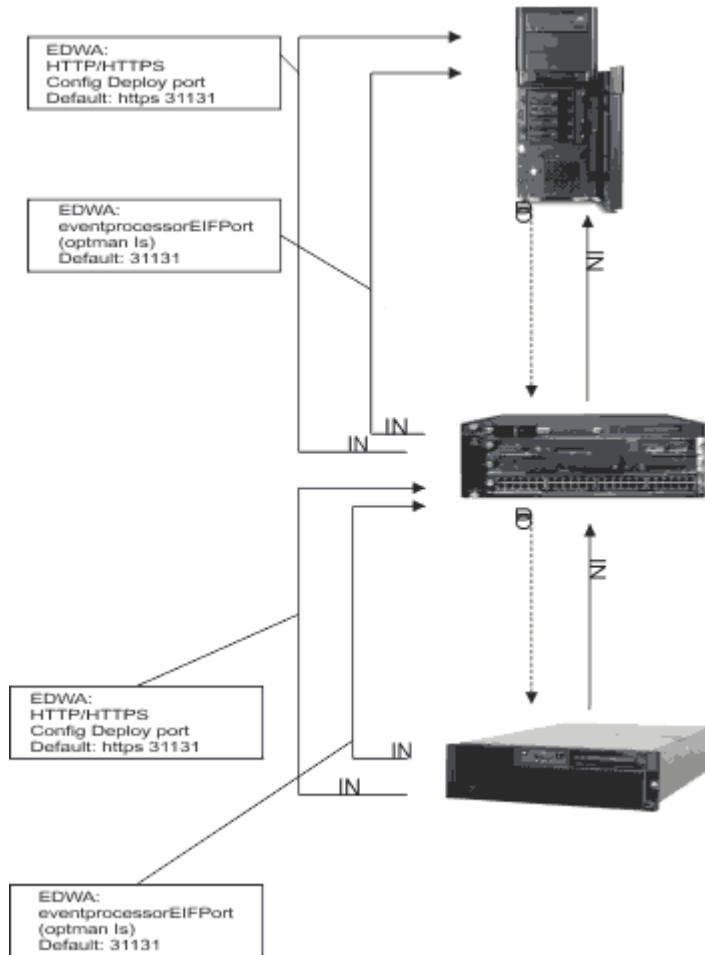
3. Browse to the [ITA] section and specify in the **JobManagerGWURIs** parameter the list of backup gateways. Separate each gateway address with a comma.
4. Start the dynamic agent to implement the changes by running the `StartUpLwa` command, as described in the topic about the `StartUpLwa` command in *User's Guide and Reference*.
5. The list of backup gateways is immediately distributed to all dynamic agents that are connected to the primary gateway.

Enabling Ports

When you install the master domain manager in a IBM Workload Scheduler network all the incoming and outgoing ports are shown in the figure below:



If you enable the event driven workload automation (EDWA) behind the firewall feature the figure below shows all the incoming and outgoing ports.



The following is the complete list of all ports:

Communication agent - master domain manager

- 31111 - incoming/outcoming Netman port (local ports)
- 31115 - **HTTP_PORT**
- 31116 - HTTPS Protocol port (local ports)
- 31113 - port used to listen for incoming SSL connections. This value must match the one defined in the nm SSL port local option of the workstation
- 31131 - **eventProcessorEIFPort** specifies the Job Manager Event Integration Facility (EIF) port number. (optman ls)
- 31132 - **-gweifport gateway_eif_port**. Specifies the Job Manager Event Integration Facility (EIF) port number. The default value is 31132. The valid range is 1 to 65535
- 5529 - EIF Probe server port. Used in event rule management

dynamic domain manager

- 31114 - dynamic domain manager **JobManager** port (**ssl_port** in the `ita.ini` file)
- 31117 - dynamic domain manager **ResourceAdvisor** port (used for **JobStatus Update** and **ResourcesStatus Update**)
- 41114 - **BROKER_NETMAN_PORT** – The TCP/IP port number used by the netman process to listen to communication from the dynamic domain manager
- 35116 - CLI connections (localopts)

Dynamic Workload Console

- 9444 - **HTTP_PORT**
- 9443 - **HTTPS_PORT**
- 12809 - **bootstrap** port
- 19402 - **bootstrap** security port, to be used for connecting to the Z connector

event-driven workload automation

- 31131 - HTTP/HTTPS **Config Deploy** port

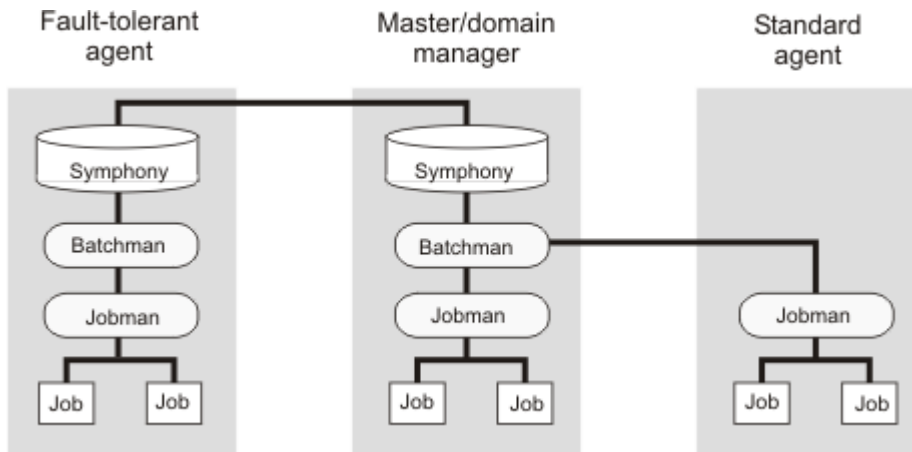
Network operation

The batchman process on each domain manager and fault-tolerant agent workstation operates autonomously, scanning its Symphony file to resolve dependencies and launch jobs. Batchman launches jobs via the jobman process. On a standard agent, the jobman process responds to launch requests from the domain manager's batchman.

The master domain manager is continuously informed of job launches and completions and is responsible for broadcasting the information to domain managers and fault-tolerant agents so they can resolve any inter-workstation dependencies.

The degree of synchronization among the Symphony files depends on the setting of the *FullStatus* mode in a workstation's definition. Assuming that these modes are turned on, a fault-tolerant agent's Symphony file contains the same information as the master domain manager's (see the section that explains how to manage workstations in the database in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*).

Figure 7. Symphony file synchronization



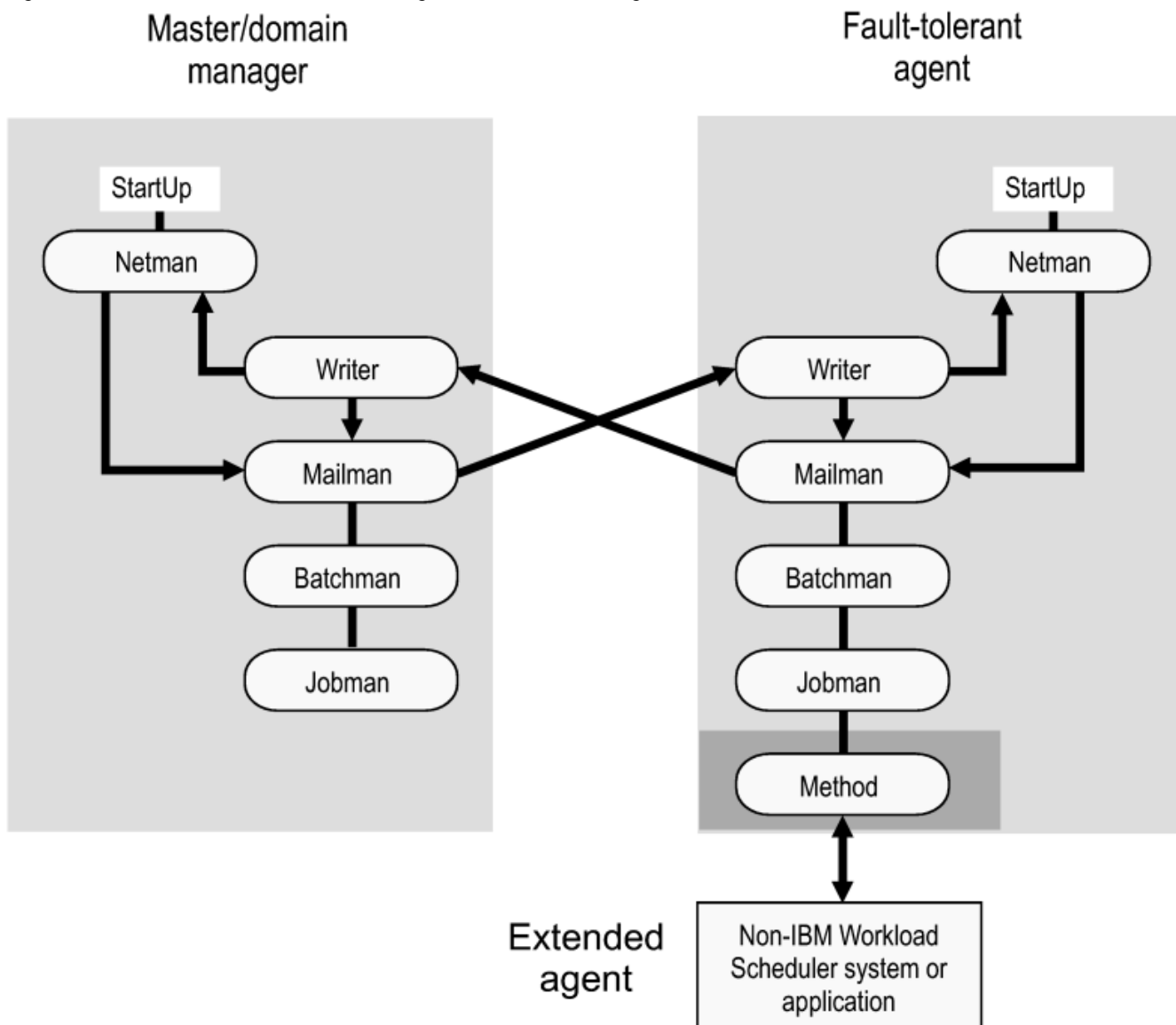
Network processes

Netman is started by the StartUp script (command). The order of process creation is netman, mailman, batchman, and jobman. On standard agent workstations, batchman does not run. All processes, except jobman, run as the **TWS** user. Jobman runs as **root**.

When network activity begins, netman receives requests from remote mailman processes. Upon receiving a request, netman creates a writer process and passes the connection off to it. Writer receives the message and passes it to the local mailman. The writer processes (there might be more than one on a domain manager) are started by link requests and are stopped by unlink requests (or when the communicating mailman terminates).

Domain managers, including the master domain manager, can communicate with a large number of agents and subordinate domain managers. For improved efficiency, you can define mailman servers on a domain manager to distribute the communications load (see the section that explains how to manage workstations in the database in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*).

Figure 8. Process creation on domain manager and fault-tolerant agent



The StartUp command is normally run automatically, but can also be run manually, as follows:

StartUp

Starts **netman**, the IBM Workload Scheduler network management process.

Windows In Windows™, the **netman** service is started automatically when a computer is restarted. **StartUp** can be used to restart the service if it is stopped for any reason.

UNIX In UNIX™, the **StartUp** command can be run automatically by invoking it from the `/etc/inittab` file, so that WebSphere Application Server Liberty infrastructure and **netman** is started each time a computer is rebooted. **StartUp** can be used to restart **netman** if it is stopped for any reason.

The remainder of the process tree can be restarted with the

```
conman start
conman startmon
```

commands. See the documentation about conman in the *User's Guide and Reference* for more information.



Note: If you start the StartUp command using a remote shell, the netman process maintains the shell open without returning the prompt. To avoid this problem, modify the StartUp command so that the netman process is called in the background, as follows:

```
# Start netman
/usr/local/TWS95/mae95/TWS/bin/netman&
```

Authorization

You must have **start** access to the workstation.

Syntax

StartUp [**-v** | **-u**]

Arguments

-v

Displays the command version and exits.

-u

Displays command usage information and exits.

Example

Examples

To display the command name and version, run the following command:

```
StartUp -v
```

To start the **netman** process, run the following command:

```
StartUp
```

Monitoring the IBM Workload Scheduler processes

You can use event-driven workload automation (EDWA) to monitor the status of network processes and to start a predefined set of actions when one or more specific events take place. For more information about event-driven workload automation, refer to *User's Guide and Reference*.

You can monitor the following processes:

- agent
- appservman
- batchman
- jobman
- mailman
- monman
- netman

The .XML file contains the definition of a sample event rule to monitor the status of the specified processes on the specified workstation. This event rule calls the MessageLogger action provider to write a message in a log file in an internal auditing database. If the condition described in the rule is already existing when you deploy the rule, the related event is not generated. For more information about the MessageLogger action provider, refer to IBM Workload Scheduler User's Guide and Reference:

```
<eventRule name="PROCESSES" ruleType="filter" isDraft="no">
  <eventCondition name="twProcMonEvt1" eventProvider="TWSApplicationMonitor"
    eventType="TWSProcessMonitor">
    <scope>
      AGENT, BATCHMAN DOWN
    </scope>
    <filteringPredicate>
      <attributeFilter name="ProcessName" operator="eq">
        <value>process_name1</value>
      </attributeFilter>
      <attributeFilter name="TWSPath" operator="eq">
        <value>TWS_path</value>
      </attributeFilter>
      <attributeFilter name="Workstation" operator="eq">
        <value>workstation_name</value>
      </attributeFilter>
      <attributeFilter name="SampleInterval" operator="eq">
        <value>sample_interval</value>
      </attributeFilter>
    </filteringPredicate>
  </eventCondition>
  <action actionProvider="MessageLogger" actionType="MSGLOG" responseType="onDetection">
    <scope>
      OBJECT=AAAAAAA MESSAGE=TWS PROCESS DOWN: %{TWSPROCMONEVT1.PROCESSNAME}
      ON %{TWSPROCMONEVT1.TWSPATH}
    </scope>
    <parameter name="ObjectKey">
      <value>object_key</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter name="Severity">
      <value>message_severity</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter name="Message">
      <value>log_message</value>
    </parameter>
  </action>
</eventRule>
</eventRuleSet>
```

where:

process_name

Is the name of the process to be monitored. You can insert more than one process name, as follows:

```
<attributeFilter name="ProcessName" operator="eq">
  <value>agent</value>
  <value>batchman</value>
</attributeFilter>
```

TWS_path

Is the directory containing the Symphony file and the bin directory.

workstation_name

Is the workstation on which the event is generated.

sample_interval

Is the interval, expressed in seconds, for monitoring the process status.

object_key

Is a key identifying the object to which the message pertains.

message_severity

Is the severity of the message.

log_message

Is the message to be logged.

Optimizing the network

The structure of a IBM Workload Scheduler network goes hand in hand with the structure of your enterprise's network. The structure of the domains must reflect the topology of the network in order to best use the available communication channels.

But when planning the IBM Workload Scheduler network, the following must be taken into consideration:

- Data volumes
- Connectivity

Data volumes

Network capacity must be planned to adapt to the amount of data that is circulating. Particularly high transmission volumes might be caused by the following:

- Transfer of large Symphony files.
- Message traffic between the master domain manager and a *FullStatus* agent.
- Message traffic from a domain manager when the domain has many agents.
- Heavy use of internetwork dependencies, which extends traffic to the entire network.

Connectivity

For the more critical agents in your network, you need to consider their position in the network. The reliability of workload execution on a particular agent depends on its capacity to receive a fresh Symphony file at the start of the production period. If the workload contains many dependencies, a reliable connection to the rest of the network is also required. These factors suggest that the best place for critical agents is in the master domain, or to be set up as domain managers immediately under the master domain manager, possibly receiving their Symphony files through a set of dedicated mailman servers. Further, it is important for critical agents that any domain manager above them in the tree structure must be hosted on powerful systems and must have an adequate backup system to ensure continuity of operation in the event of problems.

IBM Workload Scheduler provides two mechanisms to accommodate a particular network situation: the domain structure and mailman servers. Whereas domain structure establishes a hierarchy among IBM Workload Scheduler agents, mailman servers are used to tune the resources dedicated to the connection between two agents.

Domain

Use the IBM Workload Scheduler domain structure mechanism to create a tree-shaped structure for the network, where all communications between two points use the unique path defined by the tree (climb to the common ancestor and go down to the target, as opposed to direct TCP communication). As a consequence, the domain structure separates the network into more-manageable pieces. This is for easier filtering, overview, action, and monitoring. However, it does also introduce some delay in the workload processing. For instance when distributing the Symphony file, a fault-tolerant agent inside a domain needs to wait for two steps of Symphony distribution to be completed (from master domain manager to domain manager and from domain manager to fault-tolerant agent). The same is valid for every other type of communication that comes from the master domain manager.

This has the following implications:

- Critical business activities must be as close as possible to the master domain manager
- The domain manager must be installed on as powerful a workstation as possible
- A similarly powerful backup domain manager must be included in the network
- The network link between the domain manager and its backup must be as fast as possible to pass all the updates received from the subtree
- If intervention is needed directly on the domain, either give shell access to the operators to use the IBM Workload Scheduler command line, or install a connector so that the Dynamic Workload Console can be used.

Mailman servers

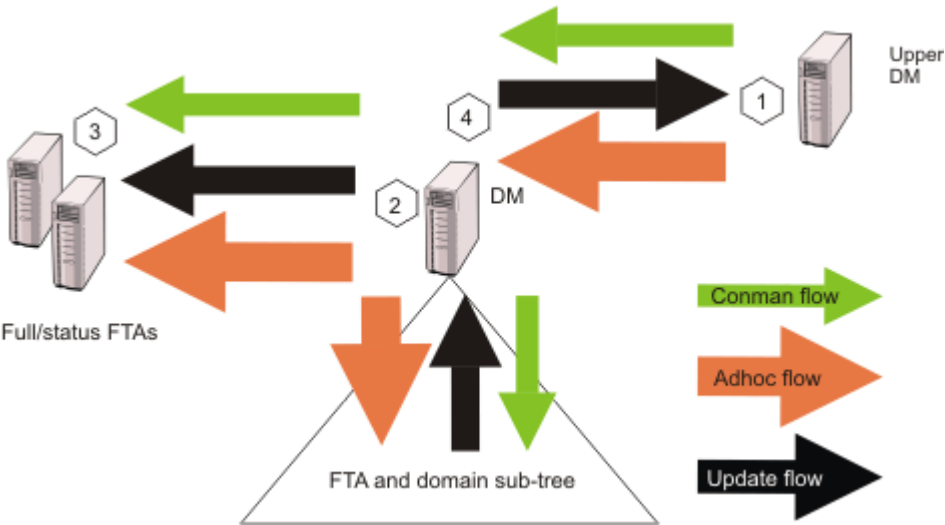
Mailman servers allocate separate processes dedicated to the communication with other workstations. The main mailman is dedicated to the transfer and network hub activities. The use of mailman servers on the domain manager must be carefully planned. The main parameter is the number of downstream connections at each level of the tree. This number describes the number of mailman servers that a main mailman is connected to, or the number of agents a mailman server is connected to. The maximum number of downstream connections is about 50 for Windows™ and about 100 for other UNIX™ workstations, depending on their power.

Typical downstream connections is about 15 for Windows™ and about 20 for other UNIX™ workstations. However, you must also take into consideration the link speed and the queue sizes, discussed below.

Planning space for queues

In order to plan space for event queues, and possible alert levels and reactions, it is necessary to model the flows passing through the agents, and the domain managers in particular.

Figure 9. Typical IBM Workload Scheduler network flows.



For a typical domain manager, the main flow comes from update activity reported by the sub tree, and from ad hoc submissions arriving from the master domain manager and propagating to the entire network. Under these conditions, the most critical errors are listed by order of importance in [Table 55: Critical flow errors on page 294](#):

Table 55. Critical flow errors

Flow no.	Location	Queue	Risk	Impact
1	Upper domain manager	dm.msg	The queue fills up because of too many unlinked workstations in the domain or a downstream domain manager has failed.	The upper domain manager fails and propagates the error.
2	Domain manager	FullStatus fta.msg	The queue fills because of too many unlinked workstations in the domain or because the FullStatus fault-tolerant agent is not coping with the flow.	The domain manager fails and favors the occurrence of #1.
3	Domain manager and FullStatus fault-tolerant agent	Mailbox.msg or Intercom.msg	The queue fills because the FullStatus fault-tolerant agent cannot cope with flow.	The FullStatus fault-tolerant agent fails and favors the occurrence of #2.

Table 55. Critical flow errors (continued)

Flow no.	Location	Queue	Risk	Impact
4	Domain manager	tomaster.msg	The queue fills because of too many unlinked workstations in the domain.	The domain manager starts to unlink the subtree and accumulates messages in the structure.
5	Fault-tolerant agents - only when <code>enSwfaultTo1</code> global option is set to <code>yes</code>	deadletter.msg	The queue fills because of too many unlinked workstations in the domain.	The agent stops.
6	Fault-tolerant agents - only when <code>enSwfaultTo1</code> global option is set to <code>yes</code>	ftbox.msg	This queue is circular. The rate of messages entering the queue exceeds the rate of messages being processed, because of too many unlinked workstations in the domain.	Events are lost.

**Note:**

1. Flows are greater at the master domain manager and at any *FullStatus* fault-tolerant agents in the master domain than at subordinate domain managers or *FullStatus* fault-tolerant agents.
2. Use `evtsize -show` to monitor queue sizes.
3. The amount of update flow is related to the amount of workload running in a particular subtree and is unavoidable.
4. The amount of ad hoc flow is related to the amount of additional workload on any point of the network. It can be reduced by planning more workload even if it is inactive. Note that simple reruns (not `rerun from`) do not create an ad hoc flow.

The planning, alert, and recovery strategy must take into account the following points:

- Queue files are created with a fixed size and messages are added and removed in a cyclical fashion. A queue reaches capacity when the flow of incoming messages exceeds the outgoing flow for a sufficient length of time to use up the available space. For example, if messages are being added to a queue at a rate of 1MB per time unit and are being processed and removed at a rate of 0.5 MB per time unit, a queue sized at 10 MB (the default) is at capacity after 20 time units. But if the inward flow rate descends to be the same as the outward flow rate after 19 time units, the queue does not reach capacity.
- The risk of the domain manager failing can be mitigated by switching to the backup domain manager. In this case, the contents of the queues on the domain manager are unavailable until the domain manager backup is started. In

all cases, the size of the queue on the upper domain manager towards any other domain manager must respect the condition A, as indicated in the table [Table 56: Queue sizing conditions. on page 296](#).

- The risk that fault-switching fault-tolerant agents might not be able to cope with the flow must be planned beforehand. The specifications for fault-switching fault-tolerant agents must be similar to those of the domain manager, to avoid that an agent receives a load that is not appropriate to its capacity. Check if a queue is forming at the *FullStatus* fault-tolerant agents, both in ordinary and peak operation situations.
- Once risk #2 has been dealt with, the possibility of a network link failure can be mitigated by sizing the queue from a domain manager to the *FullStatus* fault-tolerant agents appropriately as a function of the average network outage duration, and by increasing the size of the mailbox in case of unexpected long outage (see condition B of [Table 56: Queue sizing conditions. on page 296](#)).
- The same condition applies for avoiding an overflow of the domain manager's tomaster.msg queue with respect to network outages (see condition C) of [Table 56: Queue sizing conditions. on page 296](#).

Table 56. Queue sizing conditions.

A	$\text{MaxAlertTime} \leq \text{size}(\text{UpperDM\#queueToDM}) / \text{averageAdhocFlow}$
B	$\text{MaxNetOutage} \leq \text{size}(\text{DM\#queueToFSFTA}) / (\text{averageAdhocFlow} + \text{averageUpdateFlow})$
C	$\text{MaxNetOutage} \leq \text{size}(\text{DM\#queueToUpperDM}) / (\text{averageUpdateFlow})$

Monitoring the IBM Workload Scheduler message queues

You can use event-driven workload automation (EDWA) to monitor the size of message queues and to start a predefined set of actions when one or more specific events take place. For more information about event-driven workload automation, refer to *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*.

You can monitor the following message queues:

- appserverbox
- mailbox
- clbox
- intercom
- courier
- monbox
- moncmd
- server
- tomaster
- pobox
- planbox

The following .XML file contains the definition of a sample event rule to monitor the mailbox queue on the specified workstation and send an email when the filling percentage is greater than the specified value. If the condition described in the rule is already existing when you deploy the rule, the related event is not generated. This event rule calls the MailSender

action provider to send an email to the receivers you specify. For more information about the MailSender action provider, refer to *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<eventRuleSet xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns="http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/event-management/rules"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/event-management/rules
    http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/event-management/rules/EventRules.xsd">
  <eventRule name="MONITORQUEUE" ruleType="filter" isDraft="no">
    <eventCondition name="twsMesQueEvt1" eventProvider="TWSApplicationMonitor" eventType="TWSMessageQueues">
      <scope>
        MAILBOX FILLED UP 80% ON FTA
      </scope>
      <filteringPredicate>
        <attributeFilter name="MailboxName" operator="eq">
          <value>mailbox_name</value>
        </attributeFilter>
        <attributeFilter name="FillingPercentage" operator="ge">
          <value>filling_percentage</value>
        </attributeFilter>
        <attributeFilter name="Workstation" operator="eq">
          <value>workstation_name</value>
        </attributeFilter>
        <attributeFilter name="SampleInterval" operator="eq">
          <value>sample_interval</value>
        </attributeFilter>
      </filteringPredicate>
    </eventCondition>
    <action actionProvider="MailSender" actionType="SendMail" responseType="onDetection">
      <scope>
        TWSUSER@TWS : THE MAILBOX ON workstation_name...
      </scope>
      <parameter name="To">
        <value>main_receiver_list</value>
      </parameter>
      <parameter name="Subject">
        <value>mail_subject</value>
      </parameter>
    </action>
  </eventRule>
</eventRuleSet>
```

where:

mailbox_name

Is the name of the mailbox to monitor.

filling_percentage

Is the filling percentage. Supported operators are as follows:

ge

causes the event generation when the mailbox filling percentage increases over the threshold value. The event is generated only the first time the specified mailbox filling percentage is reached. If you restart the SSM agent and the filling percentage is higher than the threshold value,

the event is generated again. [Table 57: Example for the ge operator on page 298](#) provides an example in which the **ge** operator is set to 70%.

Table 57. Example for the ge operator

Mail-box name	Filling percentage	Action
Sam- >= 70%		event
ple		not
(0)		gen-er-at-ed
Sam- < 70%		event
ple		not
(0)		gen-er-at-ed
Sam- < 70%		event
ple		not
(n-1)		gen-er-at-ed
Sam- >= 70%		event
ple		gen-er-at-ed
(n)		
Sam- >= 70%		event
ple		not
(n		gen-
+1)		er-at-ed

le

causes the event generation when the mailbox filling percentage decreases under the threshold value. The event is generated only the first time the specified mailbox filling percentage is

reached. If you restart the SSM agent and the filling percentage is lower than the threshold value, the event is not generated until the filling percentage increases over the threshold value and then decreases under it again. [Table 58: Example for the le operator on page 299](#) provides an example in which the **le** operator is set to 50%:

Table 58. Example for the le operator

Mail- box name	Filling percentage	Ac- tion
Sam- <= 50%		event
ple		not
(0)		gen- er- at- ed
Sam- > 50%		event
ple		not
(0)		gen- er- at- ed
Sam- > 50%		event
ple		not
(n-1)		gen- er- at- ed
Sam- <= 50%		event
ple		gen- er- at- ed
(n)		
Sam- <= 50%		event
ple		not
(n		gen- er- at- ed
+1)		

workstation_name

Is the workstation on which the event is generated.

sample_interval

Is the interval, expressed in seconds, for monitoring the mailbox filling percentage.

main_receiver_list

Is the main receiver list.

mail_subject

Is the subject of the mail.

Changing a queue size

Use the `evtsize` command to resize a queue.

When you have used `evtsize` to resize a queue, the queue remain at that size until the next time you use `evtsize`. It only reverts to the default size of 60 MB if you delete it, at which point IBM Workload Scheduler re-creates it with the default size.

evtsize

Defines the size of the IBM Workload Scheduler message files. This command is used by the IBM Workload Scheduler administrator either to increase the size of a message file after receiving the message, "End of file on events file.", or to monitor the size of the queue of messages contained in the message file.

Authorization

You must be **maestro** or **root** in UNIX™, or **Administrator** in Windows™ to run **evtsize**. Stop the IBM Workload Scheduler engine before running this command.

Syntax

evtsize -V | -U

evtsize *file_name* *size*

evtsize -compact *file_name* [*size*]

evtsize -show *file_name*

Arguments

-V

Displays the command version and exits.

-U

Displays command usage information and exits.

-compact *file_name* [*size*]

Reduces the size of the specified message file to the size occupied by the messages present at the time you run the command. You can optionally use this keyword to also specify a new file size.

-show *file_name*

Displays the size of the queue of messages contained in the message file

file_name

The name of the event file. Specify one of the following:

```
Courier.msg
Intercom.msg
Mailbox.msg
PlanBox.msg
Server.msg
pobox/workstation.msg
```

size

The maximum size of the event file in bytes. When first built by IBM Workload Scheduler, the maximum size is set to 10 MB.



Note: The size of the message file is equal to or bigger than the real size of the queue of messages it contains and it progressively increases until the queue of messages becomes empty; as this occurs the message file is emptied.

Example**Examples**

To set the maximum size of the `Intercom.msg` file to 20 MB, run the following command:

```
evtsize Intercom.msg 20000000
```

To set the maximum size of the `pobox` file for workstation `chicago` to 15 MB, run the following command:

```
evtsize pobox\chicago.msg 15000000
```

The following command:

```
evtsize -show Intercom.msg
```

returns the following output:

```
IBM Workload Scheduler (UNIX)/EVTSIZE 9.4 (1.2.2.4) Licensed Materials -
Licensed Materials - Property of IBM* and HCL**
5698-WSH
(C) Copyright IBM Corp. 1998, 2016 All rights reserved.
```

```
(C) Copyright HCL Technologies Ltd. 2016, 2024 All rights reserved
* Trademark of International Business Machines
** Trademark of HCL Technologies Limited
AWSDEK703I Queue size current 240, maximum 10000000 bytes (read 48, write 288)
```

where:

880

Is the size of the current queue of the `Intercom.msg` file

10000000

Is the maximum size of the `Intercom.msg` file

read 48

Is the pointer position to read records

write 928

Is the pointer position to write records

Tuning mailman servers

Once the distribution of agents to mailman servers has been established, all the groups of agents attached to the same server must respect the link condition.

The link condition relates the number of agents connected to a mailman process and the tuning parameters for unlink on the mailman and writer side.

No_agents(i)

The number of agents connected to a given mailman server *i*

Mm_unlink

A parameter set in the `localopts` of both domain manager and agent. Specifies the maximum number of seconds mailman waits before unlinking from a workstation that is not responding.

Wr_unlink

A parameter set in the `localopts` of both domain manager and agent. Specifies the number of seconds the writer process waits before exiting if no incoming messages are received.

Max_down_agents

The maximum probable number of agents that are unavailable without having the `ignore` flag set in the database and having the `autolink` flag on.

tcp timeout

A parameter set in the `localopts` of both domain manager and agent. Specify the maximum number of seconds that can be waited for the completion of a TCP/IP request on a connected workstation that is not responding.

The condition is:

```
Wr_unlink = Mm_unlink > 1.2 * Max_down_agents * tcp timeout
```

This condition expresses that if the time before unlink is smaller than the probable time of idle waiting of the mailman process (waiting connect timeout for each agent that is currently down) in its loop to reactivate the connections, the agents unlink constantly when some agents are down.

Netman configuration file

The netman configuration file exists on all IBM Workload Scheduler workstations to define the services provided by netman. It is called `<TWA_home>/TWS/network/Netconf`. The `NetConf` file includes comments describing each service. The services are:

2001

Start a writer process to handle incoming messages from a remote mailman.

2002

Start the mailman process. Mailman, in turn, starts the rest of the process tree (batchman, jobman).

2003

Stop the IBM Workload Scheduler process to handle incoming messages from a remote mailman.

2004

Find and return a stdlist file to the requesting Conman process.

2005

Switch the domain manager in a domain.

2006

Locally download scripts scheduled by an IBM Z Workload Scheduler master domain manager.

2007

Required to bypass a firewall.

2008

Stop IBM Workload Scheduler workstations in a hierarchical fashion

2009

Runs the `switchmgr` script to stop and restart a manager in such a way that it does not open any links to other workstations until it receives the `switchmgr` event. Can only be used when the `enSwfaulTol` global option is set to yes.

2010

Starts mailman with the parameter `demgr`. It is used by the service 2009. Can only be used when the `enSwfaulTol` global option is set to yes.

2011

Runs monman as a child process (son bin/monman.exe)

2012

Runs conman to stop the event monitoring engine (command bin/conman.exe stopmon).

2013

Runs conman to switch event processors (command bin/conman.exe switchevtproc -this)

2014

Runs conman to start event processing (command bin/conman.exe startevtproc -this)

2015

Runs conman to stop event processing (command bin/conman.exe stopevtproc -this)

2016

Runs conman to force the update of the monitoring configuration file for the event monitoring engine (command bin/conman.exe deployconf)

2017

Runs conman to stop event processing on a client (client bin/conman.exe synchronizedcmd -stopevtproc)

2018

Runs conman to check event processing on a client (client bin/conman.exe synchronizedcmd -checkevtproc)

2021

Runs conman to start appservman

2022

Runs conman to run the subcommand stopappserver that stops the application server

2023

Runs conman to run the subcommand startappserver that starts the application server

2501

Check the status of a remote job.

2502

Start the Console Manager – a service requested by the client side of the Remote Console. See the *IBM® Tivoli® Remote Control: User's Guide* for more information.

2503

Used by the connector to interact with r3batch extended agent.

Determining internal Symphony table size

The mailman service (2002) can optionally take a parameter that determines the initial size of the internal Symphony table. If you do not supply this parameter, mailman calculates the initial table size based on the number of records in the file.



Note: Mailman expands the table if it needs to, even if this parameter is not supplied.

In normal circumstances, leave mailman to take the default value in the NetConf file as supplied (32000). However, if you are experiencing problems with memory, you can allocate a table that is initially smaller. To do this you change the parameter to the service 2002 in the NetConf file. The syntax for the entry is:

```
2002      son      bin/mailman [ -parm number ]
```

where, *number* is used to calculate the initial Symphony table size based on the number of records in the Symphony file.

If *r* is the number of records in the Symphony file when batchman starts, [Table 59: Calculation of internal Symphony table on page 305](#) shows how the size of the internal Symphony table is calculated, depending on the value of *number*:

Table 59. Calculation of internal Symphony table

Value of <i>number</i>	Table size
0	$(4/3r) + 512$
<i>n</i>	if $n > r$, <i>n</i> if $n \leq r$, $(4/3r) + 512$
-1	65535
- <i>n</i>	if $+n \geq r$, <i>n</i> if $+n < r$, $r + 512$

If during the production period you add more jobs, the maximum internal Symphony table size is increased dynamically, up to the maximum number of records allowed in the Symphony file, which is 2,000,000,000.

Integrating with SAP and PeopleSoft

Integrating with SAP and PeopleSoft

Access methods are used to extend the job scheduling functions of IBM Workload Scheduler to other systems and applications. They run on:

Extended agents (applies only to IBM Workload Scheduler)

They are logical workstations related to an access method hosted by a physical IBM Workload Scheduler workstation (not another extended agent). More than one extended agent workstation can be hosted by the same IBM Workload Scheduler workstation and use the same access method. The extended agent runs on fault-tolerant agents defined using a standard IBM Workload Scheduler workstation definition, which gives the extended agent a name and identifies the access method. The access method is a program that is run by the hosting workstation whenever IBM Workload Scheduler submits a job to an external system.

Jobs are defined for an extended agent in the same manner as for other IBM Workload Scheduler workstations, except that job attributes are dictated by the external system or application.

Information about job running execution is sent to IBM Workload Scheduler from an extended agent using the job `stdlist` file. A method options file can specify alternate logins to launch jobs and check *opens* file dependencies. For more information, see the *User's Guide and Reference*.

A physical workstation can host a maximum of 255 extended agents.

dynamic agents and IBM Z Workload Scheduler agents (z-centric)

They communicate with external systems to start the job and return the status of the job. To run access methods on external applications using dynamic agents, you define a job of type **access method**.

Access methods are available on the following systems and applications.

- SAP
- z/OS
- Custom methods
- unixssh
- unixrsh

The UNIX™ access methods included with IBM Workload Scheduler, are described in the related section in *Administration Guide*.

If you are working with dynamic agents, for information about defining IBM Workload Scheduler workstations, see the section that explains how to define workstations in the database in *User's Guide and Reference*. For information about writing access methods, see the section about the access method interface in *User's Guide and Reference*.

More information about access methods is found in *Scheduling Job Integrations with IBM Workload Automation*.

UNIX™ access methods

IBM Workload Scheduler includes two types of UNIX™ access methods, local UNIX access methods and remote UNIX access methods.

The Local UNIX™ access method runs on extended agents. Use the Local UNIX™ access method to enable a single UNIX™ workstation to operate as two IBM Workload Scheduler workstations, both of which you can run IBM Workload Scheduler scheduled jobs.

The Remote UNIX™ access method runs on extended agents and dynamic agents.

On extended agents

Use the Remote UNIX™ access method to designate a remote UNIX™ workstation to run IBM Workload Scheduler scheduled jobs without having IBM Workload Scheduler installed on it.

On dynamic agents

Define a job of type **xajob** that runs on dynamic agents. The dynamic agent communicates with the external system to start the job and return the status of the job.

Local UNIX™ access method running on fault-tolerant agents only

The Local UNIX™ method can be used to define multiple IBM Workload Scheduler workstations on one workstation: the host workstation and one or more extended agents. When IBM Workload Scheduler sends a job to a local UNIX™ extended agent, the access method, **unixloc1**, is invoked by the host to run the job. The method starts by running the standard configuration script on the host workstation (`<TWA_home>/TWS/jobmanrc`). If the logon user of the job is permitted to use a local configuration script and the script exists as `$HOME/TWS/.jobmanrc`, the local configuration script is also run. The job itself is then run either by the standard or the local configuration script. If neither configuration script exists, the method starts the job.

The launching of the configuration scripts, `jobmanrc` and `.jobmanrc` is configurable in the method script. The method runs the configuration scripts by default, if they exist. To disable this feature, you must comment out a set of lines in the method script. For more information, examine the script file `<TWA_home>/TWS/methods/unixloc1` on the extended agent's host.

Remote UNIX™ access method

The Remote UNIX™ access method can be used to designate a non-IBM Workload Scheduler workstation to run jobs scheduled by IBM Workload Scheduler. You can use `unixrsh` or `unixssh`:

The `unixrsh` access method

When IBM Workload Scheduler sends a job to a remote UNIX™ extended agent, the access method, `unixrsh`, creates a `/tmp/maestro` directory on the non-IBM Workload Scheduler workstation. It then transfers a wrapper script to the directory and runs it. The wrapper then runs the scheduled job. The wrapper is created only once, unless it is deleted, moved, or is outdated.

To run jobs using the `unixrsh` access method, the job logon users must be given appropriate access on the non-IBM Workload Scheduler UNIX™ workstation. To give appropriate access, a `.rhost`, `/etc/host.equiv`, or equivalent file must be set up on the workstation. On extended agents, if `opens` file dependencies are to be checked, `root` access must also be permitted. Contact your system administrator for help. For more information about the access method, examine the script file `TWA_home/TWS/methods/unixrsh` on an extended agent's host.

The `unixssh` access method

The `unixssh` access method works like `unixrsh` but uses a secure remote shell to connect to the remote host. The files used by this method are:

```
methods/unixssh
methods/unixssh.wrp
```

The `unixssh` method uses the `ssh` key. You can generate this keyword with any tools that are compatible with the secure remote shell.

 **Note:** The passphrase must be blank.

The following scenario gives an example of how to set up the method:

You installed a IBM Workload Scheduler, fault-tolerant agent or dynamic agent with the `TWS_user: twsuser`. You want to run a remote shell in the remote host "REMOTE_HOST" with the user "guest". The procedure is as follows:

- 1. Create the public and private key for the usertwsuser, The following is an example using rsa:
 - a. Log on as twsuser
 - b. Run

```
ssh-keygen -t rsa
```
 - c. When the tool asks for the passphrase, press Enter (leaving the passphrase blank.) The keys are saved as follows:

Key	Location	Comment
Public	<i>TWA_home</i> /TWS/.ssh/id_rsa.pub	
Private	<i>TWA_home</i> /TWS/.ssh/id_rsa	Do not send this file!

 **Note:** Different tools store the key in different places.

- 2. At the remote host, perform the following actions:
 - a. Telnet to the remote host.
 - b. Log on as "guest".
 - c. Change to the `.ssh` directory in the user home directory, or create it if it does not exist (the directory permissions must be adequate: for example, 700 for the directory and 600 for its contents).
 - d. Append the *public* key you created in step 1 to the `authorized_keys` file (create the file if it does not exist), using the command:

```
cat id_rsa.pub >> authorized_keys
```

- 3. At the fault-tolerant agent or dynamic agent, make the remote host "known" before attempting to let IBM Workload Scheduler processes use the connection. This action can be achieved in one of two ways:
 - Log on as twsuser and connect to the host using the command:

```
ssh -l guest remote_host_name ls
```


- A prompt is displayed saying that the host is not known, and asking permission to access it.
- Give permission, and the host is added to the list of known hosts.
- Alternatively, use the `ssh` documentation to add the remote host to the file of known hosts.

Managing production for extended agents

In general, jobs that run on extended agents behave like other IBM Workload Scheduler jobs. IBM Workload Scheduler tracks a job's status and records output in the job's `stdlist` files. These files are stored on the extended agent's *host* workstation. For more information on managing jobs, see the section that describes IBM Workload Scheduler plan tasks in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*.

Failure launching jobs on extended agents and dynamic agents

If the access method is not in the proper directory on the extended agent's host, on the dynamic agent, or the method cannot be accessed by IBM Workload Scheduler, jobs fail to launch or a file dependency is not checked. For a job, the IBM Workload Scheduler jobs logon or the logon specified in the method options file must have read and execute permissions for the access method. When checking a file to satisfy an *opens* dependency, root is used as the login unless another login is specified in the method options file. For more information about method options, see the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*.

Access methods

Access methods are used to extend the job scheduling functions of IBM Workload Scheduler to other systems and applications. They run on extended agents, dynamic agents, and IBM Z Workload Scheduler agents. They enable communication between external systems (SAP R/3) and IBM Workload Scheduler and launch jobs and return the status of jobs.

For information about the supported versions of the access methods, run the [Data Integration](#) report and select the **Supported Software** tab.

PeopleTools 8.61 and later require connecting using TLS. To continue working with an unsecure connection without enabling TLS, modify the `psagent` script by adding the **TM_ALLOW_NOTLS** option and setting it to `yes`.

Installing and configuring the access methods

The access methods documented in this guide are packaged with IBM Workload Scheduler and are automatically installed with the product on dynamic and fault-tolerant agents.



Important: In order to be entitled to use the access methods and plug-ins, you must have purchased at least one of the following offerings: IBM Workload Scheduler, IBM Workload Scheduler for Applications, or IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent. See the 10.2.6 Quick Start Guide available from [IBM Fix Central](#). For information about the



supported versions of the plug-ins and access methods, open the [Data Integration](#) report and select the **Supported Software** tab.

For details about installing an IBM Workload Scheduler dynamic or fault-tolerant agent, see IBM® Workload Scheduler Planning and Installation.

To use any of the access methods on supported agents, you create an options file, which configures the access method and defines the workstation and the jobs that extend the scheduling capability to external systems or applications.

Setting options for the access methods

An options file is a text file located in the `methods` directory of the IBM Workload Scheduler installation, containing a set of options to customize the behavior of the access method. The options must be written one per line and have the following format (with no spaces included):

```
option=value
```

All access methods use two types of options files: a global options file and one or more local options files. The names of the local options files are generically referred to as `XA_Unique_ID_accessmethod.opts` on extended agents and `DYNAMIC_AGENT_FILE_accessmethod.opts` on dynamic agents. The file names specified for the local options files for both types of agents must respect the following rules:

- Both `XA_Unique_ID` and `DYNAMIC_AGENT_FILE` in the file name must be uppercase alphanumeric characters. See specific requirements about `XA_Unique_ID` in [XA_Unique_ID on page 312](#).
- Double-byte character set (DBCS), single-byte character set (SBCS), and bidirectional text are not supported. For information about acceptable values for the extended agent workstation name, See [Table 60: How to complete the extended agents definition on page 314](#).

Dynamic agents and IBM Z Workload Scheduler agents

Global options file

The name of the global options file is `accessmethod.opts`, which, depending on your operating system, corresponds to:

For PeopleSoft

```
psagent.opts
```

For SAP

```
r3batch.opts
```

Local options file

One or more configuration files that are specific to each access method. The name of this file is `optionsfile_accessmethod.opts` and they are saved to the path `TWA_DATA_DIR/methods`.

In a distributed environment

- If you are defining a job to run the access method by using the Dynamic Workload Console, it is the options file you specify in the **New > Job definition > ERP > Access Method XA** Task tab.
- If you are defining the SAP job to run the access method by using the Dynamic Workload Console, it is the options file you specify in the **New > Job definition > ERP > SAP Job on Dynamic Workstations XA** Task tab.
- If you are defining the job to run the access method by using **composer**, it is the options file you specify in the **target** attribute of the job definition.

If you do not create a local options file, the global options file is used.

If you do not specify an option in the `optionsfile_accessmethod.opts` file, while the access method is running, the product uses the values specified for that option in the global options file. If you do not specify options either in the `optionsfile_accessmethod.opts` or in the global option file, the product issues an error message.

If the SAP access method is installed for `AGENT1` workstation, with unique identifier, S4HANAR3BW, but you have two external SAP systems on which to schedule jobs, then in the `TWA_DATA_DIR/methods` directory, you create the following options files:

- `SAP1_S4HANAR3BW_r3batch.opts`
- `SAP2_S4HANAR3BW_r3batch.opts`

Each file contains the options specific to each external SAP system, for example, the connection information.

For pools and dynamic pools containing n agents, you must create an options file for the dynamic pool and copy it in the `TWA_DATA_DIR/methods` of each agent of the pool so that all members of the pool have a local options file with the same name. Then you must create another options file for the specific agent in the same directory. For example, if the SAP access method is installed for `AGENT1` and `AGENT2` which belong to the dynamic pool `DYN_POOL`, create in the `TWA_DATA_DIR/methods` directory of each agent the following options files:

AGENT1

- `FILE0PTS_AGENT1_r3batch.opts`
- `FILE0PTS_DYN_POOL_r3batch.opts`

AGENT2

- FILEOPTS_AGENT2_r3batch.opts
- FILEOPTS_DYN_POOL_r3batch.opts

Extended agents

All access methods use two types of options file:

Global options file

A common configuration file created by default for each access method installed, whose settings apply to all the extended agent workstations defined for that method. When the global options file is created, it contains only the **LJuser** option, which represents the operating system user ID used to launch the access method. You can customize the global options file by adding the options appropriate to the access method.

The name of the global options file is `accessmethod.opts`, which, depending on your operating system, corresponds to:

For PeopleSoft

`psagent.opts`

For SAP

`r3batch.opts`

For custom access methods

`netmth.opts`

Local options file

A configuration file that is specific to each extended agent workstation within a particular installation of an access method. The name of this file is `XA_Unique_ID_accessmethod.opts`, where:

XA_Unique_ID

The unique identifier of the workstation in the plan. Since the folder feature was introduced, workstations can be defined in folders, therefore, the workstation name alone, is not sufficient to identify a workstation in the plan, but instead, the name and folder combination is mapped to a unique identifier. In the `localopts` file, the value of the `this_cpu` option is the unique identifier of the workstation. You can also verify the unique identifier for a workstation by submitting the `composer list` command with the `;showid` filter. Should this result in blank, `XA_Unique_ID` corresponds to the workstation name. You can also retrieve the unique identifier submitting the `conman showcpus` command with the `;showid` filter. For example, if the installation of the `r3batch` access method includes two extended agent workstations, with unique identifiers `S4HANAR3BW` and `07756YBX76Z6AFX2`,

then the names of the local options files are `S4HANAR3BW_r3batch.opts` and `07756YBX76Z6AFX2_r3batch.opts`.

accessmethod

Is the name of the access method.

If you do not create a local options file, the global options file is used. Every extended agent workstation, except for z/OS®, must have a local options file with its own configuration options.

The options files must be located in the `TWA_DATA_DIR/methods` directory. They are read when the supported agent is started. Options are specific to each access method. For details about how to configure each access method, see the following sections:

PeopleSoft

[Configuring the PeopleSoft access method on page 323.](#)

SAP

[Configuring the SAP access method on page 366.](#)

Option value inheritance

This property is currently available for r3batch only. Local options files can inherit existing values from the same options in the global options file `r3batch.opts`. For an access method, the options are listed twice; once as global options and once as local options. If the local options file does not contain a value for the option, then the value for that option in the global options file is used. Otherwise the option value in the local options file is always used.

For example, you might want to define the same value for the **Ljuser** option and a different value for the **retrieve_joblog** option. To do this, you define the **Ljuser** option value in the `r3batch.opts` file. Then you define a different value for the **retrieve_joblog** option in each local options file. This results in the following actions when launching the SAP job:

- The value for the **Ljuser** option is extracted from the `r3batch.opts` file.
- The value for the **retrieve_joblog** option is taken from each local options file.

Defining supported agent workstations

A workstation definition is required for each entity of an access method through which IBM Workload Scheduler schedules and launches jobs.

Creating a workstation using the Dynamic Workload Console

About this task

How to create a workstation definition for supported agents using the Dynamic Workload Console.

Dynamic agents

The agents are automatically registered to the IBM Workload Scheduler network.

Extended agents

To define an extended agent workstation using the Dynamic Workload Console, perform the following steps:

- 1. From the Dynamic Workload Console portfolio, click **Administration > Workload Environment Design > Create Workstations**.
- 2. Select an engine from the list and click **Create Workstation**.
- 3. In the Workstations properties panel, specify the attributes for the extended agent workstation you are creating. For all the details about available fields and options, see the online help by clicking the "?" in the top-right corner. In the workstation definition, specify the access method and other properties, as shown in [Table 60: How to complete the extended agents definition on page 314](#). For further information about the workstation definition properties, see the section about workstation definition in *IBM Workload Scheduler User's Guide and Reference*.
- 4. To assign the workstation to an existing domain or to create a new domain, click **Assign to Domain**.
- 5. Click **Save**.

The following table shows how to complete some specific fields of the workstation properties panel for **extended agents**.

Table 60. How to complete the extended agents definition

Field	Description by Access Method	
	PeopleSoft	SAP
Name	The name for the extended agent workstation. For all access methods the name must start with a letter and can contain alphanumeric characters, dashes, and underscores. The maximum length is 16 characters. Workstation names must be unique and cannot be the same as workstation class and domain names. Double-byte character set (DBCS), single-byte character set (SBCS), and bidirectional text are not supported. If a workstation name contains these characters and, as a result, the options file name contains the same name, the workstation cannot be validated by the SAP system. For all the access methods, the name of the options file associated with the extended agent workstation must contain the unique identifier of the extended agent workstation, <i>XA_Unique_ID_<access-method>.opts</i>. That is, if the unique identifier for the extended agent workstation named <i>/SAPBUS/S4HANAR3BW</i> is <i>07756YBX76Z6AFX2</i>, then the options file name must be <i>07756YBX76Z6AFX2_r3batch.opts</i>. For information about retrieving the unique identifier for an extended agent workstation, see UNIQUE_ID on page 312.	

Table 60. How to complete the extended agents definition

(continued)

Field	Description by Access Method	
	PeopleSoft	SAP
TCP Port	Any number other than 0.	
Access Method	psagent	r3batch



Note: In UNIX™ the name is case sensitive and must be lowercase.

Creating a workstation using the command line

You can define supported agents workstations also using the **composer** command line of IBM Workload Scheduler.

Dynamic agents

The following example shows a definition for a dynamic agent workstation named *LINUX248* that uses the secure protocol *https* to connect to the Broker server.

```
CPUNAME LINUX248
DESCRIPTION "This workstation was automatically created."
OS UNIX
NODE linux248.romelab.it.abc.com SECUREADDR 31114
TIMEZONE Europe/Rome
FOR MAESTRO HOST NC118003_DWB
AGENTID "FD640FCA740311E18C4EE96D727FA991"
TYPE AGENT
PROTOCOL HTTPS
END
```

Extended agents

The following example shows a definition for a z/OS extended agent workstation named *MVSCPU* that uses the *mvsjes* access method.

```
cpuname MVSCPU description "zOS extended agent"
os other
node mvsesa36.rome.abc.com
tcpaddr 5000
domain masterdm
for maestro
type x-agent
host ROCIOUS
access mvsjes
end
```

For details about defining workstations with **composer**, see the *IBM Workload Scheduler User's Guide and Reference*.

Defining workstations for end-to-end scheduling

About this task

How to create a workstation definition for end-to-end environment.

Scheduling in an end-to-end environment means that in IBM Z Workload Scheduler you are scheduling and monitoring jobs that are physically running on IBM Workload Scheduler workstations.

Extended agents

Extended agent workstations must be defined as fault-tolerant workstations in IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

A fault-tolerant workstation is the IBM Z Workload Scheduler definition of an existing IBM Workload Scheduler agent in the distributed network. The IBM Workload Scheduler agent is where the job associated with the fault-tolerant workstation actually runs in the distributed network.

To define the extended agent workstation in IBM Z Workload Scheduler, you must:

1. Define the workstation in the CPUREC initialization statement. For an example, see [Creating the CPUREC statement for extended agents on page 316](#).
2. Add the same workstation definition to the database using ISPF or the Dynamic Workload Console. For a description of how to define the workstation using the Dynamic Workload Console, see *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*. For an example, see [Defining the workstation with ISPF on page 317](#).

IBM Z Workload Scheduler agents

To define the agent workstation with z-centric capability in IBM Z Workload Scheduler, add the workstation definition to the database using ISPF or the Dynamic Workload Console. For further information, see *Scheduling End-to-end with z-centric Capabilities*.

Creating the CPUREC statement for extended agents

This section is valid only for Extended agents. Create the CPUREC statement for the workstation in the TOPOLOGY initialization statement. The TOPOLOGY initialization statement is used to define parameters related to the topology of the connected IBM Workload Scheduler network. Such a network topology statement is made up of one or more (one for each domain) DOMREC statements that describe the topology of the distributed network, and by several CPUREC statements, one for each fault-tolerant workstation.

The following example shows a CPUREC statement for an SAP extended agent workstation named R3XA. The extended agent is hosted by an IBM Workload Scheduler agent named TWSA, which is also the domain manager of DOMAIN1.

```
*****TPLGINFO MEMBER *****

/*****/
/* DOMREC: Domain definition                               */
/*****/
DOMREC    DOMAIN(DOMAIN1)
          DOMMNGR(TWSA)
```



```

      DOMPARENT(MASTERDM)
/*****
/* CPUREC: Extended agent workstation definition          */
/*****
CPUREC  CPUNAME(R3XA)
        CPUOS(OTHER)
        CPUNODE(NODE1)
        CPUDOMAIN(DOMAIN1)
        CPUHOST(TWSA)
        CPUTYPE(XAGENT)
        CPUACCESS(r3batch)
        CPUUSER(TWSuser)
        CPUTZ('Europe/Rome')
/*****
/* CPUREC: Domain manager workstation definition          */
/*****
CPUREC  CPUNAME(TWSA)
        CPUNODE(NODE1)
        CPUAUTOLINK(ON)
        CPUDOMAIN(DOMAIN1)
        CPUTYPE(FTA)
        CPUUSER(TWSuser)
        CPUTZ('Europe/Rome')

```

The following keywords define `R3XA` as an extended agent:

CPUACCESS

The extended agent access method. For SAP, it is `r3batch`.

CPUHOST

The name of the IBM Workload Scheduler workstation hosting the extended agent. It cannot be another standard agent or extended agent.

CPUTYPE

The workstation type. For an extended agent, it must be `XAGENT`.



Note: The `CPUREC` statement does not exist for an IBM Workload Scheduler for z/OS agent workstation.

For further information about `CPUREC` for extended agents, see *Customization and Tuning*.

Defining the workstation with ISPF

About this task

This section shows the ISPF definition for extended agents and agents with z-centric capability.

Extended agents

In ISPF, define the workstation as `computer automatic` and then set the *FT Work station* field to **Y**. The `CPUREC` statement with the three keywords described in [Creating the CPUREC statement for extended agents on page 316](#) provides the extended agent specification.



Note: Make sure you write the `CPUREC` statement before making the ISPF or Dynamic Workload Console definition, because they have no effect without the `CPUREC` statement.

Figure 10. Defining an Extended Agent workstation

```

----- CREATING GENERAL INFORMATION ABOUT A WORK STATION -----
Command ==>

Enter the command R for resources  A for availability or M for access method
above, or enter data below:

WORK STATION NAME  ==> R3XA
DESCRIPTION        ==> Extended agent for R/3 access method
WORK STATION TYPE  ==> C      G General, C Computer, P Printer
REPORTING ATTR     ==> A      A Automatic, S Manual start and completion
                                C Completion only, N Non reporting
FT Work station    ==> Y      FT Work station, Y or N
PRINTOUT ROUTING   ==> SYSPRINT The ddname of daily plan printout data set
SERVER USAGE       ==> N      Parallel server usage C , P , B or N

Options:
SPLITTABLE        ==> N      Interruption of operation allowed, Y or N
JOB SETUP          ==> N      Editing of JCL allowed, Y or N
STARTED TASK, STC ==> N      Started task support, Y or N
WTO               ==> N      Automatic WTO, Y or N
DESTINATION        ==> ----- Name of destination
Defaults:
TRANSPORT TIME     ==> 00.00   Time from previous work station  HH.MM
DURATION           ==> ----- Duration for a normal operation  HH.MM.SS

```

IBM Z Workload Scheduler agents

For detailed information and examples about the ISPF definition of IBM Z Workload Scheduler agents with z-centric capabilities, see *Scheduling End-to-end with z-centric capabilities*.

Defining jobs for supported agents

To run and monitor a PeopleSoft, SAP, or z/OS job with IBM Workload Scheduler, the supported agents, or access method require an IBM Workload Scheduler job definition, where you specify the external job you want to schedule, the workstation (also defined in IBM Workload Scheduler) on which it is to run, and any recovery actions. To define the job, use either of the following methods:

- Dynamic Workload Console.
- IBM Workload Scheduler **composer** command line.

If you are scheduling in an end-to-end environment, to define the job, use either of the following methods:

- Dynamic Workload Console.
- IBM Z Workload Scheduler ISPF dialogs. You must also create a member in the `SCRIPTLIB` with a `JOBREC` statement for the job.

Jobs defined for supported agents are added to job streams and scheduled in the same way as any other job in IBM Workload Scheduler and IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

Defining jobs with the Dynamic Workload Console

About this task

How to create a job definition for supported agents using the Dynamic Workload Console.

Steps for defining a job for supported agents.

To define jobs, follow these steps:

1. From the Dynamic Workload Console, click the **Design** menu and select Workload Designer.
2. Specify an engine name, either distributed or z/OS. The Workload Designer window opens. Job types and characteristics vary depending on whether you select a distributed or a z/OS engine.
3. Click **Create new** and select **Job definition**.
4. Select the category and type of job you want to create.
 - For SAP jobs, **ERP > SAP Job on XA Workstations** or **SAP Job on Dynamic Workstations**. See [Creating SAP Standard R/3 jobs from the Dynamic Workload Console on page 391](#).
 - For z/OS and PeopleSoft, **ERP > Access Method**.
5. In the properties panel, specify the attributes for the job definition you are creating. For all the details about available fields and options, see the online help specific for the item.
6. Click **Save** to save the job definition in the database.



Note: The access method for SAP provides supplementary features if you use the alternative steps described in [Creating SAP Standard R/3 jobs from the Dynamic Workload Console on page 391](#). You can create native SAP Standard jobs on a remote SAP system directly from the Dynamic Workload Console.

Defining jobs using the command line

You can also define jobs using the **composer** command line of IBM Workload Scheduler.

Dynamic agents

The following example describes an IBM Workload Scheduler job named `DYN_JOB_R3_0001` defined in the folder name `SAPJOBS`, that runs on a dynamic agent workstation named `NC112015_1`. The IBM Workload Scheduler launches a job in an SAP environment named `JOB_APPS_93`.

```
NC112015_1#/SAPJOBS/DYN_JOB_R3_0001
TASK
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<jSDL:jobDefinition
  xmlns:jSDL="http://www.abc.com/xmlns/prod/scheduling/1.0/jSDL"
  xmlns:jSDLxa="http://www.abc.com/xmlns/prod/scheduling/1.0/jSDLxa"
    name="r3">
  <jSDL:application name="r3" plugin="xajob">
    <jSDLxa:xajob accessMethod="r3batch" target="NW73LIN_r3batch">
      <jSDLxa:taskString>/ -job JOB_APPS_93 -i 14514200 -c c
        -flag ENABLE_APPL_RC </jSDLxa:taskString>
    </jSDLxa:xajob>
  </jSDL:application>
```

```
</jsdl:jobDefinition>
  RECOVERY STOP
```

Extended agents

The following example describes an IBM Workload Scheduler job named `psjob2` that runs on a PeopleSoft extended agent workstation with unique identifier named `XAPS002`. IBM Workload Scheduler logs on to UNIX operating system as `psjobs` and launches a job under PeopleSoft. The PeopleSoft process is named `XRFWIN`. If recovery is needed, IBM Workload Scheduler runs job `recov2` and then continues processing.

```
XAPS002#/myspsjobs/psjob2
  streamlogon psjobs
  scriptname
    -process XRFWIN -type 'SQR Report' -runcontrol 1 -runlocationdescr PSNT
  description "peoplesoft job #2"
  recovery continue after recov2
```

The arguments of `scriptname` differ by application. For details, see:

- [Task string parameters for PeopleSoft jobs on page 332.](#)
- [Task string to define SAP jobs on page 399.](#)

For more information about using the **composer** command line to define jobs, see *User's Guide and Reference*.

Defining jobs for end-to-end scheduling

Extended agents

Extended agent jobs scheduled to run in an end-to-end environment cannot be defined using the Dynamic Workload Console or the IBM Workload Scheduler command line, but must be added to the `SCRIPTLIB` of IBM Z Workload Scheduler.

In the `OPERATIONS` ISPF panel of IBM Z Workload Scheduler, extended agent jobs are defined like any other job, but with the specific attribute for a job defined on an extended agent workstation. The following example shows the definition of a job named `SAPJOB`. This is the IBM Z Workload Scheduler job that drives the running of on SAP R/3 job (named `BAPRINT46B` as shown in the next example). It shows as an extended agent job because the associated workstation is an extended agent workstation named `R3XA`.

Figure 11. Defining an Extended Agent job for end-to-end scheduling

----- OPERATIONS -----Row 1 to 1 of 1
Command ==>Scroll ==> PAGE

Enter/Change data in the rows, and/or enter any of the following
row commands:
I(nn) - Insert, R(nn),RR(nn) - Repeat, D(nn),DD - Delete
S - Select operation details, J - Edit JCL
Enter the TEXT command above to include operation text in this list, or,
enter the GRAPH command to view the list graphically.

Application : APLL1 FTW appl

Row Oper Duration Job name Internal predecessors Morepreds
cmd ws no. HH.MM.SS -IntExt-
''' R3XA 001 00.00.01 SAPJOB_0 0
***** Bottom of data *****

For each job, create a member in the `SCRIPTLIB` of IBM Z Workload Scheduler with details about the job in a `JOBREC` statement. A `SAPJOB` member was created for the job of the previous example. It contains a `JOBREC` statement like this:

```
JOBREC
  JOBCMD('/-job BAPRINT46B -user MAESTRO -i 14160001 -c C')
  JOBUSR(twsila)
```

The string in `JOBCMD` is read and interpreted by the access method before running the job. The job of this example, `BAPRINT46B`, was previously defined on SAP R/3 and assigned with an ID of 14160001, that was manually written in `JOBCMD`.

The following example is for a PeopleSoft job. The entire string that follows the `JOBCMD` keyword must be enclosed within quotation marks ("), because for PeopleSoft jobs single quotes are already used in the string.

```
JOBREC
  JOBCMD("/ -process XRFWIN -type 'SQR Report' -runcontrol IWS")
  JOBUSR(PsBuild)
```

IBM Z Workload Scheduler agents

For information about the jobs definition for agent with z-centric capabilities, see *Scheduling End-to-end with z-centric capabilities*.

The arguments of `JOBCMD` differ by application. For details, see:

- [Task string parameters for PeopleSoft jobs on page 332](#).
- [Task string to define SAP jobs on page 399](#) or [Defining SAP jobs dynamically on page 417](#).

Submitting jobs

About this task

To submit jobs on the supported agent workstation, perform the following steps:

1. Verify that the application system to which the job belongs and the related database is up and running.
2. Launch the job. For details, see:

Dynamic agents

- *IBM Workload Scheduler User's Guide and Reference* for **conman** command line.
- *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide* for Dynamic Workload Console.

Extended agents

- *IBM Workload Scheduler User's Guide and Reference* for **conman** command line.
- *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide* for Dynamic Workload Console.

IBM Z Workload Scheduler agents

- *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Scheduling End-to-end with z-centric Capabilities* for **ISPF** panel.
- *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide* for Dynamic Workload Console.

Access method for PeopleSoft

What you need and what you can do with Access method for PeopleSoft.

Using Access method for PeopleSoft you can run and monitor PeopleSoft jobs from the IBM Workload Scheduler environment. These jobs can be run as part of a schedule or submitted for ad-hoc job processing. PeopleSoft extended agent or dynamic agent jobs can have all of the same dependencies and recovery options as other IBM Workload Scheduler jobs. PeopleSoft jobs must be defined in IBM Workload Scheduler to be run and managed in the IBM Workload Scheduler environment.

For information about the supported versions of the plug-ins and access methods, run the [Data Integration](#) report and select the **Supported Software** tab.

Features

Look at the tasks you can perform by using Access method for PeopleSoft.

Using Access method for PeopleSoft, you can perform the following tasks:

- Use IBM Workload Scheduler standard job dependencies on PeopleSoft jobs.
- Schedule PeopleSoft jobs to run on specified days, times, and in a prescribed order.
- Define inter-dependencies between PeopleSoft jobs and IBM Workload Scheduler jobs that run on different applications such as SAP and Oracle E-Business Suite.
- Define inter-dependencies between PeopleSoft jobs and jobs that run on different operating systems.

Roles and responsibilities

Here you can see the roles and responsibilities of all the actors involved in the process model, and the tasks they perform.

In a typical enterprise, different users contribute to the implementation and operation of the product. [Table 61: Roles and responsibilities in Access method for PeopleSoft on page 322](#) describes the roles and responsibilities of all those involved in the process model, showing the tasks they perform.

Table 61. Roles and responsibilities in Access method for PeopleSoft

User role	User task
IBM Workload Scheduler configurator	Defining the configuration options on page 324
IBM Workload Scheduler developer	• Defining PeopleSoft jobs in IBM Workload Scheduler on page 332 • Configuring the job status mapping policy on page 334

Table 61. Roles and responsibilities in Access method for PeopleSoft (continued)

User role	User task
PeopleSoft administrator	• Creating a batch processing ID in PeopleSoft on page 328 • Configuring the ITWS_PSPA PeopleSoft project on page 328 • Uploading the PeopleSoft project on page 329

Scheduling process for the PeopleSoft supported agents

IBM Workload Scheduler can launch and monitor jobs in the PeopleSoft process scheduler using a PeopleSoft extended agent or dynamic agent workstation. The PeopleSoft supported agent (extended agent or dynamic agent) is defined in a standard IBM Workload Scheduler workstation definition. This definition is a logical workstation name and specifies the access method as `psagent`. The access method is used to communicate job requests to the PeopleSoft process scheduler.

To launch a PeopleSoft job, IBM Workload Scheduler runs the `psagent` method, passing it information about the job. An options file provides the method with the path, the executable, and other information about the PeopleSoft process scheduler and application server used to launch the job. The supported agent `t` can then access the PeopleSoft process request table and make an entry in the table to launch the job. Job progress and status information is written to the job's standard list file.

For extended agents, there is no need to install Database connectivity on fault-tolerant agents hosting PeopleSoft extended agents because the method currently uses the PeopleSoft 3-tier architecture. You must configure at least one PeopleSoft Application Server for the supported agent to work. The application server must be active to successfully submit jobs to the PeopleSoft process scheduler.

PeopleSoft job tracking in IBM Workload Scheduler

A PeopleSoft job is a collection of processes that run together as a single unit. IBM Workload Scheduler jobs can be defined in one of the following ways:

- As PeopleSoft jobs, that is, as a collection of PeopleSoft processes. In this case, the status of the PeopleSoft job is tracked, not the status of the individual processes within the job.
- As PeopleSoft processes. In this case, the status of the individual process is tracked and IBM Workload Scheduler schedules can be defined to create complex inter-dependencies and recovery options between PeopleSoft processes.

Security

Security for the PeopleSoft jobs is handled by standard IBM Workload Scheduler security.

Configuring the PeopleSoft access method

This section provides detailed reference information about the PeopleSoft options and how to define them in the options file.

Defining the configuration options

The IBM Workload Scheduler installation process creates a default global options file for the `psagent` access method, named `psagent.opts`. You can also create the following local files in the path:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

```
psjoa.jar
TWA_DATA_DIR/methods
```

Windows On Windows operating systems

```
TWA_home\methods
```

Extended agent

`XA_Unique_ID_psagent.opts` where `XA_Unique_ID` is the unique identifier for the extended agent workstation. For more details about how to identify the unique ID, see [UNIQUE_ID on page 312](#).

Dynamic agent

`DYNAMIC_AGENT_FILE_psagent.opts` where `DYNAMIC_AGENT_FILE` is any text string. This string does not necessarily correspond to the name of the dynamic agent workstation since the dynamic agent can have more than one `.opts` file associated. For more information, see [Setting options for the access methods on page 310](#).

To edit both options file, you can use any text editor. On dynamic workstations, you can edit the options files from the job definition panels in the Dynamic Workload Console. For examples of options files for this access method, see [PeopleSoft options file example on page 326](#).

[Table 62: Psagent access method options on page 324](#) describes the options for the `psagent` access method. Option names are case insensitive. Before you use a manually-created options file, check that all the option names are written correctly, otherwise they will be ignored.

Table 62. Psagent access method options

Table 62. Psagent access method options (continued)

Option	Description
PSFT_DOMAIN_PWD	(Optional) Specifies the encrypted password (case-sensitive) of the PeopleSoft domain used for the connection to the PeopleSoft application server. For details about how to encrypt the password, see Encrypting PeopleSoft operator passwords on page 327.
PSFT_OPERATOR_ID	(Mandatory) Specifies the PeopleSoft operator ID used for the connection to the PeopleSoft application server.
PSFT_OPERATOR_PWD	(Mandatory) Specifies the encrypted password (case-sensitive) of the PeopleSoft operator ID used for the connection to the PeopleSoft application server. For details about how to encrypt the password, see Encrypting PeopleSoft operator passwords on page 327.
PSJOAPATH	(Optional) Specifies the full path name of the <code>psj oa . jar</code> file, containing both the path and the <code>psj oa . jar</code> filename. If this option is not set, the following default path name is used: UNIX <code>TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/psj oa . jar</code> Windows <code>TWA_home\methods\psj oa . jar</code> Ensure that you identify the version of the <code>psj oa . jar</code> file that corresponds to the version of PeopleSoft that you are using and you have access to the file.
RUNLOCATION	(Optional) Specifies the default PeopleTools process server that processes the requests.
SERVER_NAME_LIST	(Mandatory) Specifies the list of application servers that the psagent tries to connect to. It is a comma-separated list of addresses in the format: <code>server:port [,server:port] . . .</code> where: server Specifies the host name or TCP/IP address of the server port Specifies the port number the server is listening on.

Table 62. Psagent access method options (continued)

Option	Description
TWS_MAX_WAIT_TIME	(Optional) Specifies the maximum time that the supported agent waits (timeout) after a failed operation on the PeopleSoft application server before retrying the operation. The default is 10 seconds.
TWS_MIN_WAIT_TIME	(Optional) Specifies the minimum time that the supported agent waits (timeout) after a failed operation on the PeopleSoft application server before retrying the operation. The default is 5 seconds.
TWS_RETRY	(Optional) The maximum number of times that the supported agent attempts to re-run a failed operation on the PeopleSoft application server. The default is 5.
TWSXA_INLINE_CI	(Optional) Specifies the name of the component interface that the <code>psagent</code> invokes to submit jobs to PeopleSoft. The default is <code>ITWS_PROCESSREQUEST</code>. If you use this default, you must perform the customization steps described in Configuring the ITWS_PPSXA PeopleSoft project on page 328. If you do not plan to schedule jobs containing in-line variables, and you do not want to perform the additional customization steps, you must replace the default value with <code>PROCESSREQUEST</code>. This is the component interface invoked by previous versions of the access method; it does not allow the use of in-line variables.
TWSXA_SCHED_METH	(Optional) Specifies the name of the PeopleSoft method invoked by the component interface specified in <code>TWSXA_INLINE_CI</code>. Both <code>ITWS_PROCESSREQUEST</code> and <code>PROCESSREQUEST</code> use the default method <code>Schedule</code>. If you are using either of these component interfaces, leave the default. If you are using a different component interface, specify the name of the method called by your component interface, respecting the case of the PeopleSoft object name.

PeopleSoft options file example

Below is a sample options file. It can help you determine your specific site requirements although your options file might be different.

Remember to save the file in the following directory:

UNIX

`TWA_DATA_DIR/methods`

Windows

`TWA_home\methods`

Example

```

LJuser=TwSUsr
CheckInterval=120
PSFT_OPERATOR_ID=PSHC
PSFT_OPERATOR_PWD=*****
SERVER_NAME_LIST=9.87.120.36:9000

```

If you create the options file manually, you must encrypt the PeopleSoft operator password, as described in [Encrypting PeopleSoft operator passwords on page 327](#).

Encrypting PeopleSoft operator passwords

When you add or change the PeopleSoft operator password using the Dynamic Workload Console, the password is automatically encrypted and securely stored in the file. For added security, it is displayed on the screen as a series of asterisks.

When you add or change the PeopleSoft user password using a text editor, run the **pwdcrypt** command to encrypt the password before writing it in the file, as follows:

```
pwdcrypt password
```

The program returns the password in encrypted format that you can then copy and paste into the options file.

Connecting to more than one PeopleSoft application server

It might be necessary for the `psagent` method to connect to more than one PeopleSoft application server. For example, a single installation of PeopleSoft might have a TEST, DEMO, and PRODUCTION environment, each with a separate application server. This requires that the `psagent` method uses a separate connect string for each application server.

To support this, you can set up multiple PeopleSoft extended agent workstations that connect to the same method but use different options files. When a workstation starts the method, it first looks for the options file with extended agent workstation unique identifier prepended to `psagent.opts`. For example, a PeopleSoft extended agent with unique identifier `ps847system` would have the following options file:

```
PS847SYSTEM_psagent.opts
```

The **psagent** method searches first for an options file with the extended agent workstation unique identifier, and then for the default `psagent.opts` file. This allows the user to set up an extended agent for each PeopleSoft application server.

To connect to only one application server, use the default name for the options file, **psagent.opts**.



Note: In case you specify some connection properties in your local option files, make sure that the same properties are commented out in your global option file, with the exception of the global property **LJuser**. This action is needed to avoid that warning messages related to duplicate properties are displayed in the job log.

Creating a batch processing ID in PeopleSoft

Create an operator ID in PeopleSoft dedicated to batch scheduling. This operator ID must be granted authority to use the Component Interface in the PeopleTools environment. All the jobs submitted by IBM Workload Scheduler should use this operator ID.

Configuring the ITWS_PSXA PeopleSoft project

About this task

The configuration steps described in this section are necessary to enable IBM Workload Scheduler to schedule PeopleSoft jobs that have in-line variables in their definitions.

The `ITWS_PROCESSREQUEST` component interface works around some limitations of the PeopleSoft APIs when invoked from a batch environment. Because of these limitations, IBM Workload Scheduler cannot schedule jobs defined with in-line bind variables. With current PeopleSoft APIs, data that is stored in the PeopleSoft database and referred to by a `runcontrol ID` parameter that is used to retrieve a `runcontrol data record`, needs to be loaded into the `Component Buffer` before scheduling the API invocation. This cannot be done from a batch environment. Therefore, when invoking the PeopleSoft scheduling APIs from a batch interface, the data related to the `runcontrol ID` is not available for the submission of a job, even though it is available in the database. When unresolved data is present in the submitted job, the PeopleSoft system refuses submission and ends with an error.

The `ITWS_PROCESSREQUEST` component interface enables IBM Workload Scheduler to schedule PeopleSoft jobs that have in-line variables in their definitions. By invoking this component interface, the access method provides the ability to use data stored in the PeopleSoft database to resolve in-line variable values by taking data from the database and substituting it with variable definitions. It then allows job submission regardless of the use of in-line variable definitions in the jobs. The variable substitution mechanism does not support `work` records, so if the PeopleSoft process uses work records in its parameter list, you find a message similar to the following in the IBM Workload Scheduler joblog:

```
Error Position: 21
Return: 942 - ORA-00942: table or view does not exist
Statement:
select nvsdlist from PS_NVS_WRK WHERE BUSINESS_UNIT = :1 AND REPORT_ID = :2
Original Statement:
SELECT NVSDLIST FROM PS_NVS_WRK WHERE BUSINESS_UNIT = :1 AND REPORT_ID = :2.
```

To identify work records, use the following PeopleSoft naming conventions:

- A derived work record name ends with `'_WRK'`.
- A work record definition name for Structured Query Report reports starts with `R_`

When you use IBM Workload Scheduler to submit a process that has in-line bind variables, the name of the process type in the PeopleSoft GUI becomes `ITWS_process type`. For example, `SQR Process` becomes `ITWS_SQR Process`.

To schedule a job that contains in-line variables in its definition you must perform the following tasks:

- Leave the value of the `TWSXA_INLINE_CI` option set to `ITWS_PROCESSREQUEST`, that is the default value. See [Defining the configuration options on page 324](#) for a detailed explanation.
- Upload the PeopleSoft project as described in [Uploading the PeopleSoft project on page 329](#).

Uploading the PeopleSoft project

About this task

This section describes how to upload a new PeopleSoft project related to PeopleTools 8.44, or later, into the PeopleSoft database. The name of the PeopleSoft project is `ITWS`.

After installing the product, complete the following steps:

1. Mount the PT844 PeopleSoft project directory or copy it to the workstation from where you launch the Application Designer. IBM Workload Scheduler installs the PeopleSoft project directories, as shown in the following structure:

UNIX

```
TWS_DIR/methods/
/---PeopleSoft
  /---PT844
    /---ITWS_PSPA
      ITWS_PSPA.ini
      ITWS_PSPA.XML
```

Windows

```
TWS_DIR\methods\
\---PeopleSoft
  \---PT844
    \---ITWS_PSPA
      ITWS_PSPA.ini
      ITWS_PSPA.XML
```

2. Start the Application Designer and from the sign-on window select to start the Application Designer in tier-two mode by entering the following information:
 - **Connection Type:** *database used*; for example, Oracle
 - **Database Name:** *database instance name*
 - **User ID:** *PeopleSoft operator name*; for example, PS
 - Password of user ID
3. Using the Application Designer, select **Tools -> Copy Project-> From file...**
4. Using the browser, edit the full path to specify the folder where the project that you want to load is located.

The project is contained in the `TWS_DIR/methods/PeopleSoft/PT844` subdirectories on UNIX® and in `TWA_home\methods\PeopleSoft\PT844`. on Windows™.

After you specify the project folder, a list of projects appears in the **Project Name** field of the Copy Project From File window.

5. Choose **ITWS_PSPA** and click **Open**. If you already configured **ITWS_PSPA** (perhaps after installing a fix pack), a confirmation window enquires if you want to replace the existing one. Click **Yes**.

The Copy window is displayed showing a list of definition types.

6. Click **Options** to select the new settings.
 - a. Click **Report Filter**
 - b. Click **Select All**
 - c. Click **OK**
 - d. Click **Select All**
 - e. Click **Copy**. A progress bar is displayed.

After loading the project, the PeopleSoft Database contains the following objects:

- ITWS process type definitions
- ITWS permissions list
- ITWS component interfaces

7. Create the **ITWS_ROLE** security role. You can use either the PeopleSoft Web GUI or the Application Designer. Follow the steps below:

From the menu of the PeopleSoft Web GUI:

- a. Select **NavBar** in the upper right corner -> **Menu** -> **PeopleTools** -> **Security** -> **Permission and Roles** -> **Roles**.
- b. Select the **Add a new value** tab
- c. Type or select **ITWS_ROLE** in the **Role Name** field
- d. Select the **Permissions list** tab -> **ITWS** -> **Save**

From the Application Designer GUI:

- a. Using Maintain Security, edit the **ITWS_ROLE** window
- b. Select the **Permissions list** tab -> **ITWS** -> **Save**

8. Grant **ITWS_ROLE** authority to all users who want to schedule jobs from IBM Workload Scheduler. You can use either the PeopleSoft Web GUI or the Application Designer. Follow the steps below:

From the PeopleSoft Web GUI:

- a. Select **NavBar** in the upper right corner -> **Menu** -> **PeopleTools** -> **Security** -> **User Profiles**.
- b. Type the user name of the user who wants to schedule jobs from IBM Workload Scheduler.
- c. In **User Roles** window click on the + sign in the row where you want to add the role.
- d. Select the **Roles** tab.
- e. Add **ITWS_ROLE** and save.

From the Application Designer GUI:

- a. Using Maintain Security, edit the user name
- b. Select the **Roles** tab
- c. Add **ITWS_ROLE** and save

9. Add the ITWS process type definitions to the required PeopleTools process scheduler. You can use either the PeopleSoft Web GUI or the Application Designer. Follow the steps below:

From the PeopleSoft Web GUI:

- Select **NavBar** in the upper right corner -> **Menu** -> **PeopleTools** -> **Process Scheduler** -> **Process Scheduler Servers**.
- Click on the **Search** button and select the PeopleTools server you plan to use.
- In the **Server Definition** tab and in **Process Types run on this Server** window click on the + sign in the row of your choice.
- Click on the search icon. A new windows is displayed.
- Select all the **ITWS_*** entries (one for each row created).
- Click Save.

From the Application Designer GUI:

- Select **Process Scheduler Manager**
- Select your PeopleTools server
- Add the ITWS_* Type definitions and save



Note: From the SQL interactive command line, the same task can be performed by the following sample statement, customized for your database environment:

```
INSERT INTO PS_SERVERCLASS SELECT o.SERVERNAME,
o.OPSYS, 'ITWS_' || o.PRCSTYPE, o.PRCSPRIORITY,
o.MAXCONCURRENT FROM PS_SERVERCLASS
o WHERE ( SELECT count(*) FROM PS_SERVERCLASS i WHERE
i.SERVERNAME=o.SERVERNAME AND i.OPSYS=o.OPSYS AND
i.PRCSTYPE='ITWS_' || o.PRCSTYPE ) = 0
AND ( select count(*) from PS_PRCSTYPEDEFN
a where a.PRCSTYPE='ITWS_' || o.PRCSTYPE AND a.OPSYS=o.OPSYS ) > 0
```

10. Restart the process servers.

You do not need to change the existing IBM Workload Scheduler job definitions, except for the scheduling nVision process, where the `runcontrol` ID must be specified using the `BUSINESS_UNIT.REPORT_ID` convention.

The following is an example of a job definition for the scheduling nVision process:

```
-process 'NVSRUN' -type nVision-Report -runcontrol AUS01.VARIABLE
```

where `NVSRUN` is the process name and `AUS01.VARIABLE` is the `BUSINESS_UNIT.REPORT_ID`.

Defining PeopleSoft jobs

This section provides job definition information for jobs using the extended agent for PeopleSoft.

Defining PeopleSoft jobs in IBM Workload Scheduler

An IBM Workload Scheduler job definition is required for every PeopleSoft job you want to manage. An IBM Workload Scheduler job is associated to an already defined PeopleSoft job and its definition includes:

- The name of the IBM Workload Scheduler job that runs the PeopleSoft job
- The unique identifier of the extended agent or dynamic workstation or workstation class where the IBM Workload Scheduler job runs. See [UNIQUE_ID on page 312](#) for more information about the unique identifier.
- The name of the user launching the job
- Recovery options
- The Script file specifications

For more information, refer to [Defining jobs for supported agents on page 318](#).

Task string parameters for PeopleSoft jobs

This section describes the task string parameters that control the operation of PeopleSoft jobs. You must specify them in the following places when you define their associated IBM Workload Scheduler jobs:

- In the **Task string** field of the Task page of the Properties - Job Definition panel, if you use the Dynamic Workload Console
- As arguments of the `scriptname` keyword in the job definition statement, if you use the IBM Workload Scheduler command line.
- As arguments of the `JOBCMD` keyword in the `JOBREC` statement in the `SCRIPTLIB` of IBM Z Workload Scheduler, if you are scheduling in an end-to-end environment. In this case the entire string following the `JOBCMD` keyword must be enclosed within quotation marks (").

The following is an example of a `JOBREC` statement:

```
JOBREC
  JOBCMD("/-process process_name -type 'process_type' -runcontrol runcontrol_ID")
  JOBUSR(TWS_user_name)
```

where:

process_name

The process name for the PeopleSoft job.

process_type

The process type for the PeopleSoft job. This entry must be enclosed within single quotes.

runcontrol_ID

The runcontrol ID for the PeopleSoft job.

TWS_user_name

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler user who runs the `psagent` access method from the end-to-end scheduling environment.

[Table 63: Task string parameters for PeopleSoft jobs on page 333](#) describes the parameters to define PeopleSoft jobs.

Table 63. Task string parameters for PeopleSoft jobs

Parameter	Description
-process	The process name for the PeopleSoft job.
-type	The process type for the PeopleSoft job. This entry must be enclosed within single quotes.
-runcontrol	The runcontrol ID for the PeopleSoft job.
-outputdest	The destination of the PeopleSoft job output.
-outputtype	The output type of the PeopleSoft job. Possible values are: • Any • Email • File • None • Printer • Web • Window If you do not specify any value, IBM Workload Scheduler uses the value associated to the PeopleSoft job you are submitting.  Note: Depending on the PeopleSoft configuration, some combinations of the value of this option with the value of the outputformat option are not supported. In this case the PeopleSoft default value is used.
-outputformat	The output format of the PeopleSoft job. Valid values are: None PDF CSV PS DOC RPT Default RTF HTM TXT

Table 63. Task string parameters for PeopleSoft jobs (continued)

Parameter	Description
	LP
	WKS
	OTHER
	XLS
	 Note: Depending on the PeopleSoft configuration, some combinations of the value of this option with the value of the outputtype option are not supported. In this case the PeopleSoft default value is used.
-runlocationdescr	The PeopleSoft process scheduler responsible for processing the PeopleSoft job.
-foldername	The name of the report folder used for this job. The folder must have been already created using PeopleSoft Report Manager.
tracelvl	Specify the trace setting for the job. Possible values are: 1 Only error messages are written in the trace file. This is the default. 2 Informational messages and warnings are also written in the trace file. 3 A most verbose debug output is written in the trace file. Refer to Configuring the tracing utility on page 344 for detailed information.
	 Note: No syntax checking is performed on the output control values (outputdest, outputtype, outputformat, and foldername). If the values are not recognized, defaults are used.

The following is an example of a task string specification for a PeopleSoft 8.44 job:

```
-process XRFWIN -type 'SQR Report' -runcontrol 1 -runlocationdescr PSNT
```

Configuring the job status mapping policy

IBM Workload Scheduler calculates the status of an IBM Workload Scheduler job based on the PeopleSoft job Run Status and Distribution Status. In PeopleSoft, the run status monitors the running of the job until it reaches a final status; the distribution status monitors the status of the output of the job. If the final status of a PeopleSoft job is neither success nor warning, IBM Workload Scheduler ignores the distribution status and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status is ABEND.

If the final status of a PeopleSoft job is success or warning, you can decide whether to use the distribution status of the PeopleSoft job when determining the status of the IBM Workload Scheduler job by setting the PS_DISTSTATUS option in the options file:

0

The distribution status is ignored and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status is calculated as shown in [Table 65: Relationship between the run status and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status on page 336](#).

1

The distribution status is used and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status is calculated as shown in [Table 64: Relationship between the run status, the distribution status, and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status on page 335](#). This is the default value.

[Table 64: Relationship between the run status, the distribution status, and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status on page 335](#) shows the relationship between the run status, the distribution status, and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status. The return code associated with the status is shown in parentheses. IBM Workload Scheduler uses this return code to evaluate the return code condition you specified in the **Return Code Mapping Expression** field in the Properties panel of the job definition. For more details about this field, refer to the online help by clicking the "?" in the top-right corner of the panel.

Table 64. Relationship between the run status, the distribution status, and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status

PeopleSoft job run status	PeopleSoft job distribution status	IBM Workload Scheduler job status
• Success (9) • Warning (17)	• Posted (5) • None (0)	SUCC
• Success (9) • Warning (17)	• Not Posted (4) • Delete (6)	ABEND
• Success (9) • Warning (17)	• Not Available (1) • Processing (2) • Generated (3) • Posting (7)	EXEC
• Cancel (1) • Delete (2) • Error (3) • Canceled (8) • No Success (10)	Any distribution status	ABEND

Table 64. Relationship between the run status, the distribution status, and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status (continued)

PeopleSoft job run status	PeopleSoft job distribution status	IBM Workload Scheduler job status
- Blocked (18) - Restart (19)		

Table 65: Relationship between the run status and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status on page 336 shows the relationship between the PeopleSoft run status and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status. The return code associated with the status is shown in parentheses. IBM Workload Scheduler uses this return code to evaluate the return code condition you specified in the **Return Code Mapping Expression** field in the Properties panel of the job definition. For more details about this field, refer to the online help by clicking the "?" in the top-right corner of the panel.

Table 65. Relationship between the run status and the IBM Workload Scheduler job status

PeopleSoft final run status	IBM Workload Scheduler status
Cancel (1)	ABEND
Delete (2)	ABEND
Error (3)	ABEND
Hold (4)	WAIT
Queued (5)	WAIT
Initiated (6)	INIT
Processing (7)	EXEC
Canceled (8)	ABEND
Success (9)	SUCC
No Success (10)	ABEND
Pending (16)	EXEC
Warning (17)	SUCC
Blocked (18)	ABEND
Restart (19)	ABEND



Note: If IBM Workload Scheduler fails to retrieve the status of the PeopleSoft job, the IBM Workload Scheduler job status is **DONE**.

Common serviceability for the access methods

This section provides information common to all the access methods including return code mapping, configuring the tracing utility, and troubleshooting the access method.

The return code mapping feature

The return code mapping feature provides a standard way of mapping messages into return code values. You can also customize the return code mapping. This feature is available for the following access methods:

- PeopleSoft
- SAP

The return code mapping feature provides more granularity when defining the success or failure policies of jobs and improved flexibility in controlling job execution flows based on execution results. Job return code mapping provides the following capabilities:

- Users can define a job final status (successful or failed) based on a condition on the return code of the execution of the program or script of the job.
- The return code can be provided also to the recovery job that is associated with it in the job definition. This causes the recovery job to perform different processing based on the return code.

Parameters

#

Optional comment. All the lines starting with this symbol (#) are not used for mapping.

patternn

Pattern strings delimited by quotation marks (" and "). If you use only one pattern string, you can omit the quotation marks. If the pattern string contains a quotation marks character, then it must be escaped by backslash (\). The string can contain the following wildcards and special characters:

Asterisk (*)

Matches an arbitrary number of characters.

Question mark (?)

Matches a single character.

Backslash (\)

Escape character.

RC value

The return code value. This value is sent by the method to IBM Workload Scheduler by a %RC nnnn message.

Creating a return code mapping file

You can create a return code mapping file to customize your own return codes with respect to certain conditions that might affect a job when it runs. Use this file to set the success condition of the job, which IBM Workload Scheduler uses to assess if the job completes successfully or in error. The return code is sent to IBM Workload Scheduler in the form of a %RC nnnn message. If this message is received, the job state is updated accordingly.

Each method has its own set of files to map the messages into return code values. The mapping files can be either global or local for a workstation.

Return code mapping files that are specific to a workstation are named according to the following scheme:

UNIX

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/rcm/accessmethod-type-workstation.rcm
```

Windows

```
TWA_home\methods\rcm\accessmethod-type-workstation.rcm
```

Global mapping files have a file name according to the following scheme:

UNIX

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/rcm/accessmethod-type.rcm
```

Windows

```
TWA_home\methods\rcm\accessmethod-type.rcm
```

For the PeopleSoft access method, *type* is always equal to `rcmap`. For the SAP R/3 access method, *type* is as described in [Return code mapping file names for r3batch on page 342](#).

Syntax**About this task**

Use the following syntax to create the return code mapping file:

```
[#] "pattern1? "pattern2"... "patternn" = RC value
```

Examples

The following is an example of a return code mapping file. The line numbers in bold do not belong to the file, but are shown for reference:

```
1.  # This is an RC mapping file for joblog.
2.
3.  "User * missing = 102
```

```

4.  "\*\*\*? = 103
5.  "User \
6.  * \
7.  missing = 102

```

In this example:

- Line 1 is a comment and is not used for mapping.
- Line 2 is blank and is ignored. All blanks preceding or following a pattern string are ignored, as well as those between the equals sign and the return code value.
- Line 3 matches every message starting with the string *User* and ending with the string *missing*.
- Line 4 matches every message starting with three asterisks (*) followed by a blank. When you use the asterisk in this way and not as a wildcard, you must escape it with a backslash.
- Lines 5 through 7 contain a pattern taking several lines. It matches the same messages as the pattern of line 3.

Considerations

Note the following facts:

- The order of the pattern lines is important because the first matching pattern line is used to build the return code value.
- Empty pattern strings ("") are ignored by the pattern matching procedure.

For example, the following is a valid pattern sequence. The first line is more restrictive than the second line.

```

"625 "User * missing = 104
" "User * missing = 102

```

The following pattern sequence is formally valid, but the second pattern line is never used. Because the first line is more general, it is always matched first.

```

" "User * missing = 102
"625 "User * missing = 104

```

Return code mapping for psagent

For the PeopleSoft access method, you can write return code mapping files associating the internal states listed in [Table 66: Job states and return codes for the PeopleSoft access method on page 339](#).

When no return code mapping files are defined, or when a string returned by the access method does not satisfy any of the matching patterns of the mapping file, the access method uses the respective standard return codes listed in the tables.

Table 66. Job states and return codes for the PeopleSoft access method

psagent job state	psagent return code
"CANCEL"	1
"DELETE"	2
"ERROR"	3

Table 66. Job states and return codes for the PeopleSoft access method (continued)

psagent job state	psagent return code
"HOLD"	4
"QUEUED"	5
"INITIATED"	6
"PROCESSING"	7
"CANCELED"	8
"SUCCESS"	9
"NO SUCCESSPOSTED"	10
"POSTED"	11
"NOT POSTED"	12
"RESEND"	13
"POSTING"	14
"GENERATED"	15

Return code mapping for r3batch

About this task

Using return code mapping with `r3batch` can be useful in overcoming differences in the return code mechanisms of R/3, which returns a mixture of messages and numbers, and of IBM Workload Scheduler, which handles exclusively numeric return codes. By customizing the return code mapping files listed in [Return code mapping file names for r3batch on page 342](#), you can map messages from R/3 logs, spool lists, and exceptions from RFC function modules into return code values that IBM Workload Scheduler can handle.

Note that when you do not use this feature, `r3batch` does not send any return codes to IBM Workload Scheduler. In this case, IBM Workload Scheduler displays only the `r3batch` exit code, which cannot be used to set up `recondsucc` conditions.

The return code mapping mechanism works as follows:

1. `r3batch` reads the output retrieved from the R/3 system (R/3 job log, process chain log, spool list, and so on appended to the `stdlist` of the related IBM Workload Scheduler job).
2. Following your specifications in the `rcm` files, the R/3 return messages or codes are mapped into your custom return codes and passed on to IBM Workload Scheduler.
3. These return codes are used together with the `recondsucc` keyword set in the extended agent job definition and handled accordingly. Return code mapping is meaningful only if you use the return codes to write the expressions that determine job completion. Conversely, in the case of this extended agent, the use of `recondsucc` is significant only if IBM Workload Scheduler gets return codes (not exit codes) from the access method.

To use the return code mapping feature:

- Leave the value of the `rcmap` option as `ON` (this is the default).
- Depending on which R/3 logs you want `r3batch` to read and map, leave the default settings of the `retrieve_joblog`, `retrieve_pchainlog`, and `retrieve_spoollist` options as `ON` and manually create the corresponding `rcm` files.
- If you want to map messages from the R/3 syslog, set the `log_r3syslog` option to `ON` and manually create the corresponding `rcm` file.

When setting up your return code mapping for `r3batch`, consider the following:

- You can define any return code numbers for your use because there are no reserved return codes for the access method or for IBM Workload Scheduler.
- Mapping files are scanned sequentially: the first match found performs the corresponding mapping. When you define a mapping file, write the most restrictive strings first.
- When you define a mapping file, remember that the R/3 log messages are read in their entirety. If you want to map only a part of the entry, you must use the wildcard characters.
- If two lines match two different patterns, then the return code is set to the higher value. In general the return code is set to the highest value among the ones yielded by the matched patterns. This is shown in the following example:

The job log returned after job PAYT410 has run is:

```
*** ERROR 778 *** EEW00778E Failed to modify the job PAYT410 with job id
***          05710310.

*** ERROR 176 *** EEW00176E Failed to add step 1.

*** ERROR 552 *** EEW00552E The R/3 job scheduling system has found an
***          error for user name * and job name PAYT410. Please check R/3
***          syslog.

*** ERROR 118 *** EEW00118E Execution terminated. Could not create and
***          start an instance of the R/3 batch job.
ERROR LEVEL=118
```

and the system log contains the following line:

```
|011:05:12|MAESTRO|SAPMSSY1|EFT|> Step 1 contains illegal values
```

The `r3batch-joblog.rcm` file contains the following matching line:

```
"118"*=100
```

while the `r3batch-syslog.rcm` file contains the following matching line:

```
"*MAESTRO*Step 1 contains illegal values*=9999
```

In this case, the return code sent back to IBM Workload Scheduler is 9999 because it is the higher of the two matching patterns.

- If no matching takes place, no return code is sent to IBM Workload Scheduler.

Return code mapping file names for r3batch



```
message_number_pattern
[message_id_pattern[message_variable1[message_variable2
[message_variable3[message_variable4[message_type]]]]]]]=RCvalue
```

r3batch-spoolist.rcm

Maps messages in the job spool list of an R/3 job into return code values. If this file is not present, the messages in the spool list are ignored.

The format of the mapping file is:

```
spool_list_row_pattern=RCvalue
```

r3batch-syslog.rcm

Maps messages in the syslog of an R/3 system into return code values. The R/3 system log should be checked only when R/3 returns the generic 552 error to `r3batch`.

If this file is not present, the messages in the system log are ignored.

The format of the mapping file is:

```
system_log_row_pattern=RCvalue
```

If you plan to map system log messages, be sure to set the `log_r3syslog` option of `r3batch` to `ON` (the default is `OFF`).

r3batch-msgsrc.rcm

Maps ABAP exceptions and BAPI return codes of RFC function modules into return code values. If this file is not present, the mapping is done using a hardcoded table.

The format of the mapping file is:

```
message_number=RCvalue
```

`message_number` is the error message number. The last message number is always used. That is, if two error messages are generated, only the second one is checked against the mapping file.

Mapping return codes for intercepted jobs

About this task

To set up return code mapping for intercepted jobs, after defining the appropriate return code conditions in the `r3batch-joblog.rcm` file, do the following:

1. Create a customized template file named `rctemplate.jdf` in the following directory:

UNIX

`TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/r3batch_icp/`

Windows

`TWA_home\methods\r3batch_icp\`

The file must contain the following:

```
alias;rcondsucc "Success Condition"
```

where, the "Success Condition" must match a condition saved in the `rcm` file.

2. Modify the `XANAME_r3batch.icp` file, located in the same path, to refer to the `jdf` file you created in the previous step as follows:

```
client job_mask user_mask rcemplate
```

IBM Workload Scheduler manages the intercepted R/3 job as a docommand job with all the options specified in the customized `jdf` file. You can check if your intercepted job is correctly submitted by reading the `job_interceptor` `joblog`.

Configuring the tracing utility

Learn how to configure the trace utility for all the access methods.

IBM Workload Scheduler logs all the processing information in the following configuration file:

UNIX

`TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/accessmethod.properties`

Windows

`TWA_home\methods\accessmethod.properties`



Note: If you delete this file accidentally, IBM Workload Scheduler creates a new file with all the default values and contains the following comment:

```
# This file was automatically created using the default values.
```

Customizing the .properties file

About this task

Depending on the access method you are working with, customize the trace parameters in the following properties files:

psagent.properties

For the PeopleSoft access method.

r3batch.properties, r3evmon.properties

For the SAP access method.

With this access method, you can also specify debug and trace parameters in the single job definitions. See [Creating SAP Standard R/3 jobs from the Dynamic Workload Console on page 391](#) and [Task string to define SAP jobs on page 399](#).

For each `.properties` file you can customize the following parameters:

`accessmethod.trace.tracers.level`

Specify the level of tracing you want to set. Possible values are:

DEBUG_MIN

Only error messages are written in the trace file. This is the default.

DEBUG_MID

Informational messages and warnings are also written in the trace file.

DEBUG_MAX

A most verbose debug output is written in the trace file.

The value you set in the `.properties` file applies to all the jobs of the corresponding access method. To specify a different trace setting for a particular job, specify the following option in the job definition:

```
-tracelvl=(1|2|3)
```

where:

- 1 = DEBUG_MIN
- 2 = DEBUG_MID
- 3 = DEBUG_MAX



Note: When making changes to the trace level setting, the changes are effective immediately after saving the `.properties` file. No restart is required.

`accessmethod.trace.handlers.traceFile.fileDir`

Specifies the path where the trace file is created. Depending on the access method, the default is:

SAP**On UNIX® operating systems**

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/traces
```

On Windows™ operating systems

```
TWA_home\methods\traces
```

All other access methods**UNIX****On UNIX operating systems**

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/methods
```

Windows**On Windows operating systems**

```
TWA_home\methods
```

Ensure that the new path you specify has already been created as a fully qualified path with write permissions.

Traces are written in XML format. Always use slashes (or backslashes) when you specify a new path, even if you are working on Windows™ operating systems.

The trace files give information about the method execution to the desired level of detail. The minimum trace level is always on, to guarantee a First-Failure Data Capture (FFDC) ability. The trace file name is:

trace-psagent.log

For the PeopleSoft access method.

trace-r3batch.log, trace-XAname-r3evmon.log

For the SAP access method.

accessmethod.trace.tracers.logging

Specifies to enable or disable the trace utility. Possible values are:

true

To enable the trace utility. This is the default value.

false

To disable the trace utility. If you set this parameter to **false**, no traces are written in the `trace-accessmethod.log` file even if there are problems.

r3batch.trace.handlers.traceFile.maxFiles

The maximum number of trace files that are created before the oldest one is deleted. If this parameter is set to 1, the current trace file is never replaced and can grow without limit.

r3batch.trace.handlers.traceFile.maxFileSize

The maximum size (in bytes) that the trace file can reach before it is renamed and a new trace file is created. This parameter is valid only if the `r3batch.trace.handlers.traceFile.maxFiles` is set to a value greater than 1.

Configuration file example for the SAP access method

The following `r3batch.properties` file is an example of a configuration file for the SAP access method with the following characteristics:

- The level of tracing set is `DEBUG_MID`. This means that not only error messages but also informational messages and warnings are written in the trace file.
- The trace file is created in the `/home/maestro/methods` directory.
- The tracing process creates three trace files, whose maximum size can be 10 MB.

```
r3batch.organization=ABC
r3batch.product=IWS
r3batch.component=R3BATCH
r3batch.trace.tracers.level=DEBUG_MID
r3batch.trace.tracers.listenerNames=r3batch.trace.handlers.traceFile
r3batch.trace.tracers.logging=true
r3batch.trace.handlers.traceFile.fileDir=/home/maestro/methods
r3batch.trace.handlers.traceFile.formatterName=r3batch.trace.formatter
```

```
r3batch.trace.handlers.traceFile.maxFileSize=104805100
r3batch.trace.handlers.traceFile.maxFiles=3
```

Integration with SAP

The following sections give you information about IBM® Workload Scheduler for SAP, the SAP access method and job plug-ins, and how to schedule jobs by using the SAP Solution Manager.

IBM® Workload Scheduler is certified for the following SAP integrations:

- SAP Certified Integration with SAP NetWeaver
- SAP Certified Integration with SAP S/4HANA

Through the integrations, IBM® Workload Scheduler can access SAP BW on HANA Process Chains to handle and manage them externally and can invoke and track InfoPackages.

Introducing IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP

Improve SAP operations and enable business growth with IBM Workload Scheduler.

Use IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP, to create, schedule, and control SAP jobs using the job scheduling features of IBM Workload Scheduler. IBM Workload Scheduler supported agent workstations help extend the product scheduling capabilities to SAP through the R/3 batch access method. In addition, you can define IBM Workload Scheduler job plug-ins for SAP BusinessObjects BI and SAP PI Channel. With the SAP Solution Manager integration, you can have the IBM Workload Scheduler engine run job scheduling tasks available from the Solution Manager user interface.

IBM Workload Scheduler provides a single and simplified point of planning, control and optimization of end-to-end production services across heterogeneous IT infrastructures. It enables you to control SAP operations from z/OS indifferently.

To understand if a SAP System is compatible with IBM Workload Scheduler, check if your system exposes the following interfaces:

- BC-XBP 6.10 (V2.0) - Background Processing
- BC-XBP 7.00 (V3.0) - Background Processing
- BW-SCH 3.0 – Business Information Warehouse for SAP BW/4HANA
- BW4-SCH - Business Information Warehouse for SAP BW/4HANA

For detailed information about supported SAP interfaces, prerequisite SAP notes, and supported SAP software versions, see the [Data Integration](#) report and select the **Supported Software** tab. In addition, see the dedicated SAP section in the [IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements](#).

Features

[Table 67: IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP features on page 348](#) shows the tasks you can perform with IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP either in a distributed or an end-to-end environment, or both.

Table 67. IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP features

Feature	Distributed environment	End-to-end
Using IBM Workload Scheduler standard job dependencies and controls on SAP jobs	✓	✓
Listing jobs, defining jobs, variants, and extended variants using the IBM Workload Scheduler interface	✓	✓
Defining jobs and variants dynamically at run time	✓	✓
Scheduling SAP jobs to run on specified days and times, and in a prescribed order	✓	✓
Scheduling SAP BusinessObjects Business Intelligence (BI) jobs to gain greater control over your SAP BusinessObjects Business Intelligence (BI) reports through the IBM Workload Scheduler plug-in for SAP BusinessObjects Business Intelligence (BI).	✓	✓
Scheduling SAP Process Integration (PI) Channel jobs to control communication channels between the Process Integrator and a backend SAP R/3 system.	✓	✓
Scheduling and monitoring job scheduling tasks available from the SAP Solution Manager user interface.	✓	
Defining the national language support options	✓	✓
Using the SAP Business Warehouse Support functions	✓	✓
Customizing job execution return codes	✓	✓
Using SAP logon groups for load balancing and fault-tolerance	✓	✓
Using Business Component-eXternal Interface Background Processing (XBP 2.0 and later) interface support to:	• Collect intercepted jobs • Track child jobs • Keep all job attributes when you rerun a job • Raise events	• Track child jobs • Keep all job attributes when you rerun a job • Raise events
Using Business Component-eXternal Interface Background Processing (XBP 3.0) interface support to:	• Create criteria profiles to log raised events, reorganize the	• Create criteria profiles to log raised events, reorganize the

Table 67. IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP features (continued)

Feature	Distributed environment	End-to-end
	event history, and intercept and relaunch jobs, according to the criteria you specify.	event history, and intercept and relaunch jobs, according to the criteria you specify.
	• SAP application log and application return code	• SAP application log and application return code
	• Spool list request and display for jobs that have run.	• Spool list request and display for jobs that have run.
	• Temporary variants	• Temporary variants
Assigning an SAP job to a server group, for batch processing	✓	✓
Exporting SAP factory calendars and adding their definitions to the IBM Workload Scheduler database	✓	
Defining internetwork dependencies and event rules for IBM Workload Scheduler based on SAP events	✓	
Defining event rules based on IDoc records	✓	
Defining event rules based on CCMS Monitoring Architecture alerts	✓	
Rerunning a job that submits a process chain from a specific process, from failed processes, or as a new instance	✓	✓
Displaying the details of a job that submits a process chain	✓	✓
Enabling job throttling	✓	✓

Access method for SAP

The SAP R/3 batch access method enables communication between an external SAP R/3 system and IBM Workload Scheduler and provides a single point of entry for automating the launching of jobs, monitoring the status of jobs and managing exceptions and recovery.

Using the SAP access method you can run and monitor SAP jobs from the IBM Workload Scheduler environment. These jobs can be run as part of a schedule or submitted for ad-hoc job processing. SAP extended agent or dynamic agent jobs can have all of the same dependencies and recovery options as other IBM Workload Scheduler jobs. SAP jobs must be defined in IBM Workload Scheduler to be run and managed in the IBM Workload Scheduler environment.

IBM Workload Scheduler provides a single and simplified point of planning, control and optimization of end-to-end production services across heterogeneous IT infrastructures. It enables you to control SAP operations from z/OS indifferently.

Scheduling process for the agent workstation hosting the r3batch access method

IBM Workload Scheduler launches jobs in SAP using IBM Workload Scheduler jobs defined to run on a supported agent workstation.

Supported agent workstations include:

- dynamic agents
- extended agents
- IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agents

The supported agent workstations use the access method, `r3batch`, to pass SAP job-specific information to predefined SAP instances. The access method uses information provided in an options file to connect and launch jobs on an SAP instance.

Multiple extended agent workstations can be defined to use the same host, by using multiple options files. Using the SAP extended agent workstation unique identifier as a key, `r3batch` uses the corresponding options file to determine which instance of SAP will run the job. See [UNIQUE_ID on page 312](#) for more information about identifying the extended agent workstation unique identifier. It makes a copy of a template job in SAP and marks the job as "scheduled". It then monitors the job through to completion, writing job progress and status information to a job standard list on the host workstation.

On dynamic agent workstations, more than one options file can be associated to the workstation.

For more information about job management, refer to the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*.

For more detailed information about configuration files on extended agents and dynamic agents, see [Configuring the SAP access method on page 366](#).

Roles and responsibilities

In a typical enterprise, different users contribute to the implementation and operation of the product. [Table 68: Roles and responsibilities in IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP on page 351](#) describes the roles and responsibilities of all users in the process model, showing the tasks they perform.

Table 68. Roles and responsibilities in IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP

User role	User task
IBM Workload Scheduler administrator	• Creating the IBM Workload Scheduler RFC user on page 354 • Creating the authorization profile for the IBM Workload Scheduler user on page 354 • Copying the correction and transport files on page 357 • Importing ABAP/4 function modules into SAP on page 358
IBM Workload Scheduler configurator	• Changing the IBM Workload Scheduler RFC user ID password on page 362 • Migrating from previous versions on page 366 • Print parameter and job class issues on page 364 • Defining the configuration options on page 368 • Connecting to the SAP system on page 387 • Creating SAP Standard R/3 jobs from the Dynamic Workload Console on page 391 • Using the BDC Wait option on page 439 • Implementing job interception on page 440 • Defining user authorizations to manage SAP Business Warehouse InfoPackages and process chains on page 451 • Setting and using job throttling on page 468 • Exporting SAP factory calendars on page 473 • Setting National Language support options on page 508
IBM Workload Scheduler developer	• Editing a standard SAP job on page 398 • Task string to define SAP jobs on page 399 • Displaying details about a standard SAP job on page 409 • Verifying the status of a standard SAP job on page 410 • Deleting a standard SAP job from the SAP database on page 411 • Balancing SAP workload using server groups on page 411 • Defining SAP jobs dynamically on page 417 • Managing SAP Business Warehouse InfoPackages and process chains on page 451

Table 68. Roles and responsibilities in IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP (continued)

User role	User task
IBM Workload Scheduler developer	• Defining internetwork dependencies and event rules based on SAP background events on page 476 • Defining event rules based on IDoc records on page 485 • Defining event rules based on CCMS Monitoring Architecture alerts on page 495
IBM Workload Scheduler operator	• Rerunning a standard SAP job on page 415 • Mapping between IBM Workload Scheduler and SAP job states on page 412 • Raising an SAP event on page 414 • Killing an SAP job instance on page 413 • Displaying details about a process chain job on page 457

Configuring user authorization (Security file)

IBM Workload Scheduler manages security through the use of a configuration file, the security file. In the security file, you specify which scheduling objects a user can manage and how. You define these settings by writing user definitions. A user definition is an association between a name and a set of users, the objects they can access, and the actions they can perform on the specified objects.

For more detailed information about the security file, security file syntax, and how to configure the security file, see "Configuring user authorization (Security file)" in the *Administration Guide*.

The following table displays the access keywords required to grant authorization to access and work with SAP scheduling objects assigned to IBM Workload Scheduler users.

Table 69. Access keywords for activities with SAP scheduling objects

Activity		Access keywords required
Dynamic Workload Console	Define or search for SAP jobs on an extended agent workstation.	display on the workstation
	Retrieve the spool list on an extended agent workstation.	display on the workstation

Table 69. Access keywords for activities with SAP scheduling objects

(continued)

Activity	Access keywords required
Rerun from a step on an extended agent.	rerun on the job
Define or search for SAP jobs on a dynamic agent workstation, pool, or dynamic pool.	display and run on the workstation
Retrieve the spool list on a dynamic agent workstation, pool, or dynamic pool.	display and run on the job
Rerun from a step on a dynamic agent workstation, pool, or dynamic pool.	rerun on the job

Configuring the SAP environment

You must configure the SAP environment before using the SAP access method.

To communicate and manage the running of jobs on SAP systems using the access method for SAP, complete the following configuration steps in the SAP environment.

The steps require that you have knowledge of an SAP Basis Administrator.

Overview

About this task

Here is an overview of the customization procedure:

1. Create a new user ID for RFC communications in SAP for IBM Workload Scheduler.
2. Create the authorization profile as described in [Creating the authorization profile for the IBM Workload Scheduler user on page 354](#).
3. Copy the correction and transport files from the IBM Workload Scheduler server to the SAP server.
4. Import the correction and transport files into SAP and verify the installation.

Results



Note: The import procedure adds new ABAP/4 function modules and several new internal tables to the SAP system. It does not modify any of the existing objects.

Creating the IBM Workload Scheduler RFC user

About this task

For IBM Workload Scheduler to communicate with SAP, you must create a user ID in SAP for IBM Workload Scheduler batch processing. For security reasons, use a new user ID rather than an existing one.

1. Create a new RFC user ID.
2. Give this new RFC user ID the following attributes:
 - A user type of **CPIC**, **Communications**, or **DIALOG**, depending on the SAP release.
 - A password at least six characters in length. IBM Workload Scheduler requires this password to start or monitor SAP jobs. If this password changes in SAP, you must update the options file used by `r3batch` with the new password.
 - The appropriate security profiles, depending on your version of SAP.

Creating the authorization profile for the IBM Workload Scheduler user

The two ways to create the authorization profile for the IBM Workload Scheduler user.

There are two alternative ways to perform this task:

- Using transaction `su02` and manually creating the profile.
- Using the Profile Generator (transaction `PFCG`).

Using transaction su02 and manually creating the profile

About this task

Perform the following steps:

1. Write a profile name, for example `Z_TWS`, and a description.
2. Manually add the authorizations according to the following table:

Object	Description	Authorization
S_ADMI_FCD	System authorizations	S_ADMI_ALL
S_APPL_LOG	Application logs	S_APPL_L_E2E
S_BTCH_ADM	Background processing: Background administrator	S_BTCH_ADM
S_BTCH_JOB	Background processing: Operations on background jobs	S_BTCH_ALL

Object	Description	Authorization
S_BTCH_NAM	Background processing: Background user name	S_BTCH_ALL
S_DEVELOP	ABAP Workbench: full authorization to modify objects of type PROG	E_ABAP_ALL
S_LOG_COM	Authorization to run external commands	S_LOGCOM_ALL
S_PROGRAM	ABAP: program run checks	S_ABAP_ALL
S_RFC	Authoritation. check for RFC access	S_RFC_ALL
S_RZL_ADM	CCMS: System Administration	S_RZL_ALL
S_SPO_ACT	Spool: Actions	S_SPO_ALL
S_SPO_DEV	Spool: Device authorizations	S_SPO_DEV_AL
S_XMI_LOG	Internal access authorizations for XMI log	S_XMILOG_ADM
S_XMI_PROD	Authorization for external management interfaces (XMI)	S_XMI_ADMIN

The authorizations are located in the "Basis: Administration" object class.

Depending on the version of SAP, the authorization S_RFC_ALL are located either in the "Cross-application Authorization Objects" or in the "Non-application-specific Authorization Objects" object class.

3. Save the profile.
4. Go to the user maintenance panel and assign the profile to the IBM Workload Scheduler SAP user.
5. Save the user data.

Using transaction PFCG (Profile Generator)

About this task

Perform the following steps:

1. Write a name, for example ZTWS, in **Role Name**.
2. Click **Create Role** and write a description for the role, such as "Role for the TWS user."
3. Save the role.
4. Select **Authorizations**.
5. Click **Change Authorization Data**.
6. In the pop-up, select **Templates**.
7. Manually add the following authorization objects:

Object	Description
S_ADMI_FCD	System authorizations
S_APPL_LOG	Application logs
S_BTCH_ADM	Background processing: Background administrator
S_BTCH_JOB	Background processing: Operations on background jobs
S_BTCH_NAM	Background processing: Background user name
S_PROGRAM	ABAP: Program run checks
S_DEVELOP	ABAP Workbench: full authorization to modify objects of type PROG
S_LOG_COM	Authorization to run external commands
S_RFC	Authorization check for RFC access
S_RZL_ADM	CCMS: System Administration
S_SPO_ACT	Spool: Actions
S_SPO_DEV	Spool: Device authorizations
S_XMI_LOG	Internal access authorizations for XMI log
S_XMI_PROD	Authorization for external management interfaces (XMI)

8. Fill in the values according to the following scheme:

Object	Description
S_ADMI_FCD	System authorizations ◦ System administration function: Full authorization
S_APPL_LOG	Activity: Display ◦ Application log Object name: Full authorization ◦ Application log subobject: Full authorization
S_BTCH_ADM	Background processing: Background administrator ◦ Background administrator ID: Full authorization
S_BTCH_JOB	Background processing: Operations on background jobs ◦ Job operations: Full authorization ◦ Summary of jobs for a group: Full authorization
S_BTCH_NAM	Background processing: Background user name ◦ Background user name for authorization check: Full authorization
S_PROGRAM	ABAP: Program run checks

Object	Description
	◦ User action ABAP/4 program: Full authorization ◦ Authorization group ABAP/4 program: Full authorization
S_RFC	Authorization check for RFC access ◦ Activity: Full authorization ◦ Name of RFC to be protected: Full authorization ◦ Type of RFC object to be protected: Full authorization
S_RZL_ADM	Activity: Full authorization
S_SPO_ACT	Spool: Actions ◦ Authorization field for spool actions: Full authorization ◦ Value for authorization check: Full authorization
S_SPO_DEV	Spool: Device authorizations ◦ Spool - Long device names: Full authorization
S_XMI_LOG	Internal access authorizations for XMI log ◦ Access method for XMI log: Full authorization
S_XMI_PROD	Authorization for external management interfaces (XMI) ◦ XMI logging - Company name: ABC* ◦ XMI logging - Program name: MAESTRO* ◦ Interface ID: Full authorization

9. Save the authorizations.
10. Generate a profile. Use the same name that you wrote in **Role Name**.
11. Exit the authorization management panel and select **User**.
12. Add the IBM Workload Scheduler user to the role.
13. Save the role.

Copying the correction and transport files

About this task

The setup file loads four correction and transport files into the IBM Workload Scheduler home directory. Copy these correction and transport files to the SAP server and import them into the SAP database, as follows:

1. On your SAP database server, log on to the SAP system as an administrator.
2. Copy the control file and data file from the methods directory and to the following directories on your SAP database server:

```
copy control_file /usr/sap/trans/cofiles/
copy data_file /usr/sap/trans/data/
```

The names of *control_file* and *data_file* vary from release to release. The files are located in the methods directory: UNIX®: *TWA_DATA_DIR*\methods, Windows™: *TWA_home*\methods, and have the following file names and format:

For SAP releases earlier than 6.10:

- K000xxx.TV1 (control file) and R000xxx.TV1 (data file)
- K900xxx.TV2 (control file) and R900xxx.TV2 (data file)

For SAP releases 6.10, or later:

- K9000xx.TV1 (control file) and R9000xx.TV1 (data file)
- K9007xx.TV1 (control file) and R9007xx.TV1 (data file)

where x is a digit generated by the SAPsystem.

Specifically, for IBM Workload Scheduler version 10.2.6 the following files are used:

For SAP releases earlier than 6.10:

- K000538.TV1 (for standard jobs scheduling)
- R000538.TV1 (for standard jobs scheduling)
- K900294.TV2 (for IDoc monitoring and job throttling)
- R900294.TV2 (for IDoc monitoring and job throttling)

For SAP releases 6.10, or later:

- K900044.TV1 (for standard jobs scheduling)
- R900044.TV1 (for standard jobs scheduling)
- K900751.TV1 (for IDoc monitoring and job throttling)
- R900751.TV1 (for IDoc monitoring and job throttling)

Importing ABAP/4 function modules into SAP

How to generate, activate and commit new ABAP/4 modules to a SAP system.

About this task

This section describes the procedure to generate, activate, and commit new ABAP/4 function modules to your SAP system and several new internal tables. You do not modify any existing SAP system objects. For information about the supported SAP R/3 releases, see the System Requirements Document at Download Documents, System Requirements, Release Notes.

The number of ABAP/4 modules that you install with the import process varies from release to release. The modules are installed in the methods directory and have the following file names and format:

- K9000xx.TV1 (function modules for standard jobs scheduling extensions)
- K9007xx.TV1 (function modules for IDoc monitoring and job throttling)

where x is a digit generated by the SAP system. The methods directory is located in:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_DATA_DIR/methods`

Windows On Windows operating systems

`TWA_home\methods`

Before importing the ABAP/4 function modules, review the considerations documented in [Migrating from previous versions on page 366](#).

To import ABAP/4 function modules into SAP:

1. Change to the following directory:

```
cd /usr/sap/trans/bin
```

2. Add the transport file to the buffer:

```
tp addtobuffer transport sid
```

where:

transport

The transport request file.

sid

The SAP system ID.

For example, if the transport file in the `TWA_home\methods` directory is named `K9000xxx.TV1`, the transport request is `tv1K9000xxx`.

3. Run the **tp tst** command to test the import:

```
tp tst transport sid
```

After running this command, examine the log files in the `/user/sap/trans/log` directory for error messages. Warnings of severity level 4 are normal.

If there are errors, check with a person experienced in correction and transport, or try using unconditional modes to do the import.

4. Run the following command to import all the files in the buffer:

```
tp import transport sid
```

This command generates the new ABAP/4 modules and commits them to the SAP database. They automatically become active.

After running this command, examine the log files located in the `/user/sap/trans/log` directory for error messages. Warnings of severity level 4 are normal.

If a problem is encountered, use unconditional mode when running this step:

```
tp import transport sid U126
```

5. When the import is complete, check the log files located in the `/usr/sap/trans/log` directory to verify that the ABAP/4 modules were imported successfully.

If you apply the standard transport and the IDOC transport, 26 ABAP/4 modules are installed by the import process. For a list of the transport files to be used, refer to [Importing ABAP/4 function modules into SAP on page 358](#). [Table 70: ABAP/4 modules installed on page 360](#) lists the ABAP modules installed.

Table 70. ABAP/4 modules installed

ABAP/4 module	Installed?
ENQUEUE_/IBMTWS/EQ_XAPPL	✓
DEQUEUE_/IBMTWS/EQ_XAPPL	✓
/IBMTWS/UNREGISTER_XAPPL	✓
/IBMTWS/GET_XAPPL_REGISTRATION	✓
/IBMTWS/MODIFY_JOB_CLASS	✓
/IBMTWS/REGISTER_XAPPL	✓
J_101_BDC_STATUS	✓
J_101_DATE_TIME	✓
J_101_IDOC_SELECT	✓
J_101_JOB_ADJUST_CLIENT	✓
J_101_JOB_FIND	✓
J_101_JOB_FINDALL	✓
J_101_JOB_HAS_EXTENDED_VARIANT	✓
J_101_JOB_LOG	✓
J_101_RAISE_EVENT	✓
J_101_REPORT_ALL_SELECTIONS	✓
J_101_REPORT_GET_TEXTPOOL	✓
J_101_VARIANT_COPY	✓
J_101_VARIANT_CREATE	✓
J_101_VARIANT_DELETE	✓
J_101_VARIANT_EXISTS	✓
J_101_VARIANT_GET_DEFINITION	✓
J_101_VARIANT_GET_HELP_VALUES	✓

ABAP/4 module	Installed?
J_101_VARIANT_MAINTAIN_CNT_TBL	✓
J_101_VARIANT_MAINTAIN_SEL_TBL	✓
J_101_VARIANT_MODIFY	✓

[Table 71: ABAP/4 modules contents on page 361](#) shows the contents of the ABAP modules for the IDoc records and job throttling feature.

Table 71. ABAP/4 modules contents

Object	Description	Used by...
/IBMTWS/	Type = Development Namespace. For IBM Workload Scheduler.	Internal use only
/IBMTWS/EQ_XAPPL	Type = Lock Object. Synchronizes the job throttler instances and job interception collector jobs that are running against the same SAP system.	Job throttling Job interception
/IBMTWS/GET_XAPPL_REGISTRATION	Type = Function Module. It is used to query for existing external application registration data in table IBMTWS/XAPPL, for example the registration data of a job throttler instance or job interception collector.	Job throttling Job interception
/IBMTWS/MODIFY_JOB_CLASS	Type = Function Module. Modifies the job class of an intercepted job that is controlled by the job throttler. For details, see Step 3. Enabling job class inheritance on page 469 .	Job throttling Job interception
/IBMTWS/REGISTER_XAPPL	Type = Function Module. Registers an external application, for example the job throttler.	Job throttling Job interception
/IBMTWS/TWS4APPS	Type = Function group. For IBM Workload Scheduler.	Internal use only
/IBMTWS/UNREGISTER_XAPPL	Type = Function Module. Unregisters an external application, for example the job throttler.	Job throttling Job interception
/IBMTWS/XAPPL	Type = Table. Stores the registration data of external applications. An external application can be a job throttler instance or a job interception collector.	Job throttling Job interception

Object	Description	Used by...
J_101_IDOC_SELECT	Type = Function Module. Selects IDoc records from SAP internal tables. For details, see Defining event rules based on IDoc records on page 485 .	IDoc event rules
J_101_TWS_EDIDC	Type = Data structure in FM interface	Function module J_101_IDOC_SELECT
J_101_TWS_IDOC_SELECTION	Type = Data structure in FM interface	Function module J_101_IDOC_SELECT
J_101_TWS_STATE_SELECTION	Type = Data structure in FM interface	Function module J_101_IDOC_SELECT

To uninstall the transport you can use the STMS transaction see: [Deleting Imported Requests from the Import Queue](#).

Changing the IBM Workload Scheduler RFC user ID password

About this task

If the password of the IBM Workload Scheduler Remote Function Call (RFC) user ID is modified after the initial installation, the options file used by `r3batch` must be updated to reflect this change.

On UNIX® operating systems, log on as root to the system where IBM Workload Scheduler is installed.

On Windows™ operating systems, log on as an administrator and start a DOS shell on the system where IBM Workload Scheduler is installed.

1. Generate an encrypted version of the new password using the `enigma` command, located in `TWA_home/methods`. To do this in a command shell, type:

```
enigma new_password
```

where

new_password

is the new password for the IBM Workload Scheduler RFC user ID.

The `enigma` command prints an encrypted version of the password.

2. Copy the encrypted password into the options file, which is located in the following directory:

UNIX

On UNIX operating systems

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/methods
```

Windows On Windows operating systems

`TwA_home\methods`

The file can be edited with any text editor.

Results

Ensure that you copy the password exactly, preserving uppercase, lowercase, and punctuation. The encrypted password looks similar to:

```
{aes}hyb/LQNyVzIf9oA8/xgY+CSqAuAh7+CvTT7HuDpdiu5YUAH0KJEHJtA=
```

If the encrypted password is not entered correctly, IBM Workload Scheduler is unable to start or monitor SAP batch jobs.

Securing data communication

You can increase the security of your SAP system through the use of an external security product. Secure Network Communications (SNC) can integrate the external security product with the SAP system.

Data communication paths between the client and server components of the SAP system that use the SAP protocols RFC or DIAG are more secure with SNC. The security is strengthened through the use of additional security functions provided by an external product that are otherwise not available with SAP systems.

SNC provides security at application level and also end-to-end security. IBM® Workload Scheduler is extended to read SNC configuration parameters and forward them to the SAP RFC communication layer used when logging in to the SAP system. IBM® Workload Scheduler does not provide or ship SNC software but instead enables the use of third-party SNC products to secure the RFC communication.

Levels of protection

You can apply one of the following levels of protection:

Authentication only

This is the minimum level of security protection available with SNC. The system verifies the identity of the communication partners.

Integrity protection

The system detects any changes to the data which might have occurred between the two components communicating.

Privacy protection

This is the maximum level of security protection available with SNC. The system encrypts the messages being transferred so that any attempt to eavesdrop is useless. Privacy protection also includes integrity protection of the data.

Example

The following options in the local options file are used to configure SNC for IBM Workload Scheduler:

- **r3snclib**: the path and file name of the SNC library.
- **r3sncmode**: enables or disables SNC between r3batch and the SAP R3 system.
- **r3sncmyname**: the name of the user sending the RFC for SNC.
- **r3sncpartnername**: the SNC name of the SAP R3 communication partner (application server).
- **r3sncqop**: the SNC protection level.

See [Defining the local options on page 371](#) for a description of these options in the local options file.

Print parameter and job class issues

The workstation running the r3batch access method for SAP uses the official RFC interfaces of SAP for job scheduling. When you migrate from previous versions of SAP, there can be problems with print parameters in jobs launched by IBM Workload Scheduler. This is because of limitations in the RFC interfaces.

These limitations are no longer true with XBP 2.0 and later.

The following is a list of print parameters supported by BAPI XBP 1.0 for SAP release 4.6x and later:

- archiving mode
- authorization
- columns
- delete after output
- lines
- number of copies
- output device
- print immediately
- recipient
- sap cover page
- selection cover page
- spool retention period

To resolve the loss of print parameters when copying a job, install the appropriate SAP Support Package as stated in the SAP notes 399449 and 430087.

The same applies to the job class. Official SAP interfaces only allow class C jobs. Installing the SAP Support Package also resolves this issue.

Unicode support

Access method for SAP supports the Unicode standard.

What is Unicode

Unicode was devised to address the problem caused by the profusion of code sets. Since the early days of computer programming hundreds of encodings have been developed, each for small groups of languages and special purposes. As

a result, the interpretation of text, input, sorting, display, and storage depends on the knowledge of all the different types of character sets and their encodings. Programs are written to either handle one single encoding at a time and switch between them, or to convert between external and internal encodings.

The problem is that there is no single, authoritative source of precise definitions of many of the encodings and their names. Transferring text from one computer to another often causes some loss of information. Also, if a program has the code and the data to perform conversion between many subsets of traditional encodings, then it needs to hold several Megabytes of data.

Unicode provides a single character set that covers the languages of the world, and a small number of machine-friendly encoding forms and schemes to fit the needs of existing applications and protocols. It is designed for best interoperability with both ASCII and ISO-8859-1, the most widely used character sets, to make it easier for Unicode to be used in applications and protocols.

Unicode makes it possible to access and manipulate characters by unique numbers, their Unicode code points, and use older encodings only for input and output, if at all. The most widely used forms of Unicode are:

- UTF-32, with 32-bit code units, each storing a single code point. It is the most appropriate for encoding single characters.
- UTF-16, with one or two 16-bit code units for each code point. It is the default encoding for Unicode.
- UTF-8, with one to four 8-bit code units (bytes) for each code point. It is used mainly as a direct replacement for older MBCS (multiple byte character set) encodings.

Unicode support on SAP

Starting with SAP version 4.7 (R/3 Enterprise), Unicode is used on all layers of the SAP system:

- UTF-8, UTF-16, and UTF-32 on the database
- UTF-16 on the application server and graphical user interface

`r3batch` uses the UTF-8 code page internally. Because it communicates with SAP at the application server layer, it uses UTF-16 when communicating with Unicode-enabled SAP systems.

To use Unicode support, the following conditions must be met:

- Access method for SAP must run on a supported operating system. See the SAP support section in the [IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements](#). The product does not support Unicode on the other operating systems where it can be installed.
- The SAP systems that communicate with `r3batch` must be running Unicode-enabled SAP versions.

If these conditions are not met, you cannot use Unicode support and must make sure that `r3batch`, the Dynamic Workload Console, and the target SAP system code page settings are aligned. Use the options related to national language support described in [SAP supported code pages on page 509](#).

Migrating from previous versions

This version of IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP supports all the SAP versions listed in [IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements](#). The IBM Workload Scheduler access method for SAP uses the official SAP RFC interfaces for job scheduling. These are:

- The BC-XBP 6.10 (V2.0) Interface function modules for SAP versions 6.10 and later.
- The BC-XBP 7.00 (V3.0) Interface function modules for SAP versions 7.00, Support Package 16, in addition to the BC-XBP 6.10 (V2.0) function modules.

To avoid conflicts with other vendors, the IBM Workload Scheduler ABAP modules now belong to the IBM Workload Scheduler partner namespace J_101_xxx and /IBMTWS. After you have completed the imports as described in [Importing ABAP/4 function modules into SAP on page 358](#), the RFC J_101_xxx function modules and the /IBMTWS function modules are installed on your system.

If you had a previous installation of IBM Workload Scheduler extended agent for SAP on your system, you can delete the following function modules from your SAP system:

```
Z_MAE2_BDC_STATUS
Z_MAE2_DATE_TIME
Z_MAE2_JOB_COPY
Z_MAE2_JOB_DELETE
Z_MAE2_JOB_FIND
Z_MAE2_JOB_FINDALL
Z_MAE2_JOB_LOG
Z_MAE2_JOB_OPEN
Z_MAE2_JOB_START
Z_MAE2_JOB_STATUS
Z_MAE2_JOB_STOP
```

These are old versions of the ABAP functions, which belong to the customer name space. You can also delete the function group YMA3. It is not necessary to delete the function modules and the function group, but delete them if you want to clean up your system.

To upgrade SAP, perform the following steps:

1. Uninstall the IBM® Workload Scheduler ABAP module.
2. Upgrade SAP.
3. Install the IBM® Workload Scheduler ABAP module.

Configuring the SAP access method

This section provides detailed information about the SAP options file creation.

The files for the SAP access method are located in the following path:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/methods
```

Windows On Windows operating systems

`TWA_home\methods`

If `r3batch` finds the local configuration file for an extended agent or dynamic agent, it ignores the duplicate information contained in `r3batch.opts`. If instead it does not find a local configuration file then it will use `r3batch.opts` global options file.

To successfully use the SAP access method, you must first install the SAP RFC libraries, as described in the System Requirements Document in the SAP Access Method Requirements section.

Dynamic agents

`r3batch.opts`

A common configuration file for the `r3batch` access method, whose settings affect all the `r3batch` instances. It functions as a "global" configuration file.

`DYNAMIC_AGENT_FILE_r3batch.opts`

One or more configuration files that are specific to each dynamic agent workstation within a particular installation of a `r3batch` access method. The `DYNAMIC_AGENT_FILE_r3batch.opts` is the name of the options file, where `DYNAMIC_AGENT` is not necessarily the name of the dynamic agent workstation, because the dynamic agent can have more than one `.opts` file associated. If you do not create a local options file, the global options file is used. Every dynamic agent workstation must have one or more local options file with its own configuration options.



Note: The value for `DYNAMIC_AGENT` must be written in uppercase alphanumeric characters. Double-byte character set (DBCS), Single-byte character set (SBCS), and Bidirectional text are not supported.



Note: If you have a **pool** or **dynamic pool** containing n agents, you must create an options file for the dynamic pool and copy it in the `TWA_home/methods` of each agent of the pool so that all members of the pool have a local options file with the same name. Then you must create another options file for the specific agent in the same directory.

For example, if the SAP access method is installed for `AGENT1` and `AGENT2` that belong to the dynamic pool `DYN_POOL`, you need to create the following options files in the path `TWA_home/methods` on each agent:

AGENT 1

- `FILE_AGENT1_r3batch.opts`
- `FILE_DYN_POOL_r3batch.opts`

AGENT2

- `FILE_AGENT2_r3batch.opts`
- `FILE_DYN_POOL_r3batch.opts`

On dynamic workstations, you can create a new options file or edit an existing options files from a graphical user interface panel available on the General tab of the SAP job definition panels in the Dynamic Workload Console.

Extended agents

`r3batch.opts`

A common configuration file for the `r3batch` access method, whose settings affect all the `r3batch` instances. It functions as a “global” configuration file.

`XA_Unique_ID_r3batch.opts`

A configuration file that is specific to each IBM Workload Scheduler extended agent workstation that uses the `r3batch` access method. Its options affect only the `r3batch` instance that is used by that particular workstation. It functions as a “local” configuration file.



Note: `XA_Unique_ID` is the unique identifier for the extended agent workstation. See [UNIQUE_ID on page 312](#) for more details about identifying the unique identifier for an extended agent workstation.

For example, to define two extended agent workstations with unique identifiers, `07756YBX76Z6AFX2` and `S4HANAR3BW`, that access two SAP systems, `SAP1` and `SAP2`, with the `r3batch` access method, you must define the following three configuration files:

- Global `r3batch.opts`
- Local file `07756YBX76Z6AFX2_r3batch.opts`
- Local file `S4HANAR3BW_r3batch.opts`

Defining the configuration options

This section describes the options you can configure in `r3batch.opts` and in `XANAME_r3batch.opts`.

Defining the global options

[Table 72: r3batch global configuration options on page 369](#) lists the options that can be specified only in the *global* configuration file `r3batch.opts`.

Table 72. r3batch global configuration options

Option	Description	Default
dep_sem_proj	(Optional) The project ID for the external dependency semaphore used for handling SAP background processing events as external follows dependencies.	d
icp_sem_proj	(Optional) The project ID for the job interception semaphore.	c
job_sem_proj	(Optional) The project ID for the job semaphore.	a
max_jobs_to_release_for_user	Defines the maximum number of jobs released for each user each time the release job is submitted. If this option is less than or equal to 0, the option is ignored and all jobs are released when the release job is submitted. This option is present both in global and local options. If you define it in both configuration files, the local value overrides the global one.	ON
primm_enable	(Optional) Enables (ON) the SAP print parameter PRIMM (Print Immediately) for all jobs.	OFF
prnew_enable	(Optional) Enables (ON) the SAP print parameter PRNEW (New Spool Request) for all jobs.	OFF
prrel_enable	(Optional) Enables (ON) the SAP print parameter PRREL (Immediately delete the spool output after printing) for all jobs.	OFF
prsap_enable	(Optional) Enables (ON) the SAP print parameter PRSAP (Print SAP Cover Page) for all jobs. The default value is OFF.	OFF
prunx_enable	(Optional) Enables (ON) the SAP print parameter PRUNX (Print Operating System Cover Page) for all jobs.	OFF
release_all_intercepted_jobs_for_request	Releases jobs for each user on a cyclic basis, based on the number of jobs specified in the max_jobs_to_release_for_user option. The default value is ON, which means that all jobs are submitted for each user: • If the max_jobs_to_release_for_user option is less than or equal to 0, all jobs are released for each user. • If the max_jobs_to_release_for_user option is higher than 0, the specified number of jobs is submitted for each user on a cyclic basis. For example, if max_jobs_to_release_for_user=5, the first 5 jobs are submitted for each user, then the following 5 jobs for each user, and so on, until all jobs for all users are submitted. If this option is set to OFF, it releases for each user only the number of jobs specified in the max_jobs_to_release_for_user option. The remaining jobs are submitted only when a new release job is submitted:	00

Table 72. r3batch global configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
	• If the max_jobs_to_release_for_user option is less than or equal to 0, all jobs are released for each user. • If the max_jobs_to_release_for_user option is higher than 0, only the specified number of jobs is submitted, then no other job is submitted until the new release job. If max_jobs_to_release_for_user=5, the first 5 jobs are submitted for each user, then no other job is submitted until the new release job. This option is present both in global and local options. If you define it in both configuration files, the local value overrides the global one.	
var_sem_proj	(Optional) The project ID for the variant semaphore.	b



Note: If the **max_jobs_to_release_for_user** option is higher than 0, only the specified number of jobs is submitted, then no other job is submitted until the new release job. If **max_jobs_to_release_for_user=5**, the first 5 jobs are submitted for each user, then no other job is submitted until the new release job.

Modifying the default values of the semaphore options is particularly useful when the IDs that are generated would be the same as the IDs already used by other applications.

On UNIX and Linux, to resolve the problem of duplicated IDs, IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP uses system-5 semaphores to synchronize critical ABAP function module calls. It uses one semaphore for job-related tasks and another one for tasks related to variant maintenance.

To synchronize on the same semaphore, the communication partners must use the same identifier. There are several ways to choose this identifier. IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP uses two parameters: a path name and a project ID (which is a character value). The path name parameter is the fully qualified path to the options file. The project ID is taken from the options described in [Table 72: r3batch global configuration options on page 369](#). If these options are omitted, IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP uses default values, which work for most installations.



Note:

1. The semaphore options must be edited directly in the global options file using a text editor; you cannot use the options editor to modify these values.
2. If two semaphore options are assigned the same value, all the semaphore values are reset according to the following rule:

job_sem_proj

It keeps the value assigned, or its default value.

**var_sem_proj**

It is reset to the first character that, in the ASCII table, follows the value assigned to `var_sem_proj`.

icp_sem_proj

It is reset to the second character that, in the ASCII table, follows the value assigned to `var_sem_proj`.

dep_sem_proj

It is reset to the third character that, in the ASCII table, follows the value assigned to `var_sem_proj`.

Defining the local options

Table 73: [r3batch local configuration options on page 371](#) lists the options that you can specify only in the *local* configuration files.

Table 73. r3batch local configuration options

Option	Description
bapi_sync_level	(Optional) Specifies the synchronization level between the SAP function modules BAPI_XBP_JOB_COPY and BAPI_XBP_JOB_START_ASAP. Allowed values are: high All RFC calls between BAPI_XBP_JOB_START_ASAP and BAPI_XBP_JOB_COPY are synchronized. This is the default. medium The RFC calls to BAPI_XBP_JOB_START_ASAP are synchronized. low The RFC calls are not synchronized.
blank_libpath	(Optional) Clears (ON) the operating system variables LD_LIBRARY_PATH and LIBPATH. The default value is OFF .
fn_cache_enabled	(Optional) Enables or disables the file cache on the agent. Can be ON (default value).
fn_cache_purge_interval	(Optional) Specifies the time of validity (in days) of the cached files. If it is left unspecified or set equal to or less than 0, the files are valid indefinitely.
get_job_status_retry	(Optional) Sets the number of times a Remote Function Call must be attempted to retrieve the actual status of an SAP Job. Allowed values are in the range from 1 to 9999. The default value is 5.

Table 73. r3batch local configuration options (continued)

Option	Description
get_job_status_retry_delay	(Optional) Sets the number of seconds between two consecutive calls of a Remote Function Call. Allowed values are in the range from 1 to 9999.
job_duration	(Optional) Enables (ON) that the CPU time value in the production plan report that is run from the Dynamic Workload Console is set to the actual duration of the SAP job. Default value is OFF. To retrieve the job duration from the SAP system, ensure that the authorization profile contains the following authorization objects: • S_DEVELOP • S_TCODE with parameter SE38 (only for SAP 6.40 and 7.00) For details about the authorization profile, see Creating the authorization profile for the IBM Workload Scheduler user on page 354.
max_jobs_to_release_for_user	Defines the maximum number of jobs released for each user each time the release job is submitted. If this option is less than or equal to 0, the option is ignored and all jobs are released when the release job is submitted. This option is present both in global and local options. If you define it in both configuration files, the local value overrides the global one.
primm_enable	(Optional) Enables (ON) the SAP print parameter PRIMM (Print Immediately) for all jobs. The default value is OFF.
prnew_enable	(Optional) Enables (ON) the SAP print parameter PRNEW (New Spool Request) for all jobs. The default value is OFF.
prrel_enable	(Optional) Enables (ON) the SAP print parameter PRREL (Print Release) for all jobs. The default value is OFF.
prsap_enable	(Optional) Enables (ON) the SAP print parameter PRSAP (Print SAP Cover Page) for all jobs. The default value is OFF.
prunx_enable	(Optional) Enables (ON) the SAP print parameter PRUNX (Print Operating System Cover Page) for all jobs. The default value is OFF.
release_all_intercepted_jobs_for_request	Releases jobs for each user on a cyclic basis, based on the number of jobs specified in the max_jobs_to_release_for_user option. The default value is ON, which means that all jobs are submitted for each user:

Table 73. r3batch local configuration options (continued)

Option	Description
	• If the max_jobs_to_release_for_user option is less than or equal to 0, all jobs are released for each user. • If the max_jobs_to_release_for_user option is higher than 0, the specified number of jobs is submitted for each user on a cyclic basis. For example, if max_jobs_to_release_for_user=5, the first 5 jobs are submitted for each user, then the following 5 jobs for each user, and so on, until all jobs for all users are submitted. If this option is set to OFF, it releases for each user only the number of jobs specified in the max_jobs_to_release_for_user option. The remaining jobs are submitted only when a new release job is submitted: • If the max_jobs_to_release_for_user option is less than or equal to 0, all jobs are released for each user. • If the max_jobs_to_release_for_user option is higher than 0, only the specified number of jobs is submitted, then no other job is submitted until the new release job. If max_jobs_to_release_for_user=5, the first 5 jobs are submitted for each user, then no other job is submitted until the new release job. This option is present both in global and local options. If you define it in both configuration files, the local value overrides the global one.
r3client	(Mandatory) The SAP client number.
r3gateway	(Optional) The host name of the SAP gateway.
r3group	(Optional) The name of the SAP logon group.
r3gwservice	(Optional) The service number of the SAP gateway.
r3host	(Mandatory) The host name of the SAP message server when using logon groups, or the host name of the application server in all other cases. If this server can be reached through one or more SAP gateways, use a string in the format <code>/H/gateway/H/</code> for each of them.
r3instance	(Mandatory) The SAP instance number. If r3group is set, this option is ignored.
r3password	(Mandatory) The password for the r3user . Ensure that you enter the same password when creating this user in the SAP system. It can be a maximum of eight characters and is stored in encrypted format. The value is case sensitive.

Table 73. r3batch local configuration options (continued)

Option	Description
	For information about how to encrypt the password see Encrypting SAP user passwords on page 386 .
r3sid	(Mandatory) The SAP system ID.
r3snclib	(Optional) Specifies the path and file name of the SNC library. This option becomes mandatory if r3sncmode is activated (1).
r3sncmode	(Optional) Enables (1), or disables (0), secure network communication (SNC) between r3batch and the SAP R3 system. The default setting is (0). Refer to the SAP documentation for more information about using the SAP cryptographic Library for SNC.
r3sncmyname	(Optional) Specifies the name of the user sending the RFC for secure network communication (SNC).
r3sncpartnername	(Optional) Specifies the SNC name of the SAP R3 communication partner (application server). This option becomes mandatory if r3sncmode is activated (1).
r3sncqop	(Optional) Specifies the secure network communication (SNC) protection level.
r3user	(Mandatory) The name of the SAP user with which the access method connects to the SAP system. It must have the appropriate privileges for running background jobs. It is sometimes also called the Maestro™ User ID.
report_list_max_limit	(Optional) Sets the maximum number of ABAP reports which can be loaded. The default value is -1, which means no limit.

Defining the common options

[Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374](#) lists additional options that you can specify in either configuration file.

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options

Option	Description	Default
bdc_job_status_failed	(Optional) How IBM Workload Scheduler sets the completion status of a job running BDC sessions, according to a possible BDC processing failure. The allowed values are: <i>n</i> If at least <i>n</i> BDC sessions failed (where <i>n</i> is an integer greater than 0), IBM Workload Scheduler sets the job completion status as failed.	ignore

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
	all If all the BDC sessions failed, IBM Workload Scheduler sets the job completion status as failed. ignore When all the BDC sessions complete, regardless of their status, IBM Workload Scheduler sets the job completion status as successful. This is the default.  Note: This option is ignored if you defined the job by setting the nobdc or nobdcwait option. For details about these options, see Task string to define SAP jobs on page 399.	
ccms_alert_history	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the product to retrieve all the matching CCMS alerts, included those that were generated before the monitoring process started. The default value is OFF, meaning that the product retrieves only the CCMS alerts that are generated after the monitoring process started.  Note: This option takes effect the first time you start the CCMS alert monitoring. If you initially set it to OFF and later you want to retrieve the alerts generated before the monitoring process started, stop the monitoring and delete the <code>XAname_r3xalmon.cfg</code> file located in <code>TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/r3evmon_cfg</code> on UNIX® and <code>TWA_home\methods\r3evmon_cfg</code> on Windows™. In the options file, set <code>ccms_alert_history=on</code> and start the monitoring process again.	OFF
commit_dependency	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the product to commit internetwork dependencies after processing. If you enable this option, internetwork dependencies are committed immediately by default. If you disable or delete this option, the -commit parameter set in the internetwork dependency definition is applied. For details about the -commit parameter, see Table 84: Parameters to define an SAP internetwork dependency on page 477.	OFF

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
enable_appl_rc	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the mapping of the application return code to the IBM Workload Scheduler return code.  Note: This feature does not modify the exit code of the access method. For more details, refer to the rccondsucc keyword in the job definition documented in <i>IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference</i>.	OFF
evmon_interval	(Optional) The polling rate (in seconds) that the r3evmon process applies to monitor the list of events.	60
ifuser	(Optional) The ID of the user who runs the access method to retrieve job information.	None
idoc_no_history	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the product to retrieve only IDoc data that is generated after the monitoring process started. If you specify OFF, all matching IDocs are retrieved, including those that were generated before the monitoring process started. When processing this option, r3evmon uses the <code>XAname_r3idocmon.cfg</code> file to retrieve the date and time for the next monitoring loop.	ON
idoc_shallow_result	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the product to retrieve only the most recent matching IDocs. For example, suppose you set <code>idoc_shallow_result=ON</code>. If the status of an IDoc changes several times during the monitoring interval and the same status, matching an event rule condition, occurs more than once in the sequence of statuses, only the most recent matching IDoc is retrieved. If you specify OFF, all matching IDocs are retrieved.	ON
jobdef	(Optional) If enabled, you can use the Dynamic Workload Console to define jobs, in addition to the command line. Specify r3batch to enable the option, and any other value to disable it.	r3batch
job_interceptable	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the job launched by r3batch to be intercepted by SAP. If enabled, when r3batch launches a job and the SAP job interception feature is enabled, the job can be intercepted if it matches previously defined criteria. If disabled, the job launched by r3batch cannot be intercepted by SAP.	OFF

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
ljuser	(Optional) The ID of the user who runs the access method to launch jobs (LJ tasks) and manage jobs (MJ tasks).	None
log_r3syslog	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the access method to write the latest entries from the SAP syslog to its trace file when an RFC returns with a general error.	OFF
long_interval	(Optional) The maximum interval, in seconds, between status checks. It cannot be greater than 3600 seconds. See also <i>short_interval</i> .	3600
max_n0_counter	(Optional) The maximum value of the N0 counter. If the N0 counter reaches the specified value, it starts again from 0.	$2^{15} - 1$
max_name_counter	(Optional) The maximum value of the variant name counter. If the name counter reaches the specified value, it starts again from 0.	40
n0_counter_policy	(Optional) The N0 counter policy: step The N0 counter is increased once for every step. job The N0 counter is increased once for every job.	job
name_counter_policy	(Optional) The name counter policy: step The name counter is increased once for every step. job The name counter is increased once for every job.	job
nojobdefs	(Optional) Disables (1) or enables (0) the definition of new SAP jobs using the Dynamic Workload Console. If this option is set to 1, you must create the job definitions in the SAP job before creating the IBM Workload Scheduler job that is going to schedule them.	0
oldcopy	(Optional) Enables (1) or disables (0) the access method to use the old way of copying jobs, even though the function module BAPI_XBP_JOB_COPY is present on the SAP system.	0
pchain_recover	(Optional) The action taken by IBM Workload Scheduler when you rerun a job that submits a process chain. The allowed values are:	rerun

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
	rerun IBM Workload Scheduler creates another process chain instance and submits it to be run again. restart IBM Workload Scheduler restarts the original process chain from the failing processes to the end. For details about rerunning a process chain job, refer to Rerunning a process chain job on page 460.	
pchain_details	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the display of details about an SAP process chain that you scheduled as an IBM Workload Scheduler job.	OFF
pchainlog_bapi_msg	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the product to retrieve additional messages from the BAPI calls from the SAP Business Warehouse process chains and appends them to the stdlist of IBM Workload Scheduler.	ON
pchainlog_level	(Optional) Supplements the option retrieve_pchainlog. Specifies which level of process chain logs you want to retrieve. Allowed values are: 1 Only the first level of process chain is logged. level_number Process chains are logged down to the level of chain you indicate here. For example, if you indicate 2 only the first two levels are logged. all All process chains are logged.	If you omit this option, and leave retrieve_pchainlog set to ON, the default is level 1.
pchainlog_verbosity	(Optional) Supplements the option retrieve_pchainlog. Specifies which type of process chain logs you want to retrieve. Allowed values are: chains_only Logs only the process chains.	If you omit this option, and leave retrieve_pchainlog set to ON, the default is complete.

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
	chains_and_failed_proc In addition to the process chains, logs all failed processes. complete Logs all process chains and processes.  Note: This option affects the entire process chain; verbosity cannot be reduced for individual processes.	
pc_launch_child	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the product to launch child jobs that are in scheduled state.  Note: You can use this option only if you activated the parent-child feature on the SAP system. On the XBP 2.0 or later SAP system, you can activate this feature by using the INITXBP2 ABAP report.	OFF
placeholder_abap_step	(Optional) If XBP version 2.0 is used, the name of the ABAP report used as the dummy step in the SAP placeholder job that is created to monitor an SAP event defined as external dependency.	If this option is not specified, either as global or local option, the default <code>BTCTEST</code> is used.
qos_disable	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the creation of the environment variable QOS_DISABLE on Microsoft™ Windows™ systems that use the Quality of Service (QoS) feature, before <code>r3batch</code> opens an RFC connection. Without this option, because of problems in the implementation of the QoS service, the connection between <code>r3batch</code> and the SAP RFC library does not work.	OFF
r3auditlevel	(Optional) The audit level for the XBP. A number from 0 (low) to 3 (high).	3
rcmap	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the return code mapping capabilities of Access method for SAP.	ON

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
retrieve_applinfo	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the retrieval and appending of the SAP application log to the stdlist of IBM Workload Scheduler.	OFF
retrieve_ipaklog	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the retrieval and appending of the SAP BW InfoPackage logs to the stdlist of IBM Workload Scheduler.  Note: The retrieval and appending of SAP BW InfoPackage job logs to the stdlist might be time-consuming for jobs that produce large logs.	ON
retrieve_joblog	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the retrieval and appending of the SAP job logs to the stdlist of IBM Workload Scheduler.  Note: 1. The retrieval and appending of job logs to the stdlist might be time-consuming for jobs that produce large logs. 2. If you disable the retrieval of the job logs, you also disable the return code mapping function for the log entries. 3. This option does not affect the BDC wait feature.	ON
retrieve_pchainlog	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the retrieval and appending of the SAP BW process chain logs to the stdlist of IBM Workload Scheduler.  Note: 1. The retrieval and appending of SAP BW process chain logs to the stdlist might be time-consuming for jobs that produce large logs. 2. If you disable the retrieval of the SAP BW process chain logs, you also disable the return code mapping function for the log entries.	ON

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
	 3. This option on its own retrieves the log of only the first level of a process chain. To retrieve more complete logs, use this option with the pchainlog_level and pchainlog_verbosity options.	
retrieve_spoollist	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the retrieval and appending of the SAP job spool lists to the <code>stdlist</code> of IBM Workload Scheduler.  Note: 1. The retrieval and appending of SAP job spool lists to the <code>stdlist</code> might be time-consuming for jobs that produce large spool lists. 2. If you disable the retrieval of the SAP job spool lists, you also disable the return code mapping function for the spool list entries.	ON
retry	(Optional) The retry count for SAP function module calls. Specify an integer greater than 0.	5
rfc_interval	(Optional) The polling rate (in milliseconds) with which r3batch listens for results of RFC requests. The rate cannot exceed 1,000 milliseconds. Consider that the lower the value of the <code>rfc_interval</code> option, the higher the frequency with which RFC request results are collected and, as a consequence, CPU consumption on the r3batch system is high.	10
rfc_open_delay	(Optional) The maximum number of seconds to wait between two consecutive calls before opening an RFC connection.	1800
rfc_open_retry	(Optional) The retry count for opening an RFC connection to the SAP system. Specify an integer greater than 0 to limit the number of retries, or -1 for an unlimited number of retries.	5
rfc_timeout	(Optional) The time (in seconds) that r3batch waits before canceling a non-responding RFC communication. Allowed values are in the range from 0 to 9999; 0 means no timeout.	600

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
short_interval	(Optional) The minimum interval, in seconds, between status checks. It cannot be less than 2 seconds. Setting this option to low values makes the notification of status changes faster, but increases the load on the hosting machine. See also <i>long_interval</i> .	10
throttling_enable_job_class_inheritance	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the inheritance of priority class. ON means that the intercepted job inherits the priority class of its progenitor job, if it is higher than its own class; otherwise it keeps its own class. OFF means that the intercepted job keeps its own class, regardless of its progenitor's class.  Note: By setting this option, the parent-child feature is automatically enabled on the SAP system.	ON
throttling_enable_job_interception	(Optional) Enables (ON) the job interception feature at job throttler startup, or keeps the current setting (OFF). ON means that when the job throttler starts, it enables the job interception feature on the SAP system. When the job throttler is stopped, the job interception feature is also automatically restored to the setting that was previously configured on the SAP system. OFF means that the job interception feature is kept as it is currently set in the SAP system.	ON
throttling_job_interception_version	Specifies the BC-XBP interface version to be used when the job throttler starts. Valid values are: • 2 • 3 The default BC-XBP interface version that is used is 2 (version 2.0).	2
throttling_interval	(Optional) The interval (in seconds) between each job throttling run.	5
throttling_max_connections	(Optional) The maximum number of connections (connection pool size) that the job throttler can open to communicate with the SAP system. The minimum value is 3.	5
throttling_release_all_on_exit	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the release of all intercepted jobs.	ON

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
	ON means that when the job throttler is stopped, it releases all the intercepted jobs. OFF means that when the job throttler is stopped, it does not release the intercepted jobs therefore the jobs remain intercepted, in scheduled state.	
throttling_send_ccms_data	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the sending of data from job throttling to the SAP CCMS Monitoring Architecture. ON means that the job throttler sends its status data to CCMS continuously. OFF means that the job throttler does not send its status to CCMS.	OFF
throttling_send_ccms_rate	(Optional) Rate (in number of runs) at which the job throttler sends its status data to the SAP CCMS monitoring architecture. The minimum value is 1 , meaning that the job throttler sends the data at every run.	1
twsmeth_cp	(Optional) The code page that r3batch uses to write its output. This option must be consistent with twsmeth_lang . It can be any of the existing TIS codepages.	The code page used by the IBM Workload Scheduler workstation that hosts the r3batch access method.
twsmeth_lang	(Optional) The language used to report messages. This option must be consistent with twsmeth_cp .	The language of the locale of the workstation that hosts the r3batch access method.
twsga_cp	(Optional) The encoding used by r3batch to establish RFC connections with SAP systems. Use this option if r3batch is not Unicode-enabled. Possible values are: • 1100 • 1103 • 8000 • 8300 • 8400	1100
twsga_lang	(Optional) The language used to log in to SAP systems. Specify one of the following (DE, EN, and JA can be set from the Option Editor. The other languages can be set using any text editor):	EN

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
	DE German EN English ES Spanish FR French IT Italian JA Japanese KO Korean pt_BR Brazilian Portuguese zh_CN Simplified Chinese zh_TW Traditional Chinese 	
use_fips	(Optional) Enables (ON) or disables (OFF) the FIPS mode of operation for IBM Workload Scheduler.	OFF
utf8cmdline	(Optional) Enables (1) or disables (0) the encoding of extended parameters in UTF-8 format. The default value is 0.	 Note: If you have both global and

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
		 local options files and you want to change the default value for utf8cmdline , modify the local options file because this overrides the global options.
variant_delay	(Optional) The time, in seconds, that r3batch allows the SAP system to clean up the structures used for communication between r3batch and the SAP system. This option is valid when you launch a job that uses extended variants and requires a copy of a job template. Use this option only when you want to reduce r3batch response time, because it increases the load on the hosting machine. Higher values of variant_delay increase the response time and decrease the load. Allowed values are in the range from 0 to 3600.	10
variant_selection_screen	(Optional) Specifies the functional interface used to read report selection screens. Specify one of the following: Custom To communicate with the SAP system using the IBM® Workload Scheduler custom function module. SAP To communicate with the SAP system using the XBP 3.0 function module.	Custom
xbpversion	(Optional) The XBP version used on the target SAP system. Specify an integer value. This value overwrites the XBP version automatically determined during RFC login.	The XBP version determined by r3batch during RFC

Table 74. r3batch common configuration options (continued)

Option	Description	Default
	 Note: For details about XBP 3.0 and SAP NetWeaver 2004s with SP9, refer to the SAP Note 977462.	logon from the SAP system.

SAP option file example

Below is an example of an options file for SAP. It can help you determine your specific site requirements, although your options file might be different.

```
r3client=100
r3host=/H/tiraix64.lab.rome.abc.com
r3instance=00
r3password={aes}hyb/LQNyVzIf9oA8/xgY+CSqAuAh7+CvTT7HuDpdiu5YUAH0KJEHJtA=
r3sid=GS7
r3user=twstest
long_interval=120
r3auditlevel=3
short_interval=10
twsha_lang=EN
```

Encrypting SAP user passwords

When you add your entries in the options file from the Dynamic Workload Console, the password value is automatically encrypted before it is written in the file. If you modify the file with a text editor, run the **enigma** program to encrypt the password before writing it in the file, as follows:

```
enigma your_password
```

You can include the password on the command line or enter it in response to a prompt. The program returns an encrypted version that you can then enter in the options file.

Configuration options usage

The format of the configuration file is the following:

```
option1=value1
option2=value2
option3=value3
...
```

with no blanks before the option, after the value, or before or after the equals (=) character.

You can put all the common information, such as the `LJuser`, `IFuser`, `JobDef`, and `LogFileName` options in `r3batch.opts`, while you can put tailored data for the target SAP system of the extended agent or dynamic agent (for example, `SAP1`) in a local configuration file (for example, `XA1_r3batch.opts`).

You can put a local option in the global configuration file if you want to give the same option to all the `r3batch` instances. For example, if the SAP user name is the same in all your SAP systems, you can place the `r3user` option in the global file without duplicating that information in all the local configuration files.

A global option, such as `job_sem_proj`, only has effect in the global configuration file. If you put global options in a local file they have no effect.

`r3batch` reads the global configuration file first and then the local file. Every option (except the global options) contained in the local configuration file will override those in the global file. For example, if both the global and the local configuration files contain the `r3user` option, `r3batch` uses the one in the local file.

There are six mandatory options that `r3batch` requires:

- `r3client`
- `r3host`
- `r3instance`
- `r3password`
- `r3sid`
- `r3user`

You can put them all in the local configuration file or you can spread them between the global and the local files. For example, you could put `r3user` and `r3password` in the global configuration file and `r3sid`, `r3instance`, `r3client`, and `r3host` in the local one.

The `r3user` option is both local and mandatory. It must be put either in the global configuration file or the local configuration file.



Note: These configuration files are not created during the installation process.

Connecting to the SAP system

The Access method for SAP uses the SAP remote connection call (RFC) library to connect to the SAP system. The connection address for an SAP system is denoted as a `connection string`.

To successfully use the SAP R/3 access method, you must first install the SAP RFC libraries, as described in the System Requirements Document in the SAP R/3 Access Method Requirements section.

Connecting to a specific application server

To connect to a specific application server, you enter strings which, according to the complexity of the networks, might be more or less complex and contain passwords to secure the routers.

In its basic form, a connection string consists of the host name (or IP name) of an SAP application server; for example:

```
/H/hemlock.romlab.rome.abc.com
```

This type of connection string works only in very simple network environments, where all application servers can be reached directly through TCP/IP. Usually, modern companies use more complex network topologies, with a number of small subnetworks, which cannot communicate directly through TCP/IP. To support this type of network, the SAP RFC library supports SAP routers, which are placed at the boundaries of the subnetworks and act as proxies. For this type of network, the connection string is a composite of basic connection strings for each SAP router, followed by the basic connection string for the target SAP system; for example:

```
/H/litespeed/H/amsaix33/H/hemlock.romlab.rome.abc.com
```

Moreover, you can secure the SAP routers with passwords, to prevent unauthorized access. In this case, the basic connection string for the SAP router is followed by `/P/` and the password of the router.



Note: The SAP RFC library limits the length of the connection string to a maximum of 128 characters. This is a real limitation in complex network environments. As a workaround, it is recommended to use simple host names, without the domain name whenever possible. Alternatively, you can use the IP address, but this is not recommended, because it is difficult to maintain.

IBM Workload Scheduler for SAP supports both types of connection strings, basic and composite, where:

r3host

The connection string.

r3instance

The SAP instance number.

r3sid

The SAP system ID.

For example:

```
r3host=/H/litespeed/H/amsaix33/H/hemlock.romlab.rome.abc.com
r3instance=00
r3sid=TV1
```

Connecting to a logon group

About this task

In large SAP installations, the application servers are usually configured in logon groups for load balancing and fault-tolerance purposes. Load balancing is done by a dedicated server, called the `message server`. The message server automatically assigns users to the application server with the least workload of the logon group it controls.

Ensure that the file services (on UNIX: `/etc/services` on Windows: `C:\Windows\system32\drivers\etc\services`) contain an entry for the message server port of the SAP system to which `r3batch` connects. The entry has the following format:

```
sapmsSID 36system_number/tcp
```

where `SID` is the SAP system ID, and `system_number` is the SAP system number.

Set the following options to configure `r3batch` to connect to a logon group:

r3host

The hostname of the message server.

r3group

The name of the logon group.

r3sid

The SAP system ID.

For example:

```
r3host=pwdf0647.wdf.sap-ag.de
r3group=PUBLIC
r3sid=QB6
```

Configuring SAP event monitoring

This section provides detailed information about how to configure your system to monitor SAP events:

- [Prerequisite to defining event rules based on SAP events on page 389](#)
- [Monitoring SAP events on page 390](#)

Prerequisite to defining event rules based on SAP events

About this task

To be able to define event rules based on one or more SAP events, stop the IBM Workload Scheduler WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base and copy the following file (located on the system where you installed IBM Workload Scheduler:

On UNIX operating systems

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/SAPPlugin/SapMonitorPlugIn.jar
```

On Windows operating systems

```
TWA_home\methods\SAPPlugin\SapMonitorPlugIn.jar
```

to the following directory of the master domain manager and of its backup nodes:

On UNIX operating systems

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/eventPlugIn
```

On Windows operating systems

```
TWA_home\eventPlugIn
```

For the changes to take effect, stop and restart the IBM Workload Scheduler WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base. If the master domain manager is connected to the Dynamic Workload Console, stop and restart also the Dynamic Workload Console Application Server.

Monitoring SAP events

Whenever you define an event rule based on an SAP event in your IBM Workload Scheduler plan, that event is monitored by IBM Workload Scheduler. Monitoring SAP events is allowed only if you use XPB version 3.0, or later.

IBM Workload Scheduler monitors two types of SAP event:

Events defined by the SAP system

The events that are triggered automatically by system changes, for example when a new operation mode is activated. This type of event cannot be modified by the user.

Events defined by the user

The events that are triggered by ABAP or external processes, for example when a process triggers an SAP event to signal that external data has arrived and must be read by the SAP system. For details about how to trigger events by external processes, refer to [Raising an SAP event on page 414](#).

If you modify the `r3batch` option files, to make the changes effective you must stop and restart the extended agent monitoring processes with the following command. For UNIX only, this command must be entered by the owner of the IBM Workload Scheduler installation:

Command syntax

```
r3evman { start | stop }
```

Where:

start | stop

The action to perform:

start

Starts monitoring SAP events.

stop

Stops monitoring SAP events.

Defining SAP jobs

You must define some jobs to be able to run jobs on an SAP workstation from IBM Workload Scheduler.

To define and manage jobs on an SAP workstation from IBM Workload Scheduler, you must define the following:

Jobs in SAP that you want to run under IBM Workload Scheduler control

You can define these jobs using standard SAP tools or using the Dynamic Workload Console.

Jobs in IBM Workload Scheduler that correspond to the jobs in SAP

The IBM Workload Scheduler job definitions are used in scheduling and defining dependencies, but the SAP jobs are actually run.

You can define SAP job definitions from the Dynamic Workload Console and then have IBM Workload Scheduler launch the jobs in SAP R/3 using jobs defined on the following workstations that support the r3batch access method:

- An IBM Workload Scheduler extended agent workstation. A workstation that is hosted by a fault-tolerant agent or master workstation.
- A dynamic agent workstation.
- A dynamic pool.
- A z-centric workstation.

You can manage your SAP environment from both:

- An IBM Workload Scheduler distributed environment
- An IBM Z Workload Scheduler environment.

The SAP job definitions can reference the following types of SAP jobs:

- Standard R/3
- Business Warehouse Process Chains
- Business Warehouse InfoPackages

For information about Business Warehouse Process Chains and Business Warehouse InfoPackages, see [Using Business Information Warehouse on page 450](#).

Creating SAP Standard R/3 jobs from the Dynamic Workload Console

How to create and manage an SAP job that is associated to an IBM Workload Scheduler job that manages it.

About this task

You can easily create and manage Standard R/3 jobs on a remote SAP system entirely from the Dynamic Workload Console, and then continue to manage the remote SAP job from IBM Workload Scheduler.

The IBM Workload Scheduler job definition, available for both distributed and z/OS environments, maps to the newly created job on the SAP system. The SAP job can run on extended agent workstations, dynamic agent workstations, pools, dynamic pools, and workstations depending on the type of job definition you choose to create.



Note: Using this procedure to create a new IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent SAP Standard R/3 job, you cannot manage variants. To manage variants, use the SAP graphical user interface or use the **List Jobs on SAP** entry from the navigation tree of the Dynamic Workload Console.

To create a new SAP Standard R/3 job on a remote SAP system that maps to an IBM Workload Scheduler job definition, you have to associate your SAP Standard R/3 jobs to IBM Workload Scheduler jobs and you can do as follows:

- Creating an SAP job on a remote SAP system: [Creating an SAP job from the Dynamic Workload Console on page 392](#)
- Creating an IBM Workload Scheduler job and associating it to an SAP job: [Create an IBM Workload Scheduler job and associate it to an SAP job on page 392](#)

When performing operations that require a connection to a remote SAP system, you must configure the SAP connection data. The connection is made through an IBM Workload Scheduler workstation with the r3batch access method installed. Each workstation can have one or more options files that can be used to customize the behavior of the r3batch access method, except for extended agent workstations, where only one options file can be defined and therefore a selection is not required. For information about setting the SAP connection data, see [Setting the SAP data connection on page 394](#).

Creating an SAP job from the Dynamic Workload Console

How to create an SAP job definition on a remote SAP system from the Dynamic Workload Console.

About this task

You can also create and save SAP Standard R/3 jobs directly on the remote SAP system from IBM Workload Scheduler, as you would from the SAP graphical user interface. To create Standard R/3 jobs on the SAP system from the Dynamic Workload Console, perform the following steps:

1. From the **Design** menu, select **Manage Jobs on SAP**.
2. In the Job Filter Criteria, select **Standard Job** and specify the workstation name. This parameter is mandatory because it identifies the remote SAP system.
3. Specify the workstation where the SAP job runs. This is the workstation with the r3batch access method that communicates with the remote SAP system.
4. If the workstation is not an extended agent workstation, you must also specify the options file to be used.
5. Click **Display** to view a list of the Standard R/3 jobs for the specified workstation.
6. Click **New** to create a new Standard R/3 job and enter the required information.
7. Click **Save** to create the job on the SAP system.

What to do next

After creating the new SAP job on the SAP from the Dynamic Workload Console, you must reference it in an IBM Workload Scheduler SAP Standard R/3 job if you want to manage the job from within IBM Workload Scheduler as explained in [Create an IBM Workload Scheduler job and associate it to an SAP job on page 392](#).

Create an IBM Workload Scheduler job and associate it to an SAP job

Create an IBM Workload Scheduler job definition and map it to a new or existing SAP job to manage it.

About this task

To create a new IBM Workload Scheduler job and then associate it to a new SAP job, follow these steps:

1. From the **Design** menu, click Workload Designer page.
2. Select an engine. The Workload Designer window is displayed.

3. Click **Create New**, select **Job definition** and in the **ERP** category choose:

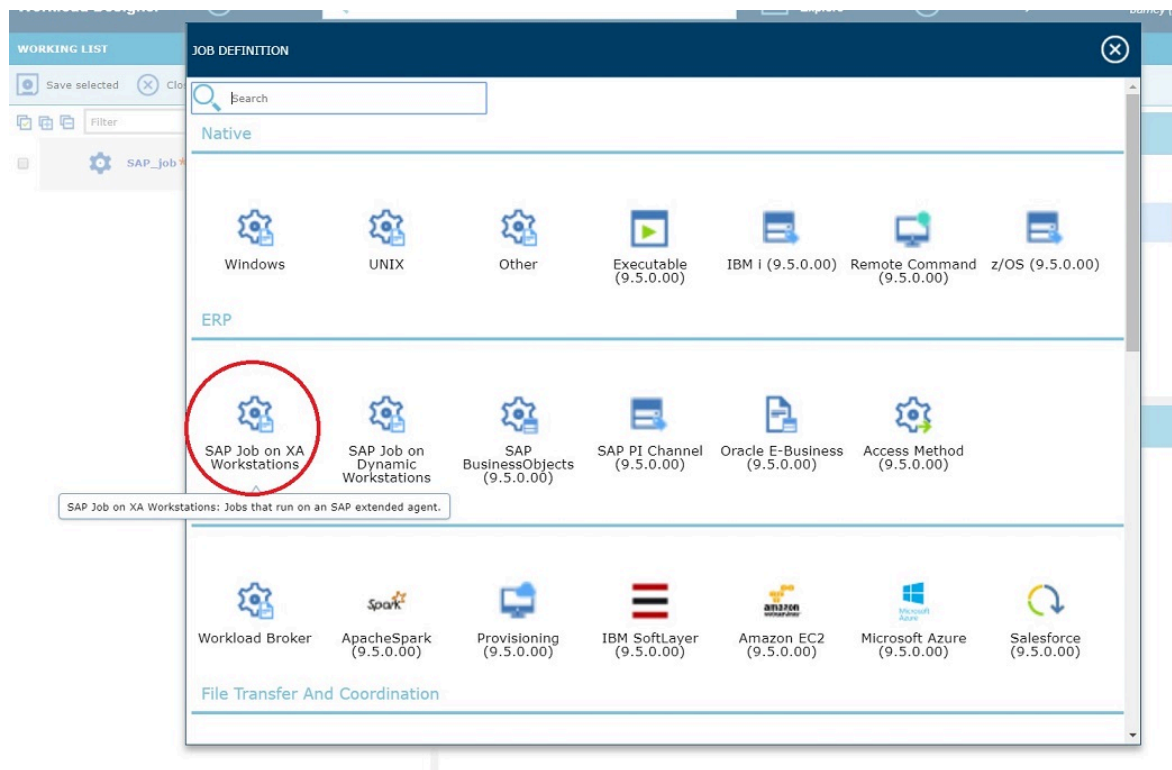
- **Distributed**

SAP Job on Dynamic Workstations

For distributed systems only. This job definition can run on dynamic agent workstations, dynamic pools, and IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent workstations.

SAP Job on XA Workstations

This job definition can run on extended agent workstations, which are workstations hosted by fault-tolerant agents or master workstations.



- **z/OS** **SAP**

SAP

For z/OS systems only. This job definition references an existing job on the SAP system and can run on dynamic agent workstations, dynamic pools, and IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent.

4. In the Properties pane, specify the properties for the SAP job definition you are creating using the tabs available. The tabs for each type of SAP job definition are similar, but there are some differences depending on the type of engine you selected and the type of workstation on which the job runs. For more detailed information about the UI elements on each tab, see the Dynamic Workload Console online help.
5. In the **Task** section, specify the IBM Workload Scheduler job that you want to associate to the SAP job.
6. Click **Save** to create the SAP job definition in the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

Setting the SAP data connection

You can configure a default connection to be used when performing actions that access the remote SAP system.

About this task

There are several operations you can perform which require connection details to establish a link to a remote SAP system. The connection is made through an IBM Workload Scheduler workstation with the r3batch access method installed used to communicate with the SAP system. Each workstation can have one or more options files that can be used to customize the behavior of the r3batch access method, except for extended agent workstations, where only one options file can be defined and therefore a selection is not required.

For example, you can use **Workload Designer** to create IBM Workload Scheduler job definitions that reference remote SAP jobs, or you can create a SAP job on a remote SAP system. You can also search for SAP jobs on the remote system from the **Working List** and **Quick Open** panes.

To configure a default SAP data connection to be used when creating items in the Workload Designer that require a SAP connection, perform the following steps:

1. From the **Design** menu, select **Manage SAP Criteria Profile**.
2. Select an engine.
3. In **Workstation**, enter the name of the workstation that communicates with the SAP system. If you do not know the name of the workstation, click the lookup icon and specify a search criteria to find the workstation.
4. In **Options file**, enter the file name of the options file or click the lookup icon to search for options files that reside on the specified workstation and select one.
5. Click **Go** to establish the connection.

Results

A default SAP connection is now configured. It will be used each time an item that requires access to a SAP system is defined.

Managing SAP variants using the Dynamic Workload Console

Managing variants using the Dynamic Workload Console.

About this task

This section describes how to manage variants using the Dynamic Workload Console:

1. Click **Design > SAP > Manage Jobs on SAP** from the portfolio.
2. Specify an engine connection.
3. In **Workstation name**, type the name of the workstation where the SAP job runs. This is the workstation with the r3batch access method that communicates with the remote SAP system. If you do not know the name of the workstation, click (...) browse to enter your filter criteria and click **Search**. If you enter a string representing part of the workstation name, it must be followed by the asterisk (*) wildcard character. Both the question mark (?) and asterisk (*) are supported as wildcards. You can also simply use the asterisk wildcard character (*) to display all workstations. Optionally, specify any of the other search criteria available and click **Search**.

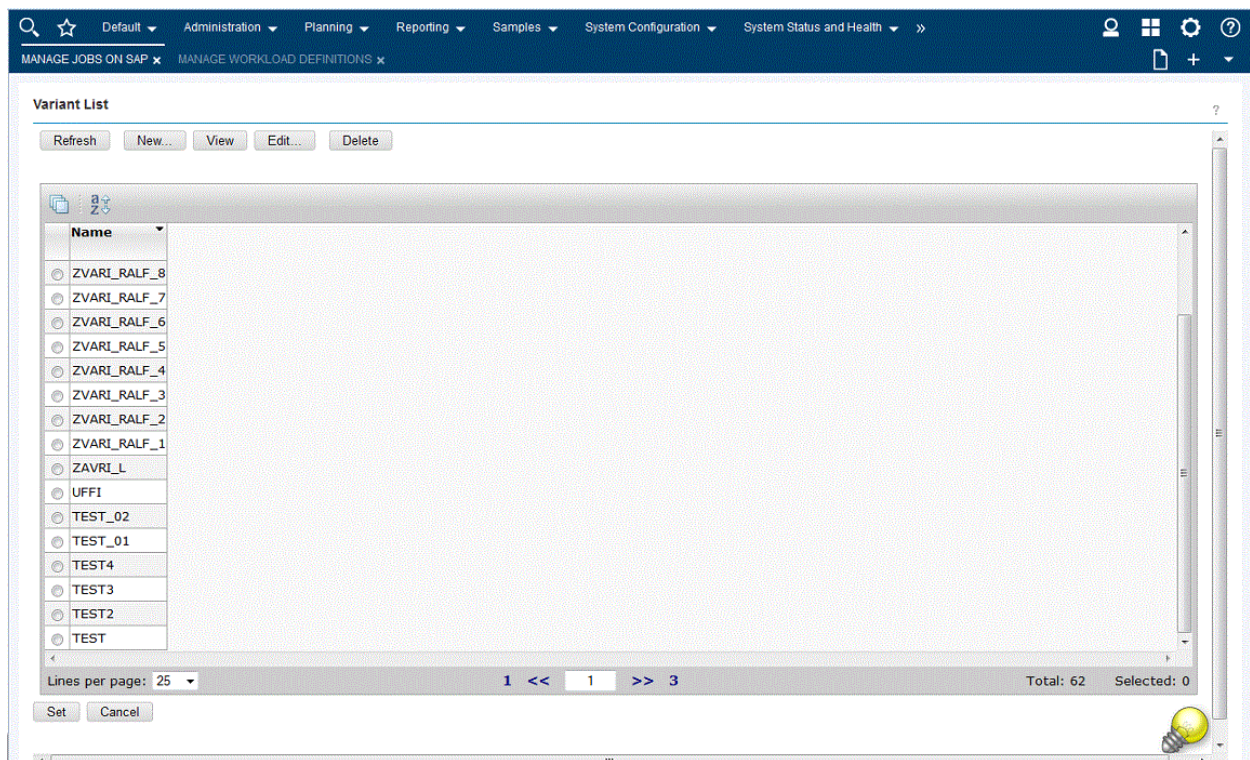
Result

From the results displayed, select the workstation and click **OK**.

4. In **Options file**, specify an options file that resides on the specified workstation. Each workstation can have one or more options files that can be used to customize the behavior of the r3batch access method, except for extended agent workstations, where only one options file can exist and therefore does not need to be specified. For the workstation specified, enter the file name of the options file or click the browse (...) button to search for options files that reside on the specified workstation and select one.
5. Click **Display**. The list of available jobs on the remote SAP system for the specified engine is displayed.
6. A list of SAP jobs on the remote SAP system are displayed.
7. Select a SAP job from the list and click **Edit**.
8. On the **SAP Steps** page, select a program of type ABAP from the list and click **Edit**. The properties for the ABAP program are displayed.
9. In the **Variant** field, click the ellipsis (...) icon to display the Variant List panel. This panel lists all the variants associated with the ABAP specified in the **Name** field.

Result

Figure 13. The Variant List panel



10. From this panel, you can take the following actions:

Refresh

To refresh the content of the variant list with the information contained in the SAP database.

New

To create a new variant as described in [Creating or editing a variant on page 396](#).

View

To display information on an existing variant.

Edit

To modify information on an existing variant as described in [Creating or editing a variant on page 396](#).

Delete

To delete a variant.

Set

To associate the value chosen from the list to the ABAP.

Creating or editing a variant

About this task

You can create or edit a variant from the **Variant List** panel. To display the **Variant List** panel, see [Managing SAP variants using the Dynamic Workload Console on page 394](#).

1. In the Variant List panel, click **New** or **Edit**. The Variant Information page is displayed by default. If you are editing an existing variant, the fields and selections are not empty.

Figure 14. The Variant Information page of the Variant List panel

The screenshot shows the 'Variant Information' page within the 'Manage Jobs on SAP' panel. The page has a dark blue header with navigation tabs: 'MANAGE JOBS ON SAP' (active) and 'MANAGE WORKLOAD DEFINITIONS'. Below the header, the page is divided into sections: 'Variant Information', 'Variant', 'Properties', and 'Counter'. The 'Variant' section contains fields for '*Variant Name' (ZVARI_RALF_8), '*Description' (ZVARI_RALF_8), 'ABAP Name' (ZVARI), 'User Name' (TWSTEST4), 'Client' (001), and 'Day' (02.04.2012). The 'Properties' section has checkboxes for 'Background', 'Protected', 'Invisible', and 'Extended'. The 'Counter' section has a 'Counter' button. At the bottom, there are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

2. The panel consists of the following pages:

- Variant Information:
 - a. Enter or modify the variant name and description.
 - b. Optionally, check a **Properties** box:

Background

The variant can only be used in background processing.

Protected

The variant is protected against being changed by other users.

Invisible

The variant will not be displayed in the F4 value list on the SAP GUI. Not available for the BC-XBP 3.0 interface.

Extended

Allows for the use of placeholders and counters as variant values. If you check this box, **Counter** becomes available.

For extended variants, you can use placeholders and counters that eliminate the error-prone task of adjusting values and therefore minimize the effort for variant maintenance. Placeholders and counters are preprocessed by IBM Workload Scheduler and the values are automatically adjusted when the job is launched. Supported placeholders and counters are:

Table 75. Placeholders and counters for extended variants

Symbol	Meaning	Syntax
\$S	Timestamp	YYYYMMDDHHMM
\$D	Day of the month	DD
\$_D	Date	YYYYMMDD
\$M	Month	MM
\$Y	Year	YY
\$_Y	Year	YYYY
\$H	Hour	HH
\$T	Minute	MM
\$_T	Time	HHMMSS
\$Nx	Counters	10 counters: \$N0 - \$N9 (\$N = \$N0)

Symbol	Meaning	Syntax
<code>\$(date expression)</code>	Date expression	Like the <code>datecalc</code> command. Enclosed within <code>\$(</code> and <code>)</code> .
<code>\$(arithmetic expression)</code>	Arithmetic expression	Arithmetic expressions allowing for <code>+</code> , <code>-</code> , <code>*</code> , and <code>/</code> operations between integers and counters.

◦ Variant Values:

In the Variant Values page, the fields and values are dynamically built through `r3batch` depending on the characteristics of the variant or step and are identical to the ones in the equivalent SAP panel.

Editing a standard SAP job

Before you begin

You can edit SAP Standard R/3 jobs in two different ways in IBM Workload Scheduler.

- The Dynamic Workload Console contains the **Manage Jobs on SAP** entry in the portfolio for creating and editing SAP Standard R/3 jobs on remote SAP systems.
- From the Workload Designer you can create and edit remote SAP jobs. See [Creating SAP Standard R/3 jobs from the Dynamic Workload Console on page 391](#).

About this task

To edit a SAP standard R/3 job, follow these steps:

1. Click **Design > SAP > Manage Jobs on SAP**.
2. Select the name of the engine connection from which you want to work with SAP jobs.
3. Leave the default setting in the **SAP Job Type** section to **Standard R/3 Job**.
4. In **Workstation name**, type the name of the workstation where the SAP job runs. This is the workstation with the `r3batch` access method that communicates with the remote SAP system. If you do not know the name of the workstation, click (...) browse to enter your filter criteria and click **Search**. If you enter a string representing part of the workstation name, it must be followed by the asterisk (*) wildcard character. Both the question mark (?) and asterisk (*) are supported as wildcards. You can also simply use the asterisk wildcard character (*) to display all workstations. Optionally, specify any of the other search criteria available and click **Search**.

Result

From the results displayed, select the workstation and click **OK**.

5. In **Options file**, specify an options file that resides on the specified workstation. Each workstation can have one or more options files that can be used to customize the behavior of the `r3batch` access method, except for extended agent workstations, where only one options file can exist and therefore does not need to be specified. For the workstation specified, enter the file name of the options file or click the browse (...) button to search for options files that reside on the specified workstation and select one.
6. Click **Display**. The list of available jobs on the remote SAP system for the specified engine is displayed.

7. Select the job you want to modify in the list and click **Edit**. The **List Jobs on SAP** panel is displayed.
8. Edit the properties on the **R/3 Job Definition** and **R/3 Steps** pages as appropriate. Refer to the contextual online help available for more detailed information about the UI elements available on each page.

**Note:**

- On the **R/3 Job Definition** page, when you modify the **Job Class**, **Target Host**, or **Server Group** and click **OK**, the **Job ID** is maintained and remains synchronized with the one associated to the current job. Instead, when you modify the **Job Name** and click **OK**, the **Job ID** is automatically replaced with the one associated to the new job name.
- On the **R/3 Steps** page, for each step you modify, the new step information is saved in the SAP database. For each step you add or delete, the **Job ID** is maintained and remains synchronized with the one associated to the modified step.

9. Click **OK** to save your changes.

Task string to define SAP jobs

This section describes the task string parameters that define and control the running of SAP jobs. You can specify them in the following places when you define their associated IBM Workload Scheduler jobs:

- In the **SAP Command Line** section of the Task page of the Submit Ad Hoc Jobs action from the Dynamic Workload Console.
- In the **SAP Command Line** field of the More Options page of the SAP job definition, if you use the Dynamic Workload Console and selected a **SAP** job definition.
- As arguments of the `scriptname` keyword in the job definition statement, if you use the IBM Workload Scheduler command line.
- As arguments of the `JOBCMD` keyword in the `JOBREC` statement in the `SCRIPTLIB` of IBM Z Workload Scheduler, if you are scheduling in an end-to-end environment. The following is an example of a `JOBREC` statement:

```
JOBREC
  JOBCMD('/-job job_name -user user_name -i job_ID -c class_value')
  JOBUSR(TWS_user_name)
```

where:

class_value

The priority with which the job runs in the SAP system. For details, see [Table 76: Task string parameters for SAP jobs on page 400](#).

job_ID

The unique SAP job ID. For details, see [Table 76: Task string parameters for SAP jobs on page 400](#).

job_name

The name of the SAP job to run. For details, see [Table 76: Task string parameters for SAP jobs on page 400](#).

user_name

The SAP user who owns the target job. For details, see [Table 76: Task string parameters for SAP jobs on page 400](#).

TWS_user_name

The IBM Z Workload Scheduler user who runs the `r3batch` access method from the end-to-end scheduling environment.

The string syntax is the following:

Job definition syntax

```
-jobjob_name[{ -i | -id}job_ID][ -useruser_name][[{ -host | -ts}host_name][ -sgserver_group]
[ -clientsource_client][ -exec_clienttarget_client][ -rfc_clientrfc_logon_client][ -cclass_value][
-bdc_job_status_failed bdc_processing][[{ -nobdc | -nobdcwait}][ -bapi_sync_level{high | medium | low}][
-sstarting_step_number][ -s Step_number attribute_name [=attribute_value]][ -vStep_number variant_name]
[ -vtxtStep_number variant_description][ -vparStep_number name=variant_value][ -vselStep_number name={i |
e} #operation#lowest [#highest]][ -vtemp Step_number][ -recipientR/3_login_name][ -rectyperecipient_type]
[ -flag {reccp | recbl}][ -flag recex][ -flag recnf][ -flag {im | immed}][ -flag {enable_applinfo |
disable_applinfo}][ -flag {enable_appl_rc | disable_appl_rc}][ -flag {enable_joblog | disable_joblog}][
-flag {enable_job_interceptable | disable_job_interceptable}][ -flag {enable_spoollist | disable_spoollist}][
-flagpc_launch][[{ -debug}][ -tracelvl{1 | 2 | 3}][[{ -rfctrace}]
```

Table 76: Task string parameters for SAP jobs on page 400 describes the parameters for the task string to define SAP jobs.



Note:

- 1. You can specify both `-i` or `-id` and `-user` in the same job definition, but the user name is ignored.
- 2. When you specify the job ID, both `-client` and `-exec_client` are ignored because the ID is unique for the entire SAP system.
- 3. Typically, the `-debug` and `-trace` options are for debugging the extended agent and should not be used in standard production.

Table 76. Task string parameters for SAP jobs

Section	Parameters	Description	GUI Sup port
JOB	-job job_name	The name of the job to run. This parameter is mandatory.	✓

Table 76. Task string parameters for SAP jobs

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description	GUI Support
	-i <i>job_ID</i> -id <i>job_ID</i>	The unique SAP job ID. Specify this parameter if you are submitting a job that refers to a predefined job template stored in the SAP database for which you want to change a parameter.	✓
	-user <i>user_name</i>	The SAP user who owns the target job. Use this parameter when the target SAP system has only one job with the specified name for the specified user. This parameter has no effect if a job ID is specified in the job definition.	✓
	-host <i>host_name</i> -ts <i>host_name</i>	The name of the SAP workstation where the job is to be run. <i>host_name</i> has the format <i>hostname_SAPsystemname_SAPsystemnumber</i> . For example, the name of a host might be <i>amss80a0_gs7_90</i> These parameters are mutually exclusive with -sg.	✓
	-sg <i>server_group</i>	The name of the SAP server group where the job is to be run. Use this parameter to run the job on an application server that belongs to the group. The server group must exist on the SAP system, otherwise an error code is returned and the job is not launched. This parameter is case-sensitive and can be up to 20 characters. It is mutually exclusive with -host and -ts.	✓
JOB	-client <i>source_client</i>	The number that identifies the SAP client where the job definition is to be found, regardless of the client number defined by the <code>r3client</code> keyword in the options file. This parameter has no effect if a job ID is specified in the job definition.	
	-exec_client <i>target_client</i>	The number that identifies the SAP client where the job is to be run, regardless of the client number defined by the <code>r3client</code> keyword in the options file. This parameter has no effect if a job ID is specified in the job definition.	

Table 76. Task string parameters for SAP jobs

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description	GUI Support
	-rfc_client <i>rfc_logon_client</i>	The number that identifies the SAP client to be used for RFC logon. This value overwrites the value specified by the r3client keyword in the corresponding r3batch options file.	
	-c <i>class_value</i>	The priority with which the job runs in the SAP system. Possible values are: A High priority B Medium priority C Low priority. This is the default value.	✓
	-bdc_job_status_failed <i>bdc_processing</i>	How IBM Workload Scheduler sets the completion status of a job running BDC sessions, according to a possible BDC processing failure. The allowed values are: n If at least <i>n</i> BDC sessions failed (where <i>n</i> is an integer greater than 0), IBM Workload Scheduler sets the job completion status as failed. all If all the BDC sessions failed, IBM Workload Scheduler sets the job completion status as failed. ignore When all the BDC sessions complete, regardless of their status, IBM Workload Scheduler sets the job completion status as successful. This is the default. If -nobdc or -nobdcwait is set, this option is ignored.	✓

Table 76. Task string parameters for SAP jobs

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description	GUI Support
	-nobdc -nobdcwait	Disables the BDC Wait option (enabled by default) to have the job considered as completed even if not all its BDC sessions have ended.	✓
	-bapi_sync_level	Specifies the synchronization level between the SAP function modules BAPI_XBP_JOB_COPY and BAPI_XBP_JOB_START_ASAP. Allowed values are: high All RFC calls between BAPI_XBP_JOB_START_ASAP and BAPI_XBP_JOB_COPY are synchronized. This is the default. medium The RFC calls to BAPI_XBP_JOB_START_ASAP are synchronized. low The RFC calls are not synchronized.	
STEP	-s <i>starting_step_number</i>	The number of the starting step.	✓
	-sStep_number <i>attribute_name=attribute_value</i>	The step number and its attributes, where: step_number The number of the step being defined. Each step is identified by a sequential number (1, 2, 3, ...n) using the <i>step number</i> attribute_name The name of the attribute. attribute_value The value of the attribute. It is optional for some attributes. Attributes can be defined in any order, but cannot be repeated for the same step. Attribute validation is performed before the job is created in the SAP system. If	✓

Table 76. Task string parameters for SAP jobs

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description	GUI Support
		the validation fails, the IBM Workload Scheduler job goes into the ABEND state. For a detailed description of each attribute and its value, see Defining attributes for ABAP steps on page 428 and Defining attributes for external programs and external commands steps on page 431. For example, the following step (step 8) is an ABAP module running the report MYPGM and has two attributes, only one of which has a value. <pre>-s8 type=A -s8 program=MYPGM -s8 pr_cover="My title" -s8 pr_immed</pre>	
VARIANT	-vstep_number name	The variant name for the specified step number.	✓
	-vtxtstep_number variant_description	The textual description of the variant, in the IBM Workload Scheduler logon language (customizable with the <code>TWSXA_LANG</code> option of <code>r3batch</code>). The maximum length is 30 characters.	✓
	-vparstep_number name=value	For ABAP modules only. The value for a variant parameter for the specified step number. This parameter is mandatory when creating a new variant. See Defining attributes for ABAP steps on page 428 for a complete list of the supported attributes for ABAP steps.	✓
	-vselstep_number name=sign#operation#lowest[#highest]	For ABAP modules only. The value for a variant selection option for the specified step number. sign Sign of the operation. Possible values are: I Include E Exclude operation Possible values are:	✓

Table 76. Task string parameters for SAP jobs

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description	GUI Support
	EQ	Equals	
	NE	Not equal to	
	BT	Between	
	NB	Not between	
	LT	Less than	
	LE	Less than or equal to	
	GT	Greater than	
	GE	Greater than or equal to	
	CP	Contains pattern	
	NP	Does not contain pattern	
	lowest	Low value of the selection. You can use up to 45 characters.	
	highest	High value of the selection. You can use up to 45 characters. This attribute is optional.	

For a complete list of the supported attributes for ABAP steps, see [Defining attributes for ABAP steps on page 428](#).

Table 76. Task string parameters for SAP jobs

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description	GUI Support
	-vtempstep_number	For ABAP modules only. Specifies to assign a temporary variant to the specified step number. Temporary variants are created ad-hoc by the SAP system and assigned to the job instance when it is run. The lifecycle of the temporary variant is determined by the SAP system. If the job is deleted by SAP, then the temporary variant is deleted. See Examples: Dynamically defining and updating SAP jobs on page 433 to refer to examples that demonstrate the behavior of temporary variants.	
SPOOL	-recipient name	The login name of an SAP user.	
	-flag {reccp recbl}	Specifies how the spool list is sent to the recipient. Possible values are: reccp The spool list is sent as a copy. recbl The spool list is sent as a blind copy.	
	-flag recex	Specifies that the spool list is sent as an express message to the recipient.	
	-flag recnf	Specifies that the recipient is not allowed to forward the spool list.	
	-rectype type	Specifies the recipient type. Possible values are: ' ' SAP user (default value) 'B' SAP user 'C' Shared distribution list 'D' X.500 address	

Table 76. Task string parameters for SAP jobs

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description	GUI Support
		'G'	
		Organization object/ID	
		'H'	
		Organization unit	
		'I'	
		SAP object	
		'L'	
		Telex number	
		'O'	
		SAPoffice user	
		'P'	
		Private distribution list	
		'R'	
		SAP user in another SAP system	
		'U'	
		Internet address	
		'1'	
		Other recipient type	
FLAGS	-flag im -flag immed	Specifies to launch job immediately, meaning that if there are no spare work processes, the job fails.	✓
	-flag enable_applinfo -flag disable_applinfo	Enables or disables the retrieval and appending of the SAP application log to the stdlist of IBM Workload Scheduler.	✓
	-flag enable_appl_rc -flag disable_appl_rc	Enables or disables the mapping of the SAP application return code to the IBM Workload Scheduler return code. The SAP application return code is mapped only if -flag enable_applinfo is set and the application log contains the application return code.	

Table 76. Task string parameters for SAP jobs

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description	GUI Support
	-flag enable_joblog -flag disable_joblog	Enables or disables retrieval of the joblog.	✓
	-flag enable_job_interceptable -flag disable_job_interceptable	Enables or disables the job launched by r3batch to be intercepted by SAP. If enabled, when r3batch launches a job and the SAP job interception feature is enabled, the job can be intercepted if it matches previously defined criteria. If disabled, the job launched by r3batch cannot be intercepted by SAP. This setting overwrites the setting in the common options file.	✓
	-flag enable_spoollist -flag disable_spoollist	Enables or disables retrieval of the spool lists of the job.	✓
-flag pc_launch	Specifies to launch child jobs that are in scheduled state. ON The product launches child jobs that are in scheduled state. OFF The product does not launch child jobs that are in scheduled state. This is the default value.  Note: You can use this option only if you activated the parent-child feature on the SAP system. On the XBP 2.0 (or later)SAP system you can activate this feature using the INITXBP2 ABAP report		
TRACING	-debug	Enables maximum trace level.	✓

Table 76. Task string parameters for SAP jobs

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description	GUI Support
	-tracelvl 1 2 3	Specifies the trace setting for the job. Possible values are: 1 Only error messages are written in the trace file. This is the default. 2 Informational messages and warnings are also written in the trace file. 3 A most verbose debug output is written in the trace file. For detailed information, refer to Configuring the tracing utility on page 344 . Enables RFC trace.	✓
	-rfctrace		
	-trace		

The following is an example for an SAP job named `BVTTEST` with ID `03102401` and user `myuser`:

```
-job BVTTEST -i 03102401 -user myuser -debug
```

Managing SAP jobs

This section describes how to manage SAP jobs.

Displaying details about a standard SAP job

About this task

Perform the following steps to display details for standard jobs on specific workstations.

For information about how to display details about a job that submits an SAP process chain, refer to [Displaying details about a process chain job on page 457](#).

1. Click **Design > SAP > Manage Jobs on SAP**.
2. In **Engine name**, select the name of the IBM Workload Scheduler engine connection from which you want to view SAP job details.

3. In **Workstation name**, type the name of the workstation where the SAP job runs. This is the workstation with the r3batch access method that communicates with the remote SAP system. If you do not know the name of the workstation, click (...) browse to enter your filter criteria and click **Search**. If you enter a string representing part of the workstation name, it must be followed by the asterisk (*) wildcard character. Both the question mark (?) and asterisk (*) are supported as wildcards. You can also simply use the asterisk wildcard character (*) to display all workstations. Optionally, specify any of the other search criteria available and click **Search**.

Result

From the results displayed, select the workstation and click **OK**.

4. In **Options file**, specify an options file that resides on the specified workstation. Each workstation can have one or more options files that can be used to customize the behavior of the r3batch access method, except for extended agent workstations, where only one options file can exist and therefore does not need to be specified. For the workstation specified, enter the file name of the options file or click the browse (...) button to search for options files that reside on the specified workstation and select one.
5. Click **Display**. The list of available jobs for the specified engine is displayed.
6. Select the job for which you want to display the details and click **Details**. The List Jobs on SAP panel is displayed containing job and time information.
7. When you have finished viewing the details for the job, click **OK** to return to the list of SAP jobs on the workstation specified.

Verifying the status of a standard SAP job

About this task

To verify the status of a standard SAP job, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Design > SAP > Manage Jobs on SAP**.
2. In **Engine name**, select the name of the IBM Workload Scheduler engine connection from which you want to verify the status of an SAP job.
3. In **Workstation name**, type the name of the workstation where the SAP job runs. This is the workstation with the r3batch access method that communicates with the remote SAP system. If you do not know the name of the workstation, click (...) browse to enter your filter criteria and click **Search**. If you enter a string representing part of the workstation name, it must be followed by the asterisk (*) wildcard character. Both the question mark (?) and asterisk (*) are supported as wildcards. You can also simply use the asterisk wildcard character (*) to display all workstations. Optionally, specify any of the other search criteria available and click **Search**.

Result

From the results displayed, select the workstation and click **OK**.

4. In **Options file**, specify an options file that resides on the specified workstation. Each workstation can have one or more options files that can be used to customize the behavior of the r3batch access method, except for extended agent workstations, where only one options file can exist and therefore does not need to be specified. For the workstation specified, enter the file name of the options file or click the browse (...) button to search for options files that reside on the specified workstation and select one.
5. Click **Display**. The list of available jobs for the specified engine is displayed.

6. Select the job for which you want to verify the status and click **Status**. The current status for the SAP job is displayed, as well as the database name where the job is installed.
7. When you have finished verifying the status for the job, click **OK** to return to the list of SAP jobs on the workstation specified.

Deleting a standard SAP job from the SAP database

About this task

To delete a standard SAP job from the SAP database, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Design > SAP > Manage Jobs on SAP**.
2. In **Engine name**, select the name of the IBM Workload Scheduler engine connection from which you want to delete the SAP job.
3. In **Workstation name**, type the name of the workstation where the SAP job runs. This is the workstation with the r3batch access method that communicates with the remote SAP system. If you do not know the name of the workstation, click (...) browse to enter your filter criteria and click **Search**. If you enter a string representing part of the workstation name, it must be followed by the asterisk (*) wildcard character. Both the question mark (?) and asterisk (*) are supported as wildcards. You can also simply use the asterisk wildcard character (*) to display all workstations. Optionally, specify any of the other search criteria available and click **Search**.

Result

From the results displayed, select the workstation and click **OK**.

4. In **Options file**, specify an options file that resides on the specified workstation. Each workstation can have one or more options files that can be used to customize the behavior of the r3batch access method, except for extended agent workstations, where only one options file can exist and therefore does not need to be specified. For the workstation specified, enter the file name of the options file or click the browse (...) button to search for options files that reside on the specified workstation and select one.
5. Click **Display**. The list of available jobs for the specified engine is displayed.
6. Select the job or jobs you want to delete and click **Delete**. A confirmation message prompts you to confirm the delete action.
7. When the delete action is complete, click **OK** to return to the list of SAP jobs on the workstation specified.

Balancing SAP workload using server groups

SAP jobs run on application servers that host work processes of type *batch*. Critical batch jobs are run in specific time frames, on specific application servers. With SAP Basis version 6.10 and later, application servers can be assigned to server groups. With IBM Workload Scheduler you can assign a server group to a job. In this way, when a job is launched, the SAP system runs it on an application server that belongs to that group, balancing the workload among the various application servers in the group.

If the application servers defined in a group are modified in the SAP system, the job defined as belonging to that server group is not affected and does not need to be modified. The batch execution targets are reorganized in the SAP system without having to change job definitions in IBM Workload Scheduler.

This function is supported with the following versions of SAP:

- SAP Basis 6.10, with Service Pack 40
- SAP Basis 6.20, with Service Pack 41
- SAP Basis 6.40, with Service Pack 04
- SAP Basis 7.00, and later

Mapping between IBM Workload Scheduler and SAP job states

When an SAP job is launched by IBM Workload Scheduler, you can monitor its progress. The status transitions in IBM Workload Scheduler (internal status) and the corresponding SAP status are listed in [Table 77: Status transitions in IBM Workload Scheduler \(internal status\) and the corresponding SAP R/3 status on page 412](#).

Table 77. Status transitions in IBM Workload Scheduler (internal status) and the corresponding SAP R/3 status

IBM Workload Scheduler Job State	SAP Job State
INTRO	Not Available
WAIT	Ready, Release
EXEC	Active
SUCC	Finished
ABEND	Canceled

The INTRO state indicates that IBM Workload Scheduler is in the process of introducing the job, but in SAP, the job has not yet entered the ready state. Because it takes some time to get a job queued and into the ready column, the INTRO state might last a few minutes if the SAP system is particularly busy.

Even if a job is finished in SAP, IBM Workload Scheduler keeps it in the EXEC state if its BDC sessions are not complete and you have not selected the **Disable BDC Wait** option. For details about this option, see [Using the BDC Wait option on page 439](#).

Managing spools

Browse spool lists on request without having to download the entire spool which can occupy significant space on the file system.

Spool lists can be very large so rather than download them as part of a job run, you can request to browse the spool list, chunks at a time, even if you have disabled the option, `retrieve_spoollist`, to append the spool list to the IBM Workload Scheduler joblog.

From the Dynamic Workload Console, you can list the spool data available for SAP Standard R/3 jobs that have run. Each spool is identified by the following information:

- The spool number.
- The related step number.

- The name of the spool request.
- The title of the spool request.
- The total number of pages for the spool information.
- The user who executed the SAP job related to the spool.
- The date the spool was created based on the Coordinated Universal Time (UTC) time standard.
- The client for which the spool was created.

Browsing spool data

You can list the spool data available for SAP Standard R/3 jobs that have run and browse the contents of the spool.

About this task

To browse spool data for a specific job that has run:

1. From the **Monitoring and Reporting** menu, click **Orchestration Monitor**.
2. In the **Monitor Workload** input fields enter the engine name, the plan, and any filtering data that helps you filter the selection of jobs (you can also select **Edit** for a guided selection of filtering criteria) and select **Run**.
3. In the output table select an SAP Standard R/3 job and click **More Actions > Show Spool List**. The list of spool data available for the selected job is displayed.
4. Select a spool and click **Spool**.

Results

By default, the first ten pages of the spool are made available. You can change this default by editing the number of pages specified in **Pages for screen**. Use the page functions to jump to a specific page number, jump to the last page of the spool, jump to the first page of the spool, or move forward or back through the number of pages indicated by **Pages for screen**.

Killing an SAP job instance

About this task

This section describes how to kill an IBM Workload Scheduler job that submits either a standard SAP job or an SAP process chain.

To kill an SAP job instance, do the following:

The IBM Workload Scheduler job status is set to ABEND. The SAP job or process chain is set to canceled in the SAP system.



Note: If you kill a process chain job, the SAP system stops as soon as the process that is currently running completes.

1. Use the **Monitor Workload** query of the Dynamic Workload Console to display a list of defined job instances containing the job you want to kill. From the **Monitoring and Reporting** menu, click **Orchestration Monitor**.
2. In the **Monitor Workload** input fields enter the engine name, the plan, and any filtering data that helps you filter the selection of jobs (you can also select **Edit** for a guided selection of filtering criteria) and select **Run**.
3. The **Monitor Jobs** panel is displayed. Select the job instance you want to kill and click **More Actions > Kill**.

Raising an SAP event

About this task

You can raise events on XBP 2.0 (or later) SAP jobs in the IBM Workload Scheduler database in one of the following ways:

Using the Monitor Workload in the Dynamic Workload Console

Perform the following steps:

1. On the SAP system, create a job that has as start condition a SAP event. When you create this job, its status is released.
2. Check that this job was not intercepted by the interception function.
3. Log in to the Dynamic Workload Console.
4. From the **Monitoring and Reporting** menu, click **Orchestration Monitor**.
5. In the Monitor Workload window select the engine, enter **Workstation** in the Object Type field, and select the plan to display the list of workstations you want to monitor. Click **Run**.

A list of workstations is displayed.

6. Select a workstation that has been defined to connect to a remote SAP system.
7. From the toolbar, select **More Actions > Raise Event**. The Raise Event panel opens.

Figure 16. The Raise Event panel

8. The panel consists of the following:

Event ID

The identifier of the event that is to be raised.

Event Parameter

The parameter of the event that is to be raised.

9. Click **OK**. The event is raised.

Creating a job that launches a Windows™ or UNIX™ command that raises an event

Perform the following steps:

1. From the Design menu, click Workload Designer page.
2. Specify an engine name, either distributed or z/OS. The Workload Designer window opens. Job types and characteristics vary depending on whether you select a distributed or a z/OS engine.
3. Click **Create new** and select **Job definition**.
4. Select the **Native** category and then either **Windows** or **UNIX** job.
5. Use the **General** section to provide general information about the new job definition.
6. Use the **Task** section to provide task information for the job.
7. In the **Task** section, select **Command** and in the command string type the following command that raises the event:

```
<data_dir>/methods/r3event -c workstation_name -u user_name
-e SAP_event_ID -p parameter
```

where:

workstation_name

The name of the workstation where the SAP job is defined.

user_name

The name of the SAP user with which the access method connects to the SAP system.
This is the name specified in the r3user option.

SAP_event_ID

The identifier of the event.

parameter

The parameter defined for the event.

8. Save the job definition.

What to do next

See [Defining conditions and criteria on page 435](#) for information about how to define criteria that manages which raised events to log.

Rerunning a standard SAP job

You can rerun a standard SAP job from the start, or from a specific numeric step of the SAP instruction.

About this task

To rerun a standard SAP job, you can use one of the following user interfaces:

conman

For details, refer to the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*.

Dynamic Workload Console

Dynamic Workload Console

For details about how to rerun a job that submits an SAP process chain, refer to [Rerunning a process chain job on page 460](#).

For an SAP extended agent, a `step` is the numeric step of the SAP instruction from which a job can be restarted. Before you rerun an SAP job with IBM Workload Scheduler, you have the option of providing a step name for the job. This affects `r3batch` in the following ways:

- If you use a step name that is up to 9 digits (or 8 digits preceded by a character) in length, this name is used as the starting step number for the rerunning job.
- If you use any different format, the name is ignored and the job is rerun starting from the first step.

For example, to rerun a job from the third step, you can use: `A03`, `3`, `00003`, or `H3`.

z/OS

In z/OS environments, you need to set the status of the job to **Ready** before you can rerun the job.



Note: By default, if you specify a job step to rerun, the new job is assigned the name of the step you indicated. To keep the original job name, set the IBM Workload Scheduler global option **enRetainNameOnRerunFrom** to `yes`. This option works only when used with the following arguments: `rr jobselect;from=[wkstat#]job`. For details about these arguments, see *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference, Managing objects in the plan - conman*, *Conman commands, rerun*. For details about this option, see *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

When `r3batch` reruns a job from its first step, either because you specified it as the starting step or because no starting step was specified, it uses the `new copy` feature, if applicable. If the starting step is greater than one, `r3batch` uses the `old copy` to rerun the job. For a description about the difference between the new and old copy of a rerunning job, refer to [Old copy and new copy of a rerunning job on page 417](#).

To rerun a SAP Standard R/3 job from the Dynamic Workload Console, perform the following steps:

1. In the Dynamic Workload Console select **Monitoring & Reporting > Workload Monitoring > Monitor Workload**.
2. In the Monitor Workload input fields select **Job** as the Object Type, the engine name, the plan, and any filtering data that helps you filter the selection of jobs (you can also select **Edit** for a guided selection of filtering criteria) and select **Run**.
3. A list of jobs is displayed. Select an SAP Standard R/3 job.
4. Rerun the job.

Distributed

Distributed environment

- a. Click **Rerun....** The General properties for the rerun operation are displayed.
- b. Optionally, you can choose to not rerun the same job but instead, substitute the selected SAP job with a different job definition and run it. Type the job definition name in the **From Job Definition** field, or use the browse button to search for it and select it.
- c. Optionally, type the workstation name of the workstation on which you want to rerun the job in the **Workstation Name** field.
- d. Optionally, in **Step**, enter a specific numeric step of the SAP instruction from which you want to rerun the job rather than rerunning the whole job.

- e. Optionally, specify the start and finish time for the job.
- f. Click **Rerun**.

The job reruns immediately or at the specified start time.

z/OS z/OS environment

In a z/OS environment, an alias for the job name is not required so the job reruns with the same name.

The list of jobs always reports the latest action performed on the job.

- a. Before you can rerun a job, you must change the status of the job to **Ready**. Select a job and click **Set Status**.
- b. In **Change Status**, select **Ready**.
- c. Click **OK** to return to the list of jobs.

The job reruns immediately and the internal status reports **Started**.

Old copy and new copy of a rerunning job

When the access method for SAP launches a job, it makes a copy of a template job and runs it.

The **new copy** feature is available for SAP versions 3.1i, and later. It copies an entire job, preserving steps, job class, and all print and archive parameters. It is performed by using a new SAP function module that is part of the SAP Support Package as stated in the SAP Notes 399449 and 430087.

The **old copy** feature, instead, is based on standard SAP function modules, and creates a new SAP job and adds the steps with a loop that starts from the step name or number you specified. Be aware that, unless you have XBP 2.0 or later:

- The **old copy** does not preserve all the print and archive parameters.
- The job class of the copy is always set to class **c**.

Refer to [Print parameter and job class issues on page 364](#) to learn how to resolve the problem of lost job class and print and archive parameters.

SAP Note 758829 is required to ensure correct operation of the **new copy** and **old copy** features. See also [Table 101: Miscellaneous troubleshooting items on page 510](#).

Defining SAP jobs dynamically

This section describes how to create and submit SAP jobs dynamically without creating or referencing predefined job templates.

When you launch a job created as described in [Creating SAP Standard R/3 jobs from the Dynamic Workload Console on page 391](#) and [Task string to define SAP jobs on page 399](#), IBM Workload Scheduler makes a copy of the predefined job (also known as a template job) and runs the copy. If you want to run the job on several SAP systems, you must manually create the template job on each system.

To create and submit SAP jobs dynamically, without creating or referencing predefined job templates, submit:

- In the SAP system, a job that does not reference an existing template in the SAP R/3 database.
- A job that references a predefined job template stored in the SAP R/3 database for which you want to change a parameter.

To take full advantage of this feature, make sure that you have XBP version 2.0 or later installed, because earlier versions of XBP do not support the full set of print and archive parameters, or provide a way to set the job class or the spool list recipient.

Task string to define SAP jobs dynamically

This section describes the task string that controls the running of SAP jobs. You can build an entire job definition by using the six main sections concerning SAP job parameters. These sections are grouped in [Table 78: Task string parameters for SAP jobs \(dynamic definition\) on page 419](#) and are related to the:

- Job
- Job steps
- Variants associated with the steps (for ABAP modules only)
- Spool list recipients associated with the job
- Flags associated with the job
- Tracing specifications for the job

You can specify them in the following places when you define their associated IBM Workload Scheduler jobs:

- In the **SAP Command Line** section of the Task page of the Submit Ad Hoc Jobs action from the Dynamic Workload Console.
- In the **SAP Command Line** field of the More Options page of the SAP job definition, if you use the Dynamic Workload Console and selected a **SAP** job definition.
- As arguments of the `scriptname` keyword in the job definition statement, if you use the IBM Workload Scheduler command line.
- As arguments of the `JOBCMD` keyword in the `JOBREC` statement in the `SCRIPTLIB` of IBM Z Workload Scheduler, if you are scheduling in an end-to-end environment. The following is an example of a `JOBREC` statement:

```
JOBREC
  JOBCMD('/-job job_name -user user_name -i job_ID -c class_value')
  JOBUSR(TWS_user_name)
```

To define and submit an SAP job dynamically, use the following syntax:

Job definition syntax

```
-job job_name [{ -i | -id } job_ID] -flag type=exec [{ -host | -ts } host_name] [ -sg server_group] [ -client
source_client] [ -exec_client target_client] [ -rfc_client rfc_logon_client] [ -c class_value] [ -bdc_job_status_failed
bdc_processing] [{ -nobdc | -nobdcwait } [ -bapi_sync_level { high | medium | low } ] [ -s starting_step_number] ]
[ -s Step_number attribute_name [ = attribute_value ] ] [ -v Step_number variant_name] [ -vtxt Step_number
variant_description] [ -vpar Step_number name = variant_value] [ -vsel Step_number name = { i | e } # operation #
lowest [ # highest] ] [ -vtemp Step_number] [ -recipient R/3_login_name] [ -rectype recipient_type] [ -flag { reccp
| recbl } ] [ -flag recex] [ -flag recnf] [ -flag { im | immed } ] [ -flag { enable_applinfo | disable_applinfo } ] [ -flag
{ enable_appl_rc | disable_appl_rc } ] [ -flag { enable_joblog | disable_joblog } ] [ -flag { enable_job_interceptable |
disable_job_interceptable } ] [ -flag { enable_spoollist | disable_spoollist } ] [ -flag pc_launch] [ { -debug } ] [ -tracelvl
{ 1 | 2 | 3 } ] [ { -rfctrace } ] [ -rfc_client rfc_logon_client]
```

The following is an example of a definition for the SAPTEST job:

```
-job SAPTEST -C A -s1 program=BTCTEST -s1 type=A -s1 pr_release
-s2 report=BTCTEST -s2 variant=BVT -s2 type=A -flag type=exec
-vpar2 TESTNAME=test -vtxt2 Test
```

Table 78: Task string parameters for SAP jobs (dynamic definition) on page 419 describes the parameters for the task string to define SAP jobs dynamically.



Note: The parameter values are case sensitive.

Table 78. Task string parameters for SAP jobs (dynamic definition)

Section	Parameters	Description
JOB	-job <i>job_name</i>	The name of the job to be run. This parameter is mandatory.
	-i <i>job_ID</i>	The unique SAP job ID. Specify this parameter if you are submitting a job that refers to a predefined job template stored in the SAP database for which you want to change a parameter.
	-id <i>job_ID</i>	
	-host <i>host_name</i>	The name of the SAP workstation where the job is to be run. <i>host_name</i> has the format <i>hostname_SAPsystemname_SAPsystemnumber</i> . For example, the name of a host might be <i>amss80a0_gs7_90</i> . These parameters are mutually exclusive with -sg.
	-ts <i>host_name</i>	
	-sg <i>server_group</i>	The name of the SAP server group where the job is to be run. Use this parameter to run the job on an application server

Table 78. Task string parameters for SAP jobs (dynamic definition)

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description
		that belongs to the group. The server group must exist on the SAP system, otherwise an error code is returned and the job is not launched.
		This parameter is case-sensitive and can be up to 20 characters. It is mutually exclusive with -host and -ts.
	-client <i>source_client</i>	The number that identifies the SAP client where the job definition is to be found, regardless of the client number defined by the r3client key in the options file. This parameter has no effect if a job ID is specified in the job definition.
	-exec_client <i>target_client</i>	The number that identifies the SAP client where the job is to be run, regardless of the client number defined by the r3client key in the options file. This parameter requires that the client-dependent data (such as the user name and report variants) exists on both the source and target clients.
		This parameter has no effect if a job ID is specified in the job definition.
	-rfc_client <i>rfc_logon_client</i>	The number that identifies the SAP client to be used for RFC logon. This value overwrites the value specified by the r3client keyword in the corresponding r3batch options file.
	-c <i>class_value</i>	The priority with which the job runs in the SAP system. Possible values are: A High priority B Medium priority C Low priority. This is the default value.
	-flag type=exec	Specify this parameter to enable the dynamic definition of the SAP job. This parameter is mandatory.

Table 78. Task string parameters for SAP jobs (dynamic definition)

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description
JOB	-bdc_job_status_failed <i>bdc_processing</i>	How IBM Workload Scheduler sets the completion status of a job running BDC sessions, according to a possible BDC processing failure. The allowed values are: <i>n</i> If at least <i>n</i> BDC sessions failed (where <i>n</i> is an integer greater than 0), IBM Workload Scheduler sets the job completion status as failed. all If all the BDC sessions failed, IBM Workload Scheduler sets the job completion status as failed. ignore When all the BDC sessions complete, regardless of their status, IBM Workload Scheduler sets the job completion status as successful. This is the default value. If -nobdc or -nobdcwait is set, this option is ignored.
	-nobdc	Disables the BDC Wait option (enabled by default) to have the job considered as completed even if not all its BDC sessions have ended.
	-nobdcwait	
	-bapi_sync_level	Specifies the synchronization level between the SAP function modules BAPI_XBP_JOB_COPY and BAPI_XBP_JOB_START_ASAP. Allowed values are: high All RFC calls between BAPI_XBP_JOB_START_ASAP and BAPI_XBP_JOB_COPY are synchronized. This is the default. medium The RFC calls to BAPI_XBP_JOB_START_ASAP are synchronized.

Table 78. Task string parameters for SAP jobs (dynamic definition)

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description
		low
		The RFC calls are not synchronized.
STEP	-s <i>starting_step_number</i>	The number of the starting step.
	-sstep_number <i>attribute_name=attribute_value</i>	The step number and its attributes, where:
		step_number
		The number of the step being defined. Each step is identified by a sequential number (1, 2, 3, ... <i>n</i>) using the <i>step number</i> .
		attribute_name
		The name of the attribute.
		attribute_value
		The value of the attribute. It is optional for some attributes.
		Attributes can be defined in any order, but cannot be repeated for the same step. Attribute validation is performed before the job is created in the SAP system. If the validation fails, the IBM Workload Scheduler job goes into the ABEND state. For a detailed description of each attribute and its values, see Defining attributes for ABAP steps on page 428 and Defining attributes for external programs and external commands steps on page 431 .
		For example, the following step (step 8) is an ABAP module running the report "MYPGM" and has two attributes, only one of which has a value.
		<pre>-s8 type=A -s8 program=MYPGM -s8 pr_cover="My title" -s8 pr_immed</pre>
VARIANT ¹	-vstep_number <i>name</i>	The variant name for the specified step number.
	-vtxtstep_number <i>variant_description</i>	The textual description of the variant, in the IBM Workload Scheduler logon language (customizable with the <code>TWSXA_LANG</code> option of <code>r3batch</code>). The maximum length is 30 characters. Not valid for temporary variants.

Table 78. Task string parameters for SAP jobs (dynamic definition)

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description
	<code>-vparstep_number name=value</code>	For ABAP modules only. The value for a variant parameter for the specified step number. This parameter is mandatory when creating a new variant. For a complete list of the supported attributes for ABAP steps, see Defining attributes for ABAP steps on page 428 .
	<code>-vselstep_number name=sign#operation#lowest[#highest]</code>	For ABAP modules only. The value for a variant selection option for the specified step number. sign Sign of the operation. Possible values are: I Include E Exclude operation Possible values are: EQ Equals NE Not equal to BT Between NB Not between LT Less than LE Less than or equal to GT Greater than

Table 78. Task string parameters for SAP jobs (dynamic definition)

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description
		GE Greater than or equal to
		CP Contains pattern
		NP Does not contain pattern
		lowest Low value of the selection. You can use up to 45 characters.
		highest High value of the selection. You can use up to 45 characters. This attribute is optional.
		For a complete list of the supported attributes for ABAP steps, see Defining attributes for ABAP steps on page 428 .
	<i>-vtempstep_number</i>	For ABAP modules only. Specifies to assign a temporary variant to the specified step number. Temporary variants are created ad-hoc by the SAP system and assigned to the job instance when it is run. The lifecycle of the temporary variant is determined by the SAP system. If the job is deleted by SAP, then the temporary variant is deleted. See Examples: Dynamically defining and updating SAP jobs on page 433 to refer to examples that demonstrate the behavior of temporary variants.
SPOOL	-recipient <i>name</i>	The login name of an SAP user.
	-flag {reccp recbl}	Specifies how the spool list is sent to the recipient. Possible values are: reccp The spool list is sent as a copy. recbl The spool list is sent as a blind copy.

Table 78. Task string parameters for SAP jobs (dynamic definition)

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description
	-flag recex	Specifies that the spool list is sent as an express message to the recipient.
	-flag recnf	Specifies that the recipient is not allowed to forward the spool list.
	-rectype <i>type</i>	Specifies the recipient type. Possible values are: blank SAP user (default value) B SAP user C Shared distribution list D X.500 address G Organization object/ID H Organization unit I SAP object L Telex number O SAPoffice user P Private distribution list R SAP user in another SAP system U Internet address

Table 78. Task string parameters for SAP jobs (dynamic definition)

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description
		1
		Other recipient type
FLAGS	-flag im -flag immed	Specifies to launch the job immediately, meaning that if there are no spare work processes, the job fails.
	-flag enable_applinfo -flag disable_applinfo	Enables or disables the retrieval and appending of the SAP application log to the stdlist of IBM Workload Scheduler.
	-flag enable_appl_rc -flag disable_appl_rc	Enables or disables the mapping of the SAP application return code to the IBM Workload Scheduler return code. The SAP application return code is mapped only if -flag enable_applinfo is set and the application log contains the application return code.
	-flag enable_joblog -flag disable_joblog	Enables or disables retrieval of the joblog.
	-flag enable_joblog -flag disable_joblog	Enables or disables retrieval of the joblog.
	-flag enable_job_interceptable -flag disable_job_interceptable	Enables or disables the job launched by r3batch to be intercepted by SAP. If enabled, when r3batch launches a job and the SAP job interception feature is enabled, the job can be intercepted if it matches previously defined criteria. If disabled, the job launched by r3batch cannot be intercepted by SAP. This setting overwrites the setting in the common options file.
-flag pc_launch	Specifies to launch child jobs that are in scheduled state. ON The product launches child jobs that are in scheduled state.	

Table 78. Task string parameters for SAP jobs (dynamic definition)

(continued)

Section	Parameters	Description
	OFF	
	The product does not launch child jobs that are in scheduled state. This is the default value.	
	 Note: You can use this option only if you activated the parent-child feature on the SAP system. On the XBP 2.0 (or later) SAP system, you activate this feature by using the INITXBP2 ABAP report.	
TRACING	-debug -tracelvl 1 2 3	Enables maximum trace level. Specifies the trace setting for the job. Possible values are: 1 Only error messages are written in the trace file. This is the default. 2 Informational messages and warnings are also written in the trace file. 3 A most verbose debug output is written in the trace file. For more details, refer to Configuring the tracing utility on page 344 . Enables RFC trace.
	-rfctrace	
	-trace	



Note: See [Examples: Dynamically defining and updating SAP jobs on page 433](#) to refer to examples that demonstrate the behavior of variants and temporary variants.



1. The following rules apply when you create or update SAP jobs dynamically:
- To create or reference a variant within an ABAP step, you can use one of the following equivalent syntaxes:
 - -s1 Variant=Var1
 - -s1 Parameter=Var1
 - -v1 Var1
 - If a variant does not exist, it is created with the parameters specified in the job definition statement. In this case, all the required attributes of the variant must be given a value. You cannot create empty variants. For example, if you specify **-vtemp1**, with no value assigned, an empty temporary variant is erroneously created.
 - If a variant is already present in the SAP system, its values are modified according to the command line parameters. If the existing variant is an extended one, a new instance of it is created with resolved placeholders and updated counters. This new variant instance is then updated using the values from the command line. Finally, the job step is run using this variant instance.
 - All changes to the variant values are permanent. That is, IBM Workload Scheduler neither restores the old values of the variants, nor deletes the variants created after the job is run. IBM Workload Scheduler does not change the case of the variant values.

Defining attributes for ABAP steps

To create and submit SAP jobs dynamically, look at the table and define the attributes for ABAP steps.

[Table 79: Supported attributes for ABAP step definition on page 428](#) shows a complete list of the supported attributes for ABAP step module definition:

Table 79. Supported attributes for ABAP step definition

Attribute name	Synonym	Description	Required
type	typ	Specify the step type. Possible values are: • A • ABAP The product performs a check for correct attribute values prior to launching the job.	✓
program		Specify the ABAP program name.	✓
parameter		Specify the ABAP variant name.	✓
user	authcknam	Specify the user of the step.	✓
language	lang	Specify the step language.	✓

Table 79. Supported attributes for ABAP step definition (continued)

Attribute name	Synonym	Description	Required
		This attribute accepts language names in either the ISO format (two characters, for example DE, EN) or the R/3 format (one character, for example D, E).	
		If this attribute is not specified, the login language of the access method is used (customize using the option twsha_lang in the r3batch options files).	
		The product performs a check for a valid language prior to launching the job.	
pr_dest	printer pdest	Print Parameter: Specify the printer for the output.	
pr_copies	prcop	Print Parameter: Specify the number of copies. The value of this attribute must be numeric. A corresponding check is performed prior to launching the job.	
pr_lines	linct	Print Parameter: Specify the page length. The value of this attribute must be numeric. A corresponding check is performed prior to launching the job.	
pr_columns	linsz	Print Parameter: Specify the page width. The value of this attribute must be numeric. A corresponding check is performed prior to launching the job.	
pr_auth	prber	Print Parameter: Authorization	
pr_arcmode	armod	Print Parameter: Archiving mode	
pr_sapbanner	prsap	Print Parameter: SAP cover page	
pr_exp	pexpi	Print Parameter: Spool retention period The value of this attribute must be a single digit. A corresponding check is performed prior to launching the job.	
pr_recip	prrec	Print Parameter: Recipient	
pr_spoolname	plist	Print Parameter: Name of spool request ¹	
pr_format	paart	Print Parameter: Print formatting ¹	

Table 79. Supported attributes for ABAP step definition (continued)

Attribute name	Synonym	Description	Required
pr_dep	prabt	Print Parameter: Department on cover page ¹	
pr_spools	prdsn	Print Parameter: Name of spool data set ¹	
pr_spoolprio	priot	Print Parameter: Spool request priority ¹	
pr_immed	primm	Print Parameter: Print immediately ²	
pr_release	prrel	Print Parameter: Delete after printing ²	
pr_banner	prbig	Print Parameter: Selection cover page ²	
pr_newspool	prnew	Print Parameter: New spool request ^{1 2}	
pr_cover	prtxt	Print Parameter: Text for cover page ¹ . If the string contains spaces it must be enclosed between single quotes.	
pr_hostcover	prunx	Print Parameter: Host spool cover page ¹ . Possible values are: '' Blank. Does not use any cover page. 'X' Prints the host cover page. 'D' Prints the default host cover page.	
al_sapobject	sap_object	SAP ArchiveLink: Object type of business object	
al_object	object	SAP ArchiveLink: Document type	
al_info	info	SAP ArchiveLink: Info field	
al_id	archiv_id	SAP ArchiveLink: Target storage system ¹	
al_doctype	doc_type	SAP ArchiveLink: Document class ¹	
al_rpchost	rpc_host	SAP ArchiveLink: PRC host ¹	
al_rpcserv	rpc_servic	SAP ArchiveLink: RPC service / RFC destination ¹	
al_iface	interface	SAP ArchiveLink: Name of communication connection component ¹	
al_client	mandant	SAP ArchiveLink: Client ¹	
al_report		SAP ArchiveLink: Report name ¹	
al_text	arctext	SAP ArchiveLink: Text information field ¹	
al_date	datum	SAP ArchiveLink: Archiving date ¹	

Table 79. Supported attributes for ABAP step definition (continued)

Attribute name	Synonym	Description	Required
al_user	arcuser	SAP ArchiveLink: Data element for user ¹	
al_printer		SAP ArchiveLink: Target printer ¹	
al_format	formular	SAP ArchiveLink: Output format ¹	
al_path	archivpath	SAP ArchiveLink: Standard archive path ¹	
al_protocol	protokoll	SAP ArchiveLink: Storage connection protocol ¹	
al_version		SAP ArchiveLink: Version number ¹	

**Note:**

1. This attribute is available for BC-XBP 2.0 and later.
2. This attribute is a flag, that is, it does not have a value, for example: `-s2 pr_release`.

IBM Workload Scheduler performs the following syntax validation on job attributes:

- Only valid attributes are allowed.
- Checks if a particular attribute requires a value.
- The values of the following attributes are checked:
 - type
 - language
 - pr_copies
 - pr_lines
 - pr_columns

Validation is performed before the job is created in the SAP system. If the validation fails, the IBM Workload Scheduler job goes into the ABEND state.

Defining attributes for external programs and external commands steps

[Table 80: Supported attributes for external programs and external commands step definition on page 431](#) shows a complete list of the supported attributes for external programs and external commands step definition.

Table 80. Supported attributes for external programs and external commands step definition

Attribute name	Synonym	Description	Required
type	typ	The step type can assume one of the following values:	✓

Table 80. Supported attributes for external programs and external commands step definition (continued)

Attribute name	Synonym	Description	Required
For external programs			
		• X • EXTPRG	
For external commands			
		• C • EXTCMD	
report		Before launching the job, the product performs a check for correct attribute values.	
parameter		ABAP program name or name of the external program or command.	✓
user	authcknam	Parameters for the external program or command.	
language	lang	User of the step.	
		Step language.	
		This attribute accepts language names in either the ISO format (two characters, for example DE, EN) or the R/3 format (one character, for example D, E).	
		If this attribute is not specified, the login language of the access method is used (customize using the twaxa_lang option in the <code>r3batch</code> option files).	
		The product performs a check for a valid language prior to launching the job.	
targethost	xpgtgtsys	Target host for the external program or command. This name must be exactly the same as the name shown in the External Operating System Commands table in the SAP system (transaction <code>sm69</code>).	
os	opssystem	Operating system for the external command. This name must be exactly the same as the name shown in the External Operating System Commands table in the SAP system (transaction <code>sm69</code>).	
termcntl	waitforterm	Control flag: if an external command or program is to be run synchronously. ²	
tracecntl		Control flag: if SAP tracing level 3 is activated for tracing SAPXPG, the program that starts an external command or program. ^{1 2}	

Table 80. Supported attributes for external programs and external commands step definition (continued)

Attribute name	Synonym	Description	Required
stdoutcntl		Control flag: indicates if standard output from an external command or program is to be written to the job log. ^{1 2}	
stderrcntl		Control flag: indicates if standard error from an external command or program is to be written to the job log. ^{1 2}	

**Note:**

1. This attribute is available for BC-XBP 2.0 and later.
2. This attribute is a flag, that is, it does not have a value, for example: `-s2 pr_release`.

IBM Workload Scheduler performs the following syntax validation on job attributes:

- Only valid attributes are allowed.
- Checks if a particular attribute requires a value.
- The values of the following attributes are checked:
 - type
 - language
 - pr_copies
 - pr_lines
 - pr_columns

Validation is performed before the job is created in the SAP system. If the validation fails, the IBM Workload Scheduler job goes into the ABEND state.

Specifying job parameters using variable substitution

Parameters can be provided at run time using the variable substitution feature. For example, the value appears as:

```
-s1 report=&VARNAME
```

The variable substitution process occurs while IBM Workload Scheduler is creating the symphony file.

Examples: Dynamically defining and updating SAP jobs

This section describes some usage examples of this feature:

Job definition and run scenario using the `-flag type=exec` parameter

The following example creates and runs a 3-step job. The first step runs the ABAP MYPROG1 using variant VAR01 and associated variant parameter. Step 2 has a step user defined. Step 3 uses the same ABAP as step 1 with no associated variant.

The only requirement is that the elements referred to are known in the SAP system (user, program). If the variant does not exist, there should be a set of values to define the content of the variant for its creation (pairs of `-vparN` `-vselN` parameters for the parameters and selections of the ABAP program).

```
-job TESTJOB01 -c A
-s1 type=A -s1 program=MYPROG1
-v1 VAR01 -vpar1 TESTNAME=TST
-s2 report=SP00LX1 -s2 user=PRUSER
-s3 type=A -s3 program=MYPROG1 -flag type=exec
```

The job returns job ID 12345678

Job copy and overwrite the job created in the previous step

The following job statement references the job created in the previous example. A new copy of the job is made and the parameters specified in the invocation are used to update the definition. In this case the variant for step 1 is modified and a new external program step (Step 4) is added.

```
-job TESTJOB01 -i 12345678
-s1 variant=VAR01A
-vpar1 TESTNAME=TST2
-s4 type=X -s4 report=niping -s4 parameter=-t
-flag type=exec
```

Copy and overwrite a job referencing an existing job template

The following example shows a job creation referencing a job template (previously created without using this feature). A template job called `TEMPLAJOB` already exists on the SAP system with an ID of 56780123. It is a single ABAP step job to which we now add some print parameters.

```
-job TEMPLAJOB
-I 56780123 -s1 pr_immed
-flag type=exec
```

A temporary variant is created using the information indicated in the expression

The following is the syntax to be used:

```
-vpar1 <parameter_name>=<parameter_value> ...
-vsel1 <selection_option_name>
... -vtempl
```

The following example shows how you can submit a job that creates a temporary variant that is assigned to step number 1, and assigns a value to a variant parameter for step number 1:

```
-job TESTJOB01 -C A -flag type=exec -user R3USER
-s1 type=A -s1 program=MYPROG1
-vtempl -vpar1 TESTNAME=TST
```

The following example shows how you can submit a job that creates a temporary variant that is assigned to step number 1, assigns a value to a variant parameter for step number 1, and assigns a value to a variant selection option (date) for step number 1:

```
-job TESTJOB01 -C A -flag type=exec -user R3USER
-s1 type=A -s1 program=MYPROG1
-vtempl -vpar1 FILENAME=FLN
-vsel1 date=E#BT#20110101#20110412
```

Assign a temporary variant to the specified step number

The following is the syntax to be used:

```
-v1 <temporary_variant_name> -vtemp1
```

The following is an example of how you can submit a job to assign a temporary variant, which has already been created (as in the previous example), and assign a value to step number 1:

```
-job TESTJOB01 -C A -flag type=exec -user R3USER
-s1 type=A -s1 program=MYPROG1
-vtemp1 -v1 &0000000000001
```

The value for a temporary variant that already exists is substituted with the value indicated in the expression

The following is the syntax to be used:

```
-v1 <temporary_variant_name> -vpar1 <parameter_name>=<parameter_value> ...
-vsel1 <selection_option_name> ... -vtemp1
```

The following is an example of how you can submit a job that substitutes the value of a temporary variant, which must already exist, with a new value. The temporary variant must exist, otherwise, the expression returns an error.

```
-job TESTJOB01 -C A -flag type=exec -user R3USER
-s1 type=A -s1 program=MYPROG1
-vtemp1 -v1 &0000000000001 -vpar1 TESTNAME=TST2
```

Defining conditions and criteria

IBM Workload Scheduler accesses the Computer Center Management System (CCMS) Background Processing components of SAP systems through the BC-XBP interface to provide additional capabilities from the Dynamic Workload Console, one of those being the Criteria Manager.

IBM Workload Scheduler supports the BC-XBP 3.0 interface which provides functions to control R/3 batch jobs.

The Criteria Manager is a tool that enables you to define conditions and criteria that, when combined, form complex dependencies that you can use in the following contexts:

- Managing raised events in the SAP event history.
- Managing reorganization tasks against the SAP event history.
- Intercepting jobs.

If you have other types of criteria defined on your SAP system, then you can perform other actions in addition to those listed in this section.

The criteria profile

The Criteria Manager enables you to define a criteria profile which is a container for a combination of criteria. The criteria profile can be of various types and each criteria type has a standard set of selection criterion. For each criteria, you can specify a single value, a range of values by indicating a lower and upper limit, and multiple values. The following is the standard set of selection criterion for each criteria profile type. In addition to these, you can also see any other types of criteria profiles you have defined on your SAP system:

Event History

EVENTID

The identifier of the event defined in the SAP system.

EVENTPARM

The parameter of the event defined in the SAP system.

PARMID

The identifier of the parameter of the event defined in the SAP system.

Event History Reorg

Event State

The state of the event.

Event Timestamp

The timestamp for the event.

Interception

Job Name

A name identifying the job.

Job Class

The class assigned to the job that represents the priority with which the job runs in the SAP system.

The criteria hierarchy

You create and combine criteria in a criteria hierarchy. The criteria hierarchy is a set of all the criteria that must be fulfilled for a specific action to take place in the specific context. For example, you can define a criteria hierarchy to log all raised events in the SAP event history with an event name that begins with "CRITICAL_EVENT" and with an event argument equal to 150.

The criteria in the hierarchy is grouped in nodes and relationships between the nodes are determined by the logical operators AND or OR. You can nest nodes in other nodes.

To have the criteria profile begin processing, the criteria profile must be activated. Only one criteria profile of the same type can be active at one time.

Example

An example

See [Example: Defining which raised events to log on page 437](#) for an example that demonstrates how to build a criteria hierarchy to manage the logging of raised events in the SAP event history.

Example: Defining which raised events to log

The event history stores all events that are raised by the system. You can define specific criteria so that only raised events that match certain criteria are logged.

The event history enables IBM Workload Scheduler to consume events that are raised by the SAP system.

Checking the log of raised events gives you access to the following information:

- Verify that an event was raised in the system.
- Verify if the event was processed.

In the example that follows, an event history criteria profile is created that contains the definition of the criteria, the criteria hierarchy, that events must fulfill to be logged in the event history. The criteria profile must then be activated so that it can begin processing events according to the criteria.

The criteria profile, `Event profile 1`, contains a criteria hierarchy that logs only those events in the event history with event name that begins with `CRITICAL_EVENT` and event argument equal to "789".

Create the criteria profile

A criteria profile contains the definition of the criteria you want to set for logging raised events.

About this task

Create a criteria profile, `Event profile 1`, of type, Event History, to contain the criteria hierarchy.

1. In the Navigation bar at the top, click **Design > SAP > Manage SAP Criteria Profiles**.
2. In **Engine name**, select the name of the IBM Workload Scheduler engine connection from which you want to work with SAP jobs.
3. In **Workstation name**, type the name of the workstation where the SAP job runs. This is the workstation with the `r3batch` access method that communicates with the remote SAP system. If you do not know the name of the workstation, click the **Lookup Workstations** icon to enter your filter criteria and click **Search**. If you enter a string representing part of the workstation name, it must be followed by the asterisk (*) wildcard character. Both the question mark (?) and asterisk (*) are supported as wildcards. You can also simply use the asterisk wildcard character (*) to display all workstations. Optionally, specify any of the other search criteria available and click **Search**.

Result

From the results displayed, select the workstation and click **OK**.

4. In **Options file**, specify an options file that resides on the specified workstation. Each workstation can have one or more options files that can be used to customize the behavior of the `r3batch` access method, except for extended agent workstations, where only one options file can exist and therefore does not need to be specified. For the workstation specified, enter the file name of the options file or click pick icon to search for options files that reside on the specified workstation and select one.
5. Click **Go**.
6. From the Criteria Manager main view, click **New** to create a criteria profile.
7. Select **Event History** as the type of criteria profile you want to create.

8. Enter descriptive text that enables you to easily identify the criteria profile in the table of criteria profiles. Type `Event profile 1`. Avoid using special characters such as, < (less than), > (greater than), or the ' (apostrophe) in this field.
9. Click **Save**.

Results

The criteria profile is displayed in the list of criteria profiles and it is not yet active.

What to do next

Next, begin building the criteria hierarchy. The criteria profile is the container for the criteria hierarchy.

Build the criteria hierarchy

The criteria hierarchy is stored in the criteria profile and is made up of criteria. A group of criteria is contained in a node.

Before you begin

The criteria hierarchy is made up of a combination of nodes and criteria. A node contains a group of criteria where the relationship between the criteria is determined by an AND or an OR relation. You can nest nodes in other nodes. By default, a top level AND node is created in the criteria hierarchy. You can create other AND or OR nodes nested in this parent node. You can also add one or more criterion to the nodes. Add an AND node when all of the criteria defined in the node must be fulfilled. Add an OR node when at least one of the criteria defined in the node must be fulfilled.

About this task

In this example, define a criterion that logs all events whose name begins with `CRITICAL_EVENT` and with event argument equal to 789.

1. Click  to create a new criterion in the default AND node.
2. In **Description**, type `Criterion 1`.
3. In **EVENTID**, click  to specify the value for the EVENTID field.
4. Leave the default value **Select** to indicate to use the selection criterion specified when processing events.
5. In **Options**, select **Pattern** and in **Single Value or Lower Limit**, type `CRITICAL_EVENT*`.

Result

This sets the condition for the event name.

6. In **EVENTPARM**, click  to specify the value for the EVENTPARM field.
7. Leave the default value **Select** to indicate to use the selection criterion specified when processing events.
8. In **Options**, select **Equal to** and in **Single Value or Lower Limit**, type `789`.

Result

This sets the condition for the event argument.

9. Click **Save** to save the criterion definition.

Results

The criteria profile now contains a criterion that specifies which raised events must be logged. You can continue to create another criteria in the same parent node or you can nest either an AND or an OR node in the parent node to determine the

logical relation between the criteria that the nested node will contain. Add an AND node within which you can create one or more criteria where all the criteria specified in the node must be fulfilled, or add an OR node within which you can create one or more criteria where at least one of the criteria specified must be fulfilled.

What to do next

To apply this criteria profile so that it begins processing events according to the criteria defined, you must activate the criteria profile.

Activate the criteria profile

To apply the `Event profile 1` criteria profile so that it begins processing raised events according to the criteria specified in the criteria hierarchy, you must activate the criteria profile.

About this task

A criteria profile can either be active or not active. For a criteria profile to take effect, the profile must be activated. Only one criteria profile of the same type can be active at one time. Criteria profiles cannot be edited if they are in the active state. Follow the procedure to activate the `Event profile 1` criteria profile.

1. Select the `Event profile 1` criteria profile from the table of criteria profiles.
2. Select **Activate** from the toolbar. 

Results

The status of the criteria profile is updated to show that it is now active. The criteria profile can now begin to process raised events according to the specifications of the criteria hierarchy and log them to the event history. If another criteria profile of the same criteria type was active, its status changes to inactive.

Using the BDC Wait option

By using the Batch Data Collector (BDC) Wait option, you can specify that a SAP job launched by IBM Workload Scheduler is not to be considered complete until all of its BDC sessions have completed.

About this task

The Batch Data Collector (BDC) Wait option prevents other IBM Workload Scheduler jobs that are dependent on the SAP job from being launched until all of the related BDC sessions for the SAP job have ended.

To use the option, a SAP job must write informational messages in its job log. This can be done by modifying the SAP function module `BDC_OPEN_GROUP` as follows:

```
FUNCTION BDC_OPEN_GROUP.
...
CALL 'BDC_OPEN_GROUP' ID 'CLIENT'      FIELD CLIENT
                        ID 'GROUP'      FIELD GROUP
                        ID 'USER'       FIELD USER
                        ID 'KEEP'       FIELD KEEP
                        ID 'HOLDDATE'   FIELD HOLDDATE
                        ID 'DESTINATION' FIELD DEST
                        ID 'QID'        FIELD QID
                        ID 'RECORD'     FIELD RECORD
```

```

                ID 'PROG'          FIELD PROG.
*
IF SY-SUBRC EQ 0.
  BQID  = QID.
  BUSER = SY-MSGV1.
  BGROUP = GROUP.
* CALL FUNCTION 'DB_COMMIT'.
  CALL FUNCTION 'ENQUEUE_BDC_QID'
    EXPORTING DATATYP = 'BDC '
    GROUPID   = BGROUP
    QID       = BQID
    EXCEPTIONS FOREIGN_LOCK = 98
    SYSTEM_FAILURE = 99.

  IF SY-SUBRC EQ 0.
    message i368(00) with 'BDCWAIT: ' qid.
  ENDIF.
ENDIF.
*
PERFORM FEHLER_BEHANDLUNG USING SY-SUBRC.
*
*
ENDFUNCTION.

```



Note: The actual parameters of the call of the C function (CALL 'BDC_OPEN_GROUP' ID ...) might vary depending on the SAP release. With this approach, you obtain a global change in your SAP system.

The completion status of a SAP job launched by IBM Workload Scheduler is based on the value you set for the **bdc_job_status_failed** option. By default, this option is set to `ignore`, meaning that the job is considered successfully completed when the BDC sessions are finished, regardless of their success or failure. For details about the **bdc_job_status_failed** option, refer to [Table 76: Task string parameters for SAP jobs on page 400](#).

Job interception and parent-child features

This section describes how the job interception and parent-child features of BC-XBP 2.0 and 3.0 are supported by IBM Workload Scheduler.



Distributed Note: The process of defining relaunch criteria and collecting and relaunching intercepted jobs is supported only in distributed environments and not in z/OS environments.

Implementing job interception

The high-level steps required to implement job interception.

About this task

Job interception is a feature of both the BC-XBP 2.0 and BC-XBP 3.0 interfaces. It enables IBM Workload Scheduler to have a very sophisticated control over the jobs launched by SAP users from the SAP graphical interface.

The job interception mechanism becomes active when the SAP job scheduler is about to start an SAP job (that is, when the `start` conditions of an SAP job are fulfilled). It checks the job parameters (`job name`, `creator`, `client`) against the entries in the SAP table `TBCICPT1`, and when the job parameters match the criteria, the SAP job is set back to the `scheduled` status and is marked with a special flag, denoting that the job has been intercepted. The criteria defined in the criteria table establishes which jobs are intercepted.

If IBM Workload Scheduler has been set up to handle job interception, it periodically runs its own job to retrieve a list of intercepted jobs and reschedules them to be relaunched. This job can be referred to as the *interception collector* job.

Job interception with the BC-XBP 2.0 interface is based on the single extended agent workstation, whereas with the BC-XBP 3.0 interface, job interception is based on the currently active job interception criteria profile.



Note:

- Jobs launched by IBM Workload Scheduler, or by any other external scheduler using the BC-XBP interface, can be intercepted provided the **job_interceptable** option in the common options file is set to `on`, and the **-flag enable_job_interceptable** keyword is included in the job definition.
- Ensure that the job interception and job throttling features are not running at the same time. The interception collector jobs fail if a job throttler instance is running. To stop the job throttler, refer to [Step 5. Starting and stopping the job throttling feature on page 470](#).

The following are the high-level steps required to implement job interception for both the BC-XBP 2.0 and 3.0 interfaces.

Job interception and the BC-XBP 2.0 interface

About this task

To set up IBM Workload Scheduler to handle job interception in an SAP environment with the BC-XBP 2.0 interface, implement the following steps:

1. Install the BC-XBP 2.0 interface. Refer to SAP Note 604496 to know if your SAP system already has the BC-XBP 2.0 interface, or which SAP support package you need to install to enable it.
2. Define an IBM Workload Scheduler job to periodically collect the intercepted SAP jobs.
3. Specify interception criteria in the SAP system.
4. Specify interception criteria in IBM Workload Scheduler from the Monitor Workstations portlet on the Dynamic Workload Console. The criteria is set at workstation level.
5. Activate the job interception feature of the BC-XBP 2.0 interface.

Job interception and the BC-XBP 3.0 interface

About this task

To set up IBM Workload Scheduler to handle job interception in an SAP environment with the BC-XBP 3.0 interface, implement the following steps:

1. Verify if the BC-XBP 3.0 interface is already installed on the SAP system.
2. Define an IBM Workload Scheduler job to periodically collect the intercepted SAP jobs.
3. Specify interception criteria in the SAP system.
4. Specify interception criteria in IBM Workload Scheduler from the Manage SAP Criteria Profiles portlet on the Dynamic Workload Console.
5. Activate the job interception feature of the BC-XBP 3.0 interface.

Collecting intercepted jobs periodically for BC-XBP 2.0

With the BC-XBP 2.0 interface, you can configure the job interception collector using an IBM Workload Scheduler job that periodically retrieves intercepted jobs and relaunches them.

About this task

Define an IBM Workload Scheduler job that uses the SAP interception collector task to collect intercepted jobs and restart them.

To define an IBM Workload Scheduler job that collects intercepted job and relaunches them, use the following syntax:

```
ENGINE_NAME_HOSTING_XA#[folder/]JOBNAME
SCRIPTNAME "TWA_home/methods/r3batch -t HIJ -c UNIQUE_ID"
DESCRIPTION "Collects intercepted jobs on SAP XA XA_Unique_ID"
STREAMLOGON TWSuser
RECOVERY STOP
```

Where:

ENGINE_NAME_HOSTING_XA

The name of the engine workstation hosting the XA workstation with the r3batch access method that communicates with the SAP system.

JOBNAME

Name of the IBM Workload Scheduler job and the folder in which it is defined, if any.

TWA_home

Fully qualified path to your IBM Workload Scheduler installation.

XA_Unique_ID

The unique identifier for the extended agent workstation. See [UNIQUE_ID on page 312](#) for more details about retrieving the unique identifier.

-t HIJ

This is the SAP task type to run the job interception collector. HIJ stands for `Handle Intercepted Jobs`.

TWSuser

Name of the IBM Workload Scheduler user that launches the access method.

The interception collector job runs at periodical intervals; for example, every 10 minutes. It retrieves all the jobs that have been intercepted since the last run of the interception collector, and launches them again according to a template.

Collecting intercepted jobs periodically for BC-XBP 3.0

With the BC-XBP 3.0 interface, you can configure the job interception collector using an IBM Workload Scheduler job that periodically retrieves intercepted jobs and relaunches them.

About this task

Because intercepted jobs remain in the `Released` and then `Intercepted` status until they are relaunched, you need to use the SAP interception collector task to collect and relaunch them.

To use the job interception collector BC-XBP 3.0 to collect and restart jobs, create the **r3batch_icp** folder in the `TWS_home/methods/` path with the correct access rights.

To define an IBM Workload Scheduler job that collects and relaunches jobs use the following syntax:

```
ENGINE_NAME_HOSTING_XA#[folder/]JOBNAME
DOCOMMAND "TWA_home/methods/r3batch -t HIJ -c UNIQUE_ID -- \
    "-profile_id profile_ID_number\"""
STREAMLOGON TWSuser
DESCRIPTION "Collects intercepted jobs on SAP XA XA_Unique_ID"
TASKTYPE UNIX
RECOVERY STOP
```

where,

ENGINE_NAME_HOSTING_XA

The name of the engine workstation hosting the XA workstation with the r3batch access method that communicates with the SAP system.

JOBNAME

Name of the IBM Workload Scheduler job and the folder within which it is defined, if any.

TWA_home

Fully qualified path to your IBM Workload Scheduler installation.

XA_Unique_ID

The unique identifier for the extended agent workstation. See [UNIQUE_ID on page 312](#) for more details about retrieving the unique identifier.

-t HIJ

This is the SAP task type to run the job interception collector. HIJ stands for `Handle Intercepted Jobs`.

- profile_id profile_ID_number

Specifies the identification number of the interception criteria profile on the SAP system for XBP 3.0.

TWSuser

Name of the IBM Workload Scheduler user that launches the access method.

The interception collector job runs at periodical intervals; for example, every 10 minutes. It retrieves all the jobs that have been intercepted since the last run of the interception collector, and launches them again according to a template.



Note: If the interception collector is configured for XBP 3.0 job interception, but the XBP 2.0 interface is configured on the SAP system, the collector fails. Ensure the XBP interface versions are synchronized.

Setting interception criteria on the SAP system

About this task

In SAP, the interception criteria are held in table `TBCICPT1`. Only jobs that match the criteria of this table are intercepted, when their `start` conditions are fulfilled. All the other jobs are run normally.

You can maintain the entries in this table by using transaction `se16` and setting the following:

- Client number
- Job mask
- User mask

Setting interception criteria on IBM Workload Scheduler

About this task

In IBM Workload Scheduler, interception criteria are defined and used by setting:

Table criteria

For BC-XBP 2.0

You use the **Monitor Workload** of Dynamic Workload Console to set table criteria.

For details about how you set table criteria, see [Setting SAP table criteria on the extended agent workstation on page 444](#).

For BC-XBP 3.0

You set table criteria from the **Administration > Workload Design > Manage SAP Criteria Profiles** panel from the Dynamic Workload Console.

For details about how you set table criteria, see [Setting SAP criteria in the job interception criteria profile on page 446](#).

Template files (optional)

For details about how you create template files, see [Using template files on page 447](#).

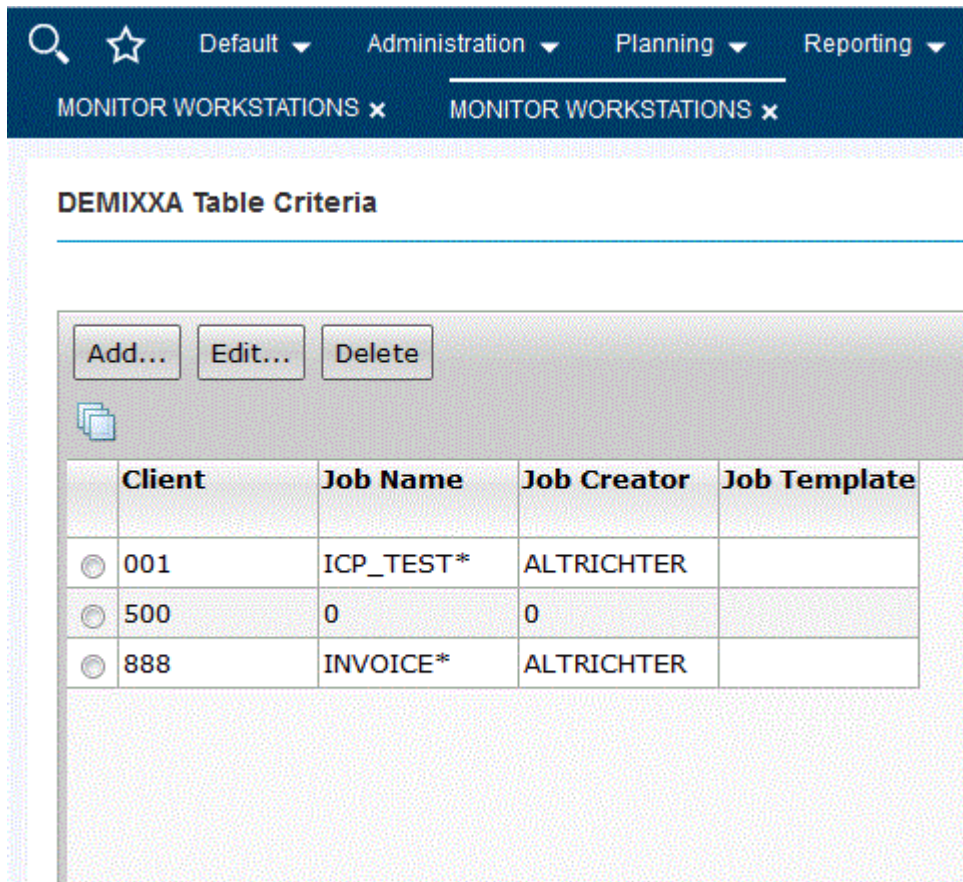
Setting SAP table criteria on the extended agent workstation

About this task

To set table criteria with the BC-XBP 2.0 interface on an SAP job using the **Monitor Workload** of the Dynamic Workload Console, follow these steps:

1. Log in to the Dynamic Workload Console.
2. From the **Monitoring and Reporting** menu, click **Orchestration Monitor**.
3. In the **Monitor Workload** window select the engine, enter **Workstation** in the **Object Type** field, and select the plan to display the list of workstations you want to monitor. Click **Run**.
4. Select an extended agent workstation in the table of displayed workstations, and click **More Actions > Table Criteria...** from the toolbar.
5. The **Table Criteria** panel displays. From this panel you can add, delete, edit, or refresh criteria.

Figure 18. The Table Criteria panel



6. Specify the criteria:
 - a. In **Client**, specify the client workstation of the SAP job.
 - b. In **Job Name**, specify a filter to match a set of SAP jobs. Use the asterisk (*) wildcard character to match a set of jobs.
 - c. In **Job Creator**, specify a filter to match a set of SAP job creator. Use the asterisk (*) wildcard character to match a set of jobs.

- d. Optionally, in **Job Template**, specify the template file that contains instructions for the interception collector about how to run the intercepted SAP job under control of IBM Workload Scheduler. For more information about template files, see [Using template files on page 447](#).
- e. In **Job Class**, specify the class assigned to the job that represents the priority with which the job runs on the SAP system.

7. Click **OK**.

Setting SAP criteria in the job interception criteria profile

Setting criteria to intercept jobs and relaunch them.

About this task

To set the criteria that defines which SAP jobs to intercept and relaunch with the BC-XBP 3.0 interface using the Dynamic Workload Console, perform the following steps:

1. In the Navigation bar at the top, click **Design > SAP > Manage SAP Criteria Profiles**.
2. In **Workstation name**, type the name of the workstation where the SAP job runs. This is the workstation with the r3batch access method that communicates with the remote SAP system. If you do not know the name of the workstation, click the **Lookup Workstations** icon to enter your filter criteria and click **Search**. If you enter a string representing part of the workstation name, it must be followed by the asterisk (*) wildcard character. Both the question mark (?) and asterisk (*) are supported as wildcards. You can also simply use the asterisk wildcard character (*) to display all workstations. Optionally, specify any of the other search criteria available and click **Search**.

Result

From the results displayed, select the workstation and click **OK**.

3. From the Criteria Manager main view, click **New** to create a criteria profile.
4. Select **Interception** as the type of criteria profile you want to create.
5. Enter descriptive text that enables you to easily identify the criteria profile in the table of criteria profiles. Avoid using special characters such as, <(less than), > (greater than), or the ' (apostrophe) in this field.
6. Click **Save**.

Result

The criteria profile is displayed in the list of criteria profiles and it is not yet active.

7. On the **Details** tab in the upper-right pane, define the criteria that intercepted jobs must match. For example, to intercept jobs with a job name beginning with "ICP", specify the following criteria:

- a. Click  to define a new criterion.
- b. In **Description**, type `Criterion 1`.
- c. In **JOB NAME**, click  to specify the value for the JOB NAME field.
- d. Leave the default value **Select** to indicate to use the selection criterion specified when intercepting jobs.
- e. In **Options**, select **Pattern** and in **Single Value or Lower Limit**, type `ICP*`.

Result

This sets the condition for the job name.

- f. Click **Save** to save the criterion definition.
8. Define the criteria that must be matched to relaunch intercepted jobs. Click the **Job Relaunch Criteria** tab.
 - a. Click  to define a new criteria that determines which jobs are relaunched.
 - b. In **Client**, specify the client workstation of the SAP job.
 - c. In **Job Name**, specify a filter to match a set of SAP jobs. Use the asterisk (*) wildcard character to match a set of jobs.
 - d. In **Job Creator**, specify a filter to match a set of SAP job creator. Use the asterisk (*) wildcard character to match a set of jobs.
 - e. Optionally, in **Job Template**, specify the template file that contains instructions for the interception collector about how to run the intercepted SAP job under control of IBM Workload Scheduler. For more information about template files, see [Using template files on page 447](#).
 - f. In **Job Class**, specify the class assigned to the job that represents the priority with which the job runs on the SAP system.
9. Click **OK**.
10. You can continue to define more criteria and then save the criteria profile.
11. When you are done defining the criteria, save the criteria profile.
12. Select the criteria profile and then click **Activate** from the toolbar. 

Results

The status of the criteria profile is updated to show that it is now active. The criteria profile can now begin to intercept jobs according to the specifications of the criteria hierarchy and relaunch them as defined in the IBM Workload Scheduler job. If another criteria profile of the same criteria type was active, its status changes to inactive.

Using template files

About this task

A template is a file with extension `.jdf` located in the same directory as the interception criteria file (`TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/r3batch_icp`). The template file contains instructions for the interception collector about how to run the intercepted SAP job under control of IBM Workload Scheduler. Its syntax corresponds to the syntax of `docommand` in `conman`. You can use any text editor to maintain this file. Ensure that the user, `LJUser`, is able to read and write to this file.

If the user template file is empty, a template file named `default.jdf` is used. If `default.jdf` does not exist, the following instructions are used:

```
alias=SAP_$RUN_$JOBNAME_$JOBCOUNT
```

This means that the intercepted SAP jobs are to be restarted immediately, because of the absence of the `at=` job option. Their IBM Workload Scheduler names are composed of the string `SAP_`, the current run number of the interception collector, and the name and ID of the SAP job.

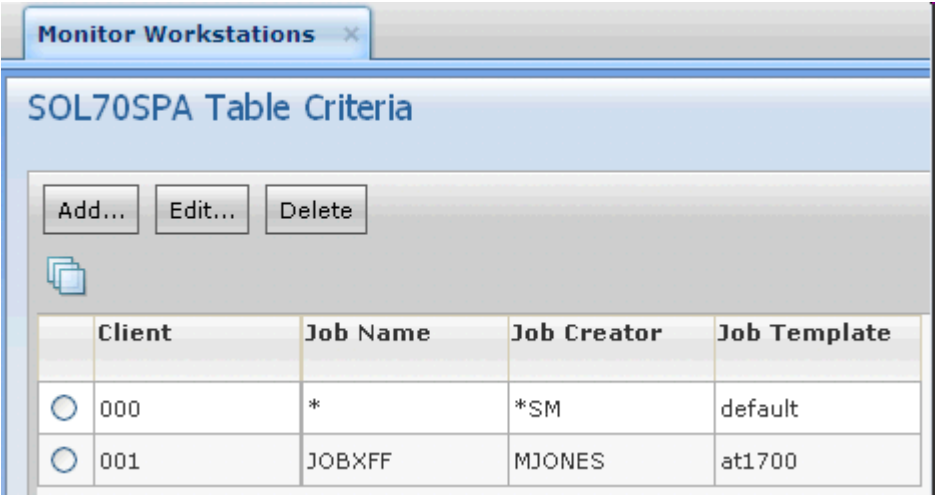
The instruction set for restarting an intercepted SAP job is retrieved in the following order:

- 1. From the template file, if an existing template is specified in the interception criteria file.
- 2. From the default template file, if the template is specified in the interception criteria file but does not exist, or if the template is not specified in the interception criteria file.
- 3. From the default instruction set, if the default template file does not exist.

Job interception example

The following example demonstrates how different template files can be used to determine when an intercepted SAP job is restarted. The interception criteria table contains the following entries:

Figure 19. The Table Criteria panel



The table criteria specified, implies the following:

Client 000

All jobs started in client 000 by SAP users whose user name begins with sm, will be intercepted. The interception collector restarts the jobs using the instructions from the default template file default.jdf. If the default template file does not exist, then the SAP jobs are restarted immediately as specified in the default instruction set:

```
alias=SAP_$RUN_$JOBNAME_$JOBCOUNT
```

Client 001

The job named, JOBXFF, started in client 001 by SAP user named, MJONES, will be intercepted. The interception collector restarts the jobs using the instructions from the template file at1700.jdf. The SAP jobs are restarted at 17:00 with a random name, because of the alias command. The template file at1700.jdf contains the following entry:

```
alias;at=1700
```

Using placeholders

In the template files you can use a number of placeholders that are replaced by the interception collector at run time. They are listed in [Table 81: Placeholders for job interception template files on page 449](#).

Table 81. Placeholders for job interception template files

Placeholder	Description
\$CPU	Name of the extended agent workstation where the interception collector runs.
\$CLIENT	Client number of the intercepted SAP job.
\$JOBNAME	Name of the intercepted SAP job.
\$JOBCOUNT	Job ID of the intercepted SAP job.
\$USER	Name of the user who launched the SAP job.
\$JOBNUM	Job number of the interception collector.
\$RUN	Current run number of the interception collector.
\$SCHED	Schedule name of the interception collector.
\$RAND	Random number.

The template:

```
alias=ICP_$RAND_$JOBNAME_$JOBCOUNT_$CLIENT;at=1000
```

instructs the interception collector to restart the SAP job named `DEMO_JOB` with job ID `12345678` on client `100` at `10:00` as IBM Workload Scheduler job `ICP_1432_DEMO_JOB_12345678_100`.

Activating the job interception feature

Activate the job interception feature for the appropriate BC-XBP interface.

About this task

To enable the job interception feature: .

1. Run ABAP report `INITXBP2`.

Result

This report shows you the current status of the job interception and parent-child features, and allows you to toggle the status of both features.

2. Select the BC-XBP interface version as appropriate:
 - **Activate 3.0**
 - **Activate 2.0**
3. Save the changes.

The parent-child feature

In some situations, an SAP job dynamically spawns a number of other jobs; for example, to distribute the workload to the free application servers. Prominent examples are the mass activity jobs of the SAP `FI-CA` component. Before BC-XBP 2.0, it was difficult for external schedulers to handle this situation, because the business process does not usually end with the end of the initial job (parent job), but with the end of all subjobs (child jobs).

The BC-XBP 2.0 interface allows you to determine if a job has launched subjobs, together with their names and IDs, and so it is now possible to track them.

To activate this feature, use the `INITXBP2` ABAP report, which you can also use to toggle the status of job interception.

When the parent-child feature is active, IBM Workload Scheduler considers an SAP job as finished only after all its child jobs have ended. The status of the IBM Workload Scheduler job remains as `EXEC` while the parent job or any of its child jobs are running.

The status of the IBM Workload Scheduler job becomes `succ` if the parent job and all child jobs end successfully. If any of the jobs ended with an error, the status of the IBM Workload Scheduler job becomes `ABEND`.



Note: The parent-child feature can interfere with job interception because, although the parent job cannot be intercepted, any of its child jobs can be intercepted if they match the interception criteria. In this case, the IBM Workload Scheduler job remains in the `EXEC` status until the intercepted child job has been relaunched and has ended.

The joblogs of the child jobs are appended in the IBM Workload Scheduler `stdlist` after the joblog of the parent job.

Using Business Information Warehouse

Business Information Warehouse (BIW) is a data warehouse solution tailored to SAP.

Business Information Warehouse (BIW) allows business reporting and decision support.

To use the InfoPackages component, you must have the SAP Business Warehouse Systems, version 2.0B or later installed.

To use the Process Chains component, you must have the SAP Business Warehouse Systems, version 3.0B or later installed.

The Support Package 9 (SAPKW31009) for SAP Business Warehouse version 3.1 is required so that `SAP` can launch process chains.

Business Warehouse components

SAP supports two main Business Warehouse components, InfoPackages and Process Chains.

An InfoPackage is the entry point for the loading process from a specific **InfoSource** (a logical container of data source, generically named **InfoObject**). Technically, an InfoPackage is an SAP job whose aim is to load data. Like any other SAP job, it contains job-specific parameters such as start time, and dependencies.

A Process Chain is a complex chain of different processes and their relationships. The processes within a process chain are not limited to data load processes, or InfoPackages, but also include:

- Attribute/Hierarchy Change run
- Aggregate rollup
- ABAP program
- Another process chain
- Customer build process

Defining user authorizations to manage SAP Business Warehouse InfoPackages and process chains

What you need to use SAP R/3 Business Warehouse InfoPackages and process chains.

Access method for SAP can manage SAP Business Warehouse InfoPackages and process chains. To use the SAP Business Warehouse functions, you must define an IBM Workload Scheduler user within SAP with full authorization for the ABAP Workbench object S_DEVELOP.

The user must also belong to the following profiles:

- S_BI-WHM_RFC (for Business Information Warehouse version 7.0, or later)
- S_RS_ALL
- Z_MAESTRO

Managing SAP Business Warehouse InfoPackages and process chains

You can manage existing InfoPackages and process chains on SAP systems from SAP.

Business Warehouse InfoPackages and process chains can only be created from the SAP environment. However, the Dynamic Workload Console supports pick lists of InfoPackages and process chains, so that you can also define IBM Workload Scheduler jobs for these existing objects.

You can create IBM Workload Scheduler job definitions that map to SAP jobs that already exist on SAP systems in the following environments:

-  Distributed
-  z/OS

The SAP jobs can run on extended agent workstations, dynamic agent workstations, dynamic pools, and z-centric workstations depending on the type of job definition you choose to create.

This section describes how to perform tasks such as creating the IBM Workload Scheduler job definitions that map to SAP jobs, how to display the details of these jobs, and how to rerun a process chain job.

Creating an IBM Workload Scheduler job that contains InfoPackages or process chains

Creating a job with InfoPackages or process chains.

About this task

This section describes how to create an IBM Workload Scheduler SAP job definition that references a Business Warehouse InfoPackage or Process Chain SAP job.

SAP job definitions can be created using both a distributed or z/OS engine and they can be scheduled to run on the following workstations with the r3batch access method:

- An IBM Workload Scheduler extended agent workstation. A workstation that is hosted by a fault-tolerant agent or master workstation.
- A dynamic agent workstation.
- A dynamic pool.
- A z-centric workstation.

Refer to the Dynamic Workload Console online help for a complete description of all UI elements for both engine types and all supported workstation types.

Take into consideration that:

- To be able to schedule InfoPackages using IBM Workload Scheduler, the scheduling options of the InfoPackage must have:
 - Start type set to **Start later in background process**.
 - Start time set to **Immediate**.
- To be able to control process chains using IBM Workload Scheduler, the scheduling options of the process chain must be **Start Using Meta Chain or API**. If the process chain is set to **Direct Scheduling**, it starts immediately when activated in the SAP system or transported to another SAP system.
- If you are using an operating system that does **not** support Unicode, set the **TWSXA_LANG** option. For details about the operating systems that support Unicode, see [Unicode support on SAP on page 365](#). For details about the **TWSXA_LANG** option, see [Setting National Language support options on page 508](#).

You can create a SAP job definition to reference an InfoPackage or process chain using the Dynamic Workload Console.

The following procedure creates an IBM Workload Scheduler SAP job definition and references an InfoPackage or process chain in the IBM Workload Scheduler database:

1. Click **IBM Workload Scheduler>Design>Workload Designer**.
2. Select a an engine. The **Workload Designer** is displayed.
3. From the Working List pane, click:
 - z/OS engine: **New > ERP**
 - Distributed engine: **New > Job Definition > ERP**
4. Select the SAP job definition in accordance with the engine and type of agent on which the job runs.

z/OS engine**SAP**

This job definition references an existing job on the SAP system and can run on dynamic agent workstations, dynamic pools, and z-centric workstations.

Distributed engine**SAP Job on Dynamic Workstations**

This job definition can run on dynamic agent workstations, dynamic pools, and z-centric workstations.

SAP Job on XA Workstations

This job definition can run on extended agent workstations. A workstation that is hosted by a fault-tolerant agent or master workstation.

5. In the Workspace pane, specify the properties for the job definition you are creating using the tabs available. The tabs for each type of SAP job definition are similar, but there are some differences depending on the type of engine you selected and the type of workstation on which the job runs. For more detailed information about the UI elements on each tab, see the Dynamic Workload Console online help.

The **General** page requires information regarding the workstation that connects to the remote SAP system. If a default SAP connection is already configured, then these fields are already prefilled, otherwise, you can specify the required information on the General page or you can configure a default connection to be used each time it is required in a definition, see [Setting the SAP data connection on page 394](#) for more information.

On the **Task** page, in **Subtype**, specify either **BW Process Chain** or **BW InfoPackage**.

6. Click **Save** to add the SAP job definition to the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

Task string to define Business Warehouse InfoPackages and process chain jobs

This section describes the task string parameters that control the running of the Business Warehouse InfoPackages and process chain jobs. You must specify them in the following places when you define their associated IBM Workload Scheduler jobs:

- If you use the Dynamic Workload Console, in the **SAP command line** field of the Task page of the SAP job definition panel.
- As arguments of the `scriptname` keyword in the job definition statement, if you use the IBM Workload Scheduler command line.
- As arguments of the `JOBCMD` keyword in the `JOBREC` statement in the `SCRIPTLIB` of IBM Z Workload Scheduler, if you are scheduling in an end-to-end environment.

The string syntax is the following:

Job definition syntax

```
-job job_name -i { ipak_ | pchain_ } [ -debug ] [ -trace ] [ -flag { imm | immed } ] [ -flag { enable_pchainlog | disable_pchainlog } ] [ -flag { enable_ipaklog | disable_ipaklog } ] [ -flag { level_all_pchainlog | level_n_pchainlog } ] [ -flag { pchainlog_chains_only | pchainlog_chains_and_failed_proc | pchainlog_complete } ] [ -flag { enable_pchainlog_bapi_msg | disable_pchainlog_bapi_msg } ] [ -flag { enable_pchain_details | disable_pchain_details } ] [ -flag { pchain_rerun | pchain_restart | pchain_refresh } ]
```

The parameters are described in [Table 76: Task string parameters for SAP jobs on page 400](#).

Table 82. Task string parameters for SAP jobs

Parameter	Description	GUI Support
-job <i>job_name</i>	The name of the task to be run. It is either an InfoPackage technical field name, or a process chain name. This parameter is mandatory.	✓
-i { <i>ipak_</i> <i>pchain_</i> }	One of the following: ipak_ Target job is an InfoPackage pchain_ Target job is a process chain	✓
-debug	Turns on the most verbose <code>r3batch</code> trace. This option is for debugging the extended agent and should not be used in standard production.	✓
-trace	Turns on the <code>SAP RFC</code> trace. When you use this option, a trace file is created in the IBM Workload Scheduler <code>methods</code> directory. In UNIX, this trace file is called <code>dev_rfc</code> . In Windows, the file is called <code>rfcXXXXX_XXXXX.trc</code> . The <code>methods</code> directory is located in: UNIX On UNIX operating systems <code>TWA_DATA_DIR/methods</code> Windows On Windows operating systems <code>TWA_home\methods</code> This option is for debugging the extended agent and should not be used in standard production. Ensure that you delete the trace option from the job after you have	✓

Table 82. Task string parameters for SAP jobs (continued)

Parameter	Description	GUI Support
	performed debug procedures. The trace file can become very large and unmanageable.	
-flag {imm immed}	Specifies to launch the job immediately, meaning that if there are no spare work processes, the job fails.	✓
-flag {enable_pchainlog disable_pchainlog}	Enables or disables retrieval and appending of the process chain job log in the IBM Workload Scheduler <code>stdlist</code> . Disable if the size of the log affects performance. A related configuration option can be set for this purpose at a more general level. See Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374 .	✓
-flag {enable_ipaklog disable_ipaklog}	Enables or disables retrieval and appending of the InfoPackage job log in the IBM Workload Scheduler <code>stdlist</code> . Disable if the size of the log affects performance. A related configuration option can be set for this purpose at a more general level. See Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374 .	
-flag {level_n_pchainlog level_all_pchainlog}	Allows for retrieval of process chain logs down to the process chain level you specify. level_n_pchainlog Specifies that the process chains are logged down to, and including, the level represented by number <i>n</i>. level_all_pchainlog Specifies that all the process chains are logged. The default is <code>level_1_pchainlog</code>. A related configuration option can be set for this purpose at a more general level. See Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374.	
-flag {pchainlog_chains_only pchainlog_chains_and_failed_proc pchainlog_complete}	Specifies what type of process chain-related logs will be retrieved.	

Table 82. Task string parameters for SAP jobs (continued)

Parameter	Description	GUI Support
	pchainlog_chains_only Only the process chains are logged. pchainlog_chains_and_failed_proc In addition to the process chains, all the processes that failed are also logged. pchainlog_complete The process chains and all processes are logged. The default is pchainlog_complete. A related configuration option can be set for this purpose at a more general level. See Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374.	
-flag {enable_pchainlog_bapi_msg disable_pchainlog_bapi_msg}	Enables or disables retrieval of additional messages from the BAPI calls from the SAP Business Warehouse process chains and appends them to the IBM Workload Scheduler <code>stdlist</code> .	
-flag {enable_pchain_details disable_pchain_details}	Enables or disables the display of details about the process chain job. A related configuration option can be set for this purpose at a more general level. See Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374 .	✓
-flag {pchain_rerun pchain_restart pchain_refresh}	Determines the action that IBM Workload Scheduler performs when you rerun a job that submits a process chain.	✓
	pchain_rerun IBM Workload Scheduler creates another process chain instance and submits it to be run again. pchain_restart IBM Workload Scheduler restarts the original process chain from the failing processes to the end.	

Table 82. Task string parameters for SAP jobs (continued)

Parameter	Description	GUI Support
pchain_refresh	IBM Workload Scheduler updates the status and details of the original process chain. For more details about rerunning a process chain, refer to Rerunning a process chain job on page 460 .	



Note: Typically, the `-debug` and `-trace` options are for debugging the extended agent and should not be used in standard production.

The following is an example for an InfoPackage job whose technical field name is ZPAK_3LZ3JRF29AJDQM65ZJBJF50MY:

```
-job ZPAK_3LZ3JRF29AJDQM65ZJBJF50MY -i ipak_
```

Displaying details about Business Warehouse InfoPackages

About this task

To display details about a Business Warehouse InfoPackage, perform the following steps:

1. From the **Design** menu, click **Manage Jobs on SAP**.
2. In **Engine name**, select the name of the IBM Workload Scheduler engine connection from which you want to view SAP job details.
3. In **SAP Job Type**, select **Business Warehouse InfoPackage**.
4. In **Workstation name**, specify the workstation where the SAP job runs. If you do not know the object name, click the ... (Browse) button. In the **Name** and **Location** panel, enter some characters of the object name (asterisk is supported as a wildcard) and click **Start**. From the displayed list, select the workstation you want to use, and click **OK**.
5. Click **Display**. The list of available jobs of type Business Warehouse InfoPackage for the specified engine is displayed.
6. Select the job for which you want to display the details and click **Details**.
7. When you have finished viewing the details for the job, click **OK** to return to the list of SAP jobs on the workstation specified.

Displaying details about a process chain job

You can view the details for a process chain job including any local subchains contained in the process chain.

Before you begin

Ensure you have performed the following steps before running this procedure:

- Set the **pchain_details** option to **on** in the common options file. For more information about this option, refer to [Defining the common options on page 374](#).
- **Distributed** In a distributed environment, customize the Browse Jobs tasks that you created *before* installing IBM Workload Scheduler 8.4 Fix Pack 1 to show the **Job Type** column. For details about how to customize the task properties, refer to the Dynamic Workload Console online help.
- In a z/OS environment, you must customize the task properties to display the **Advanced Job Type** column that indicates the job type. For details about how to customize the task properties, refer to the Dynamic Workload Console online help.

About this task

To display details about an SAP Process Chain that you scheduled as an IBM Workload Scheduler job, perform the following steps from the Dynamic Workload Console.

1. Click **Monitoring and Reporting > Workload Monitoring > Monitor Workload**.
2. In **Engine name**, select the name of the IBM Workload Scheduler engine connection from where you want to work with SAP jobs.
3. In **Object Type**, leave the default selection **Job**.
4. Click **Run**.
5. The table of results corresponding to the search criteria is displayed:

Figure 21. Dynamic Workload Console - Table of results

Status	Internal Status	Job	Job Type	Workstation (Job)	Job Stream
Successful	SUCC	PC_-1967534151	SAP Process Chain	W6470AGE	JOBS
Successful	SUCC	PC_301475144	SAP Process Chain	W6470AGE	JOBS
Successful	SUCC	PC_-109893088	SAP Process Chain	W6470AGE	JOBS
Error	ABEND	PC_-1347740193	SAP Process Chain	W6470AGE	JOBS
Error	ABEND	PC_646387164	SAP Process Chain	W6470AGE	JOBS
Error	ABEND	PC_-1513805554	SAP Process Chain	W6470AGE	JOBS
Error	ABEND	PC_1682550152	SAP Process Chain	W6470AGE	JOBS
Error	ABEND	PC_-573813697	SAP Process Chain	W6470AGE	JOBS
Successful	SUCC	PC_2145163497	SAP Process Chain	W6470AGE	JOBS
Successful	SUCC	PC_-1340397696	SAP Process Chain	W6470AGE	JOBS
Successful	SUCC	PC_-355196273	SAP Process Chain	W6470AGE	JOBS
Successful	SUCC	PC_1301210520	SAP Process Chain	W6470AGE	JOBS

6. Select a process chain job. For each process chain job, a hyperlink named **SAP Process Chain** is displayed.

Distributed

Distributed environment

The **Job Type** column displays **SAP Process Chain** to help you identify SAP process chain jobs.

z/OS

z/OS environment

The **Advanced Job Type** column displays **SAP Process Chain** to help you identify SAP process chain jobs.

Click the hyperlink for the job whose details you want to display.

7. The details for the process chain are displayed:

Figure 22. Dynamic Workload Console - Details of a process chain job

'PCHAINTEST01' SAP Process Chain

Monitor Jobs > Active Tasks (1) > All Jobs in plan (Distributed) (Owner... > 'PCHAINTEST01' SAP Process Chain

Refresh Close View Expand All Collapse All

'PCHAINTEST01' SAP Process Chain

Process	Type	Link	Status	Start Time	End Time	Description	ID	Process ID
▼ STARTER_PCHAIN_01	Start		Completed	2/13/06 1:15 PM CET	2/13/06 1:15 PM CET	STRATER PCHAIN 01	CXX9B4FFSGF7AH8EUL7FH30GQ0	0
NODELEV2	Program	Green	Completed	2/13/06 1:15 PM CET	2/13/06 1:15 PM CET	NODE_02_LEV_01	BI_PROCESS_ABAP_13154100	1
NODELEVE1	Program	Green	Completed	2/13/06 1:15 PM CET	2/13/06 1:15 PM CET	NODE_01_LEV_01	BI_PROCESS_ABAP_13154200	2

IBM Workload Scheduler monitors the process chain job until the job completes. The details shown reflect the last monitoring process performed. Perform a restart of the process chain indicating a refresh operation to synchronize the details with those on the remote SAP system to have the most updated information possible. If the process chain contains local subchains, a hyperlink is displayed for each one. Click the hyperlink you want, to display details about the corresponding subchain job. Alternatively, you can display the process chain details by clicking the hyperlink for the job and display the job properties panel. Click the hyperlink shown under **SAP Job Details**. The details for the process chain are displayed.

Rerunning a process chain job

Process chain jobs can be rerun from the start, rerunning the entire process chain, or they can be restarted from a specific process. Restarting a process enables you to restart without rerunning the whole process chain again. You can choose to either restart from the failed processes in a process chain, or restart a specific process indicating the related process ID.

To rerun an SAP job that submits a process chain, you can use one of the following user interfaces:

conman

For details, refer to the *IBM Workload Scheduler User's Guide and Reference*.

Dynamic Workload Console

See [Procedure for rerunning a process chain job on page 464](#) for information about performing this task from the console.

For information about rerunning an SAP Standard R/3 job, see [Rerunning a standard SAP job on page 415](#).

In general, when you rerun a process chain job, the new job is assigned the name of the alias you specify. To keep the original job name, set the IBM Workload Scheduler global option **enRetainNameOnRerunFrom** to **yes**. For details about this option, see *IBM Workload Scheduler Administration Guide*.

On extended agents, an alias is mandatory for each action you perform on the process chain job and the action itself, is the prefix of the alias name. For example, if you choose to restart a process chain from the failed processes, and assign PCHAIN1 as the alias for the process chain job, then the new job name is `Restart_PCHAIN1`.

z/OS In a z/OS environment, the process chain job maintains the same name and the Monitor Jobs view always displays the status for the last action performed on the job. Every time a rerun is performed on a process chain job, a new instance is generated each with a different ID.



Note:

1. By default, if you do not specify any setting, rerunning a process chain job corresponds to submitting a new process chain instance.
2. If you kill an IBM Workload Scheduler job that submits a process chain, the process chain is removed from schedule in the SAP Business Information Warehouse system. To restart the same process chain instance with r3batch, you require at least the following SAP Business Information Warehouse versions:
 - 3.0 with SP25
 - 3.1 with SP19
 - 3.5 with SP10
 - 7.0

If your version of SAP Business Information Warehouse is earlier, you can restart the process chain only manually, through the SAP graphical interface.

[Table 83: Actions performed when you rerun a process chain job on page 461](#) shows the action performed when you rerun an IBM Workload Scheduler job that submits a process chain, depending on the settings you specify. These are the actions performed when you submit the rerun operation using the Rerun button from the Monitor Jobs view.

Table 83. Actions performed when you rerun a process chain job

Action performed	Description and setting
A new process chain instance is submitted	IBM Workload Scheduler creates another process chain instance and submits it to be run again. This action occurs when: On extended agents, you specify <code>RERUNvalue</code> as the step to rerun, where <code>value</code> is any value you want. This setting overrides the settings in the job definition and options file, if any. In an end-to-end environment, you can perform this action on a centralized job by adding the following parameter to the script file: <pre>-flag pchain_rerun</pre>

Table 83. Actions performed when you rerun a process chain job (continued)

Action performed	Description and setting
	- In the job definition, you set <code>-flag pchain_rerun</code>. This setting overrides the setting in the options file, if any. For a description of this parameter, see Table 82: Task string parameters for SAP jobs on page 454. - In the options file, you set the <code>pchain_recover</code> option to <code>rerun</code>. For a description of this option, refer to Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374.
The original process chain is rerun from the failed processes	IBM Workload Scheduler restarts the original process chain from the failed processes to the end. In this way, after you detected the error that caused the failure and performed the recovery action, you can rerun the process chain job from the failed processes and have its run completed. This action is performed only if at least one process in the process chain did not complete successfully. It occurs when: - On extended agents, you specify <code>RESTARTvalue</code> as the step to rerun, where <code>value</code> is any value you want. This setting overrides the settings in the job definition and options file, if any. In an end-to-end environment, you can perform this action on a centralized job by adding the following parameter to the script file: <pre>-flag pchain_restart</pre> - In the job definition, you set <code>-flag pchain_restart</code>. This setting overrides the setting in the options file, if any. For a description of this parameter, see Table 82: Task string parameters for SAP jobs on page 454. - In the options file, you set the <code>pchain_recover</code> option to <code>restart</code>. For a description of this option, refer to Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374.
The process that you specify is restarted	IBM Workload Scheduler restarts the process of the original process chain that you specify, and monitors the process chain run until its final state. On extended agents, this action occurs when you specify <code>PROCESSprocessID</code> as the step to rerun, where <code>processID</code> is the identifier of the process you want. For example, if the process ID is <code>3</code>, you must specify <code>PROCESS3</code> as the step. You can view the process IDs in the following ways:

Table 83. Actions performed when you rerun a process chain job (continued)

Action performed	Description and setting
	- Dynamic Workload Console, version 8.5 or later. From the panel where the details about the process chain are displayed, see the column named Process ID. For details about how to display the process chain details, refer to Displaying details about a process chain job on page 457. - IBM Workload Scheduler job log, as follows: <pre> +++ EEW01071I Start of process chain PCHAIN1 Process Chain PCHAIN1 (Log ID:D3C0ZWAYESD58PX0YPE0GNZK7). ----- Process Type: TRIGGER. Process Variant: PCHAIN1_STARTER. Actual State: F. ... >> Process ID: 3. Process Type: ABAP. Process Variant: Z_PCHAIN1_NODE3. Actual State: F. Instance: D3C0ZXL3IJ8LR509Q1D9A4Y4N. >> Process ID: 4. Process Type: ABAP. Process Variant: Z_PCHAIN1_NODE1. Actual State: . Instance: D3C0ZZKS0RR88DKRJQ09Z1WW7. +++ EEW01072I End of process chain PCHAIN1 </pre>

The following list shows the meaning of the alphabetic value used as the actual state in the job log:

Actual state

Meaning

A

Active

F

Completed

G

Successfully completed

P

Planned

Q

Released

Table 83. Actions performed when you rerun a process chain job (continued)

Action performed	Description and setting
R	
	Ended with errors
S	
	Skipped
X	
	Canceled
Y	
	Ready
blank	
	Undefined
The status and details of the original process chain are updated	In an end-to-end environment, you can perform this action on a centralized job by adding the following parameter to the script file:
	<code>-pchain_pid processID</code>
	IBM Workload Scheduler monitors the original process chain until its final status.
	This action occurs when:
	On extended agents, you specify <code>REFRESHvalue</code> as the step to rerun, where <code>value</code> is any value you want. This setting overrides the setting in the job definition, if any.
	In an end-to-end environment, you can perform this action on a centralized job by adding the following parameter to the script file:
	<code>-flag pchain_refresh</code>
	In the job definition, you set <code>-flag pchain_refresh</code>. For a description of this parameter, see Table 82: Task string parameters for SAP jobs on page 454.

Procedure for rerunning a process chain job

You can rerun all of the processes in the process chain from the Dynamic Workload Console or you can rerun at a process level.

Before you begin

z/OS In z/OS environments, you need to set the status of the job to **Ready** before you can rerun the job.

1. Select a job and click **Set Status**.
2. In **Change Status**, select **Ready**.
3. Click **OK** to return to the list of jobs.

About this task

To rerun a process chain SAP job, perform the following steps:

1. Click **Monitoring and Reporting > Workload Monitoring > Monitor Workload**.
2. In **Engine name**, select the name of the IBM Workload Scheduler engine connection from where you want to work with SAP jobs.
3. In **Object Type**, leave the default selection **Job**.
4. Click **Run**.
5. A list of jobs is displayed. Select a process chain job.

Distributed

Distributed Distributed environment

The **Job Type** column displays **SAP Process Chain** to help you identify SAP process chain jobs.

z/OS

z/OS environment

The **Advanced Job Type** column displays **SAP Process Chain** to help you identify SAP process chain jobs. To display the **Advanced Job Type** column in the table, edit the **Task Properties** and in **Column Definition**, add the **Advanced Job Type** column to the **Selected Columns** list. Move the column up to define the order of the column in the table and make it more visible.

6. Rerun the job.
 - a. Click **More Actions > Restart Process Chain**.
 - b. Select the action you want to perform on the selected process chain:

Rerun

Reruns the entire process chain. The process chain ID on the SAP system remains the same, as well as the job identifier on z/OS systems.

Distributed Specify an alias to identify the new job. In distributed systems the rerun process chain is identified with this alias name prefixed by **RERUN**.

Refresh

Refreshes the Dynamic Workload Console view with the latest updates on the remote SAP system so that the two views are synchronized.

Distributed Specify an alias to identify the new job. In distributed systems the refreshed process chain is identified with this alias name prefixed by **REFRESH**.

Restart from the failed processes

Action available only for process chains in error state. Rerun only some steps of the process chain, starting from the failed processes.

Distributed Specify an alias to identify the new job. In distributed systems the restarted process chain is identified with this alias name prefixed by `RESTART`.

Restart from a specific process

Action available only for process chains in error state. Rerun only some steps of the process chain, starting from the process specified in the **SAP Process ID** field. You can find the process ID by opening the job log or viewing the job type details from the table of results of your monitor job task.

Distributed In distributed systems the restarted process chain is identified with this alias prefixed by `PROCESS`.

7. Click **OK** to perform the selected action on the process chain.

Results

The job reruns immediately.

Business scenario: rerunning the original process chain job from the failed process

As a scheduling administrator, you are responsible for managing batch jobs in both SAP and non-SAP systems. The workflow is one or more job streams in IBM Workload Scheduler. A job stream contains jobs that collect and prepare data for month-end closing over all sales channels. The month-end closing report requires data to be collected from several sales and distribution systems. Data is collected using local and remote process chains in the SAP Business Intelligence system. The process chains include a set of Infopackages, ABAP reports, and operating system jobs to sort the report data by a logical hierarchy.

To administer from a single point of control, you link the SAP process chains to IBM Workload Scheduler through IBM Workload Scheduler.

During batch processing, an IBM Workload Scheduler job comprising a process chain, failed. Optionally, you can see which processes failed either from the Dynamic Workload Console (for details, see [Displaying details about a process chain job on page 457](#)) or in the job log. You ask the SAP administrator to fix the cause of the error, then, on an extended agent, you rerun the IBM Workload Scheduler job by setting the step as `RESTARTvalue`. In this way, the original process chain is restarted from the failed processes and continues until the ending step.

Alternatively, you can select the process chain job from the Monitor Jobs view on the Dynamic Workload Console and then select **More Actions > Restart Process Chain** and then select the **Restart from the failed processes** option.

Business scenario: restarting a specific process of the process chain

You might decide to restart a single process as a preparation step before restarting the failed processes of a process chain. A failed process might have corrupted some data, so you run the single process to restore the data and set up the required system state before you rerun the other processes in the process chain.

Suppose you are using InfoPackages and process chains to extract data from one or several sources and you want to transform this data into managerial reports, for example by using aggregate functions. If the process that transforms this data fails, it might corrupt the data that the preceding InfoPackage process had successfully extracted. After fixing the problem with the transformation process, you must restart the InfoPackage extraction process to reload the data, even though this extraction process had completed successfully before. Restart the failed transformation process only after the data has been reloaded, either by restarting the failed processes of the process chain or by restarting just the failed transformation process.

On an extended agent, from the Monitor Jobs view on the Dynamic Workload Console, select the process chain and click **Rerun**, then specify `PROCESSprocessID` as the step to rerun, where *processID* is the identifier of the process you want to restart.

To restart a specific process of the process chain, from the Monitor Jobs view on the Dynamic Workload Console, select the process chain and click **More Actions > Restart Process Chain** and then select the **Restart from a specific process** option, specifying the process ID in the **SAP Process ID** field.

Job throttling feature

Learn how the job throttling feature helps you to improve the efficiency of your scheduling on SAP systems and reduce the batch window for your SAP jobs to a minimum.

Using advanced XBP 2.0 and 3.0 functions, such as the job interception and parent-child, the job throttler ensures that the SAP system is not overloaded and the number of released jobs does not exceed the total number of SAP background work processes in the system.

You can also configure the job throttler to send data related to its activity to the SAP Computing Center Monitoring System (CCMS) for monitoring purposes.

Business scenario

You manage your Internet sales through an application software that verifies that data is correct, checks the availability of the item, and validates the order. To process all the orders received, you scheduled an IBM Workload Scheduler job to run every 12 hours, connect to SAP, and generate a child job for every order to process. Child jobs are in charge of creating shipping bills, checking destination address, and forwarding the orders to the appropriate carrier, thus optimizing the delivery process. A potential overload of the system might occur during peak times, for example over Christmas, and could risk the late delivery of orders, damaging your business. To manage the submission of jobs and activate an advanced management of their priority class (for both parent and child jobs), enable the job throttling feature.

Additionally, you might want to set a policy so that an SAP CCMS alert is raised each time the number of jobs to be released under the control of the job throttler exceeds a certain threshold. To do this, you enable the job throttler to send data to the SAP CCMS monitoring architecture. At job throttler startup, an MTE that monitors the number of jobs to be released by the

job throttler is created. By including the MTE in a monitoring set and specifying the related threshold, you are alerted each time the threshold is exceeded.

Software prerequisites

To use job throttling, you must have the SAP JCo 3.0.2 libraries or later (`dll` and `jar` files) installed in the `<data_dir>/methods/throttling/lib` directory. To download JCo 3.0.x, visit the SAP Service Marketplace web site.

Setting and using job throttling

The job throttler enqueues intercepted jobs and releases them when the background work processes that they need on the SAP server or SAP server group are available. The queue of intercepted jobs is sorted by scheduling time and priority of SAP jobs. When the SAP parent-child feature is enabled, child jobs inherit their progenitor's priority so that new urgent jobs are run before other planned jobs.

The following sections describe the steps to operate job throttling.

Step 1. Setting the options in the options file

About this task

To define the behavior of the job throttling feature, set the following options in the options file. For detailed information about the options, see [Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374](#).

- `throttling_enable_job_class_inheritance`
- `throttling_enable_job_interception`
- `throttling_interval`
- `throttling_max_connections`
- `throttling_release_all_on_exit`

Step 2. Enabling and configuring the job interception feature

About this task

As a prerequisite, the job throttler requires that the job interception feature is enabled in the SAP system. To enable and configure job interception, follow these steps.



Note: Ensure that the job throttling and job interception features are not running at the same time. The job throttler cannot start if interception collector jobs are running.

1. Enable job interception, either automatically or manually, as follows:

Automatic activation (meaning that the job throttler enables the job interception on SAP system)

In the options file of the workstation with the r3batch access method you are using, set `throttling_enable_job_interception=on` (this is the default).

Manual activation

- a. In the SAP system, run the INITXBP2 ABAP program in the transaction `se38` and enable job interception.
- b. In the options file of the workstation with the r3batch access method you are using, set `throttling_enable_job_interception=off`.



Note: When you stop the job throttler, the setting for the job interception feature that was previously configured on the SAP system is restored.

2. In the SAP system, configure the job interception criteria as follows:
 - a. Launch the transaction `se16` to access the table TBCICPT1, where the interception settings are maintained.
 - b. Set the job name, creator, and client related to the jobs you want to intercept. To intercept all SAP jobs, specify the wildcard * (asterisk) for the job name, creator, and client.
 - c. Save your settings and close the dialog.

SAP will intercept all the jobs matching the selection criteria, and the job throttling will release all the jobs that were intercepted.

Step 3. Enabling job class inheritance

About this task

You can configure the job throttler to have the intercepted job inherit the priority class from its progenitor (the top-level job in the hierarchy), if the progenitor class is higher than the intercepted job class. To do this, in the options file set `throttling_enable_job_class_inheritance=on`; this setting automatically enables the parent-child feature on the SAP system.



Note: When you stop the job throttler, the setting for the parent-child feature that was previously configured on the SAP system is restored.

Step 4. Configuring the logging properties

About this task

You can configure the trace properties of the job throttler by editing the logging configuration file `jobthrottling.properties` located in `<data_dir>/methods/throttling/properties`.

To configure the trace level, follow the procedure.

1. Set the trace level property. The supported trace levels are: `DEBUG_MIN`, `DEBUG_MID`, and `DEBUG_MAX`, where `DEBUG_MAX` is the most verbose trace level.
2. Save the changes.

Results

When making changes to the trace level setting, the changes are effective immediately after saving the .properties file. Other changes might require a restart to make them effective.

What to do next

You can also configure the name, number, and size of the trace file. By default, the job throttler generates a maximum of 3 files of 5 MB in the `<data_dir>/methods/traces` directory.



Note: The job throttler creates the `<data_dir>/methods/traces` directory as soon as it is started.

Step 5. Starting and stopping the job throttling feature

About this task

To start job throttling, run the `jobthrottling` executable file related to the operating system you are using. Optionally, you can create an IBM Workload Scheduler job that starts the job throttler.



Note: On Windows systems using a single-byte character language, to start job throttling from a command prompt ensure that the DOS shell font is *not* Lucida Console. Ensure also that you set the IBM Workload Scheduler environment by entering the following command:

```
TWA_home\twc_env.cmd
```

From a command prompt, enter:

UNIX operating systems

```
TWA_home/methods/jobthrottling.sh {XA_Unique_ID|base_options_filename} [-scratch]
```

Windows operating systems

```
TWA_home\methods\jobthrottling.bat {XA_Unique_ID|base_options_filename} [-scratch]
```

Where:

XA_Unique_ID

The unique identifier for the extended agent workstation you are using. See [UNIQUE_ID on page 312](#) for details about retrieving the unique identifier for a workstation.

base_options_filename

For dynamic and z-centric agents, the file name of the options file without the extension, defined on the engine workstation hosting the workstation with the r3batch access method.

-scratch

If you enabled the job throttler to send data to CCMS (for details, see [Sending data from job throttling to the CCMS Monitoring Architecture on page 471](#)), the job throttler starts and resets the attribute MTE named `JT total released jobs` to 0. If you do not specify **-scratch**, the job throttler starts and increments the `JT total released jobs`.

This parameter is optional, and has effect only if the job throttler sent its data to CCMS at least once before.

To know the syntax for the `jobthrottling` command, run the command as follows:

```
jobthrottling -u
```

To stop the job throttler, enter the following command (optionally, you can create an IBM Workload Scheduler job that stops the job throttler):

UNIX operating systems

```
TWA_home/methods/stop-jobthrottling.sh {XA_Unique_ID|base_options_filename}
```

Windows operating systems

```
TWA_home\methods\stop-jobthrottling.bat {XA_Unique_ID|base_options_filename}
```

Alternatively, you can enter the following command (you must be connected as `TWSUser` and have read and write permissions on the `txt` file):

```
echo shutdown > TWA_home/methods/{XA_Unique_ID|base_options_filename}_jobthrottling_cmd.txt
```

The job throttler stops:

- When the timestamp of `{XA_Unique_ID|base_options_filename}_jobthrottling_cmd.txt` is later than the time when the job throttler started.
- Within the time interval you specified in the `throttling_interval` option.

Sending data from job throttling to the CCMS Monitoring Architecture

About this task

You can configure the job throttler to send data related to its activity to the SAP Computing Center Monitoring System (CCMS) for monitoring purposes. Sending data from the job throttler to CCMS is supported if you have at least the SAP Web Application Server 6.20, Support Package 12 installed.

In the options file, set the following options (for details, see [Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374](#)):

```
throttling_send_ccms_data
throttling_send_ccms_rate
```

In this way, at job throttler startup the following monitoring tree elements (MTE) are created:

- A context MTE named **ITWS for Apps**.
- An object MTE with the same name as the IBM Workload Scheduler extended agent where the job throttler is running. This object MTE belongs to the context MTE **ITWS for Apps**.
- The following attribute MTEs:

JT total released jobs

The total number of jobs that the job throttler has released since startup. This value depends on the `-scratch` option you set at job throttler startup; for details, see [Step 5. Starting and stopping the job throttling feature on page 470](#).

JT queue

The number of enqueued intercepted jobs to be released.

JT released jobs per cycle

The number of released jobs in the latest run. This value depends on the `throttling_send_ccms_rate` setting; for details, see [Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374](#).



Note: By default `throttling_release_all_on_exit` is set to `ON`, meaning that when you stop the job throttler, all the intercepted jobs are released. However, these jobs are not considered when updating the **JT total released jobs**, **JT queue**, and **JT released jobs per cycle** MTEs.

To begin monitoring, include the MTEs in the monitoring set you want, and set the thresholds to generate an alert.

You can define an IBM Workload Scheduler event rule based on the CCMS alerts; for detailed information, refer to [Defining event rules based on CCMS Monitoring Architecture alerts on page 495](#).

For example, to define an event that monitors the attribute MTE **JT total released jobs**, on the extended agent workstation with unique identifier `SAP_XA`, connected to the SAP system ID `T01`, specify the following information:

XA Workstation

`SAP_XA`

MTE SAP System ID

`T01`

MTE Monitoring Context Name

`ITWS for Apps`

MTE Monitoring Object Name

`SAP_XA`

MTE Monitoring Attribute Name:

`JT total released jobs`

Deleting the monitoring tree elements

About this task

After you stopped the job throttling feature, if you configured it to send its status data to CCMS, you can delete one or more MTEs that were created. To do this:

1. From the SAP GUI, invoke the transaction `r220` to display a list of monitor sets.
2. Locate the monitor set named SAP CCMS Technical Expert Monitors, and expand it.
3. Locate the monitor named All Monitor Contexts, and double-click it to open it.
4. From the action menu, select **Extras -> Activate Maintenance Functions**.
5. Locate the MTE named **ITWS for Apps** and select it.
6. Right-click the MTE and select **Delete**. You are prompted to choose one of the delete options.
7. Select the option you want. The MTE is deleted accordingly.



Note: Deleting **ITWS for Apps** from the All Monitor Contexts monitor, deletes also all the copies that you might have created in other monitors.

Exporting SAP factory calendars

This section describes how to export SAP factory calendars into a file format that can be processed by the IBM Workload Scheduler **composer** command line, to add the exported calendar definitions to the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

Business scenario

About this task

You might want to configure your IBM Workload Scheduler scheduling activities based on the schedule calendar in your SAP system. To do this, use the `r3batch` export function to export the SAP calendar definitions into a file whose format is compatible with the IBM Workload Scheduler **composer** command line. Based on the parameters you specify, you create a file that contains only the SAP calendar definitions that meet your scheduling requirements. Use this file as input for the **composer add** command, to import the calendar definitions into the IBM Workload Scheduler database. Your IBM Workload Scheduler and SAP calendars are now synchronized.

To keep the IBM Workload Scheduler and SAP calendar definitions synchronized and avoid duplicating data maintenance in the two environments, you can schedule to export the calendar definitions from SAP and import them to IBM Workload Scheduler on a regular basis using a dedicated job.

Exporting and importing SAP factory calendars

Refer to the following sections:

- [Exporting factory calendars on page 474](#) for an explanation about how you use the **r3batch** export function to access and download factory calendars available in an SAP system. The main purpose of this function is to create an output file that can be used by the **composer** to synchronize IBM Workload Scheduler calendars with existing SAP factory calendars, integrating the calendar definitions from SAP into IBM Workload Scheduler.
- [Importing factory calendars on page 476](#) for an explanation about how you import the exported calendar definitions into the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

For details about the IBM Workload Scheduler calendar definitions, see *User's Guide and Reference*.

Exporting factory calendars

About this task

To export an SAP calendar, from *TWA_home/methods* (where *TWA_home* is the complete path where you installed IBM Workload Scheduler) enter the following command:

Command syntax

```
r3batch -t RSC -c XA_Unique_ID -- " -calendar_ID calendarID -year_from yyyy -year_to yyyy [{ -getworkdays | -getfreedays }][ -twc_name tws_cal_name ][ -twc_description tws_cal_desc ][ -filename output_filename ] "
```

Where:

-t RSC

The identifier of the task to be performed, in this case RSC (Retrieve SAP Calendars). This parameter is required.

-c XA_Unique_ID

The unique identifier for the extended agent workstation connected to the SAP system where the calendar data to export is located. The SAP system must be configured as a workstation to IBM Workload Scheduler. This parameter is required. For information about retrieving the unique identifier for the extended agent workstation, see [UNIQUE_ID on page 312](#).

-calendar_id calendarID

The identifier of the SAP calendar to be exported, which consists of two alphanumeric characters. This parameter is required.

-year_from yyyy

The year of the calendar from when to start exporting dates, in the format yyyy. This parameter is required.

-year_to yyyy

The year of the calendar when to stop exporting dates, in the format yyyy. This parameter is required.

-getworkdays | -getfreedays

Specify getworkdays to create the IBM Workload Scheduler calendar definition based on the working days of the SAP calendar. In this way, each date of a working day is stored in the output file.

Specify getfreedays to create the IBM Workload Scheduler calendar definition based on the holidays of the SAP calendar. Each date of a non-working day is stored in the output file.

These parameters are optional and mutually exclusive. If you do not specify either, the default is getworkdays.

-twc_name tws_cal_name

The IBM Workload Scheduler name for the exported SAP factory calendar. It is stored in the output file.

You can specify up to eight alphanumeric characters. This parameter is optional, the default is SAPXX_calendarID, where:

XX

Corresponds to WK if the calendar includes only working days or FR if the calendar includes only non-working days.

calendarID

The identifier of the SAP calendar.

For example, the default IBM Workload Scheduler name for an exported calendar, whose identifier is 04, that includes only working days, is SAPWK_04.

-twc_description tws_cal_desc

The description of the IBM Workload Scheduler calendar. It is stored in the output file. You can specify up to 120 alphanumeric characters. If the description contains blanks, it must be enclosed between single quotes. This parameter is optional.

-filename output_filename

The name of the output file that is to contain the calendar definitions. This file is written in a scheduling language that can be processed by the **composer** when you add the calendar data to the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

You can specify a file name with its complete or partial path; if you do not specify any path, the file is created in the current directory. If the path you specify does not exist, it is created, provided that you have the appropriate access rights. Otherwise, the command returns an error message and is not performed.

You can specify up to the maximum number of characters allowed by your operating system. If the name of the file contains blanks, it must be enclosed between single quotes. If another file with the same name exists, it is overwritten.

This parameter is optional. The default value is *tws_name.txt*, where *tws_name* is the value you set for the *tws_name* parameter.

The following is an example of an SAP factory calendar export command:

```
r3batch -t RSC -c horse10 -- " -calendar_id 01 -year_from 2007
-year_to 2010 -twc_name CAL1 -twc_description 'SAP Calendar 01'
-getworkdays -filename 'my_dir/calendar_01.dat' "
```

This command exports the SAP calendar named 01, located on the SAP system named horse10. The dates exported begin from year 2007, until year 2010, considering only working days. The IBM Workload Scheduler name used for the calendar is CAL1, and the description written in the output file is SAP Calendar 01. The output file is named *calendar_01.dat*, stored in *<data_dir>/methods/my_dir*, and its content looks like the following

```
$CALENDAR
CAL1
"SAP Calendar 01"
01/02/2007 01/03/2007 01/04/2007 01/05/2007 01/08/2007 01/09/2007 01/10/2007
01/11/2007 01/12/2007 01/15/2007 01/16/2007 01/17/2007 01/18/2007 01/19/2007
01/22/2007 01/23/2007 01/24/2007 01/25/2007 01/26/2007 01/29/2007 01/30/2007
```

```
01/31/2007 02/01/2007 02/02/2007 02/05/2007 02/06/2007 02/07/2007 02/08/2007
.....
11/24/2010 11/25/2010 11/26/2010 11/29/2010 11/30/2010 12/01/2010 12/02/2010
12/03/2010 12/06/2010 12/07/2010 12/08/2010 12/09/2010 12/10/2010 12/13/2010
12/14/2010 12/15/2010 12/16/2010 12/17/2010 12/20/2010 12/21/2010 12/22/2010
12/23/2010 12/24/2010 12/27/2010 12/28/2010 12/29/2010 12/30/2010 12/31/2010
```

Importing factory calendars

About this task

To import the exported calendar definitions into the IBM Workload Scheduler database, copy the output file from the extended agent for SAP to the master workstation and from the **composer** command line on the master workstation, enter the following command:

```
-add output_filename
```

where `output_filename` is the name of the exported file, with its complete path.

For example, to import the `twc_calendar_01.dat` file exported in the previous example, copy the file to the master workstation. From the **composer** command line on the master workstation, enter:

```
-add TWA_home/methods/my_dir/twc_calendar_01.dat
```

where `TWA_home` is the complete path where you installed IBM Workload Scheduler.

Defining internetwork dependencies and event rules based on SAP background events

This section describes how to define internetwork dependencies and event rules for IBM Workload Scheduler based on SAP background events.



Note: To be able to define and monitor event rules, you must configure your environment as described in [Configuring SAP event monitoring on page 389](#).

Defining internetwork dependencies based on SAP background events

Dependencies are prerequisites that must be satisfied before a job or job stream can start. Internetwork dependencies are dependencies checked by the extended agent workstation to which they belong. In response to an internetwork dependency, the SAP extended agent checks for the occurrence of the SAP background event specified in the dependency. As soon as the SAP event is raised, the SAP extended agent commits the event and instructs IBM Workload Scheduler to resolve the corresponding internetwork dependency.

For more details about internetwork dependencies, refer to the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*. For more details about how to raise SAP events, see [Raising an SAP event on page 414](#).

To define SAP background events as internetwork dependencies, XBP versions 2.0 and 3.0 are supported, with the following differences:

XBP version 2.0

SAP background events can release IBM Workload Scheduler internetwork dependencies only if the dependencies are created or checked *before* the SAP event is raised. An event history is ignored, therefore an SAP event raised before the internetwork dependency is created, is not considered.



Note: Because an SAP event history is ignored, for each SAP background event to be checked, a placeholder SAP job is created. This is a dummy job whose running depends on the SAP background event, therefore an SAP event is considered raised as soon as the corresponding placeholder job has completed.

XBP version 3.0 (supported by SAP NetWeaver 7.0 with SP 9, or later)

Only the SAP background events stored in the SAP event history table are considered by IBM Workload Scheduler to check for internetwork dependencies resolution. As a prerequisite, the SAP administrator must create the appropriate event history profiles and criteria on the target SAP system.

To avoid performance reduction, run reorganization tasks against the SAP event history.



Note: Some SAP systems providing XBP version 3.0 still return XBP version as 2.0. To check if your SAP system provides XBP 3.0, invoke the transaction `se37` and search for the function module `BAPI_XBP_BTC_EVTHISTORY_GET`. If your system contains the module, set the `xbpversion` option to 3. In this way, **r3batch** will ignore the XBP value returned by the SAP system. For details about the `xbpversion` option, refer to [Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374](#).

To define an SAP background event as an internetwork dependency, use the following parameters:

Table 84. Parameters to define an SAP internetwork dependency

Parameter	Description	GUI support
-evtid <i>sap_event_name</i>	The name of the SAP background event, up to 32 characters. If the name contains blanks, enclose it between single quotes. This parameter is required.	✓
-evtpar <i>sap_event_parm</i>	The SAP event parameter, up to 64 characters. If the parameter contains blanks, enclose it between single quotes. This parameter is optional.	✓
-commit	Defines that the SAP background event is committed immediately after the internetwork dependency has been resolved. If you do not specify <code>-commit</code> , the event must be committed by running the <code>r3batch</code> task PI. The default is that <code>-commit</code> is not specified. For details about the PI task, refer to Committing SAP background events by an external task on page 479 . In addition to this parameter, you can set as default that the system commits internetwork dependencies immediately by specifying <code>commit_dependency=on</code> in	✓

Table 84. Parameters to define an SAP internetwork dependency (continued)

Parameter	Description	GUI support
	the options file. For details about the <code>commit_dependency</code> option, see Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374 .	
 Note: With XBP version 2.0, defining two internetwork dependencies on the same SAP event might lead to an error, if <code>-commit</code> is specified. For example, suppose you define an internetwork dependency for the SAP event <code>SAPEVT</code>, with or without setting <code>-commit</code>. After this definition, the SAP event <code>SAPEVT</code> is raised. Then you define a second internetwork dependency based on <code>SAPEVT</code>, specifying <code>-commit</code>. The second dependency immediately commits the SAP event, with the consequence that the first dependency becomes impossible to resolve. Therefore, when the first job checks for the internetwork dependency, an error is issued.		

The following example shows how to define an internetwork dependency based on the SAP background event named `SAP_TEST` with the parameter `12345678`. After its processing, the event is not immediately committed.

```
-evtid SAP_TEST -evtpar 12345678
```

The resulting internetwork dependency looks like the following, where `SAPWS` is the name of the extended agent workstation that connects to the SAP background processing system where the event runs:

```
follows SAPWS::-evtid SAP_TEST -evtpar 12345678"
```

The following example shows how to define an internetwork dependency based on the SAP background event named `SAP_TEST`, without parameter. As soon as the internetwork dependency is resolved, the event is committed.

```
-evtid SAP_TEST -commit
```

The resulting internetwork dependency looks like the following, where `SAPWS` is the name of the extended agent workstation that connects to the SAP background processing system where the event runs:

```
follows SAPWS::-evtid SAP_TEST -evtpar 12345678"
```

[Table 85: Internetwork dependency definition and possible resolution on page 478](#) shows the correspondence between the definition and possible resolution of an internetwork dependency that depends on an SAP event, with or without parameters assigned. In this table, `SAP_TEST` is used as the event name and `12345678` or `ABCDEFGH` as the event parameter.

Table 85. Internetwork dependency definition and possible resolution

IBM Workload Scheduler internetwork dependency specified	SAP event raised in SAP system	SAP event pa rameter	IBM Workload Scheduler internetwork dependency resolved
-evtid SAP_TEST	none	none	No

Table 85. Internetwork dependency definition and possible resolution (continued)

IBM Workload Scheduler internetwork dependency specified	SAP event raised in SAP system	SAP event pa rameter	IBM Workload Scheduler internetwork dependency resolved
-evtid SAP_TEST	END_OF_JOB	none	No
-evtid SAP_TEST	SAP_TEST	none	Yes
-evtid SAP_TEST	SAP_TEST	12345678	Yes
-evtid SAP_TEST -evtpar 12345678	SAP_TEST	none	No
-evtid SAP_TEST -evtpar 12345678	SAP_TEST	12345678	Yes
-evtid SAP_TEST -evtpar 12345678	SAP_TEST	ABCDEFG	No

Committing SAP background events by an external task

About this task

SAP events defined as IBM Workload Scheduler internetwork dependencies, by default are not automatically committed after their processing. You can modify this default by specifying the `-commit` parameter. Otherwise, if you leave the default, you must commit the processed event by using the external task Put Information (PI).

The PI task commits all the processed events that meet the given criteria. For this reason, it is recommended that you run this task at the end of the working day. By doing so, internetwork dependencies that are already resolved are not reset and the objects depending on them are not blocked until they are resolved again.

From a command line, enter the following command:

Command syntax

```
-r3batch -t PI -c XA_Unique_ID -- " -t CE -evtidsap_event_name [ -evtparsap_event_parm ] "
```

Where:

-t PI

The identifier of the task to be performed, in this case PI (Put Information). This parameter is required.

-c XA_Unique_ID

The unique identifier for the extended agent workstation connected to the SAP background processing system where the event is run. This parameter is required. For information about retrieving the unique identifier for the extended agent workstation, see [UNIQUE_ID on page 312](#).

-t CE

The identifier of the task to be performed, in this case CE (Commit Event). This parameter is required.

-evtid sap_event_name

The name of the SAP event running on the background processing system. If the name contains blanks, enclose it between single quotes. This parameter is required.

-evtpar sap_event_parm

The parameter of the SAP event running on the background processing system. If the parameter contains blanks, enclose it between single quotes. This parameter is optional. If you do not specify it, all the SAP events with the name you specified, with or without a parameter, are committed on the target system.

The following is an example of how to commit the SAP event named `SAP_TEST`, with parameter `1234567`, with extended agent workstation with unique identifier `horse10` connected to the background processing system:

```
r3batch -t PI -c horse10 -- " -t CE -evtid SAP_TEST -evtpar 1234567"
```

Defining internetwork dependencies based on SAP background events with the Dynamic Workload Console

About this task

To define an SAP background event as an internetwork dependency with the Dynamic Workload Console, perform the following steps:

1. Launch the **Workload Designer** from the Dynamic Workload Console. From the **Design** menu, click **Workload Designer** page.
2. Search for and open the job stream you want to manage.
 - a. Select the **Job stream card** to display all job streams present in the selected folder. Otherwise, you can select the **Job stream card** and then type the job stream name in the **Search** bar.
 - b. Select the job stream and click **Edit**. The job stream and its contents are displayed in the **Workspace area**.
3. In the job stream subrow, click **Add Dependency** and select **Internetwork**.
4. Specify the properties for the internetwork dependency.
 - a. In the **Network Agent** field, enter the name of the agent workstation connected to the SAP background processing system where the event runs.
 - b. In the **Dependency** field, enter the parameters to define the internetwork dependency. For a description of the parameters allowed, refer to [Table 84: Parameters to define an SAP internetwork dependency on page 477](#).
5. Click **Save** to save the changes to the job stream.

Results

The local job or job stream now has a dependency on a SAP background event. You can also perform this procedure from the graphical view available from the job stream row in the **Workspace area**. For more information about adding dependencies and editing objects in the graphical view, refer to the Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide.

Defining event rules based on SAP background events

A scheduling event rule defines a set of actions to run when specific event conditions occur. The definition of an event rule correlates events and triggers actions.

An event rule is identified by a rule name and by a set of attributes that specify if the rule is active, the time frame of its validity, and other information required to decide when actions are triggered. It includes information related to the specific events (`eventCondition`) that the rule must detect and the specific actions it is to trigger upon their detection or timeout (`ruleAction`). Complex rules might include multiple events and multiple actions.

If you are using XBP 3.0, only the SAP background events that are stored in the event history table are considered by IBM Workload Scheduler.

To define event rules, you can use either of the following:

The composer command line

You edit the rules with an XML editor of your choice. For details about how to use the composer to define event rules, see the *IBM Workload Scheduler User's Guide and Reference*.

The Dynamic Workload Console

For information about creating an event rule, see the section about creating an event rule in *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

The SAP background event is identified by the following information:

SAP Event ID

The name identifying the SAP event. Wildcards are not allowed.

If you are using the Dynamic Workload Console, you can type the event name in the SAP Event ID field. This field does not support wildcard characters (* and %), nor the following special characters: asterisk (*), question mark (?), and backslash (\). Note that for supported special characters, the escape character (\) must not be used.

Alternatively, you can use the lookup function to search for and select the event name. When specifying the string to search for that represents the SAP Event ID, wildcard characters are supported, (* and %). For example, if you specify "myevent*", then results can include events such as "myevent", "myevent%", and "myevents".

Event parameter

The parameter associated with the SAP event, if any. Wildcards are not allowed.

If you are using the Dynamic Workload Console, the following special characters are not supported when specifying the event parameter: asterisk (*), question mark (?), and backslash (\).

Extended or dynamic agent workstation

The name of the extended agent workstation or the name of the dynamic agent workstation running event monitoring.



Note:



1. If you specify a pattern with the wildcard asterisk (*), all the agents whose name matches the pattern will monitor the specified event.
2. As a best practice, define that an event belonging to an SAP system is monitored by one agent workstation only. If the same SAP event is monitored by more than one agent, you might either be notified multiple times for the same event occurrence or the first agent that notifies the event occurrence makes that event unavailable to the other agents.
3. If you modify the extended agent configuration in the `r3batch` option files, to make the changes effective you must stop and restart the agent.
4. For dynamic agents you can specify the name of a local options file. In the Properties section of the Create Event Rules window of the Dynamic Workload Console a lookup button provides a list of all the local options files associated with that agent. If you do not specify the name of a local options file, the global options file is used by default in the rule definition.

SAP events matching criteria

The SAP background events specified in the event rule are matched with the events raised in the SAP system, according to the following criteria. Depending on the parameters you set:

The SAP event ID and parameter are specified in the event rule

To match, the SAP event ID and parameter must be the same as the event ID and event parameter raised in the SAP system. Also, the event state must be N (New). SAP events with a different parameter or without any parameter are ignored.

The information collected about the matching SAP event is sent by the `r3evmon` process to IBM Workload Scheduler. If the notification is successfully sent, the event is committed on the SAP system and its state changed to C (Confirmed).

For example, you define an event rule in your IBM Workload Scheduler plan based on the following SAP event:

SAP event ID

SAP_TEST

SAP event parameter

ABCDEF

Workstation

An extended agent named GENIUS

According to these settings, a file named `GENIUS_r3evmon.cfg` is created on `GENIUS`. It contains the following `!R3EVENT` keyword:

```
!R3EVENT 0008SAP_TEST0006ABCDEF
```

Monitoring of the `SAP_TEST` event with parameter `ABCDEF` is automatically started. Suppose that the following SAP events were raised on the SAP system:

Table 86. History table of the SAP events raised

EVENT GUID	SAP EVENT ID	EVENT PARM	EVENT SERVER	EVENT TIMESTAMP	EVENT STATE	PROCESS STATE	COUNT OF JOBS
1234	SAP_TEST	ABC123	...	20070925 13:00	C	OK	1
2345	SAP_TEST	ABCD	...	20070925 14:00	N	OK	2
3456	SAP_TEST		...	20070925 15:00	N	OK	3
4567	SAP_TEST	ABCDEF	...	20070925 16:00	N	OK	4

Only the following SAP event is notified to IBM Workload Scheduler:

Table 87. SAP event matching with the event rule defined

EVENT GUID	SAP EVENT ID	EVENT PARM	EVENT SERVER	EVENT TIMESTAMP	EVENT STATE	PROCESS STATE	COUNT OF JOBS
4567	SAP_TEST	ABCDEF	...	20070925 16:00	N	OK	4

If the notification is successfully sent, the event is committed on the SAP system and its state changed to C (Confirmed).

Only the SAP event ID is specified in the event rule

To match, the SAP event ID must be the same as the ID of the events raised in the SAP system whose state is N (New). The parameters of the SAP events, whether specified or not, are not taken into account.

The information collected about all the matching SAP events is sent by the `r3evmon` process to IBM Workload Scheduler. Each event successfully notified is committed on the SAP system and its status changed to C (Confirmed).

For example, you define an event rule in your IBM Workload Scheduler plan based on the following SAP event:

SAP event ID

SAP_TEST

Workstation

GENIUS

According to these settings, a file named `GENIUS_r3evmon.cfg` is created on `GENIUS`. It contains the following

`!R3EVENT` keyword:

```
!R3EVENT 0008SAP_TEST
```

Monitoring of the `SAP_TEST` event is automatically started. Suppose that the following SAP events were raised on the SAP system:

Table 88. History table of the SAP events raised

EVENT GUID	SAP EVENT ID	EVENT PARM	EVENT SERVER	EVENT TIMESTAMP	EVENT STATE	PROCESS STATE	COUNT OF JOBS
1234	SAP_TEST	ABC123	...	20070925 13:00	C	OK	1
2345	SAP_TEST	ABCD	...	20070925 14:00	N	OK	2
3456	SAP_TEST		...	20070925 15:00	N	OK	3
4567	SAP_TEST	ABCDEF	...	20070925 16:00	N	OK	4

Only the following SAP events are notified to IBM Workload Scheduler:

Table 89. SAP events matching with the event rule defined

EVENT GUID	SAP EVENT ID	EVENT PARM	EVENT SERVER	EVENT TIMESTAMP	EVENT STATE	PROCESS STATE	COUNT OF JOBS
2345	SAP_TEST	ABCD	...	20070925 14:00	N	OK	2
3456	SAP_TEST		...	20070925 15:00	N	OK	3
4567	SAP_TEST	ABCDEF	...	20070925 16:00	N	OK	4

Each event whose notification is successfully sent is committed on the SAP system and its state changed to C (Confirmed).

Setting a filter for SAP background events in the security file

In the security file, you can filter the SAP background events that can be used to define event rules. By doing this, you restrict the use of certain SAP events to specific users. For example, assume that you want your USA department to manage only the SAP events whose ID begins with `SAP_USA`, and your Italy department to manage all events except those beginning with `SAP_USA`. In the security file that defines the user access for the USA department, define the `CUSTOM` keyword for the `EVENT` object as follows:

```
EVENT      PROVIDER=@ +CUSTOM=SAP_USA@  ACCESS=USE
```

where:

PROVIDER=@

Specifies that the user can use the events coming from any provider.

+CUSTOM=SAP_USA@

Specifies that the user can use only the SAP events whose ID begins with `SAP_USA`.

This keyword applies only to the SAP provider (SapMonitor).

ACCESS=USE

Sets the user access to the object to `USE`.

In the security file that defines the user access for the Italy department, define the `CUSTOM` keyword for the `EVENT` object as follows:

```
EVENT      PROVIDER=@ ~CUSTOM=SAP_USA@  ACCESS=USE
```

where:

PROVIDER=@

Specifies that the user can use the events coming from any provider.

~CUSTOM=SAP_USA@

Specifies that the user can use all SAP events, except those whose ID begins with `SAP_USA`.

This keyword applies only to the SAP provider (SapMonitor).

ACCESS=USE

Sets the user access to the object to `USE`.

For more details about the security file and how to set up user authorizations, see the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide*.

Defining event rules based on IDoc records

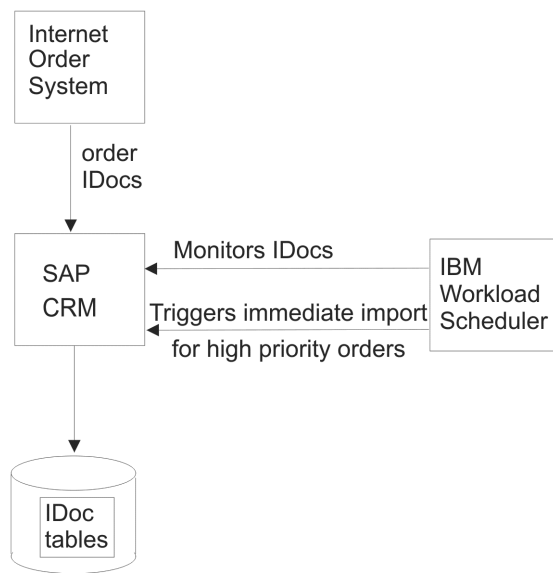
You can use IBM Workload Scheduler to monitor Intermediate Document (IDoc) records in SAP systems and forward events to the IBM Workload Scheduler event integration framework.

To do this, you define an event condition that contains the criteria that the IDocs must match to be forwarded to IBM Workload Scheduler. When the event condition occurs, the action that you associated with it (for example, running a job) is performed.

Business scenario

You connected your Internet sales application to your SAP Customer Relationship Management (CRM) system, which receives the orders as incoming IDocs. The orders are classified as emergency and ordinary, and therefore have different IDoc message types. You want the emergency orders to be imported into the CRM system directly, and the ordinary orders to be processed in batch mode. To do this, in IBM Workload Scheduler, you define an event rule that monitors the IDoc message types corresponding to emergency orders and sends an event to IBM Workload Scheduler. In IBM Workload Scheduler, you define a job to be released when this type of event is received and is linked to an SAP job that runs an import ABAP report for these specific types of IDocs.

Figure 25. Managing high priority IDocs overview



Creating event rules based on IDocs

About this task

To define event rules based on IDocs, specify the fields to be used as matching criteria during IDoc monitoring. For details about these fields, refer to [Events matching criteria on page 487](#). To create the event rules, you can use either of the following:

The composer command line

You edit the rules with an XML editor of your choice. For a general explanation about how to use the composer to define event rules, see the *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*. The event condition requires:

- `SAPMonitor` as event monitor provider.
- `IDOCEventGenerated` as event type.

For a list of the values that you can specify in the **attributeFilter** name when defining the event condition, refer to [Table 92: Parameters of IDOCEventGenerated event type on page 489](#).

The Dynamic Workload Console

For information about creating an event rule, see the section about creating an event rule in *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.



Note:



1. To be able to define and monitor event rules, ensure that you configured your environment as described in [Configuring SAP event monitoring on page 389](#).
2. To configure how IBM Workload Scheduler retrieves the IDoc monitors, set **idoc_no_history** and **idoc_shallow_result** in the options file. For details about these options, refer to [Defining the common options on page 374](#).

Events matching criteria

[Table 90: IBM Workload Scheduler fields used to define event rules based on IDocs on page 487](#) lists the IBM Workload Scheduler fields corresponding to the fields in the IDoc record that you want to search. During monitoring, each IDoc matching the search criteria generates an event that is sent to IBM Workload Scheduler.

Table 90. IBM Workload Scheduler fields used to define event rules based on IDocs

Composer property	Console property	IDoc field
SAPClient	SAP client	MANDT
SAPIDocStatus	Status	STATUS
SAPDirectionIDocTransmission	Direction	DIRECT
SAPReceiverPort	Receiver port	RCVPOR
SAPReceiverPartnerFunction	Receiver partner function	RCVPFC
SAPReceiverPartnerType	Receiver partner type	RCVPRT
SAPReceiverPartnerNumber	Receiver partner number	RCVPRN
SAPSenderPort	Sender port	SNDPOR
SAPSenderPartnerType	Sender partner type	SNDPRT
SAPSenderPartnerFunction	Sender partner function	SNDPFC
SAPSenderPartnerNumber	Sender partner number	SNDPRN
SAPLogicalMessageType	Logical message type	MESTYP
SAPNameOfBasicType	Name of basic type	IDOCTP
SAPLogicalMessageCode	Logical message code	MESCOD
SAPLogicalMessageFunction	Logical message function	MESFCT
SAPTestFlag	Test flag	TEST
SAPOutputMode	Output mode	OUTMOD

Optionally, you can define also correlation rules by using the fields listed in [Table 91: IBM Workload Scheduler fields used to define correlation rules for IDoc events on page 488](#). Date and time values are specified in GMT time zone.

Table 91. IBM Workload Scheduler fields used to define correlation rules for IDoc events

Composer property	Console property	IDoc field
SAPIDocNumber	IDoc number	DOCNUM
SAPReleaseForIDoc	IDoc SAP release	DOCREL
SAPIDocType	IDoc type	DOCTYP
SAPReceiverAddress	Receiver SADR address	RCVSAD
SAPReceiverSADRClient	Receiver SADR client	RCVSMN
SAPFlagForInternationalReceiverAddress	Receiver SADR flag	RCVSNA
SAPReceiverCommunicationType	Receiver SADR communication type	RCVSCA
SAPDefaultFlagForReceiverAddress	Receiver SADR default flag	RCVSDF
SAPReceiverAddressSequentialNumber	Receiver SADR sequential number	RCVSLF
SAPReceiverLogicalAddress	Receiver logical address	RCVLAD
SAPEDIStandard	EDI Standard	STD
SAPEDIStandardVersion	EDI standard version	STDVRS
SAPEDIMessageType	EDI message type	STDMES
SAPSenderAddress	Sender SADR address	SNDSAD
SAPSenderSADRClient	Sender SADR client	SNDSMN
SAPFlagForInternationalSenderAddress	Sender SADR flag	SNDSNA
SAPSenderCommunicationType	Sender SADR communication type	SNDSKA
SAPDefaultFlagForSenderAddress	Sender SADR default flag	SNDSDF
SAPSenderAddressSequentialNumber	Sender SADR sequential number	SNDSLK
SAPSenderLogicalAddress	Sender logical address	SNDLAD
SAPReferenceToInterchangeFile	Interchange file reference	REFINT
SAPReferenceToMessageGroup	Message group reference	REFGRP
SAPReferenceToMessage	Message reference	REFMES
SAPEDIArchiveKey	EDI archive key	ARCKEY
SAPIDocCreationDate	IDoc creation date	CREDAT
SAPIDocCreationTime	IDoc creation time	CRETIM
SAPExtension	Extension	CIMTYP
SAPEDIALESerializationField	EDI/ALE Serialization field	SERIAL
SAPOverridingInInboundProcessing	Overriding in inbound processing	EXPRSS

Table 91. IBM Workload Scheduler fields used to define correlation rules for IDoc events (continued)

Composer property	Console property	IDoc field
SAPIDocChangeDate	IDoc last update date	UPDDAT
SAPIDocChangeTime	IDoc last update time	UPDTIM

Based on the defined rule, the `r3evmon` process of IBM Workload Scheduler monitors the events related to IDoc records according to a polling rate. To customize this polling rate, use the `evmon_interval` option; for details, see [Defining the common options on page 374](#).

[Table 92: Parameters of IDOCEventGenerated event type on page 489](#) lists the values that you can specify as attribute filter name when defining the event condition.

Table 92. Parameters of IDOCEventGenerated event type

Property name	Description	Type	Filtering allowed	Required	Multiple values allowed	Wildcard allowed	Length (min-max)
SAPClient	SAP client number	numeric (0-9)	✓	✓		✓	1 3
	IDoc status information						
	For a list of allowed values, refer to Table 93: Standard outbound IDoc statuses on page 491 and Table 94: Standard inbound IDoc statuses on page 492 .						
SAPIDocStatus		numeric	✓	✓	✓		1 2
		numeric					
SAPDirectionIDocTransmission	IDoc direction	Value can be 1 (outbound) or 2 (inbound).	✓	✓			1 1
SAPReceiverPort	Receiver port. SAP system, EDI subsystem	string	✓				1 10
SAPReceiverPartnerFunction	Partner function of receiver	string	✓				1 2
SAPReceiverPartnerType	Partner type of receiver	string	✓				1 2
SAPReceiverPartnerNumber	Partner number of receiver	string	✓				1 10
SAPSenderPort	Sender port. SAP system, EDI subsystem	string	✓				1 10
SAPSenderPartnerType	Partner type of sender	string	✓				1 2

Table 92. Parameters of IDOCEventGenerated event type

(continued)

Property name	Description	Type	Filtering allowed	Required	Multiple values allowed	Wildcard allowed	Length (min-max)
SAPSenderPartnerFunction	Partner function of sender	string	✓				1 2
SAPSenderPartnerNumber	Partner number of sender	string	✓				1 10
SAPLogicalMessageType	Logical message type	string	✓			✓	1 30
SAPNameOfBasicType	Name of basic type	string	✓			✓	1 30
SAPLogicalMessageCode	Logical message code	string	✓				1 3
SAPLogicalMessageFunction	Logical message function	string	✓				1 3
SAPTestFlag	Test flag	string	✓				1 1
		string					
		Value can be 2					
SAPOutputMode	Output Mode	(immediate	✓				1 1
		sending) or 4					
		(collected sending).					

Table 93: Standard outbound IDoc statuses on page 491 lists the standard outbound IDoc statuses and Table 94: Standard inbound IDoc statuses on page 492 lists the standard inbound IDoc statuses. Optionally, you can activate a check to prevent event rule definitions with inconsistent IDoc status list and direction. If you activate the check and specify inconsistent values when defining a rule (for example, 02 as status and 2 as direction), you receive an error message and you cannot save the rule definition. To activate the check, perform the following steps:

1. In the `TWA_home>\eventPlugIn` directory on Windows™ and in the `TWA_DATA_DIR/eventPlugIn` directory on UNIX®, create the `SapMonitorPlugIn.properties` file.
2. Edit `SapMonitorPlugIn.properties` to set the following configuration property:

```
TWSPlugIn.event.idoc.consistency.check = true
```
3. From `conman`, stop and restart the event processing server by using, respectively, the **stopeventprocessor** and **starteventprocessor** commands.

The default value is `false`.

To have predictable event action results, when defining event rules consider using only non-transitory statuses that allow user checks.

Table 93. Standard outbound IDoc statuses

Status	Description
01	IDoc generated
02	Error passing data to port
03	Data passed to port
04	Error within control information of EDI subsystem
05	Error during translation
06	Translation
07	Error during syntax check
08	Syntax check
09	Error during interchange
10	Interchange handling
11	Error during dispatch
12	Dispatch OK
13	Retransmission OK
14	Interchange acknowledgement positive
15	Interchange acknowledgement negative
16	Functional acknowledgement positive
17	Functional acknowledgement negative
18	Triggering EDI subsystem OK
19	Data transfer for test OK
20	Error triggering EDI subsystem
22	Dispatch OK, acknowledgement still due
23	Error during retransmission
24	Control information of EDI subsystem OK
25	Processing despite syntax error
26	Error during syntax check of IDoc
27	Error in dispatch level (ALE service)
29	Error in ALE service
30	IDoc ready for dispatch (ALE service)
31	Error no further processing

Table 93. Standard outbound IDoc statuses (continued)

Status	Description
32	IDoc was edited
33	Original of an IDoc which was edited
34	Error in control record of IDoc
36	Electronic signature not performed (timeout)
37	IDoc added incorrectly
38	IDoc archived
39	IDoc is in the target system (ALE service)
40	Application document not created in target system
41	Application document created in target system
42	IDoc was created by test transaction

Table 94. Standard inbound IDoc statuses

Status	Description
50	IDoc added
51	Application document not posted
52	Application document not fully posted
53	Application document posted
54	Error during formal application check
55	Formal application check OK
56	IDoc with errors added
57	Error during application check
58	IDoc copy from R/2 connection
60	Error during syntax check of IDoc
61	Processing despite syntax error
62	IDoc passed to application
63	Error passing IDoc to application
64	IDoc ready to be transferred to application
65	Error in ALE service
66	IDoc is waiting for predecessor IDoc (serialization)

Table 94. Standard inbound IDoc statuses (continued)

Status	Description
68	Error - no further processing
69	IDoc was edited
70	Original of an IDoc which was edited
71	IDoc reloaded from archive
73	IDoc archived
74	IDoc was created by test transaction

For example, you define a rule with the following attributes:

Workstation

A dynamic agent named SAPCPU

SAP client number

001

IDoc status list

56,60

IDoc direction

2 (inbound)

After saving the rule according to these settings, when the rule becomes active a file named `SAPCPU_r3evmon.cfg` is created on SAPCPU. It contains the following `!IDOC` keyword:

[illegible]

IDoc monitoring is automatically started. When the event condition is verified, the action defined in the rule is triggered

For an explanation of the `!IDOC` keyword format, refer to [Table 101: Miscellaneous troubleshooting items on page 510](#).

Examples of event rules based on IDocs

The following example applies to the scenario described in [Business scenario on page 485](#). It shows an event rule that triggers an import ABAP report when an IDoc is added with a message type corresponding to emergency orders.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<eventRuleSet xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns="http://www.abc.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/event-management/rules"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.abc.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/
    event-management/rules EventRules.xsd">
  <eventRule name="scenario1_IDoc" ruleType="filter" isDraft="no">
    <eventCondition name="IDocEventRaised1" eventProvider="SapMonitor"
      eventType="IDocEventGenerated">
      <scope>
        001 ON SAPCU WITH 2
      </scope>
    </eventCondition>
  </eventRule>
</eventRuleSet>
```

```

    <filteringPredicate> <attributeFilter name="Workstation" operator="eq">
      <value>SAPCPU</value>
    </attributeFilter>
    <attributeFilter name="SAPClient" operator="eq">
      <value>001</value>
    </attributeFilter>
    <attributeFilter name="SAPIDocStatus" operator="eq">
      <value>50</value>
    </attributeFilter>
    <attributeFilter name="SAPDirectionIDocTransmission" operator="eq">
      <value>2</value>
    </attributeFilter>
    <attributeFilter name="SAPLogicalMessageType" operator="eq">
      <value>EORD1</value>
    </attributeFilter>
  </filteringPredicate>
</eventCondition>
<action actionProvider="TWSaction" actionType="sbj"
  responseType="onDetection">
  <description>Trigger immediate report for high priority orders
</description>
  <parameter name="JobDefinitionWorkstationName">
    <value>MASTER84</value>
  </parameter>
  <parameter name="JobDefinitionName">
    <value>triggerimport</value>
  </parameter>
</action>
</eventRule>
</eventRuleSet>

```

The following example shows an event rule defined to create a ticket for failing IDocs in the SAP Solution Manager or any other problem management system: when an IDoc with a syntax error is detected, the engine submits a job to create a ticket for the failing IDoc.

```

<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<eventRuleSet xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns="http://www.abc.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/event-management/rules"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.abc.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/
    event-management/rules EventRules.xsd">
  <eventRule name="scenario1_IDoc" ruleType="filter" isDraft="no">
    <eventCondition name="IDocEventRaised1" eventProvider="SapMonitor"
      eventType="IDocEventGenerated">
      <filteringPredicate> attributeFilter name="Workstation" operator="eq">
        <value>SAPCPU</value>
      </attributeFilter>
      <attributeFilter name="SAPClient" operator="eq">
        <value>001</value>
      </attributeFilter>
      <attributeFilter name="SAPIDocStatus" operator="eq">
        <value>60</value>
      </attributeFilter>
      <attributeFilter name="SAPDirectionIDocTransmission" operator="eq">
        <value>2</value>
      </attributeFilter>
      <attributeFilter name="SAPLogicalMessageType" operator="eq">
        <value>MYORD1</value>
      </attributeFilter>
    </filteringPredicate>
  </eventCondition>
</eventRule>
</eventRuleSet>

```

```

    </filteringPredicate>
  </eventCondition>
  <action actionProvider="TWSaction" actionType="sbj"
    responseType="onDetection">
    <description>Create a ticket for failing IDocs
    </description>
    <parameter name="JobDefinitionWorkstationName">
      <value>MASTER84</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter name="JobDefinitionName">
      <value>createticket</value>
    </parameter>
  </action>
</eventRule></eventRuleSet>

```

Defining event rules based on CCMS Monitoring Architecture alerts

Use CCMS functions to check the performance of the various SAP system components, diagnose potential problems, and be alerted about error and warning conditions.

The SAP Computing Center Monitoring System (CCMS) is a centralized monitoring architecture that provides a set of monitors for monitoring the SAP environment. Using the CCMS functions you can check the performance of the various SAP system components, diagnose potential problems, and be alerted about error and warning conditions. The monitors provide you with the information you require to fine tune the SAP system and the operating modes, and hence optimize system performance.

With IBM Workload Scheduler, you can integrate the CCMS monitoring functions into your management infrastructure by defining event rules based on the alerts raised in the SAP system.

Business scenarios

The following sections describe:

- [Business scenario: defining an event rule to process alerts related to IDocs on page 495](#)
- [Business scenario: defining an event rule to process alerts related to operating system on page 496](#)

Business scenario: defining an event rule to process alerts related to IDocs

You connected your Internet sales application to your SAP Customer Relationship Management (CRM) system, which receives the orders as incoming IDocs. You want to import the orders into the CRM system when their number exceeds a specified threshold, therefore you configured your SAP CCMS monitoring architecture to generate an alert when the number of incoming IDocs exceeds a certain value. To automatically start a task that imports the orders:

1. In your SAP CCMS monitoring architecture, identify the element related to the alert that you configured for the incoming order IDocs.
2. In IBM Workload Scheduler, define an event rule, to be active during the timeframe when inbound order traffic is heavy, which monitors the element identified in step 1. As soon as an alert is generated for the element, a CCMS event is sent to IBM Workload Scheduler.
3. In IBM Workload Scheduler, define a job to be submitted when the CCMS event is received, to run an SAP job that runs an import ABAP report for the order IDocs.

Business scenario: defining an event rule to process alerts related to operating system

As an IBM Workload Scheduler administrator, you are in charge of taking the appropriate action in the IBM Workload Scheduler plan when a critical situation occurs in the SAP system. You have an SAP extended agent workstation dedicated to submit Business Intelligence tasks, whose activity you want to suspend every time the SAP BI system faces a critical situation (for example, the SAP system is running out of space). To do this:

1. In your SAP CCMS monitoring architecture, identify the element related to the SAP system you want to monitor.
2. In IBM Workload Scheduler, define an event rule that monitors the element and sends an event to IBM Workload Scheduler when an alert is generated for it. Associate with this event an action that sets the limit of the agent workstation to 0, and sends a mail to the SAP administrator to notify the details of the critical situation.
3. As soon as the SAP administrator resolves the problem, you set the limit of the agent workstation back to its original value to resume the scheduling activities.

Creating event rules based on CCMS alerts

About this task

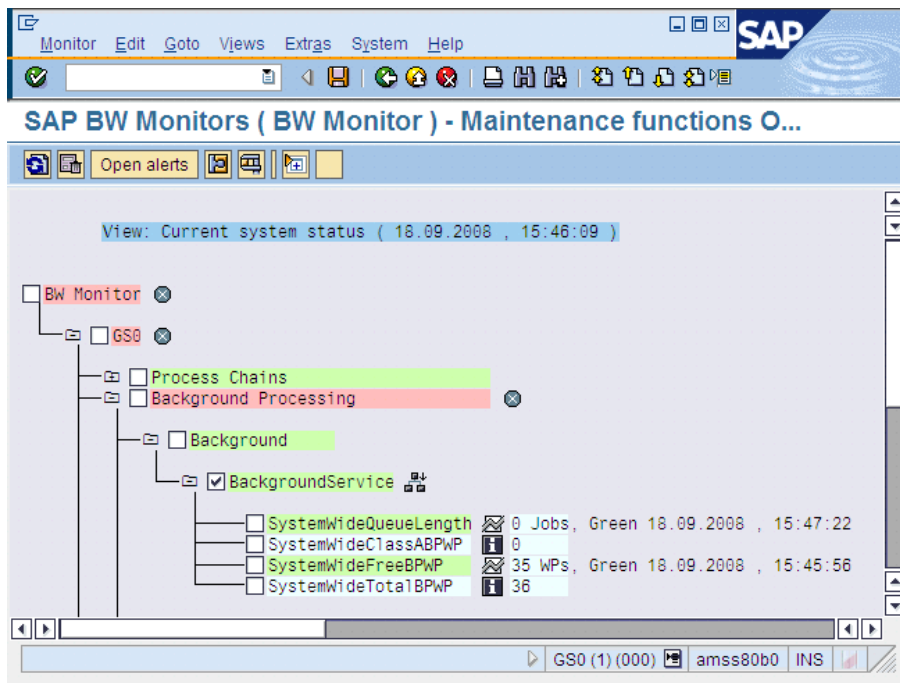
SAP systems are shipped with a predefined set of monitors, grouped in *monitor sets*. A monitor set contains a list of monitors, each monitor contains a set of *monitoring trees*. A monitor is a set of *monitoring tree elements* (MTEs) that are arranged in a hierarchical structure, named *alert monitoring tree*. You can define event rules based on the alert generated for a specific MTE.



Note: To be able to define and monitor event rules, ensure that you configured your environment as described in [Configuring SAP event monitoring on page 389](#).

Figure 26: A monitor and its MTEs - © SAP AG 2009. All rights reserved. on page 497 shows the monitor named **BW Monitor** (belonging to the monitor set **SAP BW Monitor**) and its associated monitor tree elements (MTEs).

Figure 26. A monitor and its MTEs - © SAP AG 2009. All rights reserved.



To configure how IBM Workload Scheduler retrieves the CCMS alerts, set **ccms_alert_history** in the options file. For details about this option, refer to [Defining the common options on page 374](#).

To create event rules, you can use either of the following:

The composer command line

You edit the rules with an XML editor of your choice. For a general explanation about how to use the composer to define event rules, see the *User's Guide and Reference*.

The Dynamic Workload Console

For information about creating an event rule, see the section about creating an event rule in *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

To define the CCMS event for your rule, specify the following information. For more details about how you separate the MTE name into the individual IBM Workload Scheduler fields, see [Mapping between the MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields on page 499](#).

Extended or dynamic agent workstation

The name of the extended agent workstation or the name of the dynamic agent workstation running event monitoring.



Note:



1. If you specify a pattern with the wildcard asterisk (*), all the agents whose name matches the pattern will monitor the specified event.
2. As a best practice, define that an event belonging to an SAP system is monitored by one agent workstation only. If the same SAP event is monitored by more than one agent, you might either be notified multiple times for the same event occurrence or the first agent that notifies the event occurrence makes that event unavailable to the other agents.
3. If you modify the extended agent configuration in the `r3batch` option files, to make the changes effective you must stop and restart the agent.
4. For dynamic agents you can specify the name of a local options file. In the Properties section of the Create Event Rules window of the Dynamic Workload Console a lookup button provides a list of all the local options files associated with that agent. If you do not specify the name of a local options file, the global options file is used by default in the rule definition.

MTE SAP System ID

Name of the SAP system where the MTE is located (for example, `GS0` in [Figure 26: A monitor and its MTEs - © SAP AG 2009. All rights reserved. on page 497](#)). This field is required. Wildcards are not allowed, you can specify up to eight characters.

MTE Monitoring Context Name

Name of the monitoring context to which the MTE belongs. This field is required. A monitoring context is a logically connected group of monitoring objects that are ordered together under one summary in the monitoring tree (for example, `Background` in [Figure 26: A monitor and its MTEs - © SAP AG 2009. All rights reserved. on page 497](#)).

Wildcards are not allowed, you can specify up to 40 characters.

MTE Monitoring Object Name

Name of the monitoring object in the alert monitor. This field is required. A monitoring object is a component or property of the system that is to be monitored (for example, `BackgroundService` in [Figure 26: A monitor and its MTEs - © SAP AG 2009. All rights reserved. on page 497](#)). If you choose not to specify a value, you must leave the value NULL, which is the default.

Wildcards are not allowed, you can specify up to 40 characters.

MTE Monitoring Attribute Name

Name of the monitoring attribute in the alert monitor. In the monitoring tree, a monitoring attribute is always an end node in the hierarchy (for example, `SystemWideFreeBPWP` in [Figure 26: A monitor and its MTEs - © SAP AG 2009. All rights reserved. on page 497](#)). This field is required. If you choose not to specify a value, you must leave the value NULL, which is the default.

Wildcards are not allowed, you can specify up to 40 characters.

Alert Value

Numeric value that indicates the color of the alert generated for the MTE. This field is optional. You can specify one or a combination of the following values:

1

Green, meaning Everything OK.

2

Yellow, meaning Warning.

3

Red, meaning Problem or error.

If you do not specify any value, all the alerts generated for the MTE are considered.

Alert Severity

Severity of the alert. It can be a number between 0 (lowest) and 255 (highest), or a range among these values.

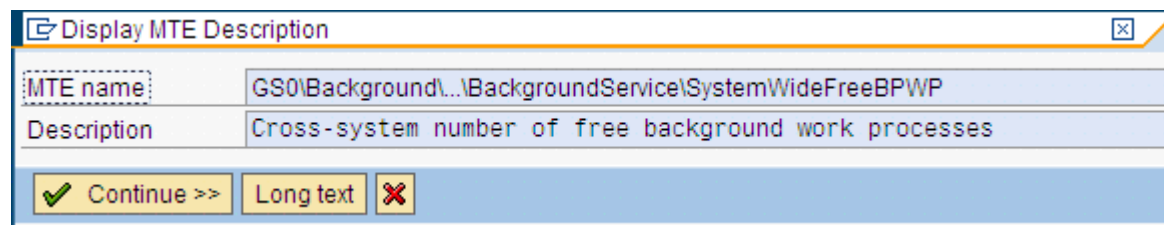
This field is optional. Alert severity is assigned during alert configuration; the SAP standard configuration is 50.

Mapping between the MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields

About this task

Within SAP, MTEs are identified by a name made up of several tokens, separated by backslashes (\). To display the complete MTE name, select the MTE and click **Properties** or press **F1**:

Figure 27. Name and description of an MTE - © SAP AG 2009. All rights reserved.



According to the type of MTE that you want to monitor, you must fill in each IBM Workload Scheduler field with a specific token of the MTE name (to know your MTE type, select the MTE and click **Legend**):

If you are using Dynamic Workload Console V8.5.1, or later

1. In the **Event Rule Editor** panel, from the **Properties** section, click **Autofill MTE Tokens**. The **MTE Name** window opens.
2. In the **MTE Name** field, write the name of the MTE to monitor and click **OK**. You are returned to the **Event Rule Editor** panel, where the IBM Workload Scheduler fields are filled in accordingly.

If you are using Dynamic Workload Console prior to V8.5.1

Refer to the instructions provided in the following sections:

- [Context MTE on page 500](#)
- [Object MTE on page 501](#)
- [Attribute MTE on page 501](#)



Note: Virtual MTEs cannot be monitored.

Context MTE

A context MTE is the uppermost node of a monitoring tree; it contains all the associated object MTEs and attribute MTEs. Context nodes can be either of the following types:

Root

Belongs only to the All Monitoring Contexts monitor. According to the SAP version you are using, a root context MTE name can have either of the following formats:

```
tokenA\tokenB\...  
- OR -  
tokenA\tokenB
```

For example:

```
T10\SystemConfiguration\...
```

Refer to [Table 95: Mapping between root context MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields on page 500](#) for an explanation about how you report this type of MTE in the IBM Workload Scheduler fields:

Table 95. Mapping between root context MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields

IBM Workload Scheduler field	Token of MTE name	In this example...
MTE SAP System ID	<i>tokenA</i>	T10
MTE Monitoring Context Name	<i>tokenB</i>	SystemConfiguration
MTE Monitoring Object Name	N/A	NULL
MTE Monitoring Attribute Name	N/A	NULL

Summary

According to the SAP version you are using, a summary context MTE name can have either of the following formats:

```
tokenA\tokenB\...\tokenC\...  
- OR -  
tokenA\tokenB\tokenC
```

For example:

```
T10\SystemConfiguration\...\InstalledSupportPackages\...
```

Refer to [Table 96: Mapping between summary context MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields on page 501](#) for an explanation about how you report this type of MTE in the IBM Workload Scheduler fields:

Table 96. Mapping between summary context MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields

IBM Workload Scheduler field	Token of MTE name	In this example...
MTE SAP System ID	<i>tokenA</i>	T10
MTE Monitoring Context Name	<i>tokenB</i>	SystemConfiguration
MTE Monitoring Object Name	<i>tokenC</i>	InstalledSupportPackages
MTE Monitoring Attribute Name	N/A	NULL

Object MTE

According to the SAP version you are using, an object MTE name can have either of the following formats:

```
tokenA\tokenB\tokenC\tokenD
- OR -
tokenA\tokenB\...\tokenD
```

For example:

```
PR0\amsp53_PR0_11\R3Services\Background\
```

Refer to [Table 97: Mapping between object MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields on page 501](#) for an explanation about how you report this type of MTE in the IBM Workload Scheduler fields:

Table 97. Mapping between object MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields

IBM Workload Scheduler field	Token of MTE name	In this example...
MTE SAP System ID	<i>tokenA</i>	PR0
MTE Monitoring Context Name	<i>tokenB</i>	amsp53_PR0_11
MTE Monitoring Object Name	<i>tokenD</i>	Background
MTE Monitoring Attribute Name	N/A	NULL

Attribute MTE

According to the SAP version you are using, an attribute MTE name can have either of the following formats:

```
tokenA\tokenB\tokenC\tokenD\tokenE
- OR -
tokenA\tokenB\...\tokenD\tokenE
```

For example:

```
PR0\amsp53_PR0_11\R3Services\Background\AbortedJobs
```

Refer to [Table 98: Mapping between attribute MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields on page 502](#) for an explanation about how you report this type of MTE in the IBM Workload Scheduler fields:

Table 98. Mapping between attribute MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields

IBM Workload Scheduler field	Token of MTE name	In this example...
MTE SAP System ID	<i>tokenA</i>	PR0
MTE Monitoring Context Name	<i>tokenB</i>	amsp53_PR0_11
MTE Monitoring Object Name	<i>tokenD</i>	Background
MTE Monitoring Attribute Name	<i>tokenE</i>	AbortedJobs

Setting correlation rules and action parameters

Optionally, you can use the alert properties listed in [Table 99: Alert properties for correlations on page 502](#) to:

- Define correlation rules between CCMS events.
- Specify additional parameters for the action that is associated with the event rule.

Date and time values are specified in GMT time zone.

Table 99. Alert properties for correlations

Table 99. Alert properties for correlations (continued)

CCMS alert property	Console property	Composer property
MSGCLASS	XMI Ext Company Name	XMIExtCompanyName
MSGID	XMI Log Msg ID	XMILogMsgID
MTCLASS	Alert MT Class	AlertMTClass
MTINDEX	Alert MT Index	AlertMTIndex
MTMCNAME	Alert Monitoring Context Name	AlertMTEContext
MTNUMRANGE	Alert MTE Range	AlertMTERange
MTSYSID	Alert MTE System	AlertMTESys
MTUID	Alert MT Type ID	AlertMTTypeID
OBJECTNAME	Alert Monitoring Object Name	AlertMonObjName
RC	Alert Return Code	AlertReturnCode
REPORTEDBY	Alert Reported By	AlertReportedBy
SEVERITY	Alert Severity	AlertSeverity
STATCHGBY	Alert Changed By	AlertChangedBy
STATCHGDAT	Alert Change Date	AlertChangeDate
STATCHGTIM	Alert Change Time	AlertChangeTime
STATUS	Alert Status	AlertStatus
USERID	User ID	UserID
VALUE	Alert Value	AlertValue

Getting alert status and committing alerts by an external task

Learn how to get CCMS alert status and commit CCMS alerts.

Refer to the following sections for details about:

- [Getting CCMS alert status on page 503](#)
- [Committing CCMS alerts on page 505](#)

Getting CCMS alert status

About this task

To get the current status of a CCMS alert from IBM Workload Scheduler, use the external task Get Information (GI). To replace the command arguments with the actual values, refer to the output returned by the event rule you defined. For details

about the correspondence between the CCMS properties and the Console and composer properties, see [Table 99: Alert properties for correlations on page 502](#).

From a command line, enter the following command:

The following is an example of how to retrieve the current status of a CCMS alert:

```
r3batch -t GI -c horse10 -- " -t GAS -alsysid T10  
-msgname SAP_CCMS_horse10_T10_00 -aluniquum 0017780869  
-alindex 0000000104 -alertdate 20081007 -alerttime 040356"
```

You are returned the current status of the alert.

Committing CCMS alerts

About this task

The CCMS alerts that you defined as IBM Workload Scheduler events are not automatically committed after their processing. To commit an alert that was processed by IBM Workload Scheduler, use the external task Put Information (PI).

To replace the command arguments with the actual values, refer to the output returned by the event rule you defined. For details about the correspondence between the CCMS properties and the Console and composer properties, see [Table 99: Alert properties for correlations on page 502](#).

From a command line, enter the following command:

Command syntax

```
-r3batch -t PI -c XA_Unique_ID -- " -t CA -alsysidsap_system_ID -mseanamealert_mte_segment -  
aluniquumalert_UID -alindexalert_index -alerdatealert_date -alerttimealert_time "
```

Where:

-t PI

Identifier of the task to be performed, in this case PI (Put Information).

-c Agent_name

The name of the dynamic agent workstation or the unique identifier for the extended agent workstation connected to the SAP system where the MTE for which the alert was raised is located. For information about retrieving the unique identifier for the extended agent workstation, see [UNIQUE_ID on page 312](#).

-t CA

Identifier of the task to be performed, in this case CA (Commit Alert).

-alsysid sap_system_ID

Identifier of the SAP system where the MTE for which the alert was raised is located. If the name contains blanks, enclose it between single quotes.

-mseaname alert_monitoring_segment

Name of the alert monitoring segment. You can specify from 1 to 40 characters.

-aluniquum alert_UID

Unique identifier of the alert, made up of 10 characters.

-alindex alert_index

Alert index, made up of 10 characters.

-alerdate alert_date

Date of the alert, in the format *yyyymmdd*.

-alerttime alert_time

Time of the alert, in the format *hhmmss*.

The following is an example of how to commit a CCMS alert:

```
r3batch -t PI -c horse10 -- " -t CA -alsysid T10
-msegname SAP_CCMS_horse10_T10_00 -aluniquum 0017780869
-alindex 0000000104 -alertdate 20081007 -alerttime 040356"
```

You are returned with the message `The CCMS alert was successfully confirmed.`

Example of an event rule based on CCMS alerts

The following example shows an event rule defined to monitor the yellow alerts raised on the MTE named `GS0\ALE/EDI GS0(000)` Log.sys TVALE\Inbound IDoc ORDER_IDOC\Inbound: IDoc generated. The MTE is configured to generate a yellow alert when the number of IDocs representing orders ready to process exceeds a specified threshold. If this condition occurs, the following actions are triggered:

- An IBM Workload Scheduler job is submitted to process the order IDocs.
- An IBM Workload Scheduler job, with priority 10, is submitted to confirm the alert.

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<eventRuleSet xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns="http://www.abc.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/event-management/rules"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.abc.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/event-management/rules
    http://www.abc.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/event-management/rules/EventRules.xsd">
  <eventRule name="SCENARIO1_XAL" ruleType="filter" isDraft="yes">
    <eventCondition name="MTEEventRaised1" eventProvider="SapMonitor"
      eventType="CCMSEventGenerated">
      <filteringPredicate>
        <attributeFilter name="Workstation" operator="eq"
          <value>SAP_XA</value>
        </attributeFilter>
        <attributeFilter name="InputSAPSystemID" operator="eq"
          <value>GS0</value>
        </attributeFilter>
        <attributeFilter name="InputMonitoringContextName" operator="eq"
          <value>ALE/EDI GS0(000) Log.sys TVALE</value>
        </attributeFilter>
        <attributeFilter name="InputMonObjectName" operator="eq"
          <value>Inbound IDoc ORDER_IDOC</value>
        </attributeFilter>
        <attributeFilter name="InputMonFieldName" operator="eq"
          <value>Inbound: IDoc generated</value>
        </attributeFilter>
      </filteringPredicate>
    </eventCondition>
    <action actionProvider="TWSAction" actionType="sbj" responseType="onDetection">
      <parameter name="JobUseUniqueAlias">
        <value>false</value>
      </parameter>
      <parameter name="JobDefinitionWorkstationName">
        <value>SAP_XA</value>
      </parameter>
    </action>
  </eventRule>
</eventRuleSet>
```

```

        <parameter name="JobAlias">
            <value>IDOC_{{MTEEventRaised1.AlertUID}}/value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter name="JobDefinitionName">
            <value>PROCESS_ORDER/value>
        </parameter>
    </action>
    <action actionProvider="TWSAction" actionType="sbd" responseType="onDetection">
        <parameter name="JobUseUniqueAlias">
            <value>>false/value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter name="JobWorkstationName">
            <value>TWS_HOST_FTA/value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter name="JobTask">
            <value>C:\TWA_home\methods\r3batch -t PI
                -c {{MTEEventRaised1.Workstation}} -- "
                -t CA -ALSYID {{MTEEventRaised1.AlertSAPSystemID}}
                -MSEGNAM {{MTEEventRaised1.AlertMTESegment}}
                -ALUNIQNUM {{MTEEventRaised1.AlertUID}}
                -ALINDEX {{MTEEventRaised1.AlertIndex}}
                -ALERTDATE {{MTEEventRaised1.AlertDate}}
                -ALERTTIME {{MTEEventRaised1.AlertTime}} "
            </value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter name="JobPriority">
            <value>10</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter name="JobType">
            <value>Command</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter name="JobAlias">
            <value>CONFIRM_{{MTEEventRaised1.AlertUID}}</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter name="JobStreamName">
            <value>CONFIRM_STREAM</value>
        </parameter>
        <parameter name="JobLogin">
            <value>twuser</value>
        </parameter>
    </action>
</eventRule>
</eventRuleSet>

```

National Language support

The National Language support feature allows you to install SAP on a localized IBM Workload Scheduler workstation and use localized characters for IBM Workload Scheduler job names, job streams, and SAP variants.

Using the local and global configuration files, you can set up SAP to use different code pages and languages for both its output and its connection with a remote SAP system.

As described in [Unicode support on page 364](#), this version of Access method for SAP features Unicode, which is widely supported by SAP systems since version 4.7. However, if either the workstation running SAP or the target SAP systems do not support Unicode, this section describes how you configure code pages and national languages for SAP.

Setting National Language support options

The following options control the code page and national language used by Access method for SAP, when Unicode support is not used:

TWSXA_CP

The code page used to establish the connection between `r3batch` and the target SAP system.

If you are running a non-Unicode version of `r3batch`, set this option to the code page installed on the SAP system (for a list of the valid code pages, refer to [SAP supported code pages on page 509](#)). The default value is the SAP code page 1100, similar to the standard ISO8859-1. In all other cases, this option is ignored.

TWSXA_LANG

The language that `r3batch` uses to log in. It can be one of the following (DE, EN, and JA can be set from the Option Editor. The other languages can be set using any text editor):

- Brazilian Portuguese (pt_BR)
- English (EN, the default value)
- French (FR)
- German (DE)
- Italian (IT)
- Japanese (JA)
- Korean (KO)
- Simplified Chinese (zh_CN)
- Spanish (ES)
- Traditional Chinese (zh_TW)



TWSMETH_CP

The code page that `r3batch` uses for its output. The default is the code page used by the IBM Workload Scheduler workstation that hosts `r3batch`.

Ensure that the `TWSMETH_CP` and `TWSMETH_LANG` options are consistent.

TWSMETH_LANG

The catalog language used by `r3batch`. The default is the language used by the IBM Workload Scheduler workstation that hosts `r3batch`.

Ensure that the `TWSMETH_CP` and `TWSMETH_LANG` options are consistent.

SAP supported code pages

To communicate with SAP systems, Access method for SAP uses the following code pages. Use these values to set option `TWSXA_CP`, only when `r3batch` does not support Unicode.

Table 100. SAP supported code pages

SAP code pages	Description
1100	8859-1, this is the default value
1103	MS 850
8000	SJIS: Shift JIS
8300	BIG5: Traditional Chinese
8400	GBK: Simplified Chinese

Troubleshooting

Learn what to do if you get any problems while installing or using IBM Workload Scheduler access methods or plug-ins.

Troubleshooting the SAP connection

If you are unable to submit SAP jobs using IBM Workload Scheduler after the R/3 configuration, perform the following tests:

- Ensure that you can ping the SAP system from the IBM Workload Scheduler system. This shows basic network connectivity.
- Note that using the SAP routers to access the R/3 system could exceed the size of internal buffers of the RFC library used to store the hostname of the SAP system. When this occurs, the hostname gets truncated, causing the connection to the R/3 system to fail. To work around this problem, do not fully qualify the name of the SAP routers or alternatively use the IP addresses.
- Run the following **telnet** command to verify connectivity:

```
telnet systemname 33xx
```

where *systemname* is the system name or IP address of the SAP server and *xx* is the SAP instance.

If the command fails to complete, this means that communication between `r3batch` and the SAP application server is down.

- Log on to the SAP system as an administrator and verify that the IBM Workload Scheduler RFC user (created in the [Creating the IBM Workload Scheduler RFC user on page 354](#)) exists.
- If the SAP gateway truncates the connection string, replace the host name with the IP address.
- If `r3batch` runs on an AIX® system that does not use U.S. English, make sure that the U.S. Language Environment® is installed on both the IBM Workload Scheduler workstation and the SAP database workstation. Otherwise the error `BAD TEXTENV` (or a similar error message) might appear in the `dev_rfc` trace file and connections to SAP fail.

Other known problems

[Table 101: Miscellaneous troubleshooting items on page 510](#) lists miscellaneous troubleshooting problems.

Table 101. Miscellaneous troubleshooting items

Area	Item
r3batch and r3event: output contains unreadable characters	Symptom: When you enter the r3batch and r3event commands interactively (for example, to export an SAP calendar) the output is returned in UTF-8 format.
	Solution: To resolve this problem, you can either use a shell that supports the UTF-8 code page or redirect the output to a file and open it with a text editor that supports the UTF-8 format.
r3batch: SAP jobs contain quotation marks (") or reverse quotes (`)	Symptoms: SAP jobs whose names contain quotation marks or reverse quotes are not displayed in the pick list of the Dynamic Workload Console. -OR- You have an IBM Workload Scheduler job that tries to submit an SAP job whose name contains quotation marks, but it abends with an error. The following message might be displayed: <pre>EEW00439E The required options are not specified either in the global or in the local options file.</pre>
	Solution: In your SAP system, make a copy of the SAP job and assign it a name that does not contain quotation marks or reverse quotes.
r3batch: SAP job containing Arabic characters.	Symptom: An SAP job abends when the job contains Arabic characters.
	Solution: If you run an SAP job that contains Arabic characters, you must set the local codepage of the agent workstation hosting the r3batch access method to the Arabic codepage. Refer to the twsmeth_cp keyword in the common options file, Defining the common options on page 374 .
r3batch: error messages submitting a job on dynamic agents.	Symptom: When working with dynamic workstations and performing actions such as: displaying a process chain, restarting a process chain, or retrieving the spool list, the following messages might be displayed from the Dynamic Workload Console: <pre>EEW00439E The required options are not specified either in the global or in the local options file.</pre> <pre>EEW01065W The environment variable UNISON_JOB is not set. The process chain cannot be restarted.</pre>
	Solution: These messages might indicate that the requested action is not supported on dynamic workstations. Refer to the <i>IBM Workload Scheduler Release Notes®</i> for more information about IBM Workload Scheduler features and minimum required versions for compatibility.

Table 101. Miscellaneous troubleshooting items

(continued)

Area	Item
r3batch: r3batch hangs when performing actions from the Dynamic Workload Console.	Symptoms: r3batch hangs when performing actions from the Dynamic Workload Console such as selecting from a pick list, submitting a job, or similar actions that require connection to the SAP system. The IBM Workload Scheduler joblog might also contain multiple "Timer expired" messages.
	Solution: This problem is caused by the IBM Workload Scheduler logging and tracing component. There are two possible solutions: • Deactivate the tracing utility as described in the following technote: http://www.ibm.com/support/docview.wss?uid=swg21503284. - OR • Modify the <code>r3batch.properties</code> files. Locate the <code>ther3batch.trace.handlers.traceFile.MPFileSemKeyproperties</code> setting, and then either comment this property setting out or use a different value. Choose any numeric value and retry the operation.
r3batch: Submit same process chain in parallel fails.	Symptom: The SAP system returns an error message RFC_ERROR_SYSTEM_FAILURE when starting an SAP process chain.
	Solution: Verify if the corrections stated in SAP note 1723482 are applied to your SAP Business Warehouse system or avoid running the same process chain more than once simultaneously.
r3batch: When you restart the process of a subchain, the status of the original process chain is not changed to active	Symptom: When you restart the process of a subchain, the status of the original process chain is not changed to active.
	Solution: Refer to SAP Note 1075876.
r3batch: Refresh an SAP process chain after a kill action on a running job instance.	Symptom: If you perform a kill action on an IBM Workload Scheduler job instance running on a dynamic workstation which monitors an SAP process chain, and then subsequently perform a Refresh operation on this job, the job fails.
	Solution: You cannot perform a Refresh operation after having performed a kill action on an IBM Workload Scheduler job instance running on a dynamic workstation which monitors an SAP process chain. Verify the status of the SAP process chain on the SAP system, and then set the IBM Workload Scheduler job status accordingly.

Table 101. Miscellaneous troubleshooting items

(continued)

Area	Item
r3batch: Wrong characters are displayed in the Criteria Manager profile description.	Symptom: Special characters such as, < (less than), > (greater than), or the ' (apostrophe) specified in the Description field of the Create criteria profile dialog are displayed incorrectly. Solution: Avoid using special characters in the Description field when creating a new criteria profile.
r3evmon: monitoring events is not started, stopped, or performed	Symptom: You cannot start or stop event monitoring, or event monitoring is not performed. Solution: Ensure that <i>TWSuser</i> is the owner of the following files, and that the user has read and write permissions: • <code>/TWA_DATA_DIR/pids/XAname_r3evmon.pid</code> • <code>/TWA_DATA_DIR/EIF/XAname_r3evmoncache.dat</code> • <code>/TWA_DATA_DIR/EIF/XAname_r3evmoneif.conf</code> • <code>/TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/r3evmon_cfg/XAname_r3evmon.cfg</code> • <code>/TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/r3evmon_cfg/XAname_r3idocmon.cfg</code> • <code>/TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/r3evmon_cfg/XAname_r3xalmon.cfg</code> • <code>/TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/r3evmon_cfg/XAname_r3evmon.lck</code> On Windows™ workstations, these files are located in the <i>TWA_home</i> directory and not in the <i>TWA_DATA_DIR</i> directory.
r3batch: monitoring SAP events is not performed	Symptom: The SAP event on which the event rule is based is neither monitored nor committed. Solution: Ensure that the extended agent workstation you specified in the SAP event definition exists. When you define an SAP event within an event rule, no check on the extended agent workstation is made: if the workstation does not exist, the event rule is saved and activated but it will never be resolved.
r3batch: monitoring SAP events is not performed	Symptom: With XBP 3.0, the SAP event is raised but IBM Workload Scheduler is not notified and therefore does not act as expected. Solution: Ensure that the SAP event was not excluded from logging in the SAP event history table.
r3batch: monitoring SAP events is not performed	Symptom: The SAP events on which the event rule is based are not monitored nor committed. Solution: The SAP events being monitored are listed in the following file: <pre>TWA_DATA_DIR/monconf/XAname_r3evmon.cfg</pre> where <i>XAname</i> is the name of the SAP extended agent workstation.

Table 101. Miscellaneous troubleshooting items

(continued)

Area	Item
	Check that the file is updated and contains the current monitoring plan. The SAP events are indicated by the following keyword (one for each SAP event on the same extended agent): <pre>!R3EVENT SAP_event_name_lengthSAP_event_name[SAP_event_parm_lengthSAP_event_parm]</pre> where: <i>SAP_event_name_length</i> The length of the SAP event name to monitor, in the format <i>nnnn</i>. For example, 0008, if the event name is <code>SAP_TEST</code>. <i>SAP_event_name</i> The name of the SAP event to monitor. <i>SAP_event_parm_length</i> The length of the parameter associated with the SAP event to monitor, if any. The format is <i>nnnn</i>. For example, 0007, if the event name is <code>SAP_PAR</code>. <i>SAP_event_parm</i> The parameter associated with the SAP event to monitor, if any. This value is optional, but omitting it identifies an SAP event with no parameter associated. For details about how the events are matched between <code>r3evmon.cfg</code> and the SAP system, see SAP events matching criteria on page 482. For each configuration file, an <code>r3evmon</code> process is started to monitor the SAP events listed. To start an <code>r3evmon</code> monitoring process for a specific extended agent workstation, enter the following command.  Note: 1. For UNIX® only, <code>r3evmon</code> must be entered by the owner of the IBM Workload Scheduler installation: 2. If you run <code>r3evmon</code> from a Windows™ DOS shell, the command prompt is not returned until the process completes. <pre>r3evmon -t SEM -c XA_Unique_ID -- "[-EIFSRV EIF_server -EIFPORT EIF_port]"</pre> where:

Table 101. Miscellaneous troubleshooting items

(continued)

Area	Item
	<i>XA_Unique_ID</i> The unique identifier of the extended agent workstation. For information about retrieving the unique identifier for the extended agent workstation, see UNIQUE_ID on page 312. <i>EIF_server</i> The host name or IP address of the master domain manager. <i>EIF_port</i> The port that the master domain manager uses to receive the event notification.
r3batch:IDoc monitoring is not performed	Symptom: The events on which the event rule is based are not monitored or no event is generated during IDoc monitoring. Solution: The events being monitored are listed in the following file: <pre>TWA_DATA_DIR/monconf/XAname_r3evmon.cfg</pre> where <i>XAname</i> is the name of the SAP extended agent workstation. It is the same file that is used to monitor SAP events in general. Check that the file is updated and contains the current monitoring plan. The events corresponding to the <code>IDocEventGenerated</code> event type are indicated by the following keyword (one for each event on the same extended agent): <pre>!IDOC nnnn<Client Number>nnnn<IDoc Status List>nnnn<Direction>nnnn<Receiver Port> nnnn<Receiver Partner Type>nnnn<Partner Function of Receiver> nnnn<Partner Number of Receiver>nnnn<Sender Port>nnnn<Sender Partner Type> nnnn<Partner Function of Sender>nnnn<Partner Number of Sender> nnnn<Message Type>nnnn<IDoc Type>nnnn<Logical Message Variant> nnnn<Logical Message Function>nnnn<Test Flag>nnnn<Output Mode></pre> where: <i>nnnn</i> The length of the IDoc field. For example, <code>0005</code> indicates the value of an IDoc status list corresponding to <code>56, 60</code>. <i>< ></i> Contains the value of the field associated with the IDoc to be monitored. For a list of the supported IDoc fields, refer to Table 90: IBM Workload Scheduler fields used to define event rules based on IDocs on page 487.

Table 101. Miscellaneous troubleshooting items

(continued)

Area	Item
	For each configuration file, an <code>r3evmon</code> process is started to monitor the events listed. Make sure that an <code>r3evmon</code> monitoring process is started for the involved extended agent workstation.
r3evmon: monitoring SAP and IDoc events increases memory consumption	Symptom: Memory consumption increases continuously during monitoring of IDoc and standard SAP events.
	Solution: Refer to SAP Notes® 1021071 and 1109413.
r3batch: Duplicated events generated during IDoc monitoring	Symptom: The action defined in an event rule with <code>IDOCEventGenerated</code> event type is unexpectedly repeated.
	Solution: Reset the start date and time for the next monitoring loop. These values are stored in the following file: <pre><data_dir>/methods/r3evmon_cfg/XAname_r3idocmon.cfg</pre> where <code>XAname</code> is the name of the SAP extended agent workstation. Therefore you can either: • Stop <code>r3evmon</code>, delete the <code>XAname_r3idocmon.cfg</code> file and then start <code>r3evmon</code> again. - OR - • Stop <code>r3evmon</code>, set the date and time in the <code>XAname_r3idocmon.cfg</code> file to the values you want, and start <code>r3evmon</code> again. Use the following format for the start date and time: <pre>start_date=YYYYMMDD start_time=HHMMSS</pre> For example: <pre>start_date=20080307 start_time=115749</pre> Check the value of the <code>idoc_no_history</code> option: • If it is set to OFF and no <code>XAname_r3idocmon.cfg</code> file exists, then all matching IDocs are retrieved, not only the current ones. • If it is set to ON (default value), check the date and time in the <code>XAname_r3idocmon.cfg</code> file.
r3batch: No event is generated during IDoc monitoring	Symptom: The expected event actions are not triggered.

Table 101. Miscellaneous troubleshooting items

(continued)

Area	Item
	Solution: Check the value of the idoc_no_history option; if it is set to ON (default value), check the date and time in the <code>XAname_r3idocmon.cfg</code> file.
Error defining an internetwork dependency based on SAP event	Symptom: If you work with XBP 2.0, when you try to define an internetwork dependency based on an SAP event, the following error message is displayed: <pre>*** ERROR 778 *** EEW00778E An internal error has occurred. The program could not modify the following job: Job name: Job ID: %CJ ERROR</pre> Solution: Perform the following steps: 1. Check if the BCTEST report is defined in your SAP system by invoking either one of the following transactions: sa38 Enter BTC* and click the picklist button. In the panel that opens, click the picklist button and check if BCTEST is shown in the list that is displayed. se38 Enter BTC* and click the picklist button. Check if BCTEST is shown in the list that is displayed. 2. If report BCTEST is not found in the list, you can either: ◦ Choose another existing report, and, in the local options file, set the placeholder_abap_step option to the name you chose. Because the report assigned to the placeholder job is run when the corresponding event is raised, ensure that you choose a dummy report. For details about the placeholder_abap_step option, see Table 74: r3batch common configuration options on page 374. - OR - ◦ Set the placeholder_abap_step option to a custom developed ABAP code of your choice.
r3batch: error message when scheduling SAP jobs	Symptom: When creating an SAP job, the following message is displayed while trying to view the details of an ABAP's variant: <pre>AWS00101E Missing ABAP routine. J_101_REPORT_ALL_SELECTIONS please install the latest ABAP routine for Maestro!!</pre>

Table 101. Miscellaneous troubleshooting items

(continued)

Area	Item
	Solution: This defect is caused by an error in an SAP function module. SAP describes this problem and possible solutions in the SAP Notes® 0351293 and 0116354.
r3batch: modify job step error	You change print parameters with the <code>BAPI_XBP_MODIFY_JOB_STEP</code> function module, and subsequently, they are incorrect. As a consequence, r3batch gets error 221: <pre>MSG_CANNOT_GET_PRIARC_PARAMS: "Retrieving new print and archive parameters failed"</pre> The problem is solved by installing SAP Note 758829.
r3batch: modify job step error	The <code>BAPI_XBP_MODIFY_JOB_STEP</code> function module always uses the name of the logged-on user as the name for the step user. In this case, when submitting a job with the <code>-vx</code> options, r3batch creates a job by copying all the data from the original template, except the variant name of the first step (which is provided as the option parameter). This procedure is usually referred to as the "old copy". However, when adding a step to a new job, the XBP 2.0 interface ignores the user parameter passed by r3batch. The problem is solved by installing SAP note 758829.
r3batch: does not start after installation on Windows™	Symptom: After installing or upgrading the SAP R/3 access method to version 8.5 on a Windows™ operating system, you try to start r3batch but nothing happens. The following message is displayed: <pre>The application failed to initialize properly. Click on OK to terminate the application.</pre> Solution: Ensure that you applied the SAP Note 684106 to install the required Microsoft™ DLLs.
r3batch: IBM Workload Scheduler environment variables are not resolved when specified in the task string for an R/3 batch job.	Symptom: When IBM Workload Scheduler environment variables are used in the task string for an R/3 batch job and the job is launched, the environment variables are not resolved. The exact string used to specify the variable is used instead. Solution: To leverage IBM Workload Scheduler environment variables, you must modify the access method as follows: 1. In the <code>TWA_DATA_DIR/methods</code> directory, create a file named, <code>r3batch.cmd</code> (on Windows™) or <code>r3batch.sh</code> (on UNIX®) as required, containing the following content: <pre>@echo off set METHODSPATH=%~dp0 call "%METHODSPATH:="%r3batch.exe" %*</pre> 2. Modify the CPU XAGENT definition from <code>r3batch</code> to <code>r3batch.cmd</code>. An example follows: <pre>CPUNAME NW1 DESCRIPTION "r3batch" OS OTHER NODE none TCPADDR 31111 FOR MAESTRO HOST STROMBOLI ACCESS "r3batch.cmd"</pre>

Table 101. Miscellaneous troubleshooting items

(continued)

Area	Item
	<pre>TYPE X-AGENT AUTOLINK OFF BEHINDFIREWALL OFF FULLSTATUS OFF END</pre> 3. To modify the CPU access method in the Symphony® file, run JnextPlan as follows: <pre>JnextPlan -for 0000</pre>
@longlink file present in installation directory	Symptom: After installing IBM® Workload Scheduler on a computer with an AIX® operating system where a master domain manager is already installed, a @longlink file containing the following is present in the installation directory: <pre>methods/_tools/_jvm_64/lib/desktop/icons/HighContrastInverse/48x48/mimetypes/ gnome-mime-text-x-java.png</pre> Solution: The file can be ignored. It does not present any problems for the proper functioning of the product.
Job throttling does not start	Symptom: When you start the job throttling feature, nothing happens and the following error message is displayed: <pre>EEW0JTR0207E Error, another job throttler instance is already running against the same SAP system. Foreign job throttler registration is: Client ID="clientID", Name="TWS4APPS_JOBTHROTTLER",Host="hostname", UID "UniqueID"</pre> Cause and Solution: Possible causes are: • You are running job interception collector jobs, but the job interception and job throttling features cannot run at the same time. Choose which feature to start. For detailed information, refer to Job interception and parent-child features on page 440 and Job throttling feature on page 467. • Another job throttler instance is running against the same SAP system. You can start only one job throttler instance. • A previous job throttler instance created an exclusive lock object on the SAP system that could have become permanent. To verify it, use transaction <code>sm12</code> and query for the lock object named TWS4APPS_JOBTHROTTLER. If the lock object exists, and you are not running any job throttler or job interception instance, remove the lock manually and restart the job throttler.
Job throttling does not start	Symptom: When you start the job throttling feature, nothing happens and the following error message is displayed:

Table 101. Miscellaneous troubleshooting items

(continued)

Area	Item
	EEW0JT0209E Error, the password format is not valid. Cause and Solution: Your password is encrypted in old format. To encrypt the password with the correct encryption version, use the enigma or pwdcrypt programs. For details about how to encrypt the password, see Encrypting SAP user passwords on page 386.
Job throttling does not stop	Symptom: When you stop the job throttling feature, nothing happens. Cause and Solution: You are connected as a <i>TWSUser</i> who does not have write permission on the <code>XAname_jobthrottling_cmd.txt</code> file. To solve this problem, delete the <code>XAname_jobthrottling_cmd.txt</code> file and enter the command again. For detailed information about stopping the job throttler, refer to Step 5. Starting and stopping the job throttling feature on page 470.
Job throttling: alerts for MTEs are not generated according to the threshold values set	Symptom: Alerts for the MTEs created by the job throttler are generated without respecting the threshold values that are set. Cause and Solution: You started a new job throttler instance, which, being enabled to send data to CCMS, created the related MTEs. When you include the MTEs in your monitoring set, the threshold values are automatically set according to the existing MTE class. Nevertheless, alerts are generated without respecting these values. To solve this problem, edit the MTE properties and save them again, even if you do not change anything.
Job throttling: saving MTE properties generates an informational message	Symptom: When you edit and save the properties of MTEs generated by the job throttler, the following informational message is displayed: Message does not exist. Cause and Solution: In the pop-up window that displays the message, click Continue and close the Properties window. Your settings are saved.
The system cannot intercept jobs	Symptom: Although the job interception feature is active on the SAP system, the intercepted jobs are kept in scheduled state. Cause and Solution: The job throttler feature or the Java™ Virtual Machine used by the job throttler might still be active. On each extended agent where the job throttler was started at least once, ensure that:

Table 101. Miscellaneous troubleshooting items

(continued)

Area	Item
	1. You stopped the feature. For details, see Step 5. Starting and stopping the job throttling feature on page 470. 2. The Java™ Virtual Machine used by the job throttler was stopped by the process. To search for Java™ processes, use: On Windows™ The Process Explorer On UNIX® The command <code>ps -ef grep throttling</code> If a Java™ Virtual Machine instance related to the job throttler is found, kill it.
access method executables: <code>r3batch, r3event, psagent</code>: permission denied messages in the job log.	Symptom: The job log reports multiple "Permission denied" messages. Cause and Solution: The root cause might be that the access method executable, for example, <code>r3batch</code>, is submitted by the <code>root</code> user and not the <code>twuser</code>. This creates directories and files with the wrong ownership and file permissions. Verify the ownership of the following directories and files if you are running the product on UNIX® platforms. Ensure that the <code>twuser</code> is the owner of the files and that the user has both read and write permissions on the files, and execute permission on the directories. <pre>TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/traces TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/traces/*.log</pre>
<code>psagent</code>: misleading message displayed if the local options file has no right permissions	Symptom: The job log shows the following message: <pre>EEW00439E You did not specify the required options either in the global or in the local options file.</pre> but all the mandatory options were correctly set in the options file. Solution: Check that the options file has <code>read</code> and <code>write</code> permissions available to the user who is trying to launch the job.
No messages written in the job log	Symptom: IBM Workload Scheduler does not write any messages in the job log if the file system for tracing is full or the <code>ljuser</code> does not have the correct permission to write in the trace directory.
The submission of a PeopleSoft job fails	Symptom: The submission of a PeopleSoft job fails and the IBM Workload Scheduler job log contains a Java™ exception similar to the following: <pre>Exception in thread "3194" java.lang.ExceptionInInitializerError at bea.jolt.JoltSessionAttributes.<clinit>(JoltSessionAttributes.java:183) at psft.pt8.net.JoltSessionPool.createConnection(JoltSessionPool.java:363) at psft.pt8.net.JoltSessionPool.getJoltSession(JoltSessionPool.java:220)</pre>

Table 101. Miscellaneous troubleshooting items

(continued)

Area	Item
	Cause and Solution: The <code>psj oa.jar</code> path contains special characters. Define a path without special characters.
The submission of an Oracle job fails	Symptom: The submission of an Oracle job fails and the IBM Workload Scheduler job log shows the following information: <pre>EEWP0017 Child MCMLJ exited normally. Exit code: 1.EEWP0027 Error - Launch job failed</pre> Solution: Submitting an Oracle job might fail because there is a connection problem to the Oracle database. Verify that your Oracle naming methods are set correctly. For details about how to configure naming methods, refer to the <i>Oracle Net Services Administrator's Guide</i>.
To upgrade the SAP environment, perform the following steps:	1. Delete the TWS ABAP module. 2. Upgrade SAP. 3. Install TWS ABAP module.

Scheduling jobs on IBM Workload Scheduler from SAP Solution Manager

IBM Workload Scheduler and SAP Solution Manager are integrated to allow the IBM Workload Scheduler engine to run the job scheduling tasks available from the Solution Manager user interface.

The integration is provided by the SMSE Adapter, which runs on the master domain manager. The SMSE Adapter uses the SAP Solution Manager Scheduling Enabler (SMSE) interface provided by SAP to enable *external schedulers* to run the scheduling for Solution Manager.

With this integration, when you schedule a job from the `Scheduling` panel of Solution Manager, IBM Workload Scheduler takes charge of the job scheduling, monitoring, and management tasks, as well as of job triggering and notification.

Under these conditions IBM Workload Scheduler acts as an RFC-Server with a common interface for scheduling jobs. It is identified through an RFC-Destination, registered in the SMSE. The interaction between Solution Manager and IBM Workload Scheduler is based on a PUSH mechanism implemented by the SMSE interface, whereby the master domain manager responds to requests solicited by the Solution Manager job scheduling functions.

Qualified as *external scheduler* by Solution Manager, the registered master domain managers, identified by their RFC destination names, can be called or administered from the `Process Scheduling Adapter` menu item in the Solution Manager GUI.

The jobs scheduled from Solution Manager on IBM Workload Scheduler must have been previously defined in the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

A job scheduled from the `Schedule Jobs` or `Job Documentation` panels in Solution Manager to be run by IBM Workload Scheduler, is automatically mapped in a job stream that is expressly created to include the job.

Registering the master domain manager on SAP Solution Manager

The first step to run the integration is to register the master domain manager on the SAP Solution Manager system.

To register master domain manager on the SAP Solution Manager system, you must:

1. Have established a connection based on RFC or Web Services between the master and the Solution Manager system.
2. Have the SAP JCo 3.1 Patch 3 (`sapjco31P_3`) libraries (`jar` files and, according to your operating system, `dll`, `so`, or `sl`) installed in the `<data_dir>/methods/smseadapter/lib` directory on the master domain manager. To download 3.1 Patch 3 (`sapjco31P_3`), visit the Sap Service Marketplace.



Attention: The libraries require the Microsoft Visual C++ Redistributable Package (vcredist) installed.

3. Configure the `smseadapter.properties` file located in the `<data_dir>/methods/smseadapter/lib` directory on the master.

The file contains a `SMSE_ADAPTER_CONNECTION_n` section that can be duplicated depending on the number of connections that you want to define. You can in fact set more connection definitions for the same master, where, for example, the following can vary:

- The SAP Solution Manager system.
- The agent that is to run the workload.
- The SAP user name.



Note: A master domain manager can have only one active connection at a time via the `smseadapter`. If the adapter finds more than one section with the `startAdapter` property set to `true` (or not set to `false`), it uses the first section of properties and ignores the others.

4. Stop and start WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base. For further information, see [Application server - starting and stopping on page 652](#).

The following is an example of `smseadapter.properties` file:

```
[SMSE_ADAPTER_CONNECTION_1]
startAdapter =
ashost =
sysnr =
client =
sid =
user =
passwd =
lang =
destination =
```

```

setDestinationAsDefault =
jobStreamNamePrefix =
agentName =
notificationThreadCheckInterval =
adminConsoleHost =
adminConsolePort =
adminConsoleUser =
adminConsoleUserPassword =
maxRegistrationAttempts =
registrationAttemptInterval =

```

This section can be repeated as many times as needed in the `smseadapter.properties` file.

The properties are:

Table 102. Properties for the `smseadapter.properties` file.

Property	Description	Required	Notes
SMSE_ADAPTER_CONNECTION_1	This is the section header. If you have more sections the last digit should differ from one section and another. If two sections contain identical property values, only the first section read is considered, the other is ignored.	✓	
startAdapter	Specifies whether to connect or not to SAP Solution Manager. Can be true or false. Must be set to true to make the connection work. Set to false to temporarily suspend the connection.	✓	The default is true.
ashost	The host name of the SAP Solution Manager server on which the master domain manager registers. For example, / H/7.142.153.8/H/7.142.154.114.	✓	The master domain manager can connect to one Solution Manager system at a time.
sysnr	The SAP system number of the system that the master registers on. This value must have two digits. For example, 00.	✓	
client	The SAP client number. For example, 001.	✓	
sid	The SAP system identifier (SID) that the master registers on. For example, SM1.	✓	
user	The SAP user name that will be used during the notification process to log	✓	

Table 102. Properties for the `smseadapter.properties` file.

(continued)

Property	Description	Required	Notes
	into SAP Solution Manager. For example, <code>twadmin</code> .		
<code>passwd</code>	The SAP password that will be used during the notification process to log into SAP Solution Manager. You can enter it in clear or in encrypted forms.	✓	To encrypt the password use the <code>enigma</code> program located in the <code>methods</code> folder on the master.
<code>lang</code>	The SAP logon language. For example, <code>EN</code> .	✓	
<code>destination</code>	A name entered here to identify the RFC Destination that will be used to connect to SAP Solution Manager. For example, <code>IWSM2</code> .  Note: The destination name must be univocal.	✓	This name defines the logical connection between the Solution Manager system and the master domain manager, referred to in Solution Manager as the <code>external scheduler</code> . The complete destination name will then be formed by: <code>destination@mdm_name</code> For example: <code>IWSM2@MAS93WIN</code>  Note: The destination name must be univocal.
<code>setDestinationAsDefault</code>	Set to <code>true</code> to make this destination the default one. The default is <code>false</code> .		Use this property in a context where a Solution Manager system has more than one active destination defined (that is, more registered masters), to set the default external scheduler. If you do not set a default, and you have more external schedulers registered on an SM system, you will have to specify the destination at scheduling time.
<code>jobStreamNamePrefix</code>	A prefix of at least four letters that is to be added to the names of the job streams created when jobs are submitted. The first character must be a letter while the remaining characters can be alphanumeric.		The default prefix is <code>SOLMAN</code> .
<code>agentName</code>	The name of the IWS agent that will run the jobs. When you search for the job definition in the Scheduling dialog, the		If no agent name is specified, the Search utility returns the names of the jobs defined to run on all the agents attached to the

Table 102. Properties for the `smseadapter.properties` file.

(continued)

Property	Description	Required	Notes
	Search utility returns the names of the jobs defined to run on this agent.		master domain manager (unless you use filtering).
<code>notificationThreadCheckInterval</code>	The time interval, in seconds, between checks made by the notification thread on the status changes of a job. The default is 5 seconds.		The thread notifies Solution Manager with the status changes of a job.
<code>adminConsoleURL</code>	The protocol used (http or https) and the host name and port of the Dynamic Workload Console attached to the master. For example, <code>https://mydwc:port_number/abc/console</code> .		The next four properties, all related to the Dynamic Workload Console, are optional, but if you specify one, you must specify all.
<code>adminConsoleUser</code>	The username that logs onto the Dynamic Workload Console attached to the master.		
<code>adminConsoleUserPassword</code>	The password of the username that logs onto the Dynamic Workload Console attached to the master.		
<code>maxRegistrationAttempts</code>	The maximum number of attempts to connect to SAP. By default, it is set to 5 times.		
<code>registrationAttemptInterval</code>	The time after which a new attempt to connect to SAP is performed. By default, it is set to 5 seconds.		



Note: If the language configured for the master domain manager is different from the language configured for the Solution Manager system, the messages issued in the Solution Manager user interface may be displayed in mixed languages.

Scheduling

The `Job Management Administration` panel of Solution Manager has two entry points for scheduling jobs:

- The `Schedule Jobs` item in `Common Tasks`, a direct way of scheduling, where you pick the job from the IBM Workload Scheduler database and you set the scheduling options and time definitions.
- The `Job Documentation` object, where you can create and edit job documentation, schedule, monitor, and manage jobs.

The jobs scheduled from Solution Manager on IBM Workload Scheduler must have been previously defined in the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

A job scheduled from the `Schedule Jobs` or `Job Documentation` panels in Solution Manager to be run by IBM Workload Scheduler, is automatically mapped in a job stream that is expressly created to include the job. The job stream is (automatically) defined in the IBM Workload Scheduler database with a specific prefix defined in the [smseadapter.properties](#) file on page 524.

Best practice for job security and stability

To ensure system stability and prevent known security conflicts, set the *streamlogon* user to match the agent installation owner (`wauser`) or `root` when submitting SAP jobs on the extended agent.

By aligning the *streamlogon* user with the owner of the `TWSDATA` directory, you avoid the permissions problem that occurs when the job attempts to write necessary diagnostic files.

If environmental constraints require using a *streamlogon* user that differs from the agent installation owner, the job successfully initializes but is expected to fail with *ABEND (Return Code 139)* upon execution.

This failure occurs because the non-default *streamlogon* user lacks the required write permissions to create and access essential log and trace files used by the `r3batch` method.

Required manual workaround

To resolve the *RC=139* error and allow the SAP job to complete, the administrator must manually adjust the file system permissions on the agent host **before** running the job. The administrator must grant full write access (`chmod 777`) to the *streamlogon* user for the following locations:

1. The `stdlist` folder within the `DATA_DIR`.
2. The `trace-r3batch.log` file located in the `TWA_DATA_DIR/methods/trace/` directory.

Scheduling jobs directly

In the Scheduling panel, before you can proceed to enter the job name and the scheduling details, you are asked to specify the identity of the scheduling system and the scheduler type, which must be SMSE. You can then specify the name of the job definition, and the job type, which can be any of the job types supported by IBM Workload Scheduler. The job is qualified by Solution Manager as an `external` job.

Select the `Status message` check box to enable monitoring tasks for the job.

In the `Start Conditions` section select when and how frequently the job will run and optionally make selections in the `Repeat every` and `Time Period` groups. Your selections are then mapped to matching run cycles, `valid from` and `valid to` dates, working days or non- working days, and time dependencies on IBM Workload Scheduler.



Note: The Extended Window start condition is not supported. All other start conditions are supported.

Use the tabs available on the uppermost part of the panel to manage jobs; for example, to copy, reschedule, release, kill, or cancel a job, create and see external notes, and check external logs.

If a scheduled job has not been started, you can change its start conditions or parameters and click **Schedule/Change Externally** again. Alternatively, you can change the start conditions and select **Reschedule** to reset the job to a new start time. In either case, IBM Workload Scheduler deletes the current job instance (that has not been started) and creates another one with the new characteristics.

On the other hand, you can click **Cancel** on a non-completed job that was already started. In this case, IBM Workload Scheduler deletes the running instance as expected.

As soon as the job is scheduled with success, the external job ID and the status are updated and you can view the job instance on the Dynamic Workload Console.

Scheduling from job documentation

With the Job Documentation option of the Job Management Administration panel, you can also create job documentation for jobs defined in IBM Workload Scheduler and scheduled from Solution Manager. From the Job Documentation menu you can view and edit job details, including job steps, basic business information, and scheduling information.

To create job documentation:

1. In the Job Documentation view, create job documentation **for a Job with detail UI**.
2. In the General pane of the new job documentation creation page, enter a job documentation name and select **Other** as *Job Type*. Selecting **Other**, *External Scheduler* is automatically selected.
3. Add a step in the Step Overview table.
4. Select a job definition type from a list of job types available from IBM Workload Scheduler.
5. Click **Save** on top of the job documentation creation page.
6. Select the **Systems** tab in the job documentation creation page and add a solution documentation, a logical component group, or a technical scenario for the new job documentation in the *Logical Component Groups*, *Solution Documentation and Technical Scenarios* table. Click **Save**.
7. Select **Scheduling** in the Systems table to set up scheduling definitions for the job associated with the new job documentation.

This action displays the same Scheduling panel described in [Scheduling jobs directly on page 526](#).

You can also select **Configure Monitoring** in the Systems table to set up monitoring specifications for the job.

Monitoring

Job status retrieval and job monitoring tasks are run by IBM Workload Scheduler, but you can configure and view them from the Solution Manager **Job Documentation** and **Monitoring** views. In Solution Manager to monitor a job you must configure a

Business project monitoring object (BPmon). When monitoring data is requested for a job, Solution Manager through the SMSE adapter requests IBM Workload Scheduler for updates on the job status, logs, alerts.

To view the status of a job in the Solution Manager **Job Documentation** view, provided you selected the **Status message** check box in the **Scheduling** page, follow these steps:

1. Open the job documentation view for the job.
2. Select the **Systems** and the **Scheduling** tabs.
3. In the **Scheduling** page select the **External Log** button.

The job log is displayed in a pop-up window.

4. Select the **Refresh** button of the **External Job Status** field in the **Scheduling** page.

The current status of the job is displayed in the field.

To configure monitoring for a scheduled job with the **Status message** check box selected, go to the **Job Management Administration** panel of Solution Manager and open the **Job Documentation** view related to the job. There, select the **Systems** tab and in the ensuing page select **Configure Monitoring**.

1. In the **Identification** section of the **Job Monitoring Setup** window, input all mandatory fields.
2. Select the **Alert Setting and Data Collection** tab and configure alerts to your convenience.
3. Fill in the mandatory fields in the **Incidents and Notifications** and **Monitoring Activities** tabs.
4. Select the **Mass Generate and Activate** button on top to save and activate the monitoring object.

With the Push mechanism IBM Workload Scheduler forwards to Solution Manager the status changes that a job instance undergoes until it reaches a final status such as **complete**, **canceled**, **error**, or **killed**. IBM Workload Scheduler also forwards the following scheduling time information for the job instance:

- Estimated duration
- Actual start
- Actual completion

On the basis of this information, and according to the alert configuration you specified in the **Alert Setting and Data Collection** pane, Solution Manager triggers these alerts when any of the thresholds you specified are reached or exceeded. This grants you the means to keep the execution of your workload under control.

To view the alerts for a monitored job, select the **Unified Alert Inbox** view in the **Job Management Administration** panel:

1. Select the monitoring object for the job in the **Job Monitoring Standard View**.
2. Refresh the alert list table after some monitoring period.



Note: Alert Inbox and Job Monitoring panels can be also accessed from the Home in the Job Management section.

Setting the traces on the application server for the major IBM Workload Scheduler processes

About this task

The application server handles all communications between the IBM Workload Scheduler processes. The trace for these communications is set to `tws_info` by default (information messages only). The application server can be set to trace `all` communications, either for the whole product or for these specific groups of processes:

- Command line
- Connector
- Database
- Planner
- Utilities
- Dynamic workload broker

Significant impact on performance: Activating traces for the WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base leads to a significant impact on performance, especially if you set the tracing to `all`. Thus you are strongly advised to identify the process group where the problem that you want to trace is occurring, and only set the trace to that group.

To modify the trace level on the WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base, edit the `trace.xml` file as necessary.

Templates for the master domain manager are stored in the following paths:

UNIX

On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_home/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/templates`

Windows

On Windows operating systems

`TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\templates`

Templates for the Dynamic Workload Console are stored in the following paths:

UNIX

On UNIX operating systems

`DWC_home/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates`

Windows

On Windows operating systems

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\templates`

When you edit the file with your customized settings for the master domain manager, move it to the following paths:

UNIX

On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/overrides`

Windows On Windows operating systems

TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\overrides

When you edit the file with your customized settings for the Dynamic Workload Console, move it to the following paths:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides

Windows On Windows operating systems

DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides

1. Copy the template file from the templates folder to a working folder.
2. Edit the template file in the working folder with the desired configuration.
3. Optionally, create a backup copy of the relevant configuration file present in the overrides directory in a different directory. Ensure you do not copy the backup file in the path where the template files are located.
4. Copy the updated template file to the overrides folder. Maintaining the original folder structure is not required.
5. Changes are effective immediately.

For example, to modify the trace level on WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base, perform the following steps:

1. Copy the `trace.xml` file from the *TWA_home/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/templates* folder to a working folder.
2. Edit the template file in the working folder by changing the following string:

```
<variable name="trace.specification" value="*info"/>
```

into

```
<variable name="trace.specification" value="com.ibm.tws.dao.model.  
=all:com.ibm.tws.dao.rdbms.=all"/>
```

3. Copy the updated template file to *TWA_DATA_DIR /usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/overrides*. Changes are effective immediately.

Traces are stored in *DWC_DATA_dir/appserver/engineServer/logs*.

The **trace.specification** can be found in `trace.xml` files and can refer to a specific component (`tws_XXX`) or to the whole product, as follows:

tws_all

```
"com.ibm.tws.=all:org.apache.wink.server.=all:com.hcl.tws.*=all"
```

tws_alldefault

```
"com.ibm.tws.*=error=enabled"
```

tws_broker_all

```
"com.ibm.scheduling.*=all:TWSAgent=all"
```

twc_rest

```
"com.ibm.tws.conn.=all:com.ibm.tws.twsd.rest.=all:org.apache.wink.server.*=all"
```

twc_cli

```
"com.ibm.tws.cli.=all:com.ibm.tws.objects.=all"
```

twc_utils

```
"com.ibm.tws.util.*=all"
```

twc_conn

```
"com.ibm.tws.conn.=all:com.ibm.tws.objects.=all:com.ibm.tws.updatemanager.=all:com.ibm.tws.dao.plan.=a  
ll"
```

twc_db

```
"com.ibm.tws.dao.model.=all:com.ibm.tws.dao.rdbms.=all"
```

twc_planner

```
"com.ibm.tws.planner.=all:com.tivoli.icalendar.=all:com.ibm.tws.runcycles.=all:com.ibm.tws.conn.planner.=all  
:com.ibm.tws.cli.planner.*=all"
```

twc_secjni

```
"com.ibm.tws.audit.=all:com.ibm.tws.security.=all"
```

twc_engine_broker_all

```
"com.ibm.tws.=all:com.ibm.scheduling.=all:TWSAgent=all"
```

Editing the logging element above with the **traceSpecification** value to `twc_all`, enables

```
"com.ibm.tws.=all:org.apache.wink.server.=all:com.hcl.tws.*=all".
```

Other values are reported in variable tags above. You can also replace the value of the **trace.specification** parameter with a custom string.

Considerations

Note the following facts:

- The order of the pattern lines is important because the first matching pattern line is used to build the return code value.
- Empty pattern strings ("") are ignored by the pattern matching procedure.

For example, the following is a valid pattern sequence. The first line is more restrictive than the second line.

```
"625 "User * missing = 104  
" "User * missing = 102"
```

The following pattern sequence is formally valid, but the second pattern line is never used. Because the first line is more general, it is always matched first.

```
“ “User * missing = 102
“625 “User * missing = 104
```

IP address validation

When a TCP/IP connection is established, netman reads the requester's node name and IP address from the socket. The IP address and node name are used to search the Symphony file for a known IBM Workload Scheduler workstation with one of the following possible results:

- If an IP address match is found the validation is considered successful.
- If a node name match is found, the validation is considered successful.
- If no match is found in the Symphony file or the IP address returned does not match the one read from the socket, the validation is considered unsuccessful.

The local option, `nm ipvalidate`, determines the action to be taken if IP validation is unsuccessful. If the option is set to `full`, unsuccessful validation causes IBM Workload Scheduler to close the connection and generate an error message. If the option is set to `none` (default), IBM Workload Scheduler permits all connections, but generates a warning message for unsuccessful validation checks.

Support for Internet Protocol version 6

IBM Workload Scheduler supports Internet Protocol version 6 (IPv6) in addition to the legacy IPv4. To assist customers in staging the transition from an IPv4 environment to a complete IPv6 environment, IBM Workload Scheduler provides IP dual-stack support. In other terms, the product is designed to communicate using both IPv4 and IPv6 protocols simultaneously with other applications using IPv4 or IPv6.

To this end, the IPv4-specific `gethostbyname` and `gethostbyaddr` functions have been replaced by the new `getaddrinfo` API that makes the client-server mechanism entirely protocol independent.

The `getaddrinfo` function handles both name-to-address and service-to-port translation, and returns `sockaddr` structures instead of a list of addresses. These `sockaddr` structures can then be used by the socket functions directly. In this way, `getaddrinfo` hides all the protocol dependencies in the library function, which is where they belong. The application deals only with the socket address structures that are filled in by `getaddrinfo`.

Operating system configuration (UNIX™ only)

IP validation depends on the system call `getaddrinfo()` to look up all the valid addresses for a host. The behavior of this routine varies, depending on the system configuration. When `getaddrinfo()` uses the file `/etc/hosts`, it returns the first matching entry. If the connection is initiated on an address which appears after the first matching entry, IP validation fails. To resolve the problem, place the entry used to initiate the connection before any other matching entries in the `/etc/hosts` file. If `getaddrinfo()` uses the "named" name server or the Network Information Service server and `getaddrinfo()` fails, contact your system administrator for assistance.

IP address validation messages

Following is a list of the messages for IP validation. If the Local Option `nm_ipvalidate` is set to `none` (default), the errors appear as warnings.

See the end of the list of conditions for the key to the variables:

- IBM Workload Scheduler workstation name is not found in the Symphony file

```
Ip address validation failed for request:
Service <num> for <program> on <workstation>(<operating_system_type>).
Connection received from IP address:
<c_ipaddr>. MAESTRO CPU <workstation> not found in
Symphony file.
```

- Call to `getaddrinfo()` fails:

```
IP address validation failed for request:
Service num for <program> on cpu(<operating_system_type>).
Connection received from IP address:
<c_ipaddr>. getaddrinfo() failed, unable to
retrieve IP address of connecting node: <node>.
```

- IP Addresses returned by `getaddrinfo()` do not match the IP address of connection workstation:

```
IP address validation failed for request:
Service <num> for <program> on <workstation>(<operating_system_type>).
Connection received from IP address:
<c_ipaddr>. System known IP addresses for node
name node: <k_ipaddr>.
```

- The IP address specified in the workstation definition for the IBM Workload Scheduler workstation indicated in the service request packet does not match the IP address of connecting workstation:

```
IP address validation failed for request:
Service <num> for <program> on <workstation>(<operating_system_type>).
Connection received from IP address:
<c_ipaddr>. TWS known IP addresses for cpu
<k_ipaddr>.
```

- Regardless of the state of `nm_ipvalidate`, the following information message is displayed when IP validation cannot be performed because the Symphony file does not exist or an error occurs when reading it:

```
IP address validation not performed for
request: Service <num> for <program> on
<workstation>(<operating_system_type>). Connection received from IP
address: <c_ipaddr>. Cannot open or read
Symphony file. Service request accepted.
```

Where:

<num>

Service number (2001-**writer**, 2002-**mailman**...)

<program>

Program requesting service

<workstation>

IBM Workload Scheduler workstation name of connecting workstation

<operating_system_type>

Operating system of connecting workstation

<node>

Node name or IP address of connecting workstation

<c_ipaddr>

IP address of connecting workstation

<k_ipaddr>

Known IP address for connecting workstation

IP validation is always successful in the absence of a Symphony file. In communications from a domain manager to an agent it is normally successful because a Symphony file does not yet exist. However, if the agent has a Symphony file from a previous run, the initial link request might fail if the Symphony file does not include the name of the domain manager.

Impact of network changes

Any changes that you make to your network might have an impact on IBM Workload Scheduler. Workstations can be identified within IBM Workload Scheduler by host name or IP address. Any changes to host names or IP addresses of specific workstations must obviously be also implemented in the IBM Workload Scheduler database. However, remember that if those workstations are involved in jobs that are currently scheduled in the Symphony file, those jobs are looking for the old workstation identity.

Changes to host names or IP addresses of specific workstations can be activated immediately by running JnextPlan -for 0000. A new production plan is created (containing the updated IP addresses and host names), but the plan time span is not extended.

Thus, plan any network changes with the job schedules in mind, and for major changes you are advised to suspend IBM Workload Scheduler activities until the changes complete in the network and also implemented in the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

Network changes also have a specific impact on the connection parameters used by the application server and the command-line client:

Application server

If you change the network you will need to change the communication parameters specified in the application server configuration files. For more information, see [Configuring IBM Workload Scheduler using templates on page 648](#).

Command-line client

When you connect from the command-line client you supply a set of connection parameters. This is done in one of these ways:

From the localopts file

The default method is that the connection parameters in the `localopts` file are customized when the command line client is installed.

From the useropts file

A `useropts` file might have been created for the user in question, containing a version of the connection parameters personalized for the user.

In the command line, individually

When you invoke one of the command-line programs, you can optionally include the parameters as arguments to the command. These override the values in the `localopts` or `useropts` files.

In the command line, in a file

When you invoke one of the command-line programs, you can optionally include the parameters in a file, the name of which is identified as the `-file` argument to the command. These override the values in the `localopts` or `useropts` files.

Modify whichever method you are using to incorporate the new network connection details.

Chapter 6. Configuring secure communications

IBM® Workload Scheduler ensures your business operations are always secure with robust, authenticated, and encrypted connections powered by the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol.

By leveraging certificates, only trusted devices, users, and systems can access the environment resources, providing the ultimate protection for your critical workloads.

In the following chapters, you can find all the information you need to easily manage certificates and maintain secure communication across your entire infrastructure:

- [Managing certificates using Certman on page 536](#)
- [Certificate rotation on page 550](#)
- [Scenario: SSL Communication across the fault-tolerant agent network on page 552](#)

Managing certificates using Certman

Using Certman tool, you can easily manage the custom certificates in both fresh installation or upgrade procedures.

Certman supports the following actions:

- [Generate new certificates and a Certificate Authority \(CA\) on page 536](#)
- [Generate new certificates from an existing Certificate Authority \(CA\) on page 539](#)
- [Extract certificates from an existing keystore on a master domain manager on page 541](#)
- [Verify the validity of certificates on page 545](#)
- [Import certificates from a master domain manager into the Dynamic Workload Console on page 546](#)
- [Remove an alias from the keystore or truststore on page 549](#)

You can find Certman at the following path: `TWS_INST_DIR/TWS/bin`, where `TWS_INST_DIR` is the IBM® Workload Scheduler installation directory.



Note: Certman is not supported on IBM i operative systems.

To verify the version of Certman you are using, you can run the following command: `certman version`.

Running any command of Certman, you can also see where the logs file is located.

Generate new certificates and a Certificate Authority (CA)

About this task

If you want to secure the communication based on the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol, but you do not have a corporate Certificate Authority (CA), you can use Certman to create one and generate the required certificates.

1. Browse to the following path: <image_location>/TWS/<interp_name>/Tivoli_LWA_<interp_name>\TWS\bin
2. Generate the CA and certificates by running the following command:

```
certman generate -keypasswd <key pwd> -outpath <output path> [-days <valid days>] [-subj <full subject>]
[-keysize <key size in bits>] [-cakeypasswd <ca key pwd>] [-cadays <ca valid days>] [-casubj <ca full
subject>] [-wauser <user>] [-wagroup <group>]
```

Where:

keypasswd

Specify the password to encrypt the private key. The minimum length of the password is 6 characters.



Note: If the password contains wildcards, enclose the password in single quotes. For example:

```
-keypasswd 'passw!rd'
```

outpath

Specify the folder where to generate the certificates.

days

Optionally, specify the validity period in days after which the tls certificate expires.

subj

Optionally, specify additional information about the owner of the tls certificate using OpenSSL syntax:

```
subj: "/C=<country>/ST=<state>/L=<locality>/O=<organization>/CN=<common name>"
```

For example:

```
subj: "/C=IT/ST=none/L=Rome/O=COLA/CN=cola.com"
```

Where:

C

Specify the nation or sovereign territory.

ST

Specify the regional subdivision within the country.

L

Specify the city or town. The specific urban center.

O

Specify the name of the organization that owns the certificate.

CN

Specify the domain name that the certificate is intended to secure.

keysize

Specify the dimension of the private key in bits.

cakeypasswd

Specify the password for encrypting the private key of the CA. The minimum length of the password is 6 characters.



Note: If the password contains wildcards, enclose the password in single quotes. For example:

```
-keypasswd 'passwd'
```

cadays

Optionally, specify the validity period in days after which the CA certificate expires.

casubj

Optionally, specify additional information about the owner of the CA using the OpenSSL syntax:

```
casubj: "/C=<country>/ST=<state>/L=<locality>/O=<organization>/CN=<common name>"
```

For example:

```
casubj: "/C=IT/ST=none/L=Rome/O=COLA/CN=cola.com"
```

Where:

C

Specify the nation or sovereign territory.

ST

Specify the regional subdivision within the country.

L

Specify the city or town. The specific urban center.

O

Specify the name of the organization that owns the certificate.

CN

Specify the domain name that the certificate is intended to secure.

wauser

Optionally, specify the <TWS_user> that must be set as owner of the output files.

wagroup

Optionally, specify the <TWS_user> that must be set as group of the output files.



Note: To specify an owner and group in **wauser** and **wagroup** parameters, the user who launches Certman must have the permissions to change the owner and group on output files.

Results

The following output files are the CA and certificates you can find in the specified output folder:

- **ca.crt**

The file that contains the Root ca.

- **ca.key**

The private key of the CA.

- **tls.crt**

The certificate signed and validated by the CA.

- **tls.key**

The private key of the tls certificate.

- **tls.sth**

The stash file of the tls certificate that contains the password encoded in Base64 format.



Note: It is strongly suggested that you save the **ca.key** so that in future, if needed, you can generate or replace the certificates only.

After having generated the CA, add it to the OS and browser so that they can trust the new CA.

Generate new certificates from an existing Certificate Authority (CA)

About this task

If you need to generate new certificates from an existing Certificate Authority (CA), you can use Certman to generate the required certificates. In this case, the **capath** parameter is required and you need to provide the path of the existing **ca.crt** and **ca.key** files.

1. Browse to the following path: <image_location>/TWS/<interp_name>/Tivoli_LWA_<interp_name>\TWS\bin
2. Generate the new certificates by running the following command:

```
certman generate -keypasswd <pwd> -outpath <output path> [-capath <ca path>] [-days <valid days>] [-subj <full subject>] [-keysize <key size in bits>] [-wauser <user>] [-wagroup <group>]
```

Where:

keypasswd

Specify the password to encrypt the private key. The password must be the same used for the existing CA, and the minimum length is 6 characters.



Note: If the password contains wildcards, enclose the password in single quotes. For example:

```
-keypasswd 'passwd!rd'
```

outpath

Specify the folder where to generate the certificates.

capath

Specify the path where `ca.crt` and `ca.key` files are stored.

days

Optionally, specify the validity period in days after which the tls certificate expires.

subj

Optionally, specify additional information about the owner of the tls certificate using OpenSSL syntax:

```
subj: "/C=<country>/ST=<state>/L=<locality>/O=<organization>/CN=<common name>"
```

For example:

```
subj: "/C=IT/ST=none/L=Rome/O=COLA/CN=cola.com"
```

Where:

C

Specify the nation or sovereign territory.

ST

Specify the regional subdivision within the country.

L

Specify the city or town. The specific urban center.

O

Specify the name of the organization that owns the certificate.

CN

Specify the domain name that the certificate is intended to secure.

keysize

Specify the dimension of the private key in bits.

wauser

Optionally, specify the <TWS_user> that must be set as owner of the output files.

wagroup

Optionally, specify the <TWS_user> that must be set as group of the output files..



Note: To specify an owner and group in **wauser** and **wagroup** parameters, the user who launches Certman must have the permissions to change the owner and group on output files.

Results

The following output files are the certificates you can find in the specified output folder:

- **tls.crt**

The certificate signed and validated by the CA.

- **tls.key**

The private key of the tls certificate.

- **tls.sth**

The stash file of the tls certificate that contains the password encoded in Base64 format.

Extract certificates from the keystore and truststore

About this task

You can use Certman to extract certificates from the keystore and truststore on a master domain manager, an agent, or the Dynamic Workload Console to provide them to the backup master domain manager or Dynamic Workload Console. Ensure that all certificates use a minimum key length of 2048 bits.

Extract certificates from version 10.2.3 or later

About this task

You can extract certificates from the keystore and truststore on a master domain manager, an agent, or the Dynamic Workload Console V10.2.3 or later by completing the following steps:

1. Browse to one of the following installation bin paths, according to the component from which you want to extract the certificate:

Master domain manager

<MDM_INST_PATH>/TWS/bin/certman, where <MDM_INST_PATH> is the master domain manager installation directory.

Dynamic Workload Console

`<DWC_INST_PATH>/bin/certman`, where `<DWC_INST_PATH>` is the Dynamic Workload Console installation directory.

Agent

`<AGENT_INST_PATH>/TWS/bin/certman`, where `<AGENT_INST_PATH>` is the agent installation directory.

2. Extract the certificates by running the following command:

```
certman extract -outpath <output path> [-storepasswd <pw>] [-agentscope] [-wauser <user>] [-wagroup <group>] [-workdir <working directory>] [-cachain-splitted]
```

Where:

outpath

Specify the folder where to store the certificates.

storepasswd

Optionally, specify the password of the keystore on the master domain manager.



Note: For version 9.4.x, this parameter is required.



Note: If the password contains wildcards, enclose the password in single quotes. For example:

```
-keypasswd 'passw!rd'
```

agentscope

Optionally, add the parameter to the command to extract certificates from the keystore of the agent on which you are launching Certman.

wauser

Optionally, specify the `<TWS_user>` that must be set as owner of the output files.

wagroup

Optionally, specify the `<TWS_user>` that must be set as group of the output files..



Note: To specify an owner and group in **wauser** and **wagroup** parameters, the user who launches Certman must have the permissions to change the owner and group on output files.

workdir

Optionally, specify the working directory used by the command for storing data while running. When the command stops running, the working directory is deleted. Ensure you have write access to the specified directory and enough space is available.

cachain-splitted

Optionally, specify the CA chain to be splitted into multiple files. By default, it is false.

Results

The following output files are the certificates you can find in the specified output folder:

- **ca.crt**

The file that contains the intermediate CA certificate and ends up with the Root ca.



Note: If you enabled the **cachain-splitted** parameter, the **ca.crt** contains only the Root ca. The intermediate CA certificates are stored in the **additionalCAs** subfolder.

- **tls.crt**

The certificate signed and validated by the CA.

- **tls.key**

The private key of the tls certificate.

- **tls.sth**

The stash file of the tls certificate that contains the password encoded in Base64 format.

- **additionalCAs**

The subfolder where any intermediate CA certificate extracted by the truststore is stored.

Extract certificates from a previous product version level

About this task

You can extract certificates from a previous product version level by completing the following steps:

1. From [IBM Fix Central](#), download the 10.2.6 installation package: `<version>-IWS-<component>-<operating_system>.zip`
2. Extract the content, browse to the path `<IMAGE_DIR>/TWS/<OPERATING_SYSTEM>_<ARCHITECTURE>/Tivoli_LWA_<operating_system>/TWS/bin/`, and copy the following files:

- certman
- certman.extract.json
- certman.generate.json
- certman.import.json
- certman.verify.json
- certman.version.json

3. Paste the Certman files into the following path: TWS_INST_DIR/TWS/bin, where TWS_INST_DIR is the IBM® Workload Scheduler installation directory.



Note: For UNIX systems, ensure that all the files have the ownership of the user who installed the master domain manager and the correct permissions (775 for certman and 644 for the json files).

4. Extract the certificates by running the following command:

```
certman extract -outpath <output path> [-storepasswd <pw>] [-agentscope] [-wauser <user>] [-wagroup <group>] [-workdir <working directory>] [-cachain-splitted]
```

Where:

outpath

Specify the folder where to store the certificates.

storepasswd

Optionally, specify the password of the keystore on the master domain manager.



Note: For version 9.4.x, this parameter is required.



Note: If the password contains wildcards, enclose the password in single quotes. For example:

```
-keypasswd 'passw!rd'
```

agentscope

Optionally, add the parameter to the command to extract certificates from the keystore of the agent on which you are launching Certman.

wauser

Optionally, specify the <TWS_user> that must be set as owner of the output files.

wagroup

Optionally, specify the <TWS_user> that must be set as group of the output files..



Note: To specify an owner and group in **wauser** and **wagroup** parameters, the user who launches Certman must have the permissions to change the owner and group on output files.

workdir

Optionally, specify the working directory used by the command for storing data while running. When the command stops running, the working directory is deleted. Ensure you have write access to the specified directory and enough space is available.

cachain-splitted

Optionally, specify the CA chain to be splitted into multiple files. By default, it is false.

Results

The following output files are the certificates you can find in the specified output folder:

- **ca.crt**

The file that contains the intermediate CA certificate and ends up with the Root ca.



Note: If you enabled the **cachain-splitted** parameter, the **ca.crt** contains only the Root ca. The intermediate CA certificates are stored in the **additionalCAs** subfolder.

- **tls.crt**

The certificate signed and validated by the CA.

- **tls.key**

The private key of the tls certificate.

- **tls.sth**

The stash file of the tls certificate that contains the password encoded in Base64 format.

- **additionalCAs**

The subfolder where any intermediate CA certificate extracted by the truststore is stored.

Verify the validity of certificates

About this task

If you want to verify whether certificates are in a valid **.pem** format, are not expired, or have a stash that matches the private key password, you can use Certman to verify the validity.

1. Browse to the following path: `<image_location>/TWS/<interp_name>/Tivoli_LWA_<interp_name>\TWS\bin`
2. Check the validity by running the following command:

```
certman verify -inpath <input path> -keypasswd <key pwd> [-minkeysize <minimum key size>] [-workdir <working directory>]
```

Where:

inpath

Specify the folder that contains the following certificates:

- `tls.crt`
- `tls.key`
- `tls.sth`
- `ca.crt`

keypasswd

Specify the password used to encrypt the private key.



Note: If the password contains wildcards, enclose the password in single quotes. For example:

```
-keypasswd 'passwd'
```

minkeysize

Optionally, specify the minimum size of the key. The default value is 1024.

workdir

Optionally, specify the working directory used by the command for storing data while running. When the command stops running, the working directory is deleted. Ensure you have write access to the specified directory and enough space is available.

Results

Using the `verify` command, the following checks are performed:

- The key password.
- The stash password (if the `tls.sth` file is available).
- The certificate expiration date.
- The key length.
- The certificate and key in **.pem** format.
- The private key and public key match.
- The public key in **tls.key** and public key in **tls.crt** match.
- The correctness of the **tls.crt** in the CA chain.
- The purposes of the **tls.crt** file, which must be suitable for both client and server connections.

Import certificates into the truststore

About this task

You can use Certman to import a CA chain into the truststore of the Dynamic Workload Console, of a master domain manager or of an agent.

If certificates being imported are part of a chain consisting of 3 or more certificates (one Root CA, followed by one or more Intermediate CAs, followed by the end user certificate), then the `ca.crt` must contain the Root CA certificate only. Any Intermediate CA certificates must be stored in the `additionalCAs` subfolder, which therefore becomes a mandatory subfolder. Each Intermediate CA must be stored in the `additionalCAs` subfolder in its own file.



Note: From V10.2.3, if certificates being imported are part of a chain, the `ca.crt` can contain also the intermediate CAs. In this case, it must begin with one or more intermediate CA certificates and end with the Root CA.

1. Browse to one of the following installation bin paths, according to the component on which you want to import the CA chain:

Master domain manager

`<MDM_INST_PATH>/TWS/bin/certman`, where `<MDM_INST_PATH>` is the master domain manager installation directory.

Dynamic Workload Console

`<DWC_INST_PATH>/bin/certman`, where `<DWC_INST_PATH>` is the Dynamic Workload Console installation directory.

Agent

`<AGENT_INST_PATH>/TWS/bin/certman`, where `<AGENT_INST_PATH>` is the agent installation directory.

2. Import the CA chain by running the following command:

```
certman import (-inpath <input path> [-storepasswd <store pwd>] [-all -keypasswd <key pwd>]) [-url
<host:port> -storepasswd <store pwd>) -alias <alias> [-forcealias] [-agentscope] [-updatedepot]
[-workdir <working directory>]
```

Where:

inpath

Specify the folder that contains the CA chain.

storepasswd

Optionally, specify the password of the truststore on the master domain manager.



Note: If the password contains wildcards, enclose the password in single quotes. For example:

```
-keypasswd 'passw!rd'
```

all

Optionally, import the certificate, the key and the CA chain.

keypasswd

Specify the password used to encrypt the private key. If `all` is specified, this value is mandatory. The password requires a length of at least 8 characters.



Note: If the password contains wildcards, enclose the password in single quotes.

For example:

```
-keypasswd 'passwd'
```

url

The URL of a server that contains the CA chain to be imported (for example, the master domain manager server).

Where

host

The fully qualified host name or IP address of the server.

port

The HTTPS port.

alias

Specify an alias to be used in the truststore file during the import.

forcealias

Optionally, specify an alias to be used in the truststore file that overwrites the existing alias. Use this parameter if the master domain manager already communicates with the Dynamic Workload Console.

agentscope

Optionally, add the parameter to the command to extract certificates from the keystore of the agent on which you are launching Certman.



Note: To target the truststore of a master domain manager, omit the `agentscope` option and run the command separately.

updatedepot

Optionally, add the parameter to the command to update the master domain manager `depot` folder located at: `<TWSDATA>/ssl/depot`

workdir

Optionally, specify the working directory used by the command for storing data while running. When the command stops running, the working directory is deleted. Ensure you have write access to the specified directory and enough space is available.

Results

The CA chain has been imported in the Dynamic Workload Console, master domain manager or agent.

Remove an alias from the keystore or truststore

About this task

You can remove an alias from the keystore or truststore on a master domain manager, an agent, or the Dynamic Workload Console by completing the following steps:

1. Browse to one of the following installation bin paths, according to the component from which you want to delete the alias:

Master domain manager

`<MDM_INST_PATH>/TWS/bin/certman`, where `<MDM_INST_PATH>` is the master domain manager installation directory.

Dynamic Workload Console

`<DWC_INST_PATH>/bin/certman`, where `<DWC_INST_PATH>` is the Dynamic Workload Console installation directory.

Agent

`<AGENT_INST_PATH>/TWS/bin/certman`, where `<AGENT_INST_PATH>` is the agent installation directory.

2. Remove the alias by running the following command:

```
certman delete -alias <alias> -storetype <KEY|TRUST|ALL> [-storepasswd <store pwd>] [-agentscope]
[-workdir <work dir>]
```

Where:

alias

Specify the alias to remove.

storetype

Specify `KEY` to remove the alias from the keystore, `TRUST` to remove the alias from the truststore, or `ALL` to remove the alias from both the keystore and truststore.



Note: Specifying `ALL` without the alias being actually present on both the keystore and the truststore, leads to the failure of the `certman delete` command.

storepasswd

Optionally, specify the password of the keystore or truststore on the master domain manager.



Note: If the password contains wildcards, enclose the password in single quotes. For example:



```
-keypasswd 'passwd!rd'
```

agentscope

Optionally, add the parameter to the command to extract certificates from the keystore of the agent on which you are launching Certman.



Note: To target the keystore or truststore of a master domain manager, omit the `agentscope` option and run the command separately.

workdir

Optionally, specify the working directory used by the command for storing data while running. When the command stops running, the working directory is deleted. Ensure you have write access to the specified directory and enough space is available.

Results

Using the delete command, the specified alias is removed.

Certificate rotation

Rotate the certificates in your environment.

Before you begin

Before starting the certificate rotation procedure, make sure the following prerequisites are met:

1. Generate new certificates by performing one of the following procedures:
 - [Generate new certificates and a Certificate Authority \(CA\) on page 536](#)



Note: When you generate new certificates to proceed with the certificate rotation procedure, the password to encrypt the private key must be the same used for the old certificates.

or

- [Generate new certificates from an existing Certificate Authority \(CA\) on page 539](#)
2. Give `root` access to the master domain manager and the dynamic agent.

About this task

You can extend the certificate customization also to backup master domain manager, dynamic domain manager, and Dynamic Workload Console.

To perform certificate rotation in your environment without downtime, follow the procedure described below:

1. Create the `additionalCAs` folder by running the following command:

```
mkdir -p <TWA_DATA_DIR>/ssl/depot/additionalCAs
```

- Copy the certificates from the `outpath` folder into the `additionalCAs` folder by running the following command:

```
cp outpath/ca.crt TWA_DATA_DIR/ssl/depot/additionalCAs/ca_new.crt
cp SSL_certs_2025/tls.crt TWA_DATA_DIR/ssl/depot/additionalCAs/tls_new.crt
```



Note: If you generated certificates from an existing CA, you do not need to copy `ca_new.crt` into the `additionalCAs` folder.

- Add the new `ca.crt` and `tls.crt` certificates to the CA chain by running the `AgentCertificateDownloader` script on the backup master domain manager, dynamic agents and fault-tolerant agents:

```
cd <TWS_path>/bin
./AgentCertificateDownloader.sh
--wauser twsuser
--wapassword <wauser password>
--tdwbhostname <wauser ip address>
--tdwbport <master port>
--work_dir /tmp
```

For more information, see Certificates download to dynamic agents and fault-tolerant agents - `AgentCertificateDownloader` script

- Import the new certificates on the master domain manager and backup master domain manager:

- Create the `additionalCAs` folder for the new certificates within the certificates folder generated by Certman by running the following command:

```
mkdir -p <input path>/depot/additionalCAs
```

- Move the certificates from the `TWA_DATA_DIR/ssl/depot` folder to the `additionalCAs` and rename the certificates:

```
cd <TWA_DATA_DIR>/ssl/depot
cp ca.crt additionalCAs/ca_old.crt
cp tls.crt additionalCAs/tls_old.crt
```

The certificates are renewed without downtime.

- Import the CA chain by running the following command:

```
certman import -inpath <input path> -all -keypasswd <key pwd> -updatedepot -alias server -forcealias
```

Where:

inpath

Specify the folder that contains the CA chain.

all

Import the certificate, the key and the CA chain.

keypasswd

Specify the password used to encrypt the private key. If `all` is specified, this value is mandatory. The password requires a length of at least 8 characters.



Note: If the password contains wildcards, enclose the password in single quotes. For example:

```
-keypasswd 'passwd!rd'
```

updatedepot

Add the parameter to the command to update the master domain manager depot folder located at:

```
<TWSDATA>/ssl/depot
```

alias server

Specify the server alias to be used in the truststore file during the import.

forcealias

Specify an alias to be used in the truststore file that overwrites the existing alias.

6. Remove the additionalCAs folder from the depot of the master domain manager:

```
rm -rf <TWA_DATA_DIR>/ssl/depot/additionalCAs
```

7. Run the AgentCertificateDownloader script on the backup master domain manager, dynamic agents and fault-tolerant agents:

```
cd <TWS_path>/bin
./AgentCertificateDownloader.sh
--wauser twsuser
--wapassword <wauser password>
--tdwbhostname <wauser ip address>
--tdwbport <master port>
--work_dir /tmp
```

For more information, see Certificates download to dynamic agents and fault-tolerant agents - AgentCertificateDownloader script.

Scenario: SSL Communication across the fault-tolerant agent network

SSL communication is enabled by default for fresh installations, however, you might need to set it up at upgrade time, as described in the following topics.

You can enable the SSL connection using OpenSSL Toolkit for the following components:

- Master domain manager and its domain managers
- Master domain manager and fault-tolerant agents in the master domain
- Master domain manager and backup master domain manager
- Domain manager and fault-tolerant agents that belong to that domain

The default certificates and the custom certificates are located in the <TWSDATA>\ssl\certs directory.

Using SSL for netman and conman

IBM Workload Scheduler provides a secure, authenticated, and encrypted connection mechanism for communication across the network topology. This mechanism is based on the Secure Sockets Layer (SSL) protocol and uses the OpenSSL Toolkit, which is automatically installed with IBM Workload Scheduler.

The SSL protocol is based on a private and public key methodology. SSL provides the following authentication methods:

CA trusting only

Two workstations trust each other if each receives from the other a certificate that is signed or is trusted. That is, if the CA certificate is in the list of trusted CAs on each workstation. With this authentication level, a workstation does not perform any additional checks on certificate content, such as the distinguished name. Any signed or trusted certificate can be used to establish an SSL session. See [Setting local options on page 48](#) for a definition of the `caonly` option used by the `ssl auth mode` keyword.

Check if the distinguished name matches a defined string

Two workstations trust each other if, after receiving a trusted or signed certificate, each performs a further check by extracting the distinguished name from the certificate and comparing it with a string that was defined in its local options file. See [Setting local options on page 48](#) for a definition of the `string` option.

Check if the distinguished name matches the workstation name

Two workstations trust each other if, after receiving a signed or trusted certificate, each performs a further check by extracting the distinguished name from the certificate and comparing it with the unique ID of the workstation that sent the certificate. You can obtain the unique ID by using the `;showid composer` filter. Only if the unique ID is empty, you can use the name of the workstation instead of the unique ID.

See [Setting local options on page 48](#) for a definition of the `cpu` option.

To provide SSL security for a domain manager attached to z/OS® in an end-to-end connection, configure the OS/390® Cryptographic Services System SSL in the IBM Workload Scheduler code that runs in the OS/390® USS UNIX® shell in the IBM Z Workload Scheduler server address space. See the IBM Z Workload Scheduler documentation.

When configuring SSL you can:

Use the same certificate for the entire network

If the workstations are configured with CA trusting only, they accept connections with any other workstation that sends a signed or trusted certificate. To enforce the authentication you define a name or a list of names that must match the contents of the certificate distinguished name (DN) field in the `localopts` file of each workstation.

Use a certificate for each domain

Install private keys and signed certificates for each domain in the network. Then, configure each workstation to accept a connection only with partners that have a particular string of the certificate DN field in the `localopts` file of each workstation.

Use a certificate for each workstation

Install a different key and a signed certificate on each workstation and add a Trusted CA list containing the CA that signed the certificate. Then, configure each workstation to accept a connection only with partners that have their workstation name specified in the Symphony file recorded in the DN field of the certificate.

Configuring SSL attributes

Use the composer command line or the Dynamic Workload Console to update the workstation definition in the database. See the section about workstation definition in *User's Guide and Reference* for further information.

Configure the following attributes:

secureaddr

Defines the port used to listen for incoming SSL connections. This value is read when the **securitylevel** attribute is set.

For workload broker workstations

Ignore this attribute.

For remote engine workstations using HTTPS protocol to communicate with the remote engine

Specify the HTTPS port number of the remote engine.

For other types of workstations

Specify the value assigned in the `localopts` file for variable `nm ssl port`. The value must be different value from the value assigned to `nm port` variable in the `localopts` file.

If **securitylevel** is specified, but this attribute is missing, the default value for this field is `31113`. Specify a value in the range from `1` to `65535`.

See the *Administration Guide* for information about SSL authentication and local options set in the `TWS_home/localopts` configuration file.

securitylevel

Specifies the type of SSL authentication for the workstation. Do not specify this attribute for a workstation with type `broker`. It can have one of the following values:

enabled

The workstation uses SSL authentication only if its domain manager workstation or another fault-tolerant agent below it in the domain hierarchy requires it.

on

The workstation uses SSL authentication when it connects with its domain manager. The domain manager uses SSL authentication when it connects to its parent domain manager. The fault-tolerant agent refuses any incoming connection from its domain manager if it is not an SSL connection.

force

The workstation uses SSL authentication for all of its connections and accepts connections from both parent and subordinate domain managers.

force_enabled

The workstation uses SSL authentication for all of its connections to all target workstations which are set to this value. The workstation tries to establish a connection in FULLSSL mode and, if the attempt fails, it tries to establish an unsecure connection. If you plan to set different security levels between master domain manager and fault-tolerant agents, ensure all these components are at version 95 Fix Pack 4 or later. For versions earlier than 95 Fix Pack 4, the same security level is required for master domain manager and fault-tolerant agents.

If this attribute is omitted, the workstation is not configured for SSL connections and any value for **secureaddr** is ignored. Make sure, in this case, that the `nm ssl port` local option is set to 0 to ensure that **netman** process does not try to open the port specified in **secureaddr**. See the *Administration Guide* for information about SSL authentication and local options set in the `TWS_home/localopts` configuration file.

The following table describes the type of communication used for each type of **securitylevel** setting.

Table 103. Type of communication depending on the security level value

Value set on the Fault-tolerant Agent (or the Domain Manager)	Value set on its Domain Manager (or on its Parent Domain Manager)	Type of connection established
Not specified	Not specified	TCP/IP
Enabled	Not specified	TCP/IP
On	Not specified	No connection
Force	Not specified	No connection
Not specified	On	TCP/IP
Enabled	On	TCP/IP
On	On	SSL
Force	On	SSL
Not specified	Enabled	TCP/IP
Enabled	Enabled	TCP/IP
On	Enabled	SSL
Force	Enabled	SSL
Not specified	Force	No connection
Enabled	Force	SSL

Table 103. Type of communication depending on the security level value (continued)

Value set on the Fault-tolerant Agent (or the Domain Manager)	Value set on its Domain Manager (or on its Parent Domain Manager)	Type of connection established
On	Force	SSL
Force	Force	SSL
force_enabled	force_enabled	SSL

The value for **securitylevel** is not specified for dynamic workload broker workstations.

The following example shows a workstation definition that includes the security attributes:

```
cpuname MYWIN
os WNT
node apollo
tcpaddr 30112
secureaddr 32222
for maestro
autolink off
fullstatus on
securitylevel on
end
```

Configuring full SSL security

This section describes how to implement full SSL security when using an SSL connection for communication across the network by netman and conman. It contains the following topics:

- [Overview on page 556](#)
- [Setting up full SSL security on page 557](#)
- [Configuring full SSL support for internetwork dependencies on page 557](#)



Note: The full SSL security feature is not applicable to the communication between dynamic agents and the broker workstation that is defined for the master domain manager or the dynamic domain manager to which the dynamic agents are connected.

Overview

This feature provides the option to set a higher degree of SSL-based connection security on IBM Workload Scheduler networks in addition to the already available level of SSL security.

If you require a more complete degree of SSL protection, this feature supplies new configuration options to setup advanced connection security, otherwise you can use the standard settings documented above in this chapter.

The Full SSL security enhancements

Full SSL security support provides the following enhancements:

- TCP ports that can become security breaches are no longer left open.
- Traveling data, including communication headers and trailers, is now *totally* encrypted.

Compatibility between SSL support levels

The non-full and the full SSL support levels are mutually exclusive. That is, they cannot be configured simultaneously and cannot be enabled at the same time. If you enable full SSL support for an IBM Workload Scheduler network, any connection attempts by agents that are not configured for full SSL will be rejected by agents with full SSL support enabled. Vice versa, agents configured for full SSL support cannot communicate with the rest of a network set up for non-full SSL support.

Setting up full SSL security

About this task

To set full SSL connection security for your network, you must configure the following options:

enSSLFullConnection (or sf)

Use `optman` on the master domain manager to set this global option to `Yes` to enable full SSL support for the network. For more information, see [Setting global options on page 13](#).

nm SSL full port

If you defined the SSL port at installation time using the **netmansslport** parameter, no further action is required. For more information about the **netmansslport** parameter, see the section about agent and master installation parameters in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

If you have not defined the SSL port at installation time, edit the `localopts` file on every agent of the network (including the master domain manager) to set this local option to the port number used to listen for incoming SSL connections. For more information, see [Setting local options on page 48](#). Take note of the following:

- This port number is to be defined also for the `SECUREADDR` parameter in the workstation definition of the agent. For more information, see the topic about workstation definition in *User's Guide and Reference*.
- Check that the `securitylevel` parameter in the workstation definition of each workstation using SSL is set at least to *enabled*. For more information, see the topic about workstation definition in *User's Guide and Reference*.
- In a full SSL security setup, the `nm SSL port` local option is to be set to zero. For more information, see [Setting local options on page 48](#).
- You must stop netman (**conman shut;wait**) and restart it (**StartUp**) after making the changes in `localopts`.

Configuring full SSL support for internetwork dependencies

About this task

The network agent that resolves internetwork dependencies requires a particular setup for full SSL support.

To enable a network agent for full SSL support:

1. Configure both the hosting and the remote fault-tolerant agents for full SSL support.
2. On the hosting fault-tolerant agent copy or move the `netmth.opts` file from the `DATA_DIR/config` to the `DATA_DIR/methods` directories and add (and configure) the following options:

SSL remote CPU

The workstation name of the remote master or fault-tolerant agent.

SSL remote full port

The port number defined for full SSL support on the remote master or fault-tolerant agent.

The local options that specify the private key and certificate on the hosting fault-tolerant agent

These are documented in the [Setting local options on page 48](#)).

Note that if the hosting fault-tolerant agent hosts more than one network agent, the `DATA_DIR/methods` directory contains one `netmth.opts` file for every defined network agent. In this case the complete name of each `netmth.opts` file must become:

```
network-agent-name_netmth.opts
```

If the `DATA_DIR/methods` directory contains both `network-agent-name_netmth.opts` and `netmth.opts` files, only `network-agent-name_netmth.opts` is used. If multiple agents are defined and the directory contains only `netmth.opts`, this file is used for all the network agents.

The following example adds full SSL support to the example described in *A sample network agent definition* in *User's Guide and Reference*:

- This is the workstation definition for the `NETAGT` network agent:

```
CPUNAME NETAGT
DESCRIPTION "NETWORK AGENT"
OS OTHER
NODE MASTERA.ROME.ITALY.COM
TCPADDR 31117
FOR maestro
HOST MASTERB
ACCESS NETMTH
END
```

- These are the full SSL security options in the `netmeth.opts` file of `NETAGT`:

```
#####
# Remote cpu parameters
#####

SSL remote full port = 31119
SSL remote CPU = MASTERA

#####
# Configuration Certificate
#####

SSL key           ="C:\TWS\installations\SSL\XA.key"
SSL certificate    ="C:\TWS\installations\SSL\XA.crt"
```

```

SSL CA certificate      ="C:\TWS\installations\SSL\VeriSte.crt"
SSL key pwd            ="C:\TWS\installations\SSL\XA.sth"
SSL certificate chain   ="C:\TWS\installations\SSL\TWSCertificateChain.crt"
SSL random seed        ="C:\TWS\installations\SSL\random_file.rnd"
SSL auth mode          =cpu
SSL auth string        =tw

```



Note: The SSL configuration certificate options must refer to the private key and certificate defined on the hosting fault-tolerant agent.

- This is the workstation definition for `MASTERA` (the remote workstation):

```

CPUNAME MASTERA
OS WNT
NODE 9.168.68.55 TCPADDR 31117
SECUREADDR 31119
DOMAIN NTWKA
FOR MAESTRO
  TYPE MANAGER
  AUTOLINK ON
  BEHINDFIREWALL OFF
  SECURITYLEVEL FORCE_ENABLED
  FULLSTATUS ON
  SERVER H
END

```

Chapter 7. Data maintenance

This chapter describes how to maintain your IBM Workload Scheduler database and other data files. The database is hosted on either the DB2® or Oracle RDBMS infrastructure, as you determined when you installed it. You should use the documentation of DB2® or Oracle for general instructions on database maintenance. This chapter describes the maintenance activities that are specific to IBM Workload Scheduler.

It comprises the following sections:

- [Backing up and restoring the database on page 560](#)
- [Reorganizing the DB2 database on page 562](#)
- [Maintaining the file system on page 563](#)
- [Administrative tasks - DB2 on page 575](#)
- [Administrative tasks - Oracle on page 581](#)
- [Customizing your RDBMS server on page 582](#)
- [Keeping track of database changes using audit reports on page 602](#)
- [Collecting job metrics on page 607](#)

Backing up and restoring the database

To minimize downtime during disaster recovery, back up your master data files frequently to either offline storage or a backup master domain manager.

Using a backup master domain manager with a backup database

Set up a backup master domain manager that accesses a different database than the master domain manager, and get your database administrator to set up a mirror of the master domain manager's database onto the backup master domain manager's database. In this way your backup master domain manager not only receives copies of all the processing messages, as is provided for by the setting of the *FullStatus* attribute on the backup master domain manager, but is also able to access the mirrored database. The mirror frequency must be set high enough to match the frequency with which you change the database.

For more information about how to use a backup master domain manager, see [Switching the master to a backup on page 616](#).

Backing up the configuration files

The configuration files used by IBM Workload Scheduler are found in the following places:

useropts

`<user_home_dir>/TWS`

For the `localopts`, `Sfinal`, `Security` and `*.msg` files

Windows On Windows operating systems

<TWA_home>

On UNIX operating systems

<TWA_DATA_DIR>

IBM Workload Scheduler configuration files

Windows On Windows operating systems

<TWA_home>\TWS\mozart*.*

On UNIX operating systems

<TWA_DATA_DIR>/TWS/mozart/*.*

This directory might contain the following files:

runmsgno

This is used for the allocation of unique prompt numbers. On the master domain manager, this file should not be edited manually. On other workstations it can be edited only in the circumstances described in the *Troubleshooting Guide*. This file does not need to be backed up.

globalopts

This is used to store a copy of three of the global properties stored in the database. It must be edited only in the circumstances described in [Switching the master to a backup on page 616](#). This file should be backed up if it is edited.

Application server configuration files, such as `TWSConfig.properties`

Windows On Windows operating systems

<TWA_home>\usr\servers\engineServer\resources\properties

On UNIX operating systems

<TWA_DATA_DIR>/usr/servers/engineServer/resources/properties

Forecast plan files

Windows On Windows operating systems

<TWA_home>\TWS\schedForecast

On UNIX operating systems

<TWA_DATA_DIR>/TWS/schedForecast

Archived plan files.

Windows On Windows operating systems

<TWA_home>\TWS\schedlog

On UNIX operating systems

```
<TWA_DATA_DIR>/TWS/sched log
```

Trial plan files**Windows** On Windows operating systems

```
TWA_home\TWS\schedTrial
```

On UNIX operating systems

```
<TWA_DATA_DIR>/TWS/schedTrial
```

A detailed list of all files is not supplied, as there are too many files. Back up all the files in these directories.



Note: The **wa_pull_info** tool is provided for sending information to support, but can also be used to perform a backup of a DB2® database and some of the configuration files. For more information, see the section on data capture utility in the *Troubleshooting Guide*.

Backing up log files

If you use **wa_pull_info** for backup, you do not need to separately backup these files. For more information, see the section on data capture utility in the *Troubleshooting Guide*.

Reorganizing the DB2 database

The database requires routine maintenance, as follows:

DB2®

The DB2® database has been set up to maintain itself, so there is little user maintenance to do. Periodically, DB2® checks the database by running an internal routine. DB2® determines when this routine must be run using a default policy. This policy can be modified, if need be, or can be switched off so that DB2® does not perform internal automatic maintenance. Using the statistical information that DB2® discovers by running this routine, it adjusts its internal processing parameters to maximize its performance.

This routine has also been made available for you to run manually in the case either where you feel that the performance of DB2® has degraded, or because you have just added a large amount of data , and anticipate performance problems. The routine is imbedded in a tool called dbrunstats, which can be run to improve performance while DB2® is processing data without causing any interruption.

It is also possible to physically and logically reorganize the database using the dbreorg script. This effectively re-creates the *tablespace* using its internal algorithms to determine the best way to physically and logically organize the tables and indexes on disk. This process is time-consuming, and requires that IBM® Workload Scheduler is down while it is run, but it does provide you with a freshly reorganized database after major changes.

The use of these tools is described in [Administrative tasks - DB2 on page 575](#).

These tools are implementations of standard DB2 facilities. If you are an expert user of DB2 you can use the standard facilities of DB2® to achieve the same results. For details go to DB2® documentation.

Maintaining the file system

Some of the file systems and directories need periodic maintenance. The details are given under the following topics:

- [Avoiding full file systems on page 563](#)
- [Log files and archived files on page 568](#)
- [Temporary files on page 574](#)
- [Managing event message queue file sizes on page 575](#)

Avoiding full file systems

Perhaps the most important maintenance task to perform is that of regularly controlling the file system or systems where IBM Workload Scheduler is installed, particularly on the master domain manager.

IBM Workload Scheduler has a number of files that can grow in size, either with more extensive use, such as the Symphony file, or in the event of network problems, such as the message files. If the Symphony file, in particular, cannot be expanded to contain all the required records, it might become corrupted. If this happens on a fault-tolerant agent or on a domain manager other than the master domain manager, there is a recovery procedure (see the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Troubleshooting Guide*). If the Symphony file on the master domain manager is corrupted, you have no alternative but to restart IBM Workload Scheduler, losing the current plan's workload.

It is thus *most important* that you monitor the available space on the file system of the master domain manager where the Symphony file is generated, to ensure that there is always sufficient space for it to expand to cover any workload peaks, and also that there is sufficient space for message files to expand in the event of network problems. Your experience with your workload and your network will guide you to determine what are the acceptable limits of available disk space.

The approximate size of the Symphony file can be estimated in advance. It contains items related both to the plan (see [Table 104: Algorithm for calculating the approximate size of the plan data in the Symphony file on page 563](#)) and to the database (see [Table 105: Algorithm for calculating the approximate size of the database data in the Symphony file on page 564](#)).

Estimate how many items you have in each category, multiply them by the indicated size in bytes, and sum them to find the approximate Symphony file size:

Table 104. Algorithm for calculating the approximate size of the plan data in the Symphony file

Data in Symphony file from the current plan		Bytes per instance
Per Job Scheduler instance:		512
Per job instance:		512
Per job "docommand" string > 40 bytes:	The length of the "docommand" string	
Per ad hoc prompt:		512
Per file dependency:		512

Table 104. Algorithm for calculating the approximate size of the plan data in the Symphony file (continued)

Data in Symphony file from the current plan	Bytes per instance
Per recovery prompt:	512
Per recovery job:	512

Table 105. Algorithm for calculating the approximate size of the database data in the Symphony file

Data in Symphony file from the database (on the master domain manager)	Bytes per instance
Per workstation:	512
Per resource:	512
Per user:	256
Per prompt:	512
If the global option <code>ignoreCalendars</code> is set to <i>off</i> , per calendar:	512

If you find that disk space is becoming too limited, and you cannot dynamically extend it, you must create a backup master domain manager with much more space on its file system and then use the `switchmgr` command so that the backup becomes your new domain manager. Instructions on how to do this for any domain manager are given in [Switching a domain manager on page 610](#), and in particular for a master domain manager, in [Switching the master to a backup on page 616](#).

Monitoring the disk space used by IBM Workload Scheduler

You can use event-driven workload automation (EDWA) to monitor the disk space used by IBM Workload Scheduler and to start a predefined set of actions when one or more specific events take place. This type of event is managed by the `TWSApplicationMonitor` event provider. These types of events are supported on fault-tolerant agents only and not supported on dynamic agents. You can use EDWA to set up an event rule that monitors the used disk space, to verify that there is enough space to generate the Symphony and log files, and to allow the product to work correctly. For more information about event-driven workload automation, see the section about event-driven workload automation in the *User's Guide and Reference*.

When calculating disk space usage, the SSM agent divides the used space by the total space and then rounds up the result to the next highest integer. This is important to note especially when the usage is close to the specified threshold. See [Table 106: Example for the `ge` operator on page 566](#) and [Table 107: Example for the `le` operator on page 567](#) for examples on how this impacts the disk space usage calculation.

The following .XML file contains the definition of a sample event rule to monitor the disk usage percentage. This event rule triggers the `MessageLogger` action provider to write a message in a log file in an internal auditing database when the event occurs. For more information about the `MessageLogger` action provider, see IBM Workload Scheduler User's Guide and Reference:

```
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<eventRuleSet xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
  xmlns="http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/event-management/rules"
  xsi:schemaLocation="http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/event-management/rules
```



```

http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/tws/1.0/event-management/rules/EventRules.xsd">
<eventRule name="FILESYSTEMFULL" ruleType="filter" isDraft="yes">
  <eventCondition name="twDiskMonEvt1" eventProvider="TWSApplicationMonitor" eventType="TWSDiskMonitor">
    <scope>
      * Disk is filling up
    </scope>
    <filteringPredicate>
      <attributeFilter name="FillingPercentage" operator="ge">
        <value>usage_percentage</value>
      </attributeFilter>
      <attributeFilter name="Workstation" operator="eq">
        <value>workstation_name</value>
      </attributeFilter>
      <attributeFilter name="SampleInterval" operator="eq">
        <value>sample_interval</value>
      </attributeFilter>
      <attributeFilter name="MountPoint" operator="eq">
        <value>mount_point</value>
      </attributeFilter>
    </filteringPredicate>
  </eventCondition>
  <action actionProvider="MessageLogger" actionType="MSGLOG" responseType="onDetection">
    <scope>
      OBJECT=ADWDAD MESSAGE=Disk is filling up
    </scope>
    <parameter name="ObjectKey">
      <value>object_key</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter name="Severity">
      <value>message_severity</value>
    </parameter>
    <parameter name="Message">
      <value>log_message</value>
    </parameter>
  </action>
</eventRule>
</eventRuleSet>

```

where:

usage_percentage

Is the disk usage percentage.



Important: When creating the event rule, always use a whole integer in the range 1-99 (inclusive) to express the threshold value. Fractions, decimals and negative numbers are not supported and the event rule is ignored.

Supported operators are as follows:

ge

causes the event generation when the disk usage exceeds the percentage specified by the threshold value. If the condition described in the rule already exists when you deploy the rule, the related event is generated. If the condition does not exist at the time the rule is deployed, then the

event is generated when the disk usage percentage reaches or exceeds the threshold. The event is generated again only if the disk usage percentage subsequently falls below the threshold value and then rises again and either reaches or exceeds the threshold. If you restart the SSM agent and the disk usage percentage is higher than the threshold value, the event is generated again.

Table 106: Example for the `ge` operator on page 566 provides an example in which the `ge` operator is set to 70%.

Table 106. Example for the `ge` operator

Mail-box name	Disk usage percentage	Action
Sam- >= 70% ple (0)		event generated
Sam- < 70% ple (0)		event not generated
Sam- < 70% ple (n-1)		event not generated
Sam- >= 70% ple (n)		event generated
Sam- >= 70% ple (n+1)		event not generated

le

causes the event generation when the disk usage percentage decreases under the threshold value. If the condition described in the rule already exists when you deploy the rule, the related event is not generated. The event is generated only the first time the specified disk usage percentage is reached. The event is generated again only if the disk usage percentage subsequently rises and exceeds the threshold value and then falls below the threshold. If you restart the SSM agent and the disk usage percentage is lower than the threshold value, the event is not generated until the disk usage percentage exceeds the threshold value and then falls below it again. [Table 107: Example for the le operator on page 567](#) provides an example in which the le operator is set to 50%:

Table 107. Example for the le operator

Mail-box name	Disk usage percentage	Action
Sam- <= 50%		event
ple		not
(0)		gen-er-ated
Sam- > 50%		event
ple		not
(0)		gen-er-ated
Sam- > 50%		event
ple		not
(n-1)		gen-er-ated
Sam- <= 50%		event
ple		gen-
(n)		er-at-ed

Table 107. Example for the le operator (continued)

Mail-box name	Disk usage percentage	Action
Sam- <= 50%		event
ple		not
(n		gen-
+1)		er-
		at-
		ed

workstation_name

Is the workstation on which the event is generated.

sample_interval

Is the interval, expressed in seconds, for monitoring the disk usage percentage.

mount_point

Is the mount point of the file system where IBM Workload Scheduler is installed, for example: "C:" on Windows™ systems or "/" on UNIX™ systems.

object_key

Is a key identifying the object to which the message pertains.

message_severity

Is the severity of the message.

log_message

Is the message to be logged.

Log files and archived files

Log files are produced from a variety of IBM Workload Scheduler activities. Other activities produce files which are archived after they have been used. The details are given in [Table 108: Log and trace file maintenance on page 569](#).

Starting from version 10.1 Fix Pack 1, when generating a job log in the monitoring section of the Dynamic Workload Console, by default the log is stored in memory. This ensures compliance with the PCI standard.

To change this behavior and have the job log stored in a file, as it was in versions earlier than version 10.1 Fix Pack 1, perform the following steps:

1. Add the **com.ibm.tws.conn.plan.output.logtype** property in the `TWSConfig.properties` file.
2. Set the property to `file`.
3. Stop and start all the IBM® Workload Scheduler processes.

Table 108. Log and trace file maintenance

Activity	Description	Location	Maintenance method
Fault-tolerant agent	Each IBM Workload Scheduler process logs its activities, writing them in log and trace message files:		
	Log messages These are messages intended for use directly by you, and provide information, errors and warnings about the processes.	netman	rmstdlist
	Trace messages		

Table 108. Log and trace file maintenance (continued)

Activity	Description	Location	Maintenance method
	These are messages written when a problem occurs that you can probably not solve without the assistance of IBM Software Support.	netman On Windows systems <i>TWA_home\TWS\stdlist\traces\yyymmdd_NETMAN.log</i> On UNIX operating systems <i><TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/logs/yyymmdd_NETMAN.log</i> Other processes On Windows systems <i>TWA_home\TWS\stdlist\traces\yyymmdd_TWSMERGE.log</i> On UNIX operating systems <i><TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/logs/yyymmdd_TWSMERGE.log</i> This is the default situation. You can set an option in the <i>localopts</i> file to create separate trace files for the major processes.	
Master domain manager job management	The job manager process on the master domain manager archives the previous period's Symphony file.	On Windows systems <i>TWA_home>\TWS\schedlog\date</i> On UNIX systems <i><TWA_DATA_DIR>/schedlog/date</i>	Manual

Table 108. Log and trace file maintenance (continued)

Activity	Description	Location	Maintenance method
Job	Each job that runs under IBM Workload Scheduler control creates an output file. These files are archived.	On Windows systems <code>TWA_home\TWS\stdlist\date</code> On UNIX systems <code><TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/date</code> where <i>date</i> is in the format <code>yyyy.mm.dd</code>	rmstdlist
Dynamic agent	Log messages	Windows <code>TWA_home>\TWS\stdlist\JM\JobManager_message.log</code> UNIX <code><TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/JM/JobManager_message.log</code>	Regular housekeeping is performed through the configuration of several parameters. See Regular maintenance on page 102 .
	Trace messages	Windows • <code>TWA_home>\TWS\stdlist\JM\ITA_trace.log</code> • <code>TWA_home>\TWS\stdlist\JM\JobManager_trace.log</code> • <code>TWA_home>\TWS\JavaExt\logs\javaExecutor0.log</code>	

Table 108. Log and trace file maintenance (continued)

Activity	Description	Location	Maintenance method
		UNIX • <TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/JM/ITA_trace.log • <TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/JM/JobManager_trace.log • <TWA_DATA_DIR>/JavaExt/logs/javaExecutor0.log	
	Jobs with advanced options	Windows <i>TWA_home>\TWS\stdlist\JM\date></i> UNIX <TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/JM/date> where <i>date</i> is in the format yyyy.mm.dd	
Forecast and trial plan creation	The creation of forecast and trial plans require manual maintenance.	Forecast plan These files are to be maintained manually Trail plan These files are to be maintained manually	Manual
Audit	The audit facility writes log files.	On Windows operating systems <i>TWA_home\TWS\audit</i> On UNIX operating systems <TWA_DATA_DIR>/audit	Manual
DB2® UDB	DB2® logs its activities.	Information about the location and viewing method for DB2® log files is supplied in the	See the DB2® documentation.

Table 108. Log and trace file maintenance (continued)

Activity	Description	Location	Maintenance method
		DB2® documentation, in IBM Documentation for DB2®. The main file to control is the <code>db2diag.log</code> file, which is the most important DB2® diagnostic file, which, without intervention, grows endlessly with no reuse of wasted space. This does not apply, however, to the database log files used by IBM Workload Automation, which are set up for circular reuse of disk space, so they don't grow in size over a maximum value.	
Oracle database	Oracle logs its activities.	See the Oracle documentation.	See the Oracle documentation.
WebSphere Application Server Liberty	The application server writes log files.	On the server components: On Windows operating systems <code><TWA_home>\TWS\stdlist\appserver\engineServer\logs</code> On UNIX operating systems <code><TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/appserver/engineServer/logs</code> On the Dynamic Workload Console: On Windows operating systems <code>TWA_home>\stdlist\appserver\dwcServer\logs</code> On UNIX operating systems <code><TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/appserver/dwcServer/logs</code>	Manual
Netcool® SSM monitoring agent (not supported on IBM i systems)	The agent writes log files. (<code>ssmagent.log</code> , <code>traps.log</code>)	fault-tolerant agent On Windows operating systems <code>TWA_home>\TWS\ssm\Log</code>	Manual

Table 108. Log and trace file maintenance (continued)

Activity	Description	Location	Maintenance method
		On UNIX operating systems <code><TWA_DATA_DIR>/ssm/log</code> dynamic agent On Windows operating systems <code>TWA_home>\TWS\EDWA\ssm\Log</code> On UNIX operating systems <code><TWA_DATA_DIR>/EDWA/ssm/Log/</code>	
Other	Other activities also write trace and log files.	On Windows operating systems <code>TWA_home>\TWS\methodes</code> On UNIX operating systems <code>TWA_home>/methods</code>	Manual

The easiest method of controlling the growth of these directories is to decide how long the log files are needed, then schedule a IBM Workload Scheduler job to remove any files older than the given number of days. Use the `rmstdlist` command for the process and job log files, and use a manual date check and deletion routine for the others. Make sure that no processes are using these files when you perform these activities.

See the *User's Guide and Reference* for full details of the `rmstdlist` command.



Note: The `rmstdlist` command might give different results on different platforms for the same scenario. This is because on UNIX® platforms the command uses the `-mtime` option of the `find` command, which is interpreted differently on different UNIX® platforms.

Temporary files

The IBM Workload Scheduler master domain manager uses temporary files, located in `<TWA_home>/TWS/tmp` or `/tmp` and named `TWS<XXXX>`, when compiling new production control databases. These files are deleted when compiling is complete.

This directory also contains the IBM Workload Scheduler installation files and log files, it is primarily used to handle temporary files that composer CLI creates as a work repository when it is invoked to perform CRUD actions against the IBM Workload Scheduler modeling objects. Directory rights are set to 777 to allow all users running the composer to have

access. For security reasons the composer CLI is defined by using the sticky bit, so the files it creates can be owned by users different from the IBM Workload Scheduler installation user. IBM Workload Scheduler conman can be used by any user therefore the folder is 777. If the users eligible to use conman/composer are inserted into the IBM Workload Scheduler group then the permission can be set to 774. In that way, only these users will be able to run conman/composer commands

Managing event message queue file sizes

This publication contains the following information with respect to managing event message queue file sizes:

- See [Planning space for queues on page 294](#) to learn about planning space for message event queues (and also how to use evtsize to resize the queues)
- See [Managing the event processor on page 645](#) to learn about managing the EIF event queue
- See [Disk Space on page 684](#) to learn about the impacts that increased fault tolerance can have on message queues
- See [Workload spreading on page 681](#) to learn about how to avoid bottlenecks in the Mailbox.msg queue.

Administrative tasks - DB2®

A set of scripts and SQL files is provided to perform actions such as granting rights or reorganizing the database. These files are located in `inst_dir/dbtools/db2/script`. To use these files, copy the relevant folder to the database server. The DB2® tools must be run by a user who has the following permissions:

- DB2 administrator permissions – the user must be defined to DB2 as a DB2 Administrator
- Full access (777) to the IBM® Workload Scheduler installation directory

The available files are as follows:

dbrunstats

This script runs the DB2 statistics program, to maximize the performance of DB2.

dbreorg

This script reorganizes the database. See [Reorganizing the DB2 database on page 578](#) for a full description of how to use the tool.

dbgrant

This script adds grants to new users on IBM® Workload Scheduler DB schema for the views that can be used to generate reports

To find out how to perform specific administrative tasks on DB2®, see:

- [Changing DB2 passwords on page 576](#)
- [Locating the DB2 tools on page 576](#)
- [User permissions for running the DB2 tools on page 576](#)
- [Running DB2 maintenance manually on page 577](#)

- [Reorganizing the DB2 database on page 578](#)
- [Monitoring the lock list memory on page 579](#)

Changing DB2® passwords

About this task

You can change passwords used by DB2®, such as the `<<TWS_user>>` password or the passwords of the user IDs used by IBM Workload Scheduler to access the database, as described in [Changing key IBM Workload Scheduler passwords on page 631](#). If you need to change other DB2-related passwords, follow the instructions in the DB2® documentation.

After you have changed the password, modify the **db.password** parameter in the `datasource_db2.xml` configuration file, as described in [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#). You can optionally encrypt the password, as described in the topic about the secure script in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

Locating the DB2® tools

About this task

IBM Workload Scheduler is supplied with a small set of tools that you use to perform the following administrative tasks for DB2®:

- Run the DB2® statistics program, to maximize the performance of DB2® (`dbstats`). See [Running DB2 maintenance manually on page 577](#) for a full description of how to use the tool.
- Reorganize the database (`dbreorg`). See [Reorganizing the DB2 database on page 578](#) for a full description of how to use the tool.

The tools are available in the following directory:

```
inst_dir/TWS/dbtools/db2
```

Copy the tools to the DB2 server workstation where the IBM Workload Scheduler database is located.



Note: The tools in this directory might include some that are for the use of IBM Software Support:

`dbmove`

Do not run this script. To do so might damage or overwrite the data in your database.

User permissions for running the DB2® tools

The DB2® tools must be run by a user who has the following permissions:

- DB2® administrator permissions – the user must be defined to DB2® as a DB2® Administrator
- Full access (777) to the IBM Workload Scheduler installation directory

Running DB2® maintenance manually

At installation, DB2® automatic maintenance is switched on, which means that DB2® periodically checks to see if it needs to collect new database statistics, so that it can perform the maintenance, adjusting the performance parameters to maximize performance.

This section describes how to perform the DB2® maintenance process on demand, instead of waiting for DB2® to do it according to its automatic maintenance policy. The process is run by the `dbrunstats` tool which you can run whenever you need to, without stopping DB2® or interrupting its processing.

To run this tool, follow this procedure:

1. Locate the DB2® tools: see [Locating the DB2 tools on page 576](#).
2. Check that the user who is going to run the procedure has the appropriate rights (see [User permissions for running the DB2 tools on page 576](#))
3. On the DB2 server, open a DB2® shell, as follows:

UNIX UNIX™

Follow these steps:

- a. Issue the command `su - db2inst1`, or change to the subdirectory `sql lib` of the home directory of the owner of the DB2® instance (by default `db2inst1`)
- b. Launch the command `./db2profile`

Windows Windows™

Select from the **Start** menu, **Programs → IBM DB2 → Command Line Tools → Command Window**

4. Check that the command shell is correctly initialized by issuing the command `db2`, and checking that the command is recognized.
5. Issue the command `quit` to leave the DB2® Processor mode.
6. From within the shell, browse to the directory where you copied the script.
7. Run the script:

UNIX UNIX™

```
dbrunstats.sh database [user [password]]
```

Windows Windows™

```
dbrunstats database [user [password]]
```

where:

database

The name of the database. The default name is `twS`. Supply this value unless you have changed it.

user

The DB2® administration user. If this is omitted, the ID of the user running the command will be used.

password

The password of the DB2® administration user. If this is omitted, it will be requested interactively.

The script runs, giving you various messages denoting its progress and successful conclusion. At the end (it is not particularly time-consuming) the database performance parameters have been reset to maximize performance.

Reorganizing the DB2® database

About this task

Using this tool, the database physically reorganizes the data tables and indexes, optimizing disk space usage and ease of data access. The process is time-consuming, requires that the database is backed up, and that IBM Workload Scheduler is stopped. However, at the end you have a database that is completely reorganized.

To reorganize the database follow this procedure:

1. Stop WebSphere Application Server Liberty and appservman by running the following command:

```
conman "stopappserver;wait"
```

See [Starting and stopping the application server and appservman on page 656](#) for full details.

2. Back up the IBM Workload Scheduler database. Follow the instructions in the database vendor documentation, as appropriate.
3. Check that the user who is going to run the procedure has the appropriate rights (see [User permissions for running the DB2 tools on page 576](#))
4. On the DB2 server where you copied the script, open a DB2® shell, as follows:

UNIX UNIX™

Follow these steps:

- a. Issue the command `su - db2inst1`, or change to the subdirectory `sql1lib` of the home directory of the owner of the DB2® instance (by default `db2inst1`)
- b. Launch the command `./db2profile`

Windows Windows™

Select from the **Start** menu, **Programs → IBM DB2 → Command Line Tools → Command Window**

5. Check that the command shell is correctly initialized by issuing the command `db2`, and checking that the command is recognized.
6. Issue the command `quit` to leave the DB2® Processor mode.
7. From within the shell, browse to the directory where you copied the script.
8. Run the script:

UNIX UNIX™

```
dbreorg.sh database [user [password]]
```

Windows Windows™

```
dbreorg database [user [password]]
```

where:

database

The name of the database. The default name is `TWS`. Supply this value unless you have changed it.

user

The DB2® administration user. If this is omitted, the ID of the user running the command will be used.

password

The password of the DB2® administration user. If this is omitted, it will be requested interactively.

The script runs, giving you various messages denoting its progress and successful conclusion.

- Restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty and appservman by running the following command:

```
conman "startappserver;wait"
```

See [Starting and stopping the application server and appservman on page 656](#) for full details.

Monitoring the lock list memory

About this task

If the memory that DB2® allocates for its lock list begins to be fully used, DB2® can be forced into a "*lock escalation*", where it starts to lock whole tables instead of just individual table rows, and increasing the risk of getting into a deadlock.

This happens especially when there are long transactions, such as the creation or extension of a plan (production, trial, or forecast).

To avoid this problem occurring, set the automatic notification in the DB2® Health Center, so that you can be advised of any lock list problems building up.

However, if you think that deadlock situations have been occurring, follow this procedure to verify:

- With the WebSphere Application Server Liberty active, log on as DB2® administrator to the DB2® server, for example,

```
su - db2inst1
```

- Run the following command to determine where the IBM Workload Scheduler database is located:

```
db2 list active databases
```

The output might be as follows:

```
Database name           = TWS
Applications connected  = 2
Database path           = /home/db2inst1/db2inst1/NODE0000/SQL00002/
```

3. Run:

```
cd <Database_path>/db2event/db2detaildeadlock
```

4. Connect to the IBM Workload Scheduler database, for example:

```
db2 connect to TWS
```

5. Flush the event monitor that watches over deadlocks (active by default) with the following:

```
db2 flush event monitor db2detaildeadlock
```

6. Disconnect from the database with:

```
db2 terminate
```

7. Obtain the event monitor output with:

```
db2evmon -path . > deadlock.out
```

The file `deadlock.out` now contains the complete deadlock history since the previous flush operation.

8. To find out if there have been deadlocks and when they occurred, run:

```
grep "Deadlock detection time" deadlock.out
```

The output might be as follows:

```
Deadlock detection time: 11/07/2008 13:02:10.494600
Deadlock detection time: 11/07/2008 14:55:52.369623
```

9. But the fact that a deadlock occurred does not necessarily mean that the lock list memory is inadequate. For that you need to establish a relationship with lock escalation. To find out if there have been lock escalation incidents prior to deadlocks, run:

```
grep "Requesting lock as part of escalation: TRUE" deadlock.out
```

The output might be as follows:

```
Requesting lock as part of escalation: TRUE
Requesting lock as part of escalation: TRUE
```

If there has been lock escalation related to deadlocks, it is a good idea to modify the values of the following parameters.

LOCKLIST

This configures, in 4KB pages, the amount of memory allocated to locking management

MAXLOCKS

This configures the percentage of the memory that a single transaction can use, above which DB2® escalates, even though the memory might not be full

10. To determine the values currently being applied to the IBM Workload Scheduler database, do the following:


```
db2 get db cfg for TWS | grep LOCK
```

The output might be as follows:

Max storage for lock list (4KB)	(LOCKLIST) = 8192
Percent. of lock lists per application	(MAXLOCKS) = 60
Lock timeout (sec)	(LOCKTIMEOUT) = 180

The example shows the typical output for the IBM Workload Scheduler database if no modification has taken place to these values:

- "8192" = 4KB x 8192 pages = 32 MB of memory
- "60" = 60% – the percentage of memory that a single transaction can occupy before triggering an escalation
- "180" = 3 minutes of timeout for the period a transaction can wait to obtain a lock

11. The most straightforward action to take is to double the amount of memory to 64MB, which you do with the command:

```
db2 update db cfg for TWS using LOCKLIST 16384 immediate
```

12. Alternatively, you can set DB2® to automatically modify the LOCKLIST and MAXLOCKS parameters according to the amount of escalation being experienced and the available system memory. This self-tuning is a slow process, but adapts the database to the needs of the data and the available system configuration. It is done by setting the values of these parameters to AUTOMATIC, as follows:

```
db2 update db cfg for TWS using LOCKLIST AUTOMATIC immediate
```

DB2® responds with messages telling you that MAXLOCKS has also been set to AUTOMATIC:

```
SQL5146W "MAXLOCKS" must be set to "AUTOMATIC" when "LOCKLIST" is "AUTOMATIC".
```

```
"MAXLOCKS" has been set to "AUTOMATIC"
```



Note: The self-tuning facility is only available from V9.1 of DB2®.

Administrative tasks - Oracle

A script is provided to perform actions such as granting rights or reorganizing the database. The file is located in `inst_dir/dbtools/oracle/script`

Oracle

dbgrant

This script grants the user permissions for the Dynamic Workload Console views. See the Dynamic Workload Console online help for full details.

A second script named **dbmove** is available, but it is to be run only if requested by Software Support.



Note: Do not run the dbmove script unless instructed to do so by Software Support. Running the script autonomously might damage or overwrite the data in your database.

Ensure you have the following permissions before running the scripts:

- Oracle administrator permissions – the user must be defined to Oracle as an administrator
- Full access (777) to the IBM® Workload Scheduler installation directory

You can perform a number of other tasks on Oracle databases as follows:

Changing the Oracle access password

For more information, see [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#).

Maintaining the Oracle database

Like DB2, Oracle has a routine that regularly maintains the database. Similarly, this too can be run manually. The tool is invoked as follows:

```
dbms_stats.gather_schema_stats schema_owner
```

See the Oracle documentation for full details of how and when to run it.

Obtaining information about the IBM® Workload Scheduler databases installed on an Oracle instance

To determine which IBM Workload Scheduler databases are installed on an Oracle instance, do the following:

```
su - oracle (UNIX only)
sqlplus system/system_password@service_name
SQL> select * from all_tws_schemas;
```

The output should look like the following:

```
SCHEMA_NAME
-----
MDL
mdm10.2.6 <<TWS_user>>
```



Note:

1. More than one instance of IBM Workload Scheduler can be shared in one instance of Oracle, using different schemas.
2. In Oracle, the concept of "schema" and "user" are the same, so dropping an Oracle schema means dropping an Oracle user, which you do as follows:

```
SQL> drop user MDL cascade;
```

Customizing your RDBMS server

About this task

You can perform several operations to customize your database, such as:

- Upgrading the JDBC drivers. For more information, see the FAQ about customizing the JDBC drivers in *Planning and Installation Guide*.
- Changing the instance owner, by editing the **db.user** property in the `datasource_<db_vendor>.xml` file. For more information, see [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#).
- Relocating the DB to the another host by editing the **db.serverName** property in the `datasource_<db_vendor>.xml` file. For more information, see [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#).
- Changing the database port, database name, or database access credentials by editing the **db.portNumber**, **db.databaseName**, **db.user**, and **db.password** properties in the `datasource_<db_vendor>.xml` file. For more information, see [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#).

If you want to upgrade your database version, change the instance owner, or relocate it to a different host, complete the following steps:

1. If you are changing DB2®, check the *node directory* and *database directory* and make a note of the current configuration. To do this, issue the following commands at the DB2® command-line:

```
db2 list database directory
```

where the `show detail` attribute is specified to give the full information in the directory.

Make a note of the displayed details.

2. Stop the application server, using the command

```
conman stopappserver ;wait
```

3. Make the upgrade, instance owner change, or relocation, of the database following the instructions from your database supplier.
4. If you have changed the database access credentials, you will need to update the application server's security properties, as described in [Changing the security settings on page 644](#).
5. Reconfigure the database for IBM Workload Scheduler, as follows:

DB2®

- a. Check the *node directory* and *database directory*, as you did in [step 1 on page 583](#)
- b. If necessary, modify the data displayed by these commands to match the data you noted in [step 1 on page 583](#). If you are not certain of how to do this, contact IBM Software Support for assistance.

Oracle

Check the Oracle Listener and make sure that the service name is correctly specified.

6. Restart the database.
7. Restart the application server, using the command:

```
conman startappserver ;wait
```

Connecting the master domain manager to a new database

Connecting the master domain manager to a new database involves reconfiguring the system to recognize and interact with the new database. This process typically includes updating connection strings, ensuring database drivers are compatible, migrating relevant data, and validating connectivity. This ensures the master domain manager can continue to perform its tasks without interruption, leveraging the new database resources and capabilities.

About this task

This section applies to IBM Workload Scheduler master domain managers and their backups. It documents how to connect the master domain manager and backup master domain manager to a new database. If your environment contains pools, see [Connecting the master domain manager to a new database when using pools on page 587](#).



Note: This cloning procedure does not clone the following information from the source environment:

- The preproduction plan
- The history of job runs and job statistics
- The audit records
- The state of running event rule instances. This means that any complex event rules, where part of the rule has been satisfied prior to cloning of the environment, are generated as new rules after the cloning procedure. Even if the subsequent conditions of the event rule are satisfied, the record that the first part of the rule was satisfied is no longer available, so the rule will never be completely satisfied.

Follow this procedure to export data from your previous database, import it to a new one, and connect the master domain manager and backup master domain manager to the new database.

1. Install the new database.
2. Run the configureDb command to create the new database on the new target RDBMS. For more information, see the section about the configureDB script in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.
3. On the master domain manager, extract all scheduling object definitions and global options from the previous RDBMS running the dataexport command.

```
dataexport source_dir export_dir
```

where:

source_dir

Is the *TWS_HOME* directory of IBM Workload Scheduler.

export_dir

Is the directory where the export files are created.

For example:

```
dataexport.cmd F:\IWS1026\twsDBuser F:\IWS1026\export
```

For more information, see the section about the dataexport command in *User's Guide and Reference*.

4. Verify that the following files were created in `export_dir`:

- `acls.def`
- `calendars.def`
- `erules.def`
- `folders.def`
- `globalOpts.def`
- `jobs.def`



Note: The record length supported by DB2® is 4095 bytes, but it decreases to 4000 bytes with Oracle. When you migrate your job definitions to Oracle, any job with task string (scripts or commands) exceeding 4000 bytes in length are not migrated. In this case, the data import utility replaces the job definition with a dummy job definition and sets the job priority to 0, guaranteeing that successors are not run.

- `parms.def`
- `prompts.def`
- `rcgroups.def`
- `resources.def`
- `scheds.def`
- `sdoms.def`
- `srols.def`
- `topology.def`
- `users.def` (includes encrypted user passwords)
- `variables.def`

5. Run `exportserverdata` to export dynamic domain manager data from the database. This command is not documented because it is an internal command. The command is located in `/opt/IBM/TWA/TDWB/bin/`. For the purpose of this procedure, use the following syntax:

```
./exportserverdata.sh -dbUsr username -dbPwd password
[-exportFile exportFile]
```

where:

dbUsr

Is the database user. This parameter is required.

dbPwd

Is the database user password. This parameter is required.

-exportFile

Is the file name to which the server data is to be exported from the database. This parameter is required if you use a file different from the default server `.properties` file, located in the same path as the `exportserverdata` command. If you use a file other than `server.properties`, specify the name and path of the file.

6. Stop WebSphere Application Server Liberty on the master domain manager and backup master domain manager.
7. Reconfigure the master domain manager and backup master domain manager by performing the following changes:
 - a. Edit the WebSphere Application Server Liberty `datasource.xml` file, so that it points to the new RDBMS. For more information, see [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#).
 - b. In the `TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/resources/properties/TWSSConfig.properties` file, uncomment the `com.ibm.tws.dao.rdbms.rdbmsName` line and specify the name of your RDBMS. For more information, see [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#).
 - c. In the `TWA_DATA_DIR/broker/config/DAOCommon.properties` file, change the `com.ibm.tdwb.dao.rdbms.rdbmsName` line to specify the name of your RDBMS.
 - d. In the `TWA_DATA_DIR/broker/config/CLIConfig.properties` file, change the following strings:

com.ibm.tdwb.dao.rdbms.rdbmsName

to specify the name of your RDBMS.

com.ibm.tdwb.dao.rdbms.jdbcPath

to specify the path to your JDBC connection string.

com.ibm.tdwb.dao.rdbms.jdbcDriver

to specify the name of the class implementing your JDBC driver.
 - e. In the `TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/jvm.options` file, specify the path to the database drivers.
 - f. In the `TWA_home/TDWB/bin/tdwb_env.sh` file, specify the path to the database drivers.
8. Run `addserverdata` to add dynamic domain manager data in the database. The command is located in `/opt/IBM/TWA/TDWB/bin/`. This command is not documented because it is an internal command. For the purpose of this procedure, use the following syntax:

```
./addserverdata.sh -dbUsr username -dbPwd password
-importFile importFile {[ -MDM true]}
```

where:

dbUsr

Is the database user. This parameter is required.

dbPwd

Is the database user password. This parameter is required.

-importFile

Is the file name from which the server data is to be imported into the database. This parameter is required if you use a file different from the default `server.properties` file, located in the same path as the `addserverdata` command. If you use a file other than `server.properties`, specify the name and path of the file.

MDM

Specifies whether the workstation where you run the command is the master domain manager. This parameter is required on the master domain manager and is optional on the dynamic domain manager.

9. Restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty on the master domain manager.
10. Reload the shell session for the changes to take effect and check that the environment is working correctly by running the following commands:

```
optman ls
composer display cpu=MDM_name
```

11. Wait for the dynamic workload broker definition to be created, and subsequently for all dynamic agents to register with the master domain manager.
12. Run the dataimport command to import data from your previous RBDMS.

```
dataimport.cmd F:\IWS1026\twsDBuser F:\IWS1026\export
```

where:

source_dir

is the *TWS_HOME* directory of the source environment instance of IBM® Workload Scheduler, which corresponds to *installation_dir*/TWS.

export_dir

is the directory where you copied the object definitions and the global options retrieved from the source environment.

For more information, see the section about the dataimport command in *User's Guide and Reference*.

13. Run the following command to align the plan with the information inserted in the database:

```
Jnextplan -for 0000 -noremove
```

14. Run the following command to extend the plan by 24 hours:

```
JnextPlan -to startOfDay tz your_timezone -noremove
```

For more information about Jnextplan, see the section about the JnextPlan command in *User's Guide and Reference*.

Result

The master domain manager and backup master domain manager are now configured to connect to the new database and your environment is up and running.

If you need to connect the Dynamic Workload Console to a new database, see the topic about connecting the Dynamic Workload Console to a new database in IBM® Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation.

Connecting the master domain manager to a new database when using pools

Connecting the master domain manager to a new database involves reconfiguring the system to recognize and interact with the new database. This process typically includes updating connection strings, ensuring database drivers are compatible, migrating relevant data, and validating connectivity. This ensures the master domain manager can continue to perform its tasks without interruption, leveraging the new database resources and capabilities.

About this task

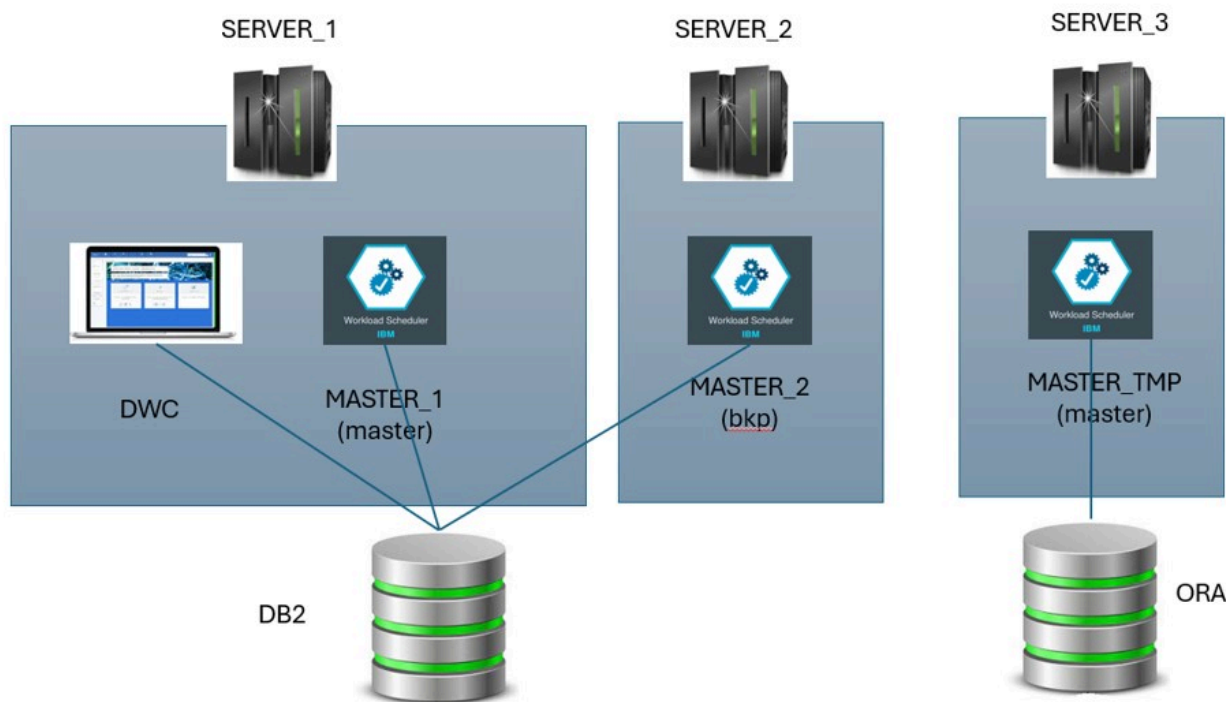
This section applies to IBM Workload Scheduler master domain managers and their backups. It documents how to connect the master domain manager and backup master domain manager to a new database.



Note: This cloning procedure does not clone the following information from the source environment:

- The preproduction plan
- The history of job runs and job statistics
- The audit records
- The state of running event rule instances. This means that any complex event rules, where part of the rule has been satisfied prior to cloning of the environment, are generated as new rules after the cloning procedure. Even if the subsequent conditions of the event rule are satisfied, the record that the first part of the rule was satisfied is no longer available, so the rule will never be completely satisfied.

Follow this procedure to export data from your previous database, import it to a new one, and connect the master domain manager and backup master domain manager to the new database. This procedure involves your existing master domain manager, **MASTER_1**, and a new one, **MASTER_TMP**, which is installed solely to perform the initial configuration of the new database, ensuring it is properly set up before data import.



1. Install the new database.
2. Install a new master domain manager, named **MASTER_TMP**. This master domain manager is installed only to perform the initial configuration of the new database, ensuring it is properly set up before importing data.
3. Run the configureDb command to create the new database on the new target RDBMS. For more information, see the section about the configureDB script in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

4. On **MASTER_1**, extract all scheduling object definitions and global options from the previous RDBMS running the `dataexport` command.

```
dataexport source_dir export_dir
```

where:

source_dir

Is the `TWS_HOME` directory of IBM Workload Scheduler.

export_dir

Is the directory where the export files are created.

For example:

```
dataexport.cmd F:\IWS1026\twsDBuser F:\IWS1026\export
```

For more information, see the section about the `dataexport` command in *User's Guide and Reference*.

5. Verify that the following files were created in `export_dir`:

- `acls.def`
- `calendars.def`
- `erules.def`
- `folders.def`
- `globalOpts.def`
- `jobs.def`



Note: The record length supported by DB2® is 4095 bytes, but it decreases to 4000 bytes with Oracle.

When you migrate your job definitions to Oracle, any job with task string (scripts or commands) exceeding 4000 bytes in length are not migrated. In this case, the data import utility replaces the job definition with a dummy job definition and sets the job priority to 0, guaranteeing that successors are not run.

- `parms.def`
- `prompts.def`
- `rcgroups.def`
- `resources.def`
- `scheds.def`
- `sdoms.def`
- `srols.def`
- `topology.def`
- `users.def` (includes encrypted user passwords)
- `variables.def`

6. On **MASTER_1**, run `exportserverdata` to export dynamic domain manager data from the database. This command is not documented because it is an internal command. The command is located in `/opt/IBM/TWA/TDWB/bin/`. For the purpose of this procedure, use the following syntax:

```
./exportserverdata.sh -dbUsr username -dbPwd password
[-exportFile exportFile]
```

where:

dbUsr

Is the database user. This parameter is required.

dbPwd

Is the database user password. This parameter is required.

-exportFile

Is the file name to which the server data is to be exported from the database. This parameter is required if you use a file different from the default server .properties file, located in the same path as the exportserverdata command. If you use a file other than server .properties, specify the name and path of the file.

7. On **MASTER_1**, relocate the definitions of the specified components from file topology.def to a newly created file named topology_env.def, placing it in a different folder.
 - MASTER_1 (modify type from MANAGER to FTA)
 - MASTER_1_1
 - MASTER_2
 - MASTER_2_1
 - SERVER_XA

Agent definitions remain in the original topology.def file.

8. On **MASTER_TMP**, run the addserverdata command. The command is located in /opt/IBM/TWA/TDWB/bin/. This command is not documented because it is an internal command. For the purpose of this procedure, use the following syntax:

```
./addserverdata.sh -dbUsr <ORACLE_user> -dbPwd <ORACLE_password>
-importFile <file_created_by_exportserverdata>
```

9. On **MASTER_TMP**, import the master domain manager definition, using the following command:

```
composer replace topology_env.def
```

10. Modify the definitions of **MASTER_1** to **MANAGER** and **MASTER_TMP** to **FTA**.
11. On **MASTER_1**, set the fence to **HIGH**, by running the following command:

```
conman fence @ HI noask
```

12. Stop WebSphere Application Server Liberty on both **MASTER_1** and **MASTER_2** (**MASTER_2** is the backup master domain manager).
13. Reconfigure the master domain manager and backup master domain manager by performing the following changes:

- a. Edit the WebSphere Application Server Liberty datasource.xml file, so that it points to the new RDBMS. For more information, see [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#).
 - b. In the `TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/resources/properties/TWSConfig.properties` file, uncomment the `com.ibm.tws.dao.rdbms.rdbmsName` line and specify the name of your RDBMS. For more information, see [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#).
 - c. In the `TWA_DATA_DIR/broker/config/DAOCommon.properties` file, change the `com.ibm.tdwdb.dao.rdbms.rdbmsName` line to specify the name of your RDBMS.
 - d. In the `TWA_DATA_DIR/broker/config/CLIConfig.properties` file, change the following strings:

com.ibm.tdwdb.dao.rdbms.rdbmsName

to specify the name of your RDBMS.

com.ibm.tdwdb.dao.rdbms.jdbcPath

to specify the path to your JDBC connection string.

com.ibm.tdwdb.dao.rdbms.jdbcDriver

to specify the name of the class implementing your JDBC driver.
 - e. In the `TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/jvm.options` file, specify the path to the database drivers.
 - f. In the `TWA_home/TDWB/bin/tdwb_env.sh` file, specify the path to the database drivers.
14. On **MASTER_2**, run `addserverdata` to add dynamic domain manager data in the database. The command is located in `/opt/IBM/TWA/TDWB/bin/`. This command is not documented because it is an internal command. For the purpose of this procedure, use the following syntax:

```
./addserverdata.sh -dbUsr username -dbPwd password
-importFile importFile [{-MDM true}]
```

where:

dbUsr

Is the database user. This parameter is required.

dbPwd

Is the database user password. This parameter is required.

-importFile

Is the file name from which the server data is to be imported into the database. This parameter is required if you use a file different from the default `server.properties` file, located in the same path as the `addserverdata` command. If you use a file other than `server.properties`, specify the name and path of the file.

MDM

Specifies whether the workstation where you run the command is the master domain manager. This parameter is required on the master domain manager and is optional on the dynamic domain manager.

15. On **MASTER_1** restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty on the master domain manager.

16. On **MASTER_1**, reload the shell session for the changes to take effect and check that the environment is working correctly by running the following commands:

```
optman ls
composer display cpu=MDM_name
```

17. Remove the workstation definitions for **SERVER_TMP** and **SERVER_TMP_1**.
 18. On **MASTER_1**, run the dataimport command to import data from your previous RBDMS.

```
dataimport.cmd F:\IWS1026\twsDBuser F:\IWS1026\export
```

where:

source_dir

is the *TWS_HOME* directory of the source environment instance of IBM® Workload Scheduler, which corresponds to *installation_dir*/TWS.

export_dir

is the directory where you copied the object definitions and the global options retrieved from the source environment.

For more information, see the section about the dataimport command in *User's Guide and Reference*.

19. Restart **MASTER_2**.
 20. On **MASTER_1**, set the fence to 0, as follows:

```
conman fence @ 0 noask
```

21. Run the following command to align the plan with the information inserted in the database:

```
Jnextplan -for 0000 -noremove
```

22. Run the following command to extend the plan by 24 hours:

```
JnextPlan -to startOfDay tz your_timezone -noremove
```

For more information about Jnextplan, see the section about the JnextPlan command in *User's Guide and Reference*.

Result

The master domain manager and backup master domain manager are now configured to connect to the new database and your environment is up and running. Your pools are migrated to the new database.

If you need to connect the Dynamic Workload Console to a new database, see the topic about connecting the Dynamic Workload Console to a new database in IBM® Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation.

Auditing facilities

Describes the audit facilities to track changes in the database and the plan, as well as those that track changes to objects involved in dynamic workload scheduling.

In the Dynamic Workload Console, operators and schedulers can review all changes to scheduling objects, both in the database and in the plan, discover which user performed a specific change, and when the change was performed.

Administrators can request that each user provide a justification when making changes to an object and log this information

in audit trails. Application developers and schedulers can compare and restore previous versions of each changed object, and promote the job workflow from development to test or production environments.

For more information, see the section about keeping track of changes in *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

Audit trails are useful to check enforcement and effectiveness of IT controls, for accountability, and vulnerability and risk analysis. IT organizations can also use auditing of security-related critical activities to aid in investigations of security incidents. When a security incident occurs, audit trails enable analysis of the history of activities (who did what, when, where, and how) that occurred prior to the security incident, so appropriate corrective actions can be taken. For these reasons, audit trails might need to be archived and accessible for years.

For more information about maintaining audit trails, see [Database and plan audit on page 593](#).

Database and plan audit

An auditing option is available to track changes to the database and the plan. It is disabled by default. It is described in these sections:

- [Enabling and storing audit trails on page 593](#)
- [Audit log header format on page 595](#)
- [Audit log body format on page 596](#)
- [Sample audit log entries on page 600](#)

Enabling and storing audit trails

You can maintain audit trails for information stored in the database and in the plan. By default, auditing is enabled. To disable auditing, use the following global options:

enDbAudit

Enables auditing of the information available in the database.

enPlanAudit

Enables auditing of the information available in the plan.

For more information about global options, see [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#).

You can store auditing information in a file, in the IBM® Workload Scheduler database, or in both. To define in which type of store to log the audit records, use the **auditStore** global option. For more information about global options, see [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#). When auditing database information, all the user modifications are logged, including the current definition of each modified database object. If an object is opened and saved, the action is logged even if no modification was made. When auditing plan information, all the user modifications to the plan are logged. Actions are logged whether or not they are successful.

Choose the storage location of audit records according to the type of information you are auditing, whether it is database or plan:

auditing of the information available in the database (**enDbAudit** global option)

You can track changes to the database in a file, in the database itself, or in both. To define which type of store to log the audit records, use the **auditStore** global option. For more information about global options, see [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#). All the user modifications are logged, including the current definition of each modified database object. If an object is opened and saved, the action is logged even if no modification was made.

auditing of the information available in the plan (**enPlanAudit** global option)

You can track changes to the plan in a file. When you enable auditing of the information available in the plan, the information is saved to a file. All the user modifications to the plan are logged. Actions are logged whether or not they are successful.

Storing auditing information in a file (**auditStore=file**)

This storage location is available when you audit information in the database (**enDbAudit** global option) and in the plan (**enPlanAudit** global option). Choose to store auditing information in a file by setting the **auditStore** global option to `file`. For more information about the **auditStore** global option, see [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#).

Each audit log provides audit information for one day, from 00:00:00 UTC to 23:59:59 UTC regardless of the time zone of the local workstation, but the log file is created only when an action is performed or the WebSphere Application Server Liberty is started.

The files are called `yyyymmdd`, and are created in the following directories:

```
<TWA_home>/TWS/audit/plan <TWA_home>/TWS/audit/database
```

Audit entries are logged to a flat text file in `.json` format on the master domain manager and backup master domain manager.

The log formats are the same for both plan and database. The logs consist of a header portion which is the same for all records, an action ID, and a section of data that varies according to the action type. All data is kept in clear text and formatted to be readable and editable from a text editor such as `vi` or `notepad`.

For more information about the details available in the logs, see [Audit log header format on page 595](#) and [Audit log body format on page 596](#).



Note: For modify commands, two entries are made in the log for resources, calendars, parameters, and prompts. The modify command is displayed in the log as a combination of the delete and add commands.

See the following example of a `.json` file:

```
{ "timestamp": "20210917062859", "auditType": "CONMAN", "objectType": "PLWKSTN",
  "actionType": "MODIFY", "workstationName": "WA_DWB", "userName": "wauser", "frameworkUser":
  "", "objectName": "WA_DWB", "actionDependentContents": "link @;noask" }
```

Storing auditing information in the database (auditStore=db)

This storage location is available when you audit information in the database (**enDbAudit** global option). Choose to store auditing information in the database by setting the **auditStore** global option to `db`. For more information about the **auditStore** global option, see [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#).

The AUDIT_STORE_RECORDS_V table is created in the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

For more information, see the section about the AUDIT_STORE_RECORDS_V table in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Database Views*.

Storing auditing information both in the database and in a file (auditStore=both)

This storage location is available when you audit information in the database (**enDbAudit** global option). Choose to store auditing information both in the database and in a file by setting the **auditStore** global option to `both`. For more information about the **auditStore** global option, see [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#).

For details about how the information is stored, see [Storing auditing information in the database \(auditStore=db\) on page 595](#) and [Storing auditing information in a file \(auditStore=file\) on page 594](#).

Audit log header format

Each log file starts with a header record that contains information about when the log was created and whether it is a plan or database log.

The header record fields are separated by a colon (:), as follows:

```
HEADER:<GMT_date>:<GMT_time>:<local_date>:<local_time>:<object_type>: >
      <workstation>:<user_ID>:<version>: <level>
```

Log Type

HEADER

GMT Date

The GMT date when the log file was created.

GMT Time

The GMT time when the log file was created.

Local Date

The local date when the log file was created. The local date is defined by the time zone option of the workstation.

Local Time

The local time when the log file was created. The local time is defined by the time zone option of the workstation.

Object Type

DATABASE for a database log file and PLAN for a plan log file.

Workstation Name

The IBM Workload Scheduler workstation name for which this file was created. Each workstation in the IBM Workload Scheduler network creates its own log.

User ID

The IBM Workload Scheduler user ID that created the log file.

Version

The version of the file.

Level

The logging level.

Audit log body format

The audit log formats are basically the same for the plan and the database. The log consists of a timestamp, a series of tags which identify the audit, object, and action type, and data sections that vary with the action type. The data is in clear text format and each data item is separated by a comma (,).

The log file entries are in the following format:

```
"timestamp": "timestamp", "auditType": "audit_type",
"objectType": "object_type", "actionType": "action_type",
"workstationName": "workstation_name", "userName": "user_name",
"frameworkUser": "framework_user", "objectName": "object_name"
"actionDependentContents": "action-dependent_fields"
```

The log files contain the following information:

timestamp

Displays the date and time the action was performed in GMT time. The format is *yyyy-mm-dd:hh-mm-ss*.

auditType

Displays an eight-character value indicating the source of the log record. The following log types are supported:

CONMAN

conman command text

DATABASE

Database action

HEADER

The log file header

MAKESEC

makesec run

PARMS

Parameter command text

PLAN

Plan action

RELEASE

release command text

STAGEMAN

stageman run

objectType

Displays the type of the object that was affected by an action, from the following:

DATABASE

Database definition (for header only)

DBCAL

Database calendar definition

DBDOMAIN

Database domain definition

DBJBSTRM

Database Job Scheduler definition

DBJOB

Database job definition

DBPARAM

Database parameter definition

DBPROMPT

Database prompt definition

DBRES

Database resource definition

DBSEC

Database security

DBUSER

Database user definition

DBVARTAB

Database variable table definition

DBWKCLS

Database workstation class definition

DBWKSTN

Database workstation definition

PLAN

Plan (for header only)

PLDOMAIN

Plan domain

PLFILE

Plan file

PLJBSTRM

Plan Job Scheduler

PLJOB

Plan job

PLPROMPT

Plan prompt

PLRES

Plan resource

PLWKSTN

Plan workstation

actionType

Displays what action was performed on the object. The appropriate values for this field are dependent on which action is being performed.

For the plan, the "*action_type*" can be ADD, DELETE, MODIFY, or INSTALL.

For the database, the ADD, GET, DELETE and MODIFY actions are recorded for workstation, workstation classes, domains, users, jobs, job streams, calendars, prompts, resources and parameters in the database.

The "**actionType**" field also records the installation of a new Security file. When **makesec** is run, IBM Workload Scheduler records it as an INSTALL action for a Security definition object.

LIST and DISPLAY actions for objects are not logged.

For parameters, the command line with its arguments is logged.

workstationName

Displays the IBM Workload Scheduler workstation from which the user is performing the action.

userName

Displays the logon user who performed the particular action. On Windows® operating systems, if the user who installed WebSphere Application Server Liberty was a domain user, for Log Types **stageman** and **conman** this field contains the fully qualified user ID *domain\user*.

frameworkUser

Displays the framework user.

objectName

Displays the fully qualified name of the object. The format of this field depends on the object type as shown here:

DATABASE

N/A

DBCAL

"calendar"

DBDOMAIN

"domain"

DBJBSTRM

"workstation"#"job_stream"

DBJOB

"workstation"#"job"

DBPARM

"workstation"#"parameter"

DBPROMPT

"prompt"

DBRES

"workstation"#"resource"

DBSEC

N/A

DBUSER

["workstation"#"user"

DBVARTAB

"variable_table"

DBWKCLS

"workstation_class"

DBWKSTN

"workstation"

PLAN

N/A

PLDOMAIN

"domain"

PLFILE

"workstation"#"path"("qualifier")

PLJBSTRM

"workstation"#"job_stream_instance"

PLJOB

"workstation"#"job_stream_instance"."job"

PLPROMPT

["workstation"#"prompt"

PLRES

"workstation"#"resource"

PLWKSTN

"workstation"

actionDependentContents

Displays the action-dependent data fields. The format of this data is dependent on the "actionType" field.

Sample audit log entries

This is a sample database audit log:

HEADER	20080207 084124 20080207 094124 DATABASE	WK1			Version=A1.0	Level=1
DATABASE	20080207 084124 20080207 094124 DBRES	ADD	WK1 operator1	res=WK1#RESOURCE		
DATABASE	20080207 100524 20080207 110524 DBWKSTN	MODIFY WK1 operator1	ws=TIVOLI10			
DATABASE	20080207 100525 20080207 110525 DBWKSTN	MODIFY WK1 operator1	ws=ASLUTRI1			
DATABASE	20080207 100525 20080207 110525 DBWKSTN	MODIFY WK1 operator1	ws=WK1			

```

DATABASE|20080207|100526|20080207|110526|DBDOMAIN|MODIFY|WK1|operator1| |dom=MASTERDM|
DATABASE|20080207|100610|20080207|110610|DBWKSTN|MODIFY|WK1|operator1| |ws=TIVOLI10|
DATABASE|20080207|100610|20080207|110610|DBWKSTN|MODIFY|WK1|operator1| |ws=ASLUTRI1|
DATABASE|20080207|100611|20080207|110611|DBWKSTN|MODIFY|WK1|operator1| |ws=WK1|
DATABASE|20080207|100611|20080207|110611|DBWKSTN|ADD|WK1|operator1| |ws=WK2|
DATABASE|20080207|100612|20080207|110612|DBDOMAIN|MODIFY|WK1|operator1| |dom=MASTERDM|

```

This is a sample plan audit log:

```

HEADER|20080207|100758|20080207|110758|PLAN|WK1|admin| |Version=A1.0|Level=1
STAGEMAN|20080207|100758|20080207|110758|PLAN|INSTALL|WK1|admin| |C:\IBM\TWS\oper1\Symphony|
AWSBH036I The new Symphony file is installed.
STAGEMAN|20080207|100758|20080207|110758|PLAN|INSTALL|WK1|admin| |C:\IBM\TWS\oper1\Sinfonia|
AWSBH036I Multi-workstation Symphony file copied to C:\IBM\TWS\oper1\Sinfonia
STAGEMAN|20080207|100758|20080207|110758|ADITLEVL|MODIFY|WK1|admin| |
AWSBH077I Audit level changing from 0 to 1.
CONMAN|20080207|100800|20080207|110800|PLWKSTN|MODIFY|admin|WK1|
continue & start
CONMAN|20080207|100941|20080207|110941|PLWKSTN|MODIFY|admin|SLUTRI1|
limit cpu=slutri1;10
PLAN|20080207|101018|20080207|111018|PLWKSTN|MODIFY|WK1|oper1|WK1|
limit cpu=SLUTRI1;20
PLAN|20080207|101028|20080207|111028|PLDOMAIN|MODIFY|WK1|oper1|ECCOLO|
reply ECCOLO;yes

```

A **ResetPlan** command run against the current production plan is stored in the plan audit log file as follows:

```

STAGEMAN|20080207|100758|20080207|110758|PLAN|DELETE|WK1|admin|
/home/WK1/schedlog/M200803140127|
AWSBH025I The old Symphony file renamed /home/WK1/schedlog/M200803140127

```

Enabling audit for authentication events

This topic explains how to enable audit for authentication events.

To enable audit for authentication events, proceed as follows:

1. Go to <DWC_DATA_dir>/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides



Note: On Windows systems, the path is: <DWC_home>\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides

2. Create a file named **auditing.xml** and paste the following content:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<server>
  <!-- Enable features -->
  <featureManager>
    <feature>audit-1.0</feature>
  </featureManager>

  <!-- Enabling Audit Filehandler-->
  <auditFileHandler maxFiles="100" maxFileSize="10" compact="true">
    <events name="AuditEvent_1" eventName="SECURITY_AUTHN" outcome="SUCCESS"/>
    <events name="AuditEvent_2" eventName="SECURITY_AUTHN" outcome="REDIRECT"/>
    <events name="AuditEvent_3" eventName="SECURITY_AUTHN" outcome="DENIED"/>
  </auditFileHandler>
</server>
```

3. Stop and start WebSphere Application Server Liberty. For further information about the stop and start commands, see [Application server - starting and stopping on page 652](#).
4. Access the Dynamic Workload Console.

You successfully enabled the audit for authentication events. To see the authentication logs, open the **audit.log** file located at the following path:

On Windows operating systems

```
TWA_home>\stdlist\appserver\dwcServer\logs
```

On UNIX operating systems

```
<TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/appserver/dwcServer/logs
```

For further information about audit logs, see WebSphere Application Server Liberty documentation.

Keeping track of database changes using audit reports

To keep always track of the changes that impact objects stored in the database, you can use the following audit reports, which can be run in batch mode using the command line interface:

General audit report

The report provides information about objects that have been modified in the database. More specifically, it details who made the change, on which objects, and when.

Details report

The report provides further details about the changes implemented. It specifies who made the change, on which objects, when, and what has been changed. More specifically it shows the object definition before and after the change.

You can run these reports on DB2 and Oracle databases.

A sample business scenario

The administrator of an insurance company needs to keep track of all the changes impacting the insurance policies, conditions and terms of all the customers registered in the company database. To do it, the administrator periodically runs the audit general and details reports.

To satisfy this request, he creates an audit general report that provides details about which TWS objects have been modified in the database, who modified them and on which date. Then, to find out more details about the changes, he also creates an audit details report.

To accomplish his task, he runs the following steps:

1. He customizes the property files related to the audit reports, specifying the format and content of the report output.
2. He schedules jobs to obtain the reports:
 - a. The first job generates an audit to be saved locally.
 - b. The second job runs a detail report overnight to retrieve more details about the specific changes implemented. The report output is sent using an mail to the analyst. The information collected is used to keep all the insurance branch offices updated with any change and news.
3. The administrator adds the two jobs to a job stream scheduled to run weekly and generates the plan.

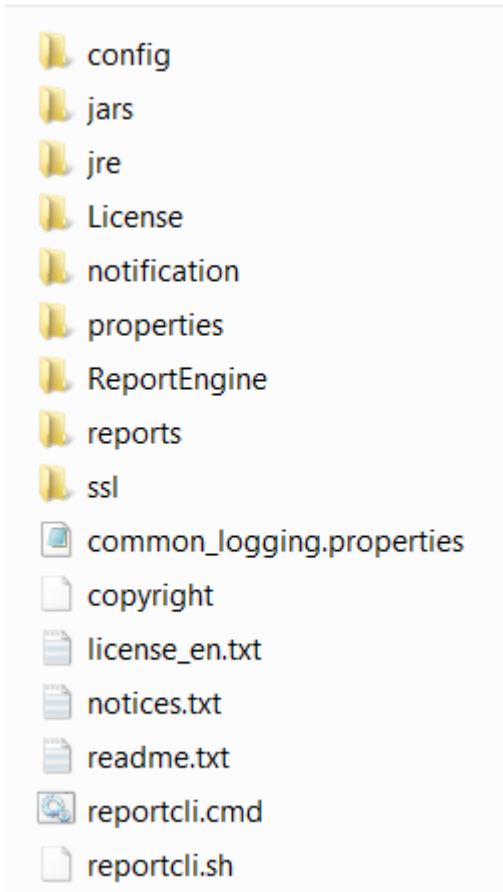
Setting up for command line audit reporting

About this task

Before running these reports you must perform a few setup steps:

1. The software needed to run these reports is contained in a package named `TWSBatchReportCli` included in the IBM Workload Scheduler installation image, in the `TWSBatchReportCli` directory. If you plan to run them from within a scheduled job, extract the package file on one of the operating systems listed at [Dynamic Workload Console Detailed System Requirements](#).

After extracting the package, you obtain the following file structure:



Because the native UNIX™ tar utility does not support long file names, if you are extracting the files on AIX® systems, ensure that the latest GNU version of tar (gtar) is installed to extract the files successfully.



Note:

- a. Make sure you run the following commands in the directory where you extracted the files:

On UNIX™

```
chmod -R +x *
chown -R username *
```

On Windows™

Ensure IBM Workload Scheduler is installed.

```
setown -u username *
```

Where *username* is the IBM Workload Scheduler user that will run the reports.

- b. If you plan to schedule jobs that run these reports, the system where you extract the package must be accessible as network file system from a fault-tolerant agent defined in the local scheduling environment.

2. If you use an Oracle database, download the JDBC drivers required by your Oracle server version.

3. Copy the JDBC drivers in the `report_cli_installation_dir\jars` directory and in `report_cli_installation_dir\ReportEngine\plugins` `\org.eclipse.birt.report.data.oda.jdbc_4.2.1.v20120820\drivers` directory. The report cli automatically discovers the two jar files.

4. Configure the template file `.\config\common.properties` by specifying the following information.

- a. If you use an Oracle database, connect to the database where the historical data are stored as follows:

- i. Retrieve the location of the Oracle JDBC drivers. This information is stored in the **com.ibm.tws.webui.oracleJdbcURL** property in the `TWSConfig.properties` file, located in

Windows On Windows operating systems

`<TWA_home>\usr\servers\engineServer\resources\properties`

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`<TWA_DATA_DIR>/usr/servers/engineServer/resources/properties`

For more information about this file, see [Configuring for an Oracle database on page 177](#).

- ii. Specify the location of the Oracle JDBC drivers in the **PARAM_DataSourceUrl** property in the `common.properties` file.

No customization is required if you use DB2.

- b. Set the date and time format, including the time zone. The file `.\config\timezone.txt` contains a list of time zones supported by IBM Workload Scheduler and the information on how to set them. The time zone names are case sensitive.
- c. Make the report output available on the URL specified in **ContextRootUrl** field. This is an example of the configuration settings:

```
#####
# HTTP Server information
#####

#Specify the context root where the report will be available
#To leverage this possibility it needs to specify in the report output dir
#the directory that is referred by your HTTP Server with this context root

ContextRootUrl=http://myserver/reportoutput
```

In this case, ensure that the `output_report_dir` specified when running the reports command points to the same directory specified in the **ContextRootUrl**.

- d. Send the report output using a mail. This is an example of the configuration settings:

```
#####
# Email Server configuration
#####

PARAM_SendReportByEmail=true

#SMTP server
mail.smtp.host=myhost.mydomain.com
#IMAP provider
mail.imap.socketFactory.fallback=false
mail.imap.port=993
mail.imap.socketFactory.port=993
```

```
#POP3 provider
mail.pop3.socketFactory.fallback=false
mail.pop3.port=995
mail.pop3.socketFactory.port=995

#####
# Email properties
#####
PARAM_EmailFrom=user1@your_company.com
PARAM_EmailTo=user2@your_company.com,user3@your_company.com
PARAM_EmailCC=user4@your_company.com
PARAM_EmailBCC=user5@your_company.com
PARAM_EmailSubject=Test send report by email
PARAM_EmailBody=This is the report attached
```

An explanation of all the customizable fields is contained in the template file.

Running audit reports from the command line

To run audit report on the database, you must first enable the audit feature and configure the audit options described in [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#).

The `\reports\templates` directory contains a sample template file for each type of report.

Before running any of these reports, ensure that you customize the corresponding template file, either `ad.properties` or `ag.properties`.

In that file, named `report_name.properties`, you can specify:

- The information to display in the report header.
- How to filter the information to display the expected result.
- The format and content of the report output.

For more information about the specific settings see the explanation provided in the template file beside each field.

After you set up the environment as it is described in [Setting up for command line audit reporting on page 603](#), and you configured report template file, use the following syntax to run the report:

reportcli -p *report_name.property*

[-o *output_report_dir*]

[-r *report_output_name*]

[-k *key=value*]

[-k *key=value*]

.....

where:

-p *report_name.property*

Specifies the path name to the report template file.

-o *output_report_dir*

Specifies the output directory for the report output.

-r *report_output_name*

Specifies the name of the report output.

-k *key=value*

Specifies the value of a settings. This value override the corresponding value, if defined, in the `common.properties` file or in the `report_name.properties` file.

Examples

1. In this example the `reportcli.cmd` is run with the default parameter:

```
reportcli.cmd -p D:\ReportCLI\TWSReportCli\reports\templates\ag.properties
-r audit1
```

2. In this example the `reportcli.cmd` is run using the `-k` parameter to override the values set for **PARAM_DateFormat** in the `.\config\common.properties` file:

```
reportcli.cmd -p D:\ReportCLI\TWSReportCli\reports\templates\ag.properties
-r audit2 -k PARAM_DateFormat=short
```

3. In this example the `reportcli.cmd` is run using the `-k` parameter to override the format specified for the report output in the `.properties` file:

```
./reportcli.sh -p /TWSReportCli/REPCLI/reports/templates/wwr.properties
-r audit3 -k REPORT_OUTPUT_FORMAT=html -k OutputView=charts
```



Note: If the report is run through a IBM Workload Scheduler job, the output of the command is displayed in the job output.

Collecting job metrics

You can run the following SQL queries on the Workload Scheduler data base to retrieve the number of jobs run by IBM Workload Scheduler over a period of time. One query determines the number of jobs run by specific workstations, while the other query determines the number of jobs run on the entire IBM Workload Scheduler domain. You can run the queries from the command line interface of your database or you can add them in the Dynamic Workload Console to create your custom SQL reports, as described in section creating a task to create custom SQL reports in *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

Job metrics queries for DB2

Use the following SQL query to find the number of jobs run on specific workstations:

```
SELECT year(job_run_date_time) AS Year, month(job_run_date_time) AS Month,
cast (count(job_run_date_time) AS INT) AS JobNbr FROM mdl.job_history_v
WHERE workstation_name IN ('WKS_1', 'WKS_2', 'WKS_N')
```

```
GROUP BY year(job_run_date_time), month(job_run_date_time)
```

where 'WKS_1', 'WKS_2', 'WKS_N' are the names of the workstations that ran the jobs you want counted.

Use the following SQL query to find the number of jobs run on the entire IBM Workload Scheduler domain:

```
SELECT year(job_run_date_time) AS Year, month(job_run_date_time) AS Month,
cast (count(job_run_date_time) AS INT) AS JobNbr FROM mdl.job_history_v
GROUP BY year(job_run_date_time), month(job_run_date_time)
```

Job metrics queries for DB2 for zOS

Use the following SQL query to find the number of jobs run on specific workstations:

```
SELECT year(job_run_date_time) AS Year, month(job_run_date_time) AS Month,
cast (count(job_run_date_time) AS INT) AS JobNbr FROM mdl.job_history_v
WHERE workstation_name IN ('WKS_1', 'WKS_2', 'WKS_N')
GROUP BY year(job_run_date_time), month(job_run_date_time)
```

where 'WKS_1', 'WKS_2', 'WKS_N' are the names of the workstations that ran the jobs you want counted.

Use the following SQL query to find the number of jobs run on the entire IBM Workload Scheduler domain:

```
SELECT year(job_run_date_time) AS Year, month(job_run_date_time) AS Month,
cast (count(job_run_date_time) AS INT) AS JobNbr FROM mdl.job_history_v
GROUP BY year(job_run_date_time), month(job_run_date_time)
```

Job metrics queries for Oracle database

Use the following SQL query to find the number of jobs run on specific workstations:

```
SELECT EXTRACT(year FROM job_run_date_time) AS Year,
EXTRACT(month FROM job_run_date_time) AS Month,
cast (count(job_run_date_time) AS INT) AS JobNbr FROM job_history_v
WHERE workstation_name IN ('WKS_1', 'WKS_2', 'WKS_N')
or (workstation_name = '-' and JOB_STREAM_WKS_NAME_IN_RUN in('WKS_1', 'WKS_2', 'WKS_N'))
GROUP BY EXTRACT(year FROM job_run_date_time), EXTRACT(month FROM job_run_date_time);
```

where 'WKS_1', 'WKS_2', 'WKS_N' are the names of the workstations that ran the jobs you want counted.

Use the following SQL query to find the number of jobs run on the entire IBM Workload Scheduler domain:

```
SELECT EXTRACT(year FROM job_run_date_time) AS Year,
EXTRACT(month FROM job_run_date_time) AS Month,
cast (count(job_run_date_time) AS INT) AS JobNbr FROM job_history_v
GROUP BY EXTRACT(year FROM job_run_date_time), EXTRACT(month FROM job_run_date_time);
```

Chapter 8. Administrative tasks

This chapter describes how to perform some specific administrative tasks on IBM Workload Scheduler, as follows:

The tasks

[Switching a domain manager on page 610](#)

Change a domain manager or dynamic domain manager, either in the event of the failure of the computer where it is installed, or as part of a planned replacement activity.

[Switching the master to a backup on page 616](#)

Change a master domain manager, either in the event of the failure of the computer where it is installed, or as part of a planned replacement activity.

[Changing key IBM Workload Scheduler passwords on page 631](#)

Change the password of the <TWS_user>, or any other of the users that have an infrastructure role in IBM Workload Scheduler.

[Unlinking and stopping IBM Workload Scheduler on page 636](#)

The correct procedure to unlink the master domain manager from its agents and stop the master processing.

[Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#)

If you need to change the host, port or name of the database, effect the change in the application server, where the data source configuration is maintained.

[Changing the workstation host name or IP address on page 640](#)

Change the host name or IP address of a workstation.

[Changing the security settings on page 644](#)

If you need to update the properties that define your SSL connection or authentication mechanism, you need to make the changes in the WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

[Managing the event processor on page 645](#)

If you are using event-driven workload automation, you will need to perform periodic maintenance on the event processor.

Application server tasks

The following tasks might need to be performed on the application server:

[Application server - starting and stopping on page 652](#)

How to stop and start the application server when you need to.

[Application server - automatic restart after failure on page 654](#)

The application server is managed by a utility that restarts it if it stops for any reason (subject to a configurable policy). This section describes how to modify the policy and deal with any situations that the policy cannot handle.

[Application server - encrypting the profile properties files on page 657](#)

Several of the application server configuration files contain passwords. To avoid that these remain in the files in plain text, run a utility to encrypt them.

[Application server - configuration files backup and restore on page 657](#)

The application server configuration manages the data source and security aspects of your IBM Workload Scheduler environment. The files should be regularly backed up and when necessary can be restored.

[Application server - changing the host name or TCP/IP ports on page 657](#)

If you need to change the host or ports used by the application server, follow the correct procedure.

[Application server - changing the trace properties on page 658](#)

The application server has a trace facility. This section describes how to increase the trace level to obtain more information for troubleshooting, and how to reduce the level to improve performance.

Changing the application server properties

Several of the above tasks require you to run a common procedure based on templates whereby you:

1. Copy the template file from the `templates` folder to a working folder.
2. Edit the template file in the working folder with the desired configuration.
3. Optionally, create a backup copy of the relevant configuration file present in the `overrides` directory in a different directory. Ensure you do not copy the backup file in the path where the template files are located.
4. Copy the updated template file to the `overrides` folder. Maintaining the original folder structure is not required.
5. Changes are effective immediately.

This procedure is fully described in [Configuring IBM Workload Scheduler using templates on page 648](#).

Switching a domain manager

About this task

Being prepared for network problems makes recovery easier. Set up a backup domain manager for each domain manager in your network to more easily ensure that IBM Workload Scheduler peak job scheduling loads are met. Choose any fault-tolerant agent in the domain to be a backup domain manager.

A domain manager might need to be changed because you want it to run on a different workstation, or it might be forced on you as the result of network linking problems or the failure of the domain manager workstation itself. This section, and its subsections, describes how to prepare for and use a backup domain manager. However, if the domain manager to be

changed is a master domain manager or dynamic domain manager, there are some specific additional steps to perform; see [Switching the master to a backup on page 616](#).

Running without a domain manager has the following effects:

- Agents and subordinate domain managers cannot resolve inter-workstation dependencies, because activity records broadcast by the master domain manager are not being received.
- The upward flow of events is interrupted. This impacts events that report the status of jobs, job streams and dependencies defined on workstations in the IBM Workload Scheduler network hierarchy under the failed domain manager.
- Standard agents that are hosted by the failed domain manager cannot perform any processing, since they depend on the domain manager for all scheduling and job launching.

If the problem is expected to be of short duration, you can wait for the problem to be resolved and IBM Workload Scheduler will recover on its own, as described in the *Troubleshooting Guide* in the section about network linking problems. If you are uncertain about the duration, or if you want to restore normal agent operation, you must switch to a backup, as described in the following sections.

Ensure that the *FullStatus* mode is selected in the backup workstation definition. For more information about workstation properties, see the section about workstation definition in *User's Guide and Reference*.

Also ensure that the backup domain manager is synchronized with respect to time with the domain manager. The most secure way is to use a Network Time Protocol Server to control the time on both systems, with the same repeat interval.

Network security is enforced using IP address validation. As a consequence, workstation linking (autolink option or link command) might fail if an agent has an old Symphony file that does not contain the new domain manager. If a connection fails, remove the old Symphony file on the agent and retry the connection.

For more information about the autolink option, see the section about workstation definition in *User's Guide and Reference*.

For more information about the link command, see the section about the link command in *User's Guide and Reference*.

Simplified procedure for switching a domain manager

Use one of these procedures when you have a short-term loss of a domain manager.

Using the command line

See the procedure described under the `switchmgr` command in *User's Guide and Reference*.

Using the Dynamic Workload Console

1. In the navigation bar at the top, click **Monitoring and Reporting > Orchestration Monitor**.
2. Select an engine.
3. From the drop-down menu, select **Workstation**.
4. From the **Query** drop-down list, select a query to monitor workstations.

- 5. Click **Run** to run the monitoring task.
- 6. From the table containing the list of workstations, select a workstation and click **More Actions > Become Master Domain Manager**.

Domain managers remain switched until you perform another switch manager operation, or run JnextPlan. To return to the original domain manager without running JnextPlan, repeat this procedure.

Here is the procedure to follow every time you switch the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager if you run dynamic scheduling in your network:

- 1. Set the job fence to **go** priority level. For further details, see the fence command in *User's Guide and Reference*.
- 2. Switch the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager to a backup workstation. Use either the `conman switchmgr` command or the Dynamic Workload Console. For more information about both methods, see the procedure described under the switchmgr command in *User's Guide and Reference*.
- 3. Once the switch has been performed, restore the job fence to zero. For further details, see the fence command in *User's Guide and Reference*.

Complete procedure for switching a domain manager

This section summarizes the steps required to replace a running domain manager with its backup and to complete the procedure by restoring the original domain manager to its function. Follow these steps to make sure that no overlapping problems arise with obsolete versions of the Symphony file. You can also follow these steps to switch a master domain manager or a dynamic domain manager. The steps are documented for four scenarios:

Planned outage

The domain manager is replaced with its backup for planned maintenance work (for example, an upgrade of the operating system).

Unplanned outage

The domain manager is replaced with its backup because of an unexpected failure or malfunction.

Short-term

The domain manager is expected to return to service before the next new production period turnover (run of the JnextPlan job).

Long-term

The domain manager is not expected to return to service before the next new production period turnover (run of the JnextPlan job).

Table 109. Complete procedure for switching a domain manager in case of a planned outage.

Planned outage	
Short-term	Long-term
1. Switch the domain manager to a backup workstation. Use either the <code>conman switchmgr</code> command or the	1. Switch the domain manager to a backup workstation. Use either the <code>conman switchmgr</code> command or the Dynamic Workload

Table 109. Complete procedure for switching a domain manager in case of a planned outage. (continued)

Planned outage	
Dynamic Workload Console. For more information about both methods, see the <code>Switching a master domain manager</code> or <code>dynamic domain manager</code> chapter in the Administration Guide.	Console. For more information about both methods, see the <code>Switching a master domain manager</code> or <code>dynamic domain manager</code> chapter in the Administration Guide.
2. Check that the message boxes for the domain manager undergoing maintenance are large enough not to fill up before it is restored. Increase their size if necessary.	2. Check that the message boxes for the domain manager undergoing maintenance are large enough not to fill up before it is restored. Increase their size if necessary.
3. Shut down IBM Workload Scheduler processing on the domain manager undergoing maintenance.	3. Shut down IBM Workload Scheduler processing on the original domain manager undergoing maintenance.
	4. In the IBM Workload Scheduler database assign the role of domain manager to the backup workstation. This is done by changing the workstation type in the database from MANAGER to FTA on the original domain manager and from FTA to MANAGER on the backup.
	5. Set the workstation running the original domain manager to <code>ignore</code> , using either the <code>composer mod cpu <workstation_name></code> command or the Dynamic Workload Console.
	6. Run JnextPlan to generate the new production plan so that the backup master domain manager is removed from the plan.
When ready to restore the ownership of the domain to the original domain manager:	When ready to restore the ownership of the domain to the original domain manager:
	7. Remove the <code>ignore</code> flag from the workstation running the original domain manager.
	8. Run JnextPlan to generate the new production plan so that the backup master domain manager is reinserted in the plan.
4. Switch from the backup workstation to the domain manager using one of the methods indicated in step 1.	9. Reassign ownership of the domain to the original domain manager in the IBM Workload Scheduler database. This is done by changing the workstation type in the database from MANAGER to FTA on the original backup and from FTA to MANAGER on the original domain manager
5. Link the domain manager from the master to download a fresh version of the Symphony file.	
	10. Optional: In the original domain manager, remove the <code>conman start</code> command from the init procedure and delete any existing copies of the Symphony, <code>Sinfonia</code> , and message box files.

Table 109. Complete procedure for switching a domain manager in case of a planned outage. (continued)

Planned outage	
	 Note: This step is recommended to avoid that any outdated symphony present in the computer is automatically triggered at the first startup. You can add <code>conman start</code> again later.
	11. Switch from the backup workstation to the domain manager using one of the methods indicated in step 1.
	12. Link the domain manager from the master to download a fresh version of the Symphony file.

Table 110. Complete procedure for switching a domain manager after an unplanned outage.

Unplanned outage	
Short-term	Long-term
1. Switch the domain manager to a backup workstation. Use either the <code>conman switchmgr</code> command or the Dynamic Workload Console. For more information about both methods, see the <code>switchmgr</code> command in <i>User's Guide and Reference</i>. 2. Check that the message boxes for the failing domain manager are large enough not to fill up before it is restored. Increase their size if necessary.	1. Switch the domain manager to a backup workstation. Use either the <code>conman switchmgr</code> command or the Dynamic Workload Console. For more information about both methods, see the <code>switchmgr</code> command in <i>User's Guide and Reference</i>. 2. Check that the message boxes for the failing domain manager are large enough not to fill up before it is restored. Increase their size if necessary.
	3. In the IBM Workload Scheduler database assign the role of domain manager to the backup workstation. This is done by changing the workstation type in the database from MANAGER to FTA on the original domain manager and from FTA to MANAGER on the backup.
	4. Set the workstation running the failing domain manager to <code>ignore</code> , using either the <code>composer mod cpu <workstation_name></code> command or the Dynamic Workload Console.
	5. Run JnextPlan to generate the new production plan so that the backup master domain manager is removed from the plan.
When ready to restore the ownership of the domain to the original domain manager:	When ready to restore the ownership of the domain to the original domain manager:

Table 110. Complete procedure for switching a domain manager after an unplanned outage. (continued)

Unplanned outage	
3. Optional: • A. In the original domain manager, remove the <code>conman start</code> command from the init procedure and delete any existing copies of the Symphony, <code>Sinfonia</code>, and message box files.  Note: This step is recommended to avoid that any outdated symphony present in the computer is automatically triggered at the first startup. You can add <code>conman start</code> again later. B. After an unplanned outage, the fault-tolerant agent needs a new Symphony file. Perform the following steps on the current master domain manager: ◦ i. Verify that the current master domain manager is linked to all agents except the old master domain manager. ◦ ii. Shut down all IBM® Workload Scheduler processes (unlink from all agents). ◦ iii. Rename <code>Sinfonia</code> as <code>Sinfonia.orig</code>. ◦ iv. Copy <code>Symphony</code> to <code>Sinfonia</code>. You now have identical <code>Symphony</code> and <code>Sinfonia</code> files.	6. Remove the <code>ignore</code> flag from the workstation running the original domain manager.
	7. Run JnextPlan to generate the new production plan so that the backup master domain manager is reinserted in the plan.
4. Switch from the backup workstation to the domain manager using one of the methods indicated in step 1.	8. Reassign ownership of the domain to the original domain manager in the IBM Workload Scheduler database. This is done by changing the workstation type in the database from MANAGER to FTA on the original domain manager and from FTA to MANAGER on the backup.
5. Link the domain manager from the master to download a fresh version of the Symphony file.	

Table 110. Complete procedure for switching a domain manager after an unplanned outage. (continued)

Unplanned outage	
	9. Optional: In the original domain manager, remove the <code>conman start</code> command from the init procedure and delete any existing copies of the Symphony, <i>Sinfonia</i>, and message box files.  Note: This step is recommended to avoid that any outdated symphony present in the computer is automatically triggered at the first startup. You can add <code>conman start</code> again later.
	10. Switch from the backup workstation to the domain manager using one of the methods indicated in step 1 on page 614 .
	11. Link the domain manager from the master to download a fresh version of the Symphony file.

Switching the master to a backup

About this task

A backup workstation for the master domain manager and another workstation for the dynamic domain manager are an essential asset to ensure business continuity and data integrity in your environment.

There are two ways in which the switchover to a backup master domain manager can occur:

A manual, planned switchover procedure

You can switch the master domain manager to a backup master domain manager at any time, either for a short term or for a long term (the original master is not expected to return to service before the next new production period turnover), using the `switchmgr` command.

An automatic failover process

Starting with version 9.5 Fix Pack 2, you can rely on the automatic failover feature, where, given a list of available backups, the workload is switched over to the backup. See [Automatic failover on page 619](#) for more information.

When selecting a workstation to be a backup, the same rules apply to both the automatic failover and the manual switching of the master. Backup workstations must have compatible operating systems with the master and the backup master domain manager must be installed on a system that is not currently defined in the workload scheduling network. For more information about these topics see [Selecting a workstation for the backup master domain manager on page 617](#) and [Changing an agent to become a backup master domain manager on page 617](#).

In the following topics you can find information about how to enable the automatic failover process, and how to manually switch a master domain manager, and a dynamic domain manager for a Z controller.

If you lose or want to plan to change a master domain manager or dynamic domain manager, the same comments in the section [Switching a domain manager on page 610](#) apply, but in addition, consider the sub-topics in this section.

Selecting a workstation for the backup master domain manager

It is the normal process to install a backup master domain manager when you set up your scheduling network. However, if you have not done so, and decide later that you need a backup master domain manager, you have two options:

- Install a backup master domain manager on a system that is not currently in the workload scheduling network. For the detailed procedure, see the section about installing the master domain manager and backup master domain manager *Planning and Installation Guide*.
- Promote an agent to backup master domain manager. This option is time-consuming and requires you to interrupt your workload scheduling activities, but if you want to do it, follow the procedure described in this section.

Regardless of the option you choose, the following are some prerequisites to consider for the backup workstation:

- Choose compatible operating systems. Since you must transfer files between the master domain manager and its backup, the workstations must have compatible operating systems. Do not combine UNIX™ with Windows™ workstations, and in UNIX™, do not combine big-endian workstations (AIX®) with little-endian workstations (most Intel™-based operating systems, including Windows™ and Linux™).

See the [IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements](#) for details of the prerequisite requirements of a backup master domain manager.

- Ensure the master domain manager and the backup master domain manager have `FullStatus` turned on in the workstation definition. See [Setting up a backup master domain manager on page 618](#)
- Copy any necessary files, such as, the security file and localopts file, to the backup workstation. See [Copying files to use on the backup master domain manager on page 618](#).

Changing an agent to become a backup master domain manager

You *cannot* change an agent to become a backup master domain manager, using a command or procedure that allows continuity of workload scheduling activities.

Instead, if you need to change an agent workstation to become the backup master domain manager, you must interrupt the workload scheduling activities. The procedure is as follows:

1. Check that the workstation satisfies the prerequisites for a backup master domain manager. See [IBM Workload Scheduler Detailed System Requirements](#) for more information.
2. If it does, stop and disable all workload scheduling operations on the workstation
3. Uninstall the agent, following the instructions in the section about uninstalling agents in *Planning and Installation Guide*.
4. Install the backup master domain manager on the system where the agent was installed, following the instructions in the section about installing the master domain manager and backup master domain manager in *Planning and Installation Guide*.

5. Ensure that the database entry for the workstation is correct for a backup master domain manager. See the section about workstation definition in *User's Guide and Reference* for information about the workstation definition.
6. Define and start any workload scheduling operations you require on the workstation in its new role.

Setting up a backup master domain manager

Ensure that the master domain manager and the backup master domain manager have *FullStatus* turned on in the workstation definition. This is important if you need to resort to long-term recovery, where the backup master domain manager generates a Symphony file (runs JnextPlan). If *FullStatus* is not turned on, the former master domain manager shows up as a regular fault-tolerant agent after the first occurrence of JnextPlan. During normal operations, the JnextPlan job automatically turns on the *FullStatus* flag for the master domain manager, if it is not already turned on. When the new master domain manager runs JnextPlan, it does not recognize the former master domain manager as a backup master domain manager unless the flag is enabled. The former master domain manager does not have an accurate Symphony file when the time comes to switch back. For more information about workstation properties, see the section about workstation definition in *User's Guide and Reference*.

Also ensure that the backup master domain manager is synchronized with respect to time with the master domain manager. The securest way is to use a Network Time Protocol Server to control the time on both systems, with the same repeat interval.

Copying files to use on the backup master domain manager

To back up the important master domain manager files to the backup master domain manager, use the following procedure:

1. Copy the `Security` file from the master domain manager to backup domain manager in the following path:

Windows On Windows operating systems

`<TWA_home>\TWS`

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_DATA_DIR`

Add a suffix to the file so that it does not overwrite the `Security` file on the backup domain manager, for example, `Security_from_MDM`.

2. Copy all files in the following path:

Windows On Windows operating systems

`<TWA_home>/TWS/mozart`

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_DATA_DIR/mozart`

3. Copy the `localopts` file (see [Setting local options on page 48](#) for the location). Add a suffix to the file so that it does not overwrite the `localopts` file on the backup master domain manager; for example, `localopts_from_MDM`.

This procedure must be performed each production period, or whenever there are significant changes to any objects. It can be incorporated into a script.

In addition to these required files, you might also want to copy the following:

- Any scripts you might have written.
- Archived Symphony files, for reference.
- Log files, for reference.



Note: Another approach could be to place all of the above files on a separately mountable file system, that could easily be unmounted from the master domain manager and mounted on the backup master domain manager in the event of need. You would almost certainly want to backup these files in addition, to protect against loss of the separately mountable file system.

To prevent the loss of messages caused by a master domain manager error, you can use the fault-tolerant switch-manager facility.

Automatic failover

Switching a master domain manager to a backup master domain manager.

Recovery is easy when you are prepared for potential problems. If the master domain manager becomes unavailable, to ensure continuous operations, a long-term switchmgr operation is triggered and the workload is automatically switched to an eligible backup master domain manager.

Similarly, the backup event processors automatically detect if the event processor is unavailable, and a long-term switcheventprocessor command is triggered.

This is the default behavior for a complete fresh installation of V9.5 Fix Pack 2 or later, but it can be enabled for back-level environments that are upgraded to V9.5 Fix Pack 2 or later. For more information, see [Enabling automatic failover on page 621](#).



Note: If you perform a fresh installation of a backup master domain manager at the V9.5 Fix Pack level in an existing back-level environment, the automatic failover feature is disabled. To enable it, follow this procedure. The feature is enabled by default for only a complete fresh installation.

You can optionally define potential backups for both the master domain manager and the event processor in two separate lists, adding preferential backups at the top of the lists. The backup engines monitor the behavior of the master domain manager and event processor to detect anomalous behavior and then attempt to recover. Each component plays a role in either detecting a failure or recovering from it:

- Each backup master domain manager monitors the status of the active master domain manager.
- The master domain manager (active or backup) is made to be self-aware. It monitors the status of its fault-tolerant agent to check on the status of processes such as, Batchman, Mailman and Jobman. If at least one of these

processes are down, the master domain manager makes 3 attempts to restart them. If the 3 attempts fail, a long-term switchmgr operation is triggered and the workload is automatically switched to an eligible backup master domain manager, while the event processor remains unchanged.

- If the WebSphere Application Server Liberty goes down, the watchdog process attempts to restart it. If the attempt fails, long-term switchmgr and switcheventprocessor commands are triggered, moving both the master domain manager and event processor to their backups.
- If the active master domain manager cannot be automatically restored within 5 minutes (the threshold after which the master is declared unavailable), then a permanent switch to a backup is automatically triggered by any of the backup candidates when one or more of the following conditions persist:
 - The fault-tolerant agent, WebSphere Application Server Liberty, or both are still down.
 - The engine is unable to communicate with the database, for example, due to a network outage.

If you have defined potential backups in a list, and a switch after 5 minutes is not possible with the first backup in the list because it is unavailable, then an attempt is made to contact the remaining backups in the list, following the order specified in the list, until an available backup is found to perform the switch. In this case, 5 minutes pass between each attempt.

The list for potential event processor backups is a separate list from the potential master domain manager backups, because you might have a workstation that can serve as the event manager backup, but you do not want it to act as a potential master domain manager backup. If the event manager fails, but the master domain manager is running fine, then only the event manager switches to a backup manager defined in the list of potential backups. The same happens if the master domain manager fails and the event manager is running fine.

You can track detected failures and the actions taken by checking the messages . log file located in the path:

- **UNIX** <TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/appserver/engineServer/logs/messages . log
- **Windows** <TWA_home>\TWS\stdlist\appserver\engineServer\logs\messages . log



Note: On Linux® and UNIX®, for a fresh installation, an extended agent is installed with the master domain manager which is used to communicate where to run the FINAL job stream, along with its jobs. With an extended agent, \$MASTER can be used to indicate that the agent's host workstation is the master domain manager. If the role of the master is switched to a backup, then the new master is represented by \$MASTER. This supports both a short-term and long-term switch for the automatic failover feature. If you are upgrading from a version earlier than 9.5 Fix Pack 2, then you must define the extended agent manually.

On Windows™ workstations, the FINAL job stream is not defined on the extended agent, but remains on the master domain manager. The FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams and jobs need to be moved from the master to the extended agent workstation. For this reason, only a short-term switch can be performed automatically and the long-term switch must be performed manually as documented in [Extended loss or permanent change of master domain manager on page 626](#) and in [Complete procedure for switching a domain manager on page 612](#). See



also the `switchmgr` command in the *User's Guide and Reference* that contains both the command-line syntax, as well as the procedural steps to perform the switch from the Dynamic Workload Console.

Enabling automatic failover

To enable automatic failover, configure one or more backup engines, and set the related global options (**`workstationEventManagerListInAutomaticFailover`** and **`workstationMasterListInAutomaticFailover`**) using the `optman` command, so that when the active master becomes unavailable, a long-term `switchmgr` operation is triggered.

Before you begin

Ensure that the master domain manager and the back master domain managers were installed using the same user (UID) and group (GID).

About this task

If you performed an upgrade from Version 9.5 or 9.5 Fix Pack 1, the automatic failover feature is disabled, but it can be enabled following a few simple steps outlined in this task. Automatic failover is, instead, enabled by default for a fresh installation of Version 9.5 Fix Pack 2 and later, and any backup master domain manager installed and configured with Fix Pack 2 is an eligible backup. If you subsequently disabled this feature, you can use the following procedure to re-enable it. You can also use this procedure to define a list of preferred eligible backups, excluding any backups you do not want to consider as an eligible backup. If an eligible workstation is defined in a folder, use the `composer li ws @;showid` command to retrieve the ID of the workstation you plan to define as backup. You can also configure a separate list of potential backups for the event processor.

1. Ensure the local option, `mm resolve master`, in the `localopts` file, is set to `no` on both the master domain manager and on all eligible backup master domain managers.
2. Optional. Define a list of potential backups for the master domain manager and the event manager.
 - a. Update the global option, `workstationMasterListInAutomaticFailover`, on the master domain manager to specify a list of workstations to be considered as eligible backups for the master domain manager. Edit the value of this option by adding a list of workstations, separated by commas, starting with your preferred choices at the top of the list. The list includes the current master domain manager. If no workstations are specified in this list, then the first backup master domain manager to detect that the master is down, performs the switch.
 - b. Specify potential backups for the event processor by editing the value for the `workstationEventManagerListInAutomaticFailover` global option. Add a list of workstations, separated by commas, starting with your preferred choices at the top of the list. The list includes the current event manager workstation.
3. Set the following global options to "yes": `enAutomaticFailover` | `af` and `enAutomaticFailoverActions` | `aa` using the `optman chg` command. For example:

```
optman chg af=yes
optman chg aa=yes
```

4. Restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty



Important: Complete the remaining steps only if they are not already present in your environment.

5. If not already present on the master domain manager, create a new workstation with the following specifications:

- **Type:** Extended Agent
- **Access method:** unixloc1
- **Host:** \$MASTER

For example, if you create a workstation named, MDM_XA, with these specifications, the following is the workstation definition:

```
CPUNAME MDM_XA
DESCRIPTION "Workload Scheduler Virtual Master"
OS OTHER
NODE mdm_xa TCPADDR 31111
FOR MAESTRO HOST $MASTER ACCESS "unixloc1"
TYPE X-AGENT
AUTOLINK OFF
BEHINDFIREWALL OFF
FULLSTATUS OFF
END
```

6. Set the FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams on the master domain manager to "draft". Draft job streams are not added to the preproduction plan.

```
composer mod js=FINAL
composer mod js=FINALPOSTREPORTS
```

For example, the following is an extract from the definition for the FINAL job stream:

```
SCHEDULE MDM#FINAL
DESCRIPTION "Added by composer."
DRAFT
ON RUNCYCLE RC1 "FREQ=DAILY;"
AT 2359
CARRYFORWARD
FOLLOWS MDM#FINAL.SWITCHPLAN PREVIOUS
:
```

The following example is an extract from the definition for the FINALPOSTREPORTS job stream:

```
SCHEDULE MDM#FINALPOSTREPORTS
DESCRIPTION "Added by composer."
DRAFT
ON RUNCYCLE RC1 "FREQ=DAILY;"
SCHEDTIME 2359
CARRYFORWARD
FOLLOWS MDM_XA#FINAL.SWITCHPLAN PREVIOUS
:
```

7. If not already present, make the following changes to the Sfinal file:

a. Create a backup of the Sfinal file. For example:

```
cp /<TWA_home>/TWS/Sfinal /<TWA_home>/TWS/Sfinal.orig
```

b. Add the new extended agent workstation to the FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job stream definitions.

- c. Substitute the SCRIPTNAME keyword with DOCOMMAND in all of the jobs defined in the FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams.
- d. Ensure the path to the scripts launched by the jobs in the FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams use the variable, *UNISONHOME*.
- e. Submit the `composer add Sfinal` command to generate the FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams on the new extended agent workstation if they do not already exist.
- f. Verify that the new extended agent workstation has been added to the `Sfinal` file. The following example is an extract of the modified `Sfinal` file containing the addition of the MDM_XA extended agent workstation, the substitution of the SCRIPTNAME keyword with DOCOMMAND in all jobs defined in FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job stream definitions, and the use of the *UNISONHOME* variable in place of the path to the scripts:

FINAL:

```
SCHEDULE MDM_XA#FINAL ON EVERYDAY
    AT 2359
    CARRYFORWARD
FOLLOWS MDM_XA#FINAL.SWITCHPLAN PREVIOUS
...
...
...
    STARTAPPSERVER DOCOMMAND
"${UNISONHOME}"/../appservertools/startAppServer.sh"
    STREAMLOGON wa95ids
    RECOVERY CONTINUE
    MAKEPLAN DOCOMMAND "${UNISONHOME}/MakePlan"
    STREAMLOGON wa95ids
    RCCONDSUCC "(RC=0) OR (RC=4)"
    FOLLOWS STARTAPPSERVER
    SWITCHPLAN DOCOMMAND "${UNISONHOME}/SwitchPlan"
    STREAMLOGON wa95ids
    FOLLOWS MAKEPLAN
...
...
...
END
```

FINALPOSTREPORTS:

```
SCHEDULE MDM_XA#FINALPOSTREPORTS ON EVERYDAY
    SCHEDTIME 2359
    CARRYFORWARD
FOLLOWS MDM_XA#FINAL.SWITCHPLAN PREVIOUS
...
...
...
    CHECKSYNC DOCOMMAND "${UNISONHOME}/bin/planman checksync"
    STREAMLOGON wa95ids
    RECOVERY CONTINUE
    CREATEPOSTREPORTS DOCOMMAND "${UNISONHOME}/CreatePostReports"
    STREAMLOGON wa95ids
    RECOVERY CONTINUE
```

```

UPDATESTATS DOCOMMAND "${UNISONHOME}/UpdateStats"
STREAMLOGON wa95ids
RECOVERY CONTINUE
FOLLOWS CHECKSYNC
...
...
...
END

```

8. Submit the `composer add Sfinal` command and then verify that the FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams and the related jobs, are correctly defined on the extended agent workstation. The following is an example of the correct output:

```

...
...
...
/
-add Sfinal
AWSJCL003I The command "add" completed successfully on object "jd=MDM_XA#STARTAPPSERVER".
AWSJCL003I The command "add" completed successfully on object "jd=MDM_XA#MAKEPLAN".
AWSJCL003I The command "add" completed successfully on object "jd=MDM_XA#SWITCHPLAN".
AWSJCL003I The command "add" completed successfully on object "js=MDM_XA#FINAL".
AWSJCL003I The command "add" completed successfully on object "jd=MDM_XA#CHECKSYNC".
AWSJCL003I The command "add" completed successfully on object "jd=MDM_XA#CREATEPOSTREPORTS".
AWSJCL003I The command "add" completed successfully on object "jd=MDM_XA#UPDATESTATS".
AWSJCL003I The command "add" completed successfully on object "js=MDM_XA#FINALPOSTREPORTS".
AWSBIA090I For file "Sfinal": errors 0, warnings 0.
AWSBIA288I Total objects updated: 8

```

9. Compare the two copies of the FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams and make any necessary changes to those on the extended agent workstation, for example, the job stream submit time, run cycles, or any other custom changes to personalize the schedule.
10. Submit JnextPlan with the `-noremove` options to update the plan with the new extended agent workstation:

```
JnextPlan -for 0000 -noremove
```

11. If JnextPlan runs correctly, proceed to delete the FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams previously set to "draft" on the master domain manager.

```

composer del FINALPOSTREPORTS
composer del FINAL

```

12. Delete the FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams from the plan as follows.

```

conman "canc FINALPOSTREPORTS"
conman "canc FINAL"

```

13. Modify the new job stream definitions for the FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams, setting the limit to "0":

```

SCHEDULE MDM_XA#FINAL
DESCRIPTION "Added by composer."
ON RUNCYCLE RC1 "FREQ=DAILY;"
AT 2359
CARRYFORWARD
FOLLOWS MDM_XA#FINAL.SWITCHPLAN PREVIOUS
LIMIT 0
:
MDM_XA#STARTAPPSERVER

```

14. Submit first the FINAL, and then the FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams into the current plan.

```
conman sbs MDM_XA#FINAL
conman sbs MDM_XA#FINALPOSTREPORTS
```

15. Verify that the start time and date for the FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams are correct by submitting the conman showschedules command.
16. Reset the value of the limit job stream keyword for the FINAL and FINALPOSTREPORTS job streams, both in the database and in the plan.

```
conman "limit MDM_XA#FINAL ;10"
conman "limit MDM_XA#FINALPOSTREPORTS ;10"
```

Both job streams should be in WAITING (HOLD internal status), awaiting execution time.

17. Archived plans, forecast and trial plans are stored on the master domain manager where the plans run. To make these plans available on the backup master domain manager, either store the plan in a single shared folder, or create a job that synchronizes the plans between the master domain manager and the backup master domain manager.

What to do next

To enable the new master to access the plans that ran on the original master (the current plan is visible because it is synchronized with the backup), configure a job that copies the plans from the original master to the new master.

After an automatic failover, if you would like to subsequently return service to the original master, you must perform a manual switch. See [Manually switching the master on page 625](#).

Manually switching the master

A manual switchover from the primary master domain manager to a backup master domain manager is invoked through the switchmgr command. The backup master domain manager becomes the current, active master connected to the IBM® Workload Scheduler database.

There are four main use case scenarios that can prompt the need for switch of the master to a backup:

Planned outage

The domain manager is replaced with its backup for planned maintenance work (for example, an upgrade of the operating system).

Unplanned outage

The domain manager is replaced with its backup because of an unexpected failure or malfunction.

Short-term

The domain manager is expected to return to service before the next new production period turnover (run of the JnextPlan job).

Long-term

The domain manager is not expected to return to service before the next new production period turnover (run of the JnextPlan job).

Short-term switch of a master domain manager

Use the procedure described in [Simplified procedure for switching a domain manager on page 611](#) when you have a short-term loss of a master domain manager.

Master domain managers remain switched until you perform another switch manager operation. To return to the original master domain manager, repeat this procedure before the next production period turnover, unless you do not expect the master domain manager to be available for the next production period turnover (final Job Scheduler and JnextPlan job). In this case, use the procedure in the following section.

Extended loss or permanent change of master domain manager

Use the following procedure to switch to the backup if the original master domain manager is not expected to return to service before the next new production period turnover (final Job Scheduler and JnextPlan job).

UNIX

On UNIX™ operating systems, use forward slashes in path names.

1. Use the conman **stop** function to stop IBM Workload Scheduler on the master domain manager and its backup. for more information about the command, see the section about the stop command in *User's Guide and Reference*.
2. If you copied the `Security` file from the master domain manager to the backup master domain manager with a suffix, now delete the `Security` file on the backup master domain manager and rename the `Security` file with the suffix as just `Security`.
3. If you copied the `localopts` file from the master domain manager to the backup master domain manager with a suffix, now merge the `localopts` file on the backup master domain manager with the `localopts` file from the master domain manager. Look at each property in turn and determine which version you want to keep on what is going to be your new master domain manager. For example, the property `thiscpu` needs to be the one from the backup master domain manager, but the options for controlling how the processes run can be taken from the master domain manager.
4. On the backup master domain manager cancel the `final` Job Scheduler in the `Symphony` file (it refers to the next production period's `JnextPlan` on the old master domain manager).
5. On the backup master domain manager, use `composer` to modify any important job streams that run on the master domain manager, in particular the `final` Job Scheduler. For each of these, change the workstation name to the name of the backup.
6. Change the workstation definition of the master domain manager from `manager` to `fault-tolerant agent`.
7. Change the workstation definition of the backup master domain manager from `fault-tolerant agent` to `manager`.



Note: These two steps must be done in the order given, as the system will not allow you to have two managers at the same time.

8. On the backup master domain manager, edit the `TWA_home/TWS/mozart/globalopts` file and change the `master` option to the name of the backup master domain manager workstation (this is used mainly for reports production)
9. Use the conman **switchmgr** function to switch to the backup master domain manager. See [Simplified procedure for switching a domain manager on page 611](#).

10. Submit a new *final* Job Scheduler to the new master domain manager (old backup master domain manager).
11. Run JnextPlan -for 0000 on the new master domain manager to generate the new Symphony file.
12. Remember to log on to the backup master domain manager when opening the Dynamic Workload Console, first defining a new engine to access it.
13. If the old master domain manager has failed or is being replaced, you can now delete its workstation definition and remove it from the network.

Switching a master domain manager or dynamic domain manager

Switching a master domain manager or dynamic domain manager affects the running dynamic workload broker server.

The installation of a master domain manager or dynamic domain manager and of its backup workstations includes also the installation of a dynamic workload broker server.

You might have to switch the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager because, for example, the system running the current workstation is down. When a `conman switchmgr` command is submitted, an automatic process is triggered by which the old server stops the dynamic scheduling services and the new server starts a new instance of the dynamic workload broker server when the older server has completed the switch. This process ensures that there is only one active dynamic workload broker server running at a time.

You can configure this automatic switch broker process on instances at version 9.5 or later, by modifying the following properties contained in the `SwitchBroker.properties` file located in `TWA_DATA_DIR/broker/config/`
`SwitchBroker.properties`:

Table 111. Configurable properties for automatic switch broker process

Property	Description
Master.Switch.HostName	The master domain manager name used to identify the active master.
Master.Switch.ExpiringTime	The number of seconds the new master waits before becoming the active master. The default value is 300 seconds.
Master.Switch.PollingTime	The time interval, in seconds, between the database checks made by the new master on the status updates of the old master. The default is 5 seconds.

When the `switchmgr` command is submitted, the new master begins monitoring the database (with the frequency specified by **Master.Switch.PollingTime**), to verify when the state changes for the old master. If there is no response from the old master (because of a crash or because the old master is at a product level version earlier than V9.5) then the new master waits for a maximum of two intervals specified by **Master.Switch.PollingTime** (10 seconds), and then automatically promotes itself as the new active master. If, instead, a status update is detected in the database while polling, the new master waits the amount of time specified by **Master.Switch.ExpiringTime** before declaring itself the new active master. As

soon as the old master completes the switch procedure, then the new master declares itself as the active master without waiting for the expiry of the **Master.Switch.ExpiringTime**.

The properties must be modified on both the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager and their backups at version 9.5 or later.

Here is the procedure to follow every time you switch the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager if you run dynamic scheduling in your network:

1. Set the job fence to **go** priority level. For further details, see the section about the fence command in *User's Guide and Reference*.
2. Switch the master domain manager or dynamic domain manager to a backup workstation. Use either the `conman switchmgr` command or the Dynamic Workload Console. For more information about both methods, see the procedure described under the switchmgr command in *User's Guide and Reference*.
3. Once the switch has been performed, restore the job fence to zero. For further details, see the procedure described under the switchmgr command in *User's Guide and Reference*.

Switching a dynamic domain manager for a Z controller

As a normal behavior, the dynamic domain manager for a Z controller works by having both the server and processes up and running, while the backup dynamic domain manager for a Z controller works with the processes that are running and the system that is down. You might have to switch the dynamic domain manager for a Z controller to a backup workstation because, for example, the system running the current workstation goes down.

To switch the dynamic domain manager for a Z controller to the backup workstation, perform the following procedure:

1. Stop the server on the dynamic domain manager for a Z controller by issuing the following command:

Windows On Windows

```
stopAppServer.bat
```

UNIX On UNIX

```
stopAppServer.sh
```

2. On the backup dynamic domain manager for a Z controller, run the following command:

Windows On Windows

```
startZosDDM.bat -dbUsr db_user -dbPwd db_user_pwd
```

UNIX On UNIX

```
startZosDDM.sh -dbUsr db_user -dbPwd db_user_pwd
```

where:

dbUsr db_user

The user that has been granted access to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler tables on the database server.

dbPwd db_user_pwd

The password for the user that has been granted access to the IBM Z Workload Scheduler tables on the database server.

3. On the backup dynamic domain manager for a Z controller, start the server by running the following command:

Windows On Windows

```
startAppServer.bat
```

UNIX On UNIX

```
startAppServer.sh
```

Cloning scheduling definitions from one environment to another

Replicating scheduling definitions from one environment for example, a test environment, to a different one, for example a production environment.

About this task

This section applies to IBM Workload Scheduler master domain managers and its backup. It documents how to clone IBM Workload Scheduler data from one environment to another.



Note: This cloning procedure does not clone the following information from the source environment:

- The preproduction plan
- The history of job runs and job statistics
- The audit records
- The state of running event rule instances. This means that any complex event rules, where part of the rule has been satisfied prior to cloning of the environment, are generated as new rules after the cloning procedure. Even if the subsequent conditions of the event rule are satisfied, the record that the first part of the rule was satisfied is no longer available, so the rule will never be completely satisfied.

With the following steps all scheduling object definitions and global options can be migrated from a source environment named "ENV_1" to a target environment named "ENV_2".

1. In ENV_2, install a fresh instance of an IBM Workload Scheduler version 10.2.6 master domain manager and it point to its database by defining `MDM_ENV2` as the master domain manager workstation name. The installation process automatically defines the following workstations in the `ENV_2` database:
 - `MDM_ENV2` is the master domain manager workstation name.
 - `MDM_ENV2_DWB` is the broker workstation name.
 - `MDM_ENV2_1` is the agent workstation name.
 - `MASTERAGENTS` is the dynamic pool which includes, by default, `MDM_ENV2_1` dynamic agent workstation.

2. On the ENV_1 master domain manager, run the `dataexport` command or script to export all scheduling object definitions and global options from ENV_1. You can find this file in the `bin` subdirectory of the TWA_home directory.

Run `dataexport` from a Windows™ or UNIX® command prompt as follows:

```
dataexport source_dir export_dir
```

where:

source_dir

The `TWS_HOME` directory of the ENV_1 instance of IBM Workload Scheduler version 10.2.6.



Note: The `dataexport` utility only accepts `source_dir` values that end in `TWS`.

export_dir

The directory where the export files are created.

For example:

```
dataexport.cmd F:\IWS1026\twsDB2user F:\IWS1026\export
```

The object definitions and the global options are retrieved from the ENV_1 database and placed in the `F:\IWS1026\export` directory.

3. Verify that the following files were created in `export_dir`:

- `acls.def`
- `calendars.def`
- `erules.def`
- `folders.def`
- `globalopts.def`
- `jobs.def`



Note: The record length supported by DB2® is 4095 bytes, but it decreases to 4000 bytes with Oracle. When you migrate your job definitions to Oracle, any job with task string (scripts or commands) exceeding 4000 bytes in length are not migrated. In this case, the data import utility replaces the job definition with a dummy job definition and sets the job priority to 0, guaranteeing that successors are not run.

- `parms.def`
- `prompts.def`
- `rcgroups.def`
- `resources.def`
- `scheds.def`
- `sdoms.def`
- `srols.def`
- `topology.def`

- `users.def` (includes encrypted user passwords)
 - `variables.def`
4. Open the `export_dir\topology.def` file and remove the `MASTERAGENTS` definition to avoid replacing the same workstation definition that was created when you installed a fresh instance of the IBM Workload Scheduler version 10.2.6 master domain manager in `ENV_2`.

If you plan to dismiss `ENV_1` and you want to move the other workstations from `ENV_1` to `ENV_2`, then you do not have to perform any additional steps.

If you plan to install new agents in `ENV_2`, then it is recommended to install them using the same **displayname** used by the agent present in `ENV_1` so that you do not need to modify the `rules.def`, `jobs.def`, `resources.def`, `scheds.def`, and `users.def` files exported in the previous step. If you do not install them using the same **displayname**, then you must edit these files so that they match the agent **displayname** present in `ENV_2`.

5. Edit the `export_dir\users.def` file to specify the current valid password for the Windows™ users.
6. To import the object definitions and the global options retrieved from the `ENV_1` into the `ENV_2` database, copy the files that were created when you ran the `dataexport` utility to a directory on the `ENV_2` master domain manager and run the `dataimport` command or script to import all scheduling object definitions and global options to the `ENV_2` database. You can find this file in the `bin` subdirectory of the `TWA_home` directory.

Run `dataimport` from a Windows™ or UNIX® command prompt as follows:

```
dataimport source_dir export_dir
```

where:

source_dir

The `TWS_HOME` directory of the `ENV_2` instance of IBM Workload Scheduler version 10.2.6.

export_dir

The directory where you copied the object definitions and the global options retrieved from `ENV_1`.

For example:

```
dataimport.cmd F:\IWS1026\twsDB2user F:\IWS1026\export
```

7. If you want to dismiss the instance of IBM Workload Scheduler installed in `ENV_1` and reuse the same agents in `ENV_2`, stop the IBM Workload Scheduler processes running on the master domain manager in `ENV_1` to avoid conflicts.

Results

You have now completed cloning scheduling definitions from one environment to another.

Changing key IBM Workload Scheduler passwords

About this task

When you change passwords for key users in your IBM Workload Scheduler environment, there are various operations to perform, depending on which user's password is being changed, the type of operating system on which it is deployed, and the type of IBM Workload Scheduler node where the password is being changed.

Perform one or more of the following steps depending on the characteristics of your environment and your operating systems:

- Change the user password at the operating system level using native commands.

If you use special characters in the password, ensure you use a "\" (backslash) before the special character. The following rules apply:

On Windows™ operating systems:

Passwords for users can include any alphanumeric characters and ()!?=^*/~[]\$_.+;:.,@`~#.

On UNIX™ and LINUX systems:

Passwords for users can include any alphanumeric characters and ()!?=^*_+.-.

- Change the password for the TWS user by changing the WebSphere Application Server Liberty user password. For more information, see the WebSphere Application Server Liberty documentation, for example [securityUtility command](#). For the detailed procedure, see [Changing the WebSphere Application Server Liberty password on page 633](#).
- Change the password used by command-line clients, as described in [Change password used by command-line clients to access the master domain manager on page 635](#).
- Change the password used by fault-tolerant agents, as described in [Change password used by fault-tolerant agent systems to access the master domain manager \(for conman\) on page 635](#).
- Change the password for the database user, as described in [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#).
- Change the engine connection parameters in the Dynamic Workload Console, as described in [Update the engine connection parameters in the GUIs on page 636](#).
- On Windows operating systems, change the password of the IBM® Workload Scheduler account in Windows services, as described in [Windows - update Windows services on page 636](#).
- If you run jobs on Windows operating systems, change the password of the streamlogon user of the jobs, as described in [Change the IBM Workload Scheduler user definition on page 636](#).
- Run the following commands to ensure the previous steps were completed correctly:

```
optman ls
```

```
composer mo ws=@
```

For all other users of IBM Workload Scheduler, no action is required if their passwords change.



Note: After changing any password, restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

See the following table to determine if a change of password requires actions to be taken for a role on the different IBM Workload Scheduler components. Look up the role and the component and determine from the corresponding table cell where the changes must be made:

- If the cell contains a "✓", make the change on the system where the indicated component is running
- If the cell contains "MDM", make the change on the master domain manager to which the component belongs

Table 112. If and where password changes are required

Role	MDM	BKM	FTA
WebSphere Application Server Liberty user	✓	✓	
Database user	✓	✓	
Streamlogon user (Windows®)	✓	✓	MDM

For example, if you are the <TWS_user> (the instance owner) of a fault-tolerant agent, you need to implement the password change on the system where the fault-tolerant agent is installed, but if you are also the streamlogon user of jobs running on that system, the changes required for the new password must be applied at the master domain manager to which the fault-tolerant agent belongs.

Changing the WebSphere Application Server Liberty password

Procedure to modify the WebSphere Application Server Liberty password.

To modify the WebSphere Application Server Liberty password, update the `wauser_variables.xml` configuration file. This operation changes the password for the TWS user, which is stored in the configuration file. Ensure you also update the password in the `useropts` file, so that you can continue working with the command-line client. If you have several users using the command-line client, change the password of the TWS user in all `useropts` files (one for each user). For more information, see [Change password used by command-line clients to access the master domain manager on page 635](#).

1. The location of the file to be modified varies depending on whether you have already customized the template or not, as follows:

If you have no previous customizations defined in the configuration file,

edit the template located in the `templates` folder.

Templates for the master domain manager are stored in the following paths:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_home/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/templates`

Windows On Windows operating systems

`TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\templates`

Templates for the Dynamic Workload Console are stored in the following paths:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`DWC_home/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates`

Windows On Windows operating systems

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\templates`

If you have previous customizations defined in the configuration file,

edit the file located in the `overrides` folder, which is the file currently used by WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

The `wauser_variables.xml` file is located in

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/overrides`

Windows On Windows operating systems

`TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\overrides`

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides`

Windows On Windows operating systems

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides`

2. Copy the `wauser_variables.xml` file to a temporary directory.
3. Edit the file as necessary, specifying the new password.

The contents of the `wauser_variables.xml` file is as follows:

```
<server description="wauser_var">
  <variable name="user.twsuser.id" value="${wlpUser}"/>
  <variable name="user.twsuser.password" value="${wlpPassword}"/>
</server>
```

where:

user.twsuser.id

Is the WebSphere Application Server Liberty user ID.

user.twsuser.password

Is the new WebSphere Application Server Liberty password.

4. Optionally, create a backup copy of the configuration file in a different directory, if the file is already present.
5. Copy the `wauser_variables.xml` file to the `overrides` folder. Changes are effective immediately.
6. Update the PASSWORD in the `useropts` file on the following workstations:
 - on every command-line client that points to your workstation.
 - on every fault-tolerant agent in your environment that has an HTTP/HTTPS connection defined in `localopts` that points to your workstation. The HTTP/HTTPS connection is used to submit a predefined job or job stream.
 - in the engine connection parameters on every connected Dynamic Workload Console.

If you have more than one instance of IBM Workload Scheduler on a system, you might have implemented separate user options files to make separate connections. In this case, check the **useropts** key in the `localopts` file on each instance to determine the name of the specific `useropts` file for that instance.

Change password used by command-line clients to access the master domain manager

About this task

If you have changed the password of the WebSphere Application Server Liberty user that command-line clients use to connect to the master domain manager, the connection parameters must be updated.

Follow this procedure:

1. Identify all systems that have a command line client remote connection defined with the master domain manager
2. On these workstations, open the user options files. The user option file is located:

On Windows operating systems

```
C:\Users\<user>\.TWS\useropts_<user>
```

On Linux operating systems

```
/home/<user>/.TWS/useropts_<user>
```

If you have more than one instance of IBM Workload Scheduler on a system, you might have implemented separate user options files to make separate connections. In this case, check the **useropts** key in the `localopts` file on each instance to determine the name of the specific `useropts` file for that instance.

3. For each file, locate the password key (encrypted) and change its value to that of the new password in plain text, enclosed in double quotation marks. The password is saved in clear, but will be encrypted at first logon of the User ID.
4. Save the files.

Change password used by fault-tolerant agent systems to access the master domain manager (for conman)

About this task

If you have changed the password of the WebSphere Application Server Liberty user that is used by fault-tolerant agents with an HTTP or HTTPS connection defined in the local options that points to the master domain manager, the connection parameters must be updated.

Follow this procedure:

1. Identify all fault-tolerant agents with an HTTP or HTTPS connection defined in the local options that points to the master domain manager.
2. On these workstations, open the user options file `<Root_home>/.TWS/useropts`
3. Locate the password key (encrypted) and change its value to that of the new password in plain text, enclosed in double quotation marks. The password is saved in clear, but will be encrypted at first logon of the User ID.
4. Save the file.

Update the engine connection parameters in the GUIs

About this task

If you have changed the password of the WebSphere Application Server Liberty user that is used by the Dynamic Workload Console to connect to the distributed engine, the engine connection parameters must be updated, as follows:

1. On each instance of the Dynamic Workload Console locate the page where you modify the distributed engine connection parameters
2. Change the password and submit the page.

Windows™ - update Windows™ services

About this task

On Windows™, the *TWS_user* account is used to start the following services:

- IBM Token Service for *TWS_user*
- IBM Workload Scheduler for *TWS_user*

The password must be updated in the properties of these services, or they are not able to start at next reboot. This is done as follows:

1. Stop all IBM Workload Scheduler processes. See [Unlinking and stopping IBM Workload Scheduler on page 636](#) for details.
2. Restart all IBM Workload Scheduler processes using the StartUp command.

Change the IBM Workload Scheduler user definition

About this task

If the user ID is used within IBM Workload Scheduler to run jobs, follow this procedure:

1. Run the composer modify user command. The user details of the selected user are written to a temporary file, which is opened. For more information, see the topic about the modify command in *User's Guide and Reference*
2. Edit the password field so that it contains the new password value delimited by double quotation marks characters (").
3. Save the file, and the contents are added to the database.
4. To make the change immediately effective in the current plan, issue the conman altpass command. For more information, see the topic about the altpass command in *User's Guide and Reference*

Unlinking and stopping IBM Workload Scheduler

About this task

Before you perform an upgrade or uninstall, install a fix pack, or perform maintenance activities, ensure that all IBM Workload Scheduler processes and services are stopped. Follow these steps:

1. If you have jobs that are currently running on the workstation, wait for them to finish. To determine which are not finished, check for jobs that are in the `exec` state. When there are no jobs in this state, and you have allowed sufficient time for all events to be distributed in your network, you can continue with the rest of the procedure.
2. If the workstation that you want to stop is not the master domain manager, unlink the workstation by issuing the following command from the command line of the master domain manager:

```
conman "unlink workstationname;noask"
```

3. Stop WebSphere Application Server Liberty by using the `conman stopappserver` command (see [Starting and stopping the application server and appservman on page 656](#)).
4. **UNIX** All IBM Workload Scheduler processes on the workstation must then be stopped manually. From the command line, while logged on as the `<TWS_user>`, enter the following command:

```
conman "stop;wait"
```

5. From the command line, stop the netman process as follows:

UNIX®

Run the `conman "shut"` command.



Note: Do not use the UNIX® kill command to stop IBM Workload Scheduler processes.

Windows®

From the IBM Workload Scheduler home directory, run the `shutdown.cmd` command.

6. To stop dynamic agents, run the `ShutDownLwa` command.
7. To stop the SSM agent, perform the following steps:
 - **Windows** On Windows®, stop the service IBM Workload Scheduler SSM Agent (for `<<TWS_user>>`).
 - **UNIX** On UNIX®, run the `stopmon` command.

What to do next

To verify if there are services and processes still running:

UNIX®

Enter the command: `ps -u <TWS_user>` Verify that the following processes are not running: netman, mailman, batchman, writer, jobman, JOBMAN, stageman, logman, planman, monman, ssmagent.bin, and appservman.

Windows®

Run **Task Manager**, and verify that the following processes are not running: netman, mailman, batchman, writer, jobman, stageman, JOBMON, tokensrv, batchup, logman, planman, monman, ssmagent, and appservman.

Also, ensure that no system programs are accessing the directory or its sub-directories, including the command prompt and Windows® Explorer.

Changing the properties for the database

About this task

When you installed IBM Workload Scheduler, you supplied the database name, the server name, port, the host name of the database server, and other information.

If you need to change any of the database properties such as host name, port, instance owner, or database name, use the `datasource_db_vendor.xml` template file to reflect these changes in the application server on the master domain manager or on the Dynamic Workload Console.

If you want to change any of these properties, perform the following steps:

1. Change the configuration of the IBM Workload Scheduler application server so that it points correctly to the changed database configuration, as follows:
 - a. The location of the file to be modified varies depending on whether you have already customized the template or not, as follows:

If you have no previous customizations defined in the configuration file,

edit the template located in the `templates` folder.

Templates for the master domain manager are stored in the following paths:

UNIX

On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_home/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/templates`

Windows

On Windows operating systems

`TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\templates`

Templates for the Dynamic Workload Console are stored in the following paths:

UNIX

On UNIX operating systems

`DWC_home/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates`

Windows

On Windows operating systems

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\templates`

If you have previous customizations defined in the configuration file,

edit the file located in the `overrides` folder, which is the file currently used by WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

The `wauser_variables.xml` file is located in

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/overrides`

Windows On Windows operating systems

`TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\overrides`

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides`

Windows On Windows operating systems

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides`

- b. Copy the `datasource_db_vendor.xml` file to a temporary location.
- c. Modify the following properties in the file based on the values you changed in your database configuration:

db.serverName

The name or IP address of the database server

db.portNumber

The port number of the database server

db.databaseName

The database name

db.user

The database instance owner

db.password

The database user password. You can optionally encrypt the password, as described in the topic about the secure script in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

db.driver.path

The path to the JDBC drivers. IBM Workload Scheduler is supplied using the JDBC driver type 4 for DB2® and type 2 for Oracle. However, each can use the other driver type, if necessary. Software Support might ask you to change to this driver. This procedure must only be performed under the control of Software Support.

db.sslConnection

The setting for the SSL connection. `true` indicates that SSL connection is enabled, `false` indicates that SSL connection is disabled. .

- d. Browse to the `overrides` folder:

- e. Create a backup of the `datasource_db_vendor.xml`.
 - f. Replace the `datasource_db_vendor.xml` file with the file you edited. The changes are effective immediately.
2. On the master domain manager only, edit the file `CLIconfig.properties`, in the path `TWA_DATA_DIR//broker/config`, by updating the value for the property `com.ibm.tdwb.dao.rdbms.jdbcPath` to reflect the JDBC URL specified. The following is an example of a JDBC value:

```
database_type://hostname:port/dbName
```

3. On the master domain manager only, edit the file `DAOCommon.properties`, in the path `TWA_DATA_DIR//broker/config`, as follows:
 - In the first line specify the **rdbmsName** for all DBs.
 - For Oracle only, change all lines and specify the `TWS_Oracle_User`.
4. On the master domain manager only, edit the file `TwSConfig.properties`, in the path `TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/resources/properties/TwSConfig.properties`. If you are using MSSQL change the first line. For Oracle only, change all lines. Consider the following example:

```
com.ibm.tws.dao.rdbms.rdbmsName = ORACLE
com.ibm.tws.dao.rdbms.modelSchema = <TWS_Oracle_User>
com.ibm.tws.dao.rdbms.eventRuleSchema = <TWS_Oracle_User>
com.ibm.tws.dao.rdbms.logSchema = <TWS_Oracle_User>
```

Changing the workstation host name or IP address

When you change the host name, the IP address or both on the workstations of your IBM Workload Scheduler environment to have it function properly, you must report the changed value on:

- The WebSphere Application Server Liberty if the following components changed the host name, the IP address or both:
 - Master domain manager
 - Backup master domain manager
 - Connector or Z connector
 - Dynamic Workload Console

For more information, see [Reporting the changes in the WebSphere Application Server Liberty configuration file on page 641](#).

- The following components if the workstation where you installed the RDBMS changed the host name, the IP address or both:
 - Master domain manager
 - Backup master domain manager
 - Dynamic domain manager
 - Backup dynamic domain manager

For more information, see [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#).

- The workstation definitions if you installed the following components:
 - Master domain manager
 - Backup master domain manager

- Dynamic domain manager
- Backup dynamic domain manager
- Fault-tolerant agent and standard agent
- Domain manager

For more information, see [Reporting the changed host name or IP address in the workstation definition on page 642](#).

Reporting the changes in the WebSphere Application Server Liberty configuration file

About this task

If the host name or IP address is changed for the following components, then you must report the changed value in the WebSphere Application Server Liberty `host_variables.xml` configuration file:

- Master domain manager
- Backup master domain manager
- Dynamic domain manager
- Backup dynamic domain manager
- Dynamic Workload Console

1. Stop the WebSphere Application Server Liberty.
2. Obtain the changed host name, IP address, or both.
3. Verify that the value for the properties listed below were changed with the actual values:
 - Old Hostname
 - New Hostname
 - The host names for the specific port properties

If these values are different from the actual host name or IP address values, proceed with [Step 4 on page 641](#). If this values are not changed, skip the steps below.

4. Create a back up of and then modify the values in the `host_variables.xml` file located in

UNIX

On UNIX operating systems

```
TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/overrides
```

Windows

On Windows operating systems

```
TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\overrides
```

5. Propagate the changes to the interfaces as follows:

Address of the master domain manager changes

- On each fault-tolerant agent, dynamic agent, and standard agent you configured to connect to the **conman** command line, update the **host** parameter present in the "**Attributes for CLI connections**" section in the `localopts` file. Usually you have the **host** parameter defined in the `localopts` file of the workstations you use to submit predefined jobs and job streams (sbj and sbs commands).

- On every command-line client, update the **host** parameter present in the "**Attributes for CLI connections**" section in the `localopts` file.
- On the Dynamic Workload Console, update the engine connections.
- On all of the server components:
 - a. Run `JnextPlan`.
 - b. Update the value for the **Master.Switch.HostName** parameter in the `SwitchBroker.properties` file located in `TWA_DATA_DIR/broker/config/SwitchBroker.properties`.
 - c. From the broker command line, run `exportserverdata` to extract a list of URIs containing the old hostname to a text file, then run `importserverdata` providing the updated file in input to update the changed host name. For more information about the commands, see the section about using utility commands in the dynamic environment in *User's Guide and Reference*.

Address of the Dynamic Workload Console changes

Notify all the users of the new web address.

Reporting the changed host name or IP address in the workstation definition

About this task

Run this procedure if you changed the host name or IP address on the following components:

- Master domain manager
- Backup master domain manager
- Fault-tolerant agent and standard agent
- Domain manager

To modify the host name or the IP address on the workstation definition, perform the following steps:

1. Use **composer** or the Dynamic Workload Console to check the workstation definition stored in the database for the IBM Workload Scheduler instance installed on the workstation where the IP address or the host name changed.
2. Verify the **node** attribute contains the new host name or IP address. If this value is changed proceed with Step 3 on [page 642](#). If this value is not changed skip the steps below.
3. Change the value of the **node** parameter with the new value.
4. Refresh the new workstation definition into the plan. Do it immediately if you are changing the host name or the IP address of a master domain manager or a domain manager. If you are changing them on a workstation that is not a master domain manager or a domain manager you can wait the next scheduled plan generation to refresh your workstation definition in the Symphony file. In this case during this production day you cannot run jobs on this workstation. To generate the plan, perform the following steps:
 - a. Run **optman ls** and take note of the actual value of the **enCarryForward** parameter.
 - b. If this value is not set to **all**, run

```
optman chg cf=ALL
```

to set it to **all**

- c. Add the new workstation definition to the plan, by running:

```
JnextPlan -for 0000
```

- d. Reassign the original value to the **enCarryForward** parameter.

Reporting the changed host name or IP address of the dynamic workload broker server

About this task

The dynamic workload broker server is a component that IBM Workload Scheduler installs when you install the following components:

- Master domain manager
- Backup master domain manager
- Dynamic domain manager
- Backup dynamic domain manager

If you changed the host name or the IP address on the dynamic workload broker server, or if you installed a new one run the procedure described in [Reporting the changes in the WebSphere Application Server Liberty configuration file on page 641](#).

If you changed the host name or the IP address on a master domain manager or backup master domain manager and you ran the [Reporting the changes in the WebSphere Application Server Liberty configuration file on page 641](#) procedure, skip this section.

If you changed the host name or the IP address on the dynamic domain manager or backup dynamic domain manager you do not need to change the definition of your broker workstation (type **broker**), because the value of the **node** attribute is set to the *localhost* value to allow to switch between the dynamic workload broker server and its backup.

After you ran the procedure, propagate the changes to the dynamic agent and update the **ResourceAdvisorURL** property in the JobManager .ini file on each agent connected to that dynamic workload broker server, by performing the following steps:

1. Run the following command to stop the agent:

```
ShutDownLwa
```

2. Edit the JobManager .ini file and change the host name or the IP address in the **ResourceAdvisorURL** property.
3. Run the following command to start the agent:

```
StartUpLwa
```

Perform the following changes:

1. Open the JobDispatcherConfig.properties file and change the value of the **JDURL=https://host_name** property to reflect the new host name or IP address.
2. Open the CliConfig.properties file and change the value of the **ITDWBServerHost=/host_name** property to reflect the new host name or IP address.

3. Open the `ResourceAdvisorConfig.properties` file and change the value of the **ResourceAdvisorURL=https://
/host_name** property to reflect the new host name or IP address.
4. From the `<TWA_home>/TDWB/bin` directory, run the following command:

On Windows operating systems:

```
exportserverdata.bat
```

On UNIX and Linux operating systems:

```
exportserverdata.sh
```

This command extracts a list of URIs (Uniform Resource Identifier) of all the dynamic workload broker instances from the IBM Workload Scheduler database and copies them to a temporary file. By default, the list of URIs is saved to the `server.properties` file, located in the current directory.

5. Change all the entries that contain the old host name to reflect the new host name.
6. Place the file back in the database, by running the following command:

On Windows operating systems:

```
importserverdata.bat
```

On UNIX and Linux operating systems:

```
importserverdata.sh
```

7. Stop WebSphere Application Server Liberty, by running the following command:

```
stopAppServer
```

8. Start WebSphere Application Server Liberty, by running the following command:

```
startAppServer
```

Reporting the changed host name or IP address of the dynamic agent

About this task

If you changed the host name or the IP address on the workstation where you installed the dynamic agent, the changes are automatically reported stopping and starting the agent using the following commands:

1. To stop the agent:

```
ShutDownLwa
```

2. To start the agent:

```
StartupLwa
```



Note: Do not modify manually the value of the **node** parameter in the dynamic agent workstation definition.

Changing the security settings

This section describes how to modify the security settings of IBM Workload Scheduler.

About this task

A number of template files are available for customizing various security settings on the application server:

ssl_variables.xml

auth_basicRegistry_config.xml

File-based authentication

auth_IDS_config.xml

IBM® Directory Server

auth_OpenLDAP_config.xml

OpenLDAP

auth_OpenLDAP_config.xml

Windows Server Active Directory

For the procedure to customize the security settings, see the section about configuring a common LDAP for both the master and the console in *Planning and Installation Guide*.

For the settings related to SSL, see [Configuring SSL attributes on page 554](#). You can also change other settings, such as the active user registry or the local operating system ID and password.

- For more information about the procedure to make any changes to the WebSphere Application Server Liberty properties, see [Configuring IBM Workload Scheduler using templates on page 648](#).
- To determine which properties are to be changed, see:
 - [Configuring authentication on page 264](#), for information about the properties to be changed to modify your user registry configuration for user authentication.
 - [Customizing your RDBMS server on page 582](#), for information about the procedure to be performed when modifying your RDBMS server.
 - [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#), for information about changing the database properties such as database name, the server name, port, the host name of the database server.
 - [Changing key IBM Workload Scheduler passwords on page 631](#), for information about how to change key passwords.
- To change the text file of the current security properties, perform the following steps:
 1. Edit the text file and locate the properties you need to change.
 2. Make any required changes to the properties.

Do not change any other properties.

Managing the event processor

About this task

The only maintenance issue for the event processor is the management of the EIF event queue, cache.dat. The event queue is circular, with events being added at the end and removed from the beginning. However, if there is no room to write an event at the end of the queue it is written at the beginning, overwriting the event at the beginning of the queue.

To increase the size of the event processor queue, follow this procedure:

1. At the workstation running the event processor, browse to the following path:

Windows On Windows operating systems

```
<TWA_home>\TWS\stdlist\appserver\engineServer\temp\TWS\EIFListener
```

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

```
<TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/appserver/engineServer/temp/TWS/EIFListener
```

2. Edit the eif.temp1 file and locate the keyword:

```
BufEvtMaxSize
```

3. Increase the value of this keyword, according to your requirements.
4. Stop and restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty using the conman stopappserver and conman startappserver commands (see [Starting and stopping the application server and appservman on page 656](#)).

Automatically initializing IBM Workload Scheduler instances

On UNIX systems, you can automatically initialize IBM Workload Scheduler instances during operating system startup.

About this task

On UNIX™ systems, you can ensure that your IBM Workload Scheduler instances are automatically initialized during operating system startup.

For AIX® and some Linux™ operating systems that use a traditional **init** like System V, you can do this by adding an IBM Workload Scheduler service to the **init** process of your operating system. Use the sample start script `iwa_init_<installation user>` located in `TWA_home/TWS/config` and add it to the appropriate run level after customizing it as necessary.

For some Linux™ distributions that use systemd as the default initialization system, such as RedHat Enterprise Linux™ v7.0 and SUSE Linux™ Enterprise Server V12, a sample service file, `iwa.service`, is provided located in the path `TWA_home/TWS/config` that is already configured to support the automatic initialization of IBM Workload Scheduler instances at startup.

Perform the following steps:

For UNIX operating systems that use the traditional init system such as System V :

Configure the script and then register the service.

1. Create a copy of the `iwa_init_<installation user>` script based on your requirements. Provide the following information, depending on the operating system you use:

Required-Start

On Linux™ systems, specify the precondition services

Default-Start

On Linux™ systems, specify the required runlevels. For example, specify runlevels 2, 3, and 5.

2. Browse to the appropriate system-dependent folder, as follows:

Supported Linux™ operating systems

Save the script in the `/etc/init.d` folder and register the service using the `insserv -v script_name` command.

Supported AIX® operating systems

Save the script to the appropriate `rcrunlevel.d` folder. Rename the script according to the runlevel script definition. For example, `Ssequence_numberservice_name`, as in `S10iwa_init_<installation user>`.



Note: If you run this script on a master domain manager or on a backup master domain manager, the script has no effect on the database.

For more information about the `inittab`, `init.d`, `insserv`, and `init` commands, see the reference documentation for your operating system.

For Linux™ distributions that use systemd as the default initialization system:

This procedure uses the `iwa.service` sample service that is already customized to automatically initialize IBM Workload Scheduler instances at system startup.

1. Copy the sample service provided, `iwa.service`, located in the path `TWA_home/TWS/config` to the following path on the Linux™ system `/etc/systemd/system/`
2. To make systemd aware of the service, invoke the `systemctl daemon-reload` command.
3. Start the service submitting the following command:

```
systemctl start iwa.service
```

4. Verify the status by submitting the following command:

```
systemctl status iwa.service
```

5. Stop the service by submitting the following command:

```
systemctl stop iwa.service
```

6. Finally, enable the service so that it is activated by default when the system boots by submitting the following command:

```
systemctl enable iwa.service
```

Configuring IBM Workload Scheduler using templates

Starting from version 9.5, IBM Workload Scheduler has moved from WebSphere® Application Server to WebSphere Application Server Liberty Base. As a result, the utilities known as wastools have been replaced with a number of templates addressing widely used configurations.

You can now configure WebSphere Application Server Liberty to work with IBM Workload Scheduler using the templates provided or define your custom .xml files containing your own configuration settings. Templates are available for both the master domain manager and the Dynamic Workload Console.

See [Table 113: Correspondence between wastools and templates on page 649](#) to find the mapping between wastools and templates. The table indicates both the file containing the current configuration in use, as well as the template files available to modify the current configuration.

Templates for the master domain manager are stored in the following paths:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

TWA_home/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/templates

Windows On Windows operating systems

TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\templates

Templates for the Dynamic Workload Console are stored in the following paths:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

DWC_home/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates

Windows On Windows operating systems

DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\templates

When you edit the file with your customized settings for the master domain manager, move it to the following paths:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/overrides

Windows On Windows operating systems

TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\overrides

When you edit the file with your customized settings for the Dynamic Workload Console, move it to the following paths:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides

Windows On Windows operating systems

DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides



Note: Do not edit the files in the `templates` directory because they will be overwritten when upgrading to new version or fix pack.

To configure WebSphere Application Server Liberty to work with IBM Workload Scheduler, use the template files provided in the `templates` folder or create your custom `.xml` files containing your configuration settings. WebSphere Application Server Liberty retrieves the `.xml` files from the `overrides` folder and applies the configuration settings defined in each file. The file name is irrelevant, because WebSphere Application Server Liberty analyzes each `.xml` file for its contents.

The template files provided refer to commonly used configurations. If you want to implement different configurations, for example a custom authorization mechanism, you can create a custom `.xml` file, containing your configuration settings in this section:

```
<server description="My custom configuration description">

</server>
```

Ensure you remove any obsolete `.xml` files, to prevent WebSphere Application Server Liberty from parsing unwanted files.

If you use the provided templates, ensure you follow this procedure:

1. Copy the template file from the `templates` folder to a working folder.
2. Edit the template file in the working folder with the desired configuration.
3. Optionally, create a backup copy of the relevant configuration file present in the `overrides` directory in a different directory. Ensure you do not copy the backup file in the path where the template files are located.
4. Copy the updated template file to the `overrides` folder. Maintaining the original folder structure is not required.
5. Changes are effective immediately.

Table 113. Correspondence between wastools and templates

Function	Current configuration file in use	Template file for customization	wastool
Datasource settings	<code>overrides/datasource.xml</code>	<code>templates/datasources/datasource_vendor.xml</code>	<code>changeDataSourceProperties</code> <code>showDataSourceProperties</code>
Hostname and port settings	• <code>overrides/host_variables.xml</code> • <code>overrides/ports_variables.xml</code>	• Not applicable. The <code>host_variables.xml</code> file is very simple and therefore is	<code>changeHostProperties</code> <code>showHostProperties</code>

Table 113. Correspondence between wastools and templates (continued)

Function	Current configuration file in use	Template file for customization	wastool
		located only in the overrides folder. • templates/ports_variables.xml	
Authentication settings	overrides/wauser_variables.xml	Not applicable. The wauser_variables.xml file is very simple and therefore is located only in the overrides folder.	changePassword
Trace settings	Traces are disabled by default, so no file is present in the overrides folder. Copy the trace.xml file to the overrides folder to enable traces.	templates/trace.xml	changeTraceProperties
z/OS engine settings for the Dynamic Workload Console	overrides/connectionFactory.xml	zconnector/connectionFactory.xml	createZosEngine (Dynamic Workload Console installation only)
SSL connections and certificates	- overrides/authentication_config.xml - overrides/ssl_variables.xml	File-based: authentication/auth_basicRegistry_config.xml IBM® Directory Server: authentication/auth_IDS_config.xml OpenLDAP: authentication/auth_OpenLDAP_config.xml	showSecurityProperties changeSecurityProperties

Table 113. Correspondence between wastools and templates (continued)

Function	Current configuration file in use	Template file for customization	wastool
		Microsoft Server Active Directory: authentication/auth_AD_config.xml OpenID: authentication/openid_connect.xml ssl_variables.xml	
Json Web Token (JWT) management	overrides/jwt_variables.xml	Not applicable	Not applicable

Templates are divided into the following directories:

defaults (files used by the installation process)

- ports_config.xml
- ports_variables.xml
- ssl_config.xml
- ssl_variables.xml

overrides (configuration files)

- authentication_config.xml
- connectionFactory.xml (Dynamic Workload Console installation only)
- datasource.xml
- host_variables.xml
- jvm.options
- ports_variables.xml
- ssl_variables.xml
- wauser_variables.xml

templates (templates available for customization)

authentication

- auth_AD_config.xml
- auth_basicRegistry_config.xml

- auth_IDS_config.xml
- auth_OpenLDAP_config.xml
- openid_connect.xml

datasources (one file for each supported database)

- datasource_<database_vendor>.xml

zconnectors (Dynamic Workload Console installation only)

- connectionFactory.xml
- ports_variables.xml
- ssl_variables.xml
- trace.xml
- adminCenter.xml (Not recommended for production environment)



Note: Enabling the AdminCenter feature on WebSphere Application Server Liberty could affect the runtime performance of the Application Server. Thus, it is suggested to enable it only if you are planning to use it. For more information about AdminCenter feature, see [Administering Liberty using Admin Center](#).

For information about how to change database properties, see [Changing the properties for the database on page 638](#).

For information about authentication settings, see [Configuring authentication on page 264](#).

For information about configuring a z/OS engine, see the section about defining az/OS engine in the Z connector in *IBM Z Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*.

For information about logs and traces, see the section about logging and tracing in *Troubleshooting Guide*.

WebSphere Application Server Liberty tasks

The tasks contained in this chapter might need to be performed for improving WebSphere Application Server Liberty performance.

Application server - starting and stopping

Use the startAppServer and stopAppServer commands or the equivalent from the Dynamic Workload Console to start or stop the WebSphere Application Server Liberty. For a description of these commands, see *IBM Workload Scheduler: User's Guide and Reference*.

These commands also stop appservman, the service that monitors and optionally restarts WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

If you do not want to stop appservman, you can issue startAppServer or stopAppServer, supplying the `-direct` argument. These scripts are located in `TWA_home/appservertools`.

The complete syntax of startAppServer and stopAppServer is as follows:

UNIX UNIX™

Start the application server

```
./startAppServer.sh [-direct]
```

Stop the application server

```
./stopAppServer.sh [-direct]
```



Note: If your WebSphere Application Server Liberty is installed for the Dynamic Workload Console, use the following syntax:

```
./stopAppServer.sh [-direct]
                  [-user <user_ID>]
                  [-password <password>]
```

The user ID and password are optional only if you have specified them in the `soap.client.props` file located in the properties directory of the WebSphere Application Server Liberty profile. Unlike the master domain manager installation, when you install the Dynamic Workload Console the `soap.client.props` file is not automatically customized with these credentials.

Windows Windows™

Start the application server

```
startAppServer.bat [-direct]
```

Stop the application server

```
stopAppServer.bat [-direct]
                  [-wlpHome <installation_directory>]
                  [-options <parameters>]]
```

z/OS z/OS

Start the application server

```
./startAppServer.sh [-direct]
```

Stop the application server

```
./stopAppServer.sh [-direct]
```

where the arguments are as follows:

–direct

Optionally starts or stops the application server without starting or stopping the application server monitor appservman.

For example, you might use this after changing some configuration parameters. By stopping WebSphere Application Server Liberty without stopping appservman, the latter will immediately restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty, using the new configuration properties.

UNIX

This argument is mandatory on UNIX™ when the product components are not integrated.

–options *parameters*

Optionally supplies parameters to the WebSphere Application Server Liberty startServer or stopServer commands. See the WebSphere Application Server Liberty documentation for details.

–wlpHome *installation_directory*

Defines the WebSphere Application Server Liberty installation directory, if it is not the default value.

Application server - automatic restart after failure

If you experience any problems with the application server failing, a service is available that not only monitors its status, but can also restart it automatically in the event of failure. The service is called appservman, and it is enabled and controlled by the local options on the computer where the application server is running.

The following sections describe the service, how it works, and how it is controlled:

- [Appservman - how it works on page 654](#)
- [Controlling appservman on page 655](#)
- [Starting and stopping the application server and appservman on page 656](#)
- [Monitoring the application server status on page 656](#)
- [Obtaining information about application server failures on page 657](#)
- [Events created by appservman on page 657](#)

Appservman - how it works

Appservman is a service that starts, stops and monitors the application server. It also optionally restarts the application server in the event that the latter fails. Appservman can be controlled not just from nodes running the application server, but also from any other node running conman.

It is launched as a service by netman when starting IBM Workload Scheduler, and it itself then launches the application server. Netman also launches it when the conman startappserver command is run.

Appservman is stopped when IBM Workload Scheduler is shut down. In addition, Netman stops both the application server and appservman when you use the conman stopappserver command, or, on Windows™ only, when you issue the Shutdown – appsrv command.

While it is running `appservman` monitors the availability of the application server, sending events that report the status of the application server. If the automatic restart facility is enabled, and the application server fails, the service determines from the restart policy indicated in the `localopts` options if it is to restart the application server. If the policy permits, it will restart the application server, and send events to report its actions.

Using the `startappserver` and `stopappserver` commands to stop the application server and `appservman`.

Controlling `appservman`

`Appservman` is controlled by the following local options (in the `localopts` file):

Appserver auto restart

Determines if the automatic restart facility is enabled.

The default is *yes*. To disable the option set it to *no*.

Appserver check interval

Determines how frequently the service checks on the status of the application server. You should not set this value to less than the typical time it takes to start the application server on the computer.

The default is every 3 minutes.

Appserver min restart time

Determines the minimum time that must elapse between failures of the application server for the automatic restart to work. This option stops `appservman` from immediately restarting the application server if it fails on initial startup or when being restarted.

The default is 2 minutes.

Appserver max restarts

Determines the maximum number of times that `appservman` will automatically restart the application server within a time frame determined by you (`Appserver count reset interval`).

The default is 5 restarts.

Appserver count reset interval

Determines the time frame for the maximum number of restarts (`Appserver max restarts`).

The default is 24 hours.

How to use the options

The default settings are a good starting point. Follow the indications below if you are not satisfied that the settings are maintaining the correct availability of the application server:

- If the application server is not restarting after failure, check the following:
 - That the Appserver auto restart is set to `yes`.
 - That the Appserver check interval is not set to too high a value. For example, if this value is set to 50 minutes, instead of the default 3, an early failure of the application server might wait 45 minutes before being restarted.
 - That Appserver min restart time is sufficient for the application server to fully restart. If, when the server checks the status of the application server, it finds that the application server is still starting up, in some circumstances it is not able to distinguish the starting-up state from the failed state, will report it as failed, and try and restart it again. With the same result. This will continue until Appserver max restarts is exceeded. If this is the case, make Appserver min restart time larger.
- If the application server is failing infrequently, but after several failures is not restarting, set the Appserver max restarts option to a higher value or the Appserver count reset interval to a lower value, or both. In this case it might be advantageous to study the pattern of failures and tailor these options to give you the required availability

Starting and stopping the application server and appservman

If you need to stop and restart WebSphere Application Server Liberty, for example to implement a change in the application server configuration, use the following `conman` commands:

`conman stopappserver[domain!]workstation [;wait]`

This command stops the application server and appservman. You can optionally stop the application server on a remote workstation. The optional `;wait` parameter tells `conman` to suspend processing until the command reports that both the application server and the service have stopped.

`conman startappserver[domain!]workstation [;wait]`

This command starts the application server and appservman. You can optionally start the application server on a remote workstation. The optional `;wait` parameter tells `conman` to suspend processing until the command reports that both the application server and the service are up and running.

To stop and start the application server without stopping appservman, see [Application server - starting and stopping on page 652](#).

Monitoring the application server status

To see the current status of the application server at any time view the `STATE` field in the workstation details.

This field contains a string of characters that provide information about the statuses of objects and processes on the workstation. The state of the application server is a one-character flag in this string, which has one of the following values if the application server is installed:

[A|R]

where:

A

WebSphere Application Server Liberty is running.

R

WebSphere Application Server Liberty is restarting.

If WebSphere Application Server Liberty is down or if it was not installed, neither value of the flag is present in the STATE entry.

Obtaining information about application server failures

Appservman does not provide information about why the application server has failed. To obtain this information, look in the application server log files (see the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Troubleshooting Guide*).

Events created by appservman

Appservman sends an event called *ApplicationServerStatusChanged* from the `TWSObjectsMonitor` provider to the configured event monitoring process every time the status of the application server changes.

Application server - encrypting the profile properties files

For more information about encrypting passwords in WebSphere Application Server Liberty profile properties files, see the related documentation, for example [securityUtility command](#).

This utility requires the JAVA_HOME environment variable to be set. If you do not have Java installed, you can optionally use the Java version provided with the product and available in:

IBM® Workload Scheduler

```
<INST_DIR>/TWS/JavaExt/jre/jre
```

Dynamic Workload Console

```
<DWC_INST_DIR>/java/jre/bin
```

Application server - configuration files backup and restore

UNIX

On UNIX operating systems, all configuration files are stored in the `<TWA_DATA_DIR>/usr` and `<DWC_DATA_dir>/usr`.

Windows

On Windows operating systems, backup the files in `<TWA_home>\usr` and `<DWC_home>\usr`.

Application server - changing the host name or TCP/IP ports

To modify the host name of the computer where the application server is installed, or the TCP/IP ports it uses, use the following templates:

host_variables.xml

Specify the hostname in the `variable name` property.

ports_variable.xml

Edit the following properties as required:

- host.http.port
- host.https.port
- host.bootstrap.port
- host.bootstrap.port.sec

To disable a port, set its value to -1.

Edit the files as required using the following basic procedure:

1. Copy the template file from the `templates` folder to a working folder.
2. Edit the template file in the working folder with the desired configuration.
3. Optionally, create a backup copy of the relevant configuration file present in the `overrides` directory in a different directory. Ensure you do not copy the backup file in the path where the template files are located.
4. Copy the updated template file to the `overrides` folder. Maintaining the original folder structure is not required.
5. Changes are effective immediately.

For more information about the procedure, see [Configuring IBM Workload Scheduler using templates on page 648](#). For more information about WebSphere® Liberty configuration, see the related documentation, for example [HTTP Endpoint \(httpEndpoint\)](#) and [Configuring an httpEndpoint to use an SSL configuration](#).

Application server - changing the trace properties

To modify the trace properties, modify the `trace.xml` template as necessary.

Templates for the master domain manager are stored in the following paths:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`TWA_home/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/templates`

Windows On Windows operating systems

`TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\templates`

Templates for the Dynamic Workload Console are stored in the following paths:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`DWC_home/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/templates`

Windows On Windows operating systems

`DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\templates`

When you edit the file with your customized settings for the master domain manager, move it to the following paths:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

TWA_DATA_DIR/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/overrides

Windows On Windows operating systems

TWA_home\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\overrides

When you edit the file with your customized settings for the Dynamic Workload Console, move it to the following paths:

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides

Windows On Windows operating systems

DWC_home\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides

To modify the `trace.xml` template, follow this procedure:

1. Copy the template file from the `templates` folder to a working folder.
2. Edit the template file in the working folder with the desired configuration.
3. Optionally, create a backup copy of the relevant configuration file present in the `overrides` directory in a different directory. Ensure you do not copy the backup file in the path where the template files are located.
4. Copy the updated template file to the `overrides` folder. Maintaining the original folder structure is not required.
5. Changes are effective immediately.

Chapter 9. Administering an IBM i dynamic environment

On overview on how to administer the IBM Workload Scheduler IBM i dynamic environment.

To begin scheduling jobs with advanced options on IBM i agents, the agents must be configured.

Configuring the agent on IBM i systems

An overview on how to configure the agent on IBM i systems.

The configuration settings of the agent are contained in the `JobManager.ini` file and in the `JobManagerGW.ini` file (for the path of these files, see the section about installation paths in *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation*).

The configuration files are made up of many different sections. Each section name is enclosed between square brackets and each section includes a sequence of `variable = value` statements.

You can customize properties for the following:

- Log properties
- Trace properties when the agent is stopped. You can also customize traces when the agent is running using the procedure described in [Configuring trace properties when the agent is running on page 78](#).
- Native job executor
- Java™ job executor
- Resource advisor agent
- System scanner

On IBM i systems, the log messages are written in the following file:

```
TWA_DATA_DIR>/stdlist/JM/JobManager_message.log
```

On IBM i systems, the trace messages are written in the following files:

```
<TWA_DATA_DIR>/TWS/stdlist/JM/ITA_trace.log  
<TWA_DATA_DIR>/TWS/stdlist/JM/JobManager_trace.log  
<TWA_DATA_DIR>/TWS/stdlist/JM/javaExecutor0.log
```

Not all the properties in the `JobManager.ini` file and in the `JobManagerGW.ini` file can be customized. For a list of the configurable properties, see the following sections:

- [Configuring log message properties \[JobManager.Logging.cclog\] on page 75](#).
- [Configuring trace properties when the agent is stopped \[JobManager.Logging.cclog\] on page 77](#).
- [Configuring common launchers properties \[Launchers\] on page 81](#).
- [Configuring properties of the native job launcher \[NativeJobLauncher\] on page 83](#).
- [Configuring properties of the Java job launcher \[JavaJobLauncher\] on page 86](#).
- [Configuring properties of the Resource advisor agent \[ResourceAdvisorAgent\] on page 87](#).
- [Configuring properties of the System scanner \[SystemScanner\] on page 89](#)



Note: In the `JobManager.ini` file and in the `JobManagerGW.ini` file you must refer to Java 64 bit version.

Configuring log message properties [JobManager.Logging.cclog]

About this task

To configure the logs, edit the [JobManager.Logging.cclog] section in the `JobManager.ini` file. This procedure requires that you stop and restart the IBM Workload Scheduler agent

The section containing the log properties is named:

```
[JobManager.Logging.cclog]
```

You can change the following properties:

JobManager.loggerhd.fileName

The name of the file where messages are to be logged. the default value is

Windows On Windows operating systems

`TWA_home\stdlist\JM\JobManager_message.log`

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

`$(TWA_DATA_DIR)/stdlist/JM/JobManager_message.log`

JobManager.loggerhd.maxFileBytes

The maximum size that the log file can reach. The default is **1024000** bytes.

JobManager.loggerhd.maxFiles

The maximum number of log files that can be stored. The default is **3**.

JobManager.loggerhd.fileEncoding

By default, log files for the agent are coded in UTF-8 format. If you want to produce the log in a different format, add this property and specify the required codepage.

JobManager.loggerfl.level

The amount of information to be provided in the logs. The value ranges from 3000 to 7000. Smaller numbers correspond to more detailed logs. The default is **3000**.

JobManager.ffdc.maxDiskSpace

Exceeding this maximum disk space, log files collected by the first failure data capture mechanism are removed, beginning with the oldest files first.

JobManager.ffdc.baseDir

The directory to which log and trace files collected by the ffdc tool are copied. The default directory is

Windows On Windows operating systems

```
<TWA_home>\stdlist\JM\JOBMANAGER-FFDC
```

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

```
$(TWA_DATA_DIR)/stdlist/JM/JOBMANAGER-FFDC
```

JobManager.ffdc.filesToCopy

Log and trace files (JobManager_message.log and JobManager_trace.log) collected by the ffdc tool located in <TWA_home>\TWS\stdlist\JM. The files are available in the following paths:

Windows On Windows operating systems

- TWA_home\TWS\stdlist\JM\JobManager_message.log
- TWA_home\TWS\stdlist\JM\JobManager_trace.log

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

- \$(TWA_DATA_DIR)/stdlist/JM/JobManager_message.log
- \$(TWA_DATA_DIR)/stdlist/JM/JobManager_trace.log

When a message is logged (JobManager.ffdc.triggerFilter = JobManager.msgIdFilter) that has an ID that matches the pattern "AWSITA*E" (JobManager.msgIdFilter.msgIds = AWSITA*E), which corresponds to all error messages, then the log and trace files (JobManager.ffdc.filesToCopy = "/opt/IBM/TWA_<TWS_user>/TWS/stdlist/JM/JobManager_message.log" "/opt/IBM/TWA_<TWS_user>/TWS/stdlist/JM/JobManager_trace.log") are copied (JobManager.ffdc.className = ccg_ffdc_filecopy_handler) to the directory JOBMANAGER-FFDC (JobManager.ffdc.baseDir = /opt/IBM/TWA_<TWS_user>/TWS/stdlist/JM/JOBMANAGER-FFDC). If the files copied exceed 10 MB (JobManager.ffdc.maxDiskSpace = 10000000), then the oldest files are removed first (JobManager.ffdc.quotaPolicy = QUOTA_AUTODELETE).

Configuring trace properties when the agent is stopped [JobManager.Logging.cclog]

How to configure the trace properties when the agent is stopped.

To configure the trace properties when the agent is stopped, edit the [JobManager.Logging] section in the JobManager.ini file and then restart the IBM Workload Scheduler agent.

The section containing the trace properties is named:

```
[JobManager.Logging.cclog]
```

You can change the following properties:

JobManager.trhd.fileName

The name of the trace file. the default path is as follows:

Windows On Windows operating systems

TWA_home/TWS/stdlist/JM/JobManager_trace.log

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

\$(TWA_DATA_DIR)/stdlist/JM/JobManager_trace.log

JobManager.trhd.maxFileBytes

The maximum size that the trace file can reach. The default is 10240000 bytes.

JobManager.trhd.maxFiles

The maximum number of trace files that can be stored. The default is 5.

JobManager.trfl.level

Determines the type of trace messages that are logged. Change this value to trace more or fewer events, as appropriate, or on request from IBM Software Support. Valid values are:

DEBUG_MAX

Maximum tracing. Every trace message in the code is written to the trace logs.

INFO

All *informational*, *warning*, *error* and *critical* trace messages are written to the trace. The default value.

WARNING

All *warning*, *error* and *critical* trace messages are written to the trace.

ERROR

All *error* and *critical* trace messages are written to the trace.

CRITICAL

Only messages which cause the agent to stop are written to the trace.

The output trace (JobManager_trace.log) is provided in XML format.

After installing the z-centric agent or dynamic agent on Windows 2012, the JobManager_trace.log might not be created. In this case, perform the following procedure:

1. Stop the agent.
2. Create a backup copy of JobManager.ini, and edit the original file by changing the row:

```
JobManager.trhd.className = ccg_multiproc_filehandler
```

to

```
JobManager.trhd.className = ccg_filehandler
```

3. Restart the agent.

Configuring trace properties when the agent is running

Use the **twstrace** command to set the trace on the agent when it is running.

Using the **twstrace** command, you can perform the following actions on the agent when it is running:

- [See command usage and verify version on page 78.](#)
- [Enable or disable trace on page 79.](#)
- Set the traces to a specific level, specify the number of trace files you want to create, and the maximum size of each trace file. See [Set trace information on page 79.](#)
- [Show trace information on page 79.](#)
- Collect trace files, message files, and configuration files in a compressed file using the command line. See [Collect trace information on page 80.](#)
- Collect trace files, message files, and configuration files in a compressed file using the Dynamic Workload Console. See the section about retrieving agent traces from the Dynamic Workload Console in *Troubleshooting Guide*.

You can also configure the traces when the agent is not running by editing the [JobManager.Logging] section in the `JobManager.ini` file as described in [Configuring the agent on page 71](#). This procedure requires that you stop and restart the agent.

twstrace command

Use the **twstrace** command to configure traces, and collect logs, traces, and configuration files (ita.ini and jobManager.ini) for agents. You collect all the information in a compressed file when it is running without stopping and restarting it.

See command usage and verify version

To see the command usage and options, use the following syntax.

Syntax

twstrace -u | -v

Parameters

-u

Shows the command usage.

-v

Shows the command version.

Enable or disable trace

To set the trace to the maximum or minimum level, use the following syntax.

Syntax

twstrace -enable | -disable

Parameters

-enable

Sets the trace to the maximum level. The maximum level is **1000**.

-disable

Sets the trace to the minimum level. The minimum level is **3000**.

Set trace information

To set the trace to a specific level, specify the number of trace files you want to create, and the maximum size the trace files can reach, use the following syntax.

Syntax

```
twstrace [ -level <level_number> ] [ -maxFiles <files_number> ] [ -maxFileBytes <bytes_number> ]
```

Parameters

-level <level_number>

Sets the trace level. Specify a value in the range from 1000 to 3000, which is also the default value. Note that if you set this parameter to 3000, you have the lowest verbosity level and the fewest trace messages. To have a better trace level, with the most verbose trace messages and the maximum trace level, set it to **1000**.

-maxFiles <files_number>

Specify the number of trace files you want to create.

-maxFileBytes <bytes_number>

Set the maximum size in bytes that the trace files can reach. The default is **1024000** bytes.

Show trace information

To display the current trace level, the number of trace files, and the maximum size the trace files can reach, use the following syntax.

Syntax

```
twstrace -level | -maxFiles | -maxFileBytes
```

Parameters

-level

See the trace level you set.

-maxFiles

See the number of trace files you create.

-maxFileBytes

See the maximum size you set for each trace file

Example

Sample

The example shows the information you receive when you run the following command:

```
twstrace -level -maxFiles -maxFileBytes

AWSITA176I The trace properties are: level="1000",
max files="3", file size="1024000".
```

Collect trace information

To collect the trace files, the message files, and the configuration files in a compressed file, use the following syntax.

Syntax

```
twstrace -getLogs [ -zipFile <compressed_file_name> ] [ -host <host_name> ] [ -protocol {http | https} ] [ -port <port_number> ] [ -iniFile <ini_file_name> ]
```

Parameters

-zipFile <compressed_file_name>

Specify the name of the compressed file that contains all the information, that is logs, traces, and configuration files (ita.ini and jobManager.ini) for the agent. The default is **logs.zip**.

-host <host_name>

Specify the host name or the IP address of the agent for which you want to collect the trace. The default is **localhost**.

-protocol http|https

Specify the protocol of the agent for which you are collecting the trace. The default is the protocol specified in the **.ini** file of the agent.

-port <port_number>

Specify the port of the agent. The default is the port number of the agent where you are running the command line.

-iniFile <ini_file_name>

Specify the name of the **.ini** file that contains the SSL configuration of the agent for which you want to collect the traces. If you are collecting the traces for a remote agent for which you customized the security certificates, you must import the certificate on the local agent and specify the name of the **.ini** file that contains this configuration. To do this, perform the following actions:

1. Extract the certificate from the keystore of the remote agent.
2. Import the certificate in a local agent keystore. You can create an ad hoc keystore whose name must be **TWSClientKeyStore.kdb**.
3. Create an **.ini** file in which you specify:

- **0** in the **tcp_port** property as follows:

```
tcp_port=0
```

- The port of the remote agent in the **ssl_port** property as follows:

```
ssl_port=<ssl_port>
```

- The path to the keystore you created in Step 2 on page 666 in the **key_repository_path** property as follows:

```
key_repository_path=<local_agent_keystore_path>
```

Configuring common launchers properties [Launchers]

About this task

In the `JobManager.ini` file, the section containing the properties common to the different launchers (or executors) is named:

```
[Launchers]
```

The following properties are available:

BaseDir

The installation path of the IBM Workload Scheduler agent. Do not modify this value.

CommandHandlerMinThreads

Indicates the maximum number of commands that can be run on the agent concurrently. Limits to the number of jobs vary depending on the resources of your workstation, however consider that operations on comdhandler are usually short. The default is **20**. Usually, there is no need to modify this setting, even if you plan a very high workload on the agent. You might want to change it if many commands are run concurrently on the agent, for example, many concurrent requests to retrieve job logs.

CommandHandlerMaxThreads

Indicates the maximum number of commands that can be run on the agent concurrently. Limits to the number of jobs vary depending on the resources of your workstation, however consider that operations on comdhandler are usually short. The default is **100**. Usually, there is no need to modify this setting, even if you plan a very high workload on the agent. You might want to change it if many commands are run concurrently on the agent, for example, many concurrent requests to retrieve job logs.

CpaHeartBeatTimeSeconds

The polling interval in seconds used to verify if the **agent** process is still up and running. If the agent process is inactive the product stops also the **JobManager** process. The default is **30**. Modify only if you use dynamic pools with CPU-based requirements or optimization policies. With a lower value, the agent reacts quickly to CPU modifications, but this might cause unstable values in case of CPU spikes. Lower values causes a higher use of resources on the agent.

DirectoryPermissions

The access rights assigned to the agent for creating directories when running jobs. The default is **0755**. Supported values are UNIX-format entries in hexadecimal notation.

DownloadDir

The name of the directory where the fix pack installation package or upgrade elmage for IBM Workload Scheduler fault-tolerant agents or dynamic agents is downloaded during the centralized agent update process. If not specified, the following default directory is used:

On Windows operating systems:

`TWA_home\TWS\stdlist\JM\download`

On UNIX operating systems:

`TWA_DATA_DIR/TWS/stdlist/JM/download`

The centralized agent update process does not apply to z-centric agents.

ExecutorsMaxThreads

Specifies the maximum number of jobs the dynamic agent can run concurrently. For example, to allow the dynamic agent to run a maximum of 500 jobs concurrently, set this parameter to **500**. The default is **400**.

ExecutorsMinThreads

Specifies the minimum number of jobs the dynamic agent can run concurrently. For example, to allow the dynamic agent to run a minimum of 500 jobs concurrently, set this parameter to **500**. The default is **38**. Modify if the number of expected concurrent jobs is much higher than 38. The agent dynamically allocates more threads if necessary, until it reaches the value specified in **ExecutorsMaxThreads**.

FilePermissions

The access rights assigned to the agent for creating files when running jobs. The default is **0755**. Supported values are UNIX-format entries in hexadecimal notation.

MaxAge

The number of days that job logs are kept (in path `TWA_home/TWS/stdlist/JM`) before being deleted. The default is **30**. Possible values range from a minimum of 1 day.

MaxMetricsSizeKBytes

The maximum combined size in kilobytes of both metrics and output properties. This property is not present by default in the `JobManager.ini` file, but can be manually added to help optimize CPU and disk space usage. If you encounter a message similar to the one below, configuring this property might be beneficial:

```
AWSITA447E Failed to add the value for the specified metric or property:
storage capacity for metrics and properties is insufficient.
```

If this property is not present in the `JobManager.ini` file, the default value is 16,384 KB.

NotifierMaxThreads

Notifier threads are in charge of notifying the dynamic workload broker of each status change in a job. This parameter specifies the maximum number of job status changes that can be notified to the dynamic workload broker.

NotifierMinThreads

Notifier threads are in charge of notifying the dynamic workload broker of each status change in a job. This parameter specifies the minimum number of job status changes that can be notified to the dynamic workload broker. The default value is **3**. Modify this parameters only in case of unexpected errors and after consulting with software support team.

SpoolDir

The path to the folder containing the jobstore and outputs. The default is:

Windows On Windows operating systems

TWA_home/TWS/stdlist/JM

UNIX On UNIX operating systems

\$(TWA_DATA_DIR/stdlist/JM

StackSizeBytes

The size of the operating system stack in bytes. The default is **DEFAULT**, meaning that the **agent** uses the default value for the operating system. Do not modify this parameter unless instructed to do so by the software support team. Incorrect values can cause the agent to crash.

Configuring properties of the native job launcher [NativeJobLauncher]

About this task

In the `JobManager.ini` file, the section containing the properties of the native job launcher is named:

```
[NativeJobLauncher]
```

You can change the following properties:

AllowRoot

Applies to UNIX™ systems only. Specifies if the root user can run jobs on the agent. It can be `true` or `false`. The default is `false`. This property does not apply to IBM i, use the `AllowQSECOFR` option instead

AllowQSECOFR

Applies to IBM i systems only. Specifies if QSECOFR user can run jobs on the agent. It can be `true` or `false`. The default is `true`. Add a line like `AllowQSECOFR = false` to the `JobManager.ini` file to deny job execution to QSECOFR.

CheckExec

If `true`, before launching the job, the agent checks both the availability and the execution rights of the binary file. The default is `true`.

DefaultWorkingDir

Specifies the working directory of native jobs. You can also specify the value for the working directory when creating or editing the job definition in the Graphical Designer. When specified in the Graphical Designer, this

value overrides the value specified for the **DefaultWorkingDir** property. If you do not specify any working directories, the `<TWS_home>\bin` directory is used.

JobUnspecifiedInteractive

Applies to Windows™ operating systems only. Specifies if native jobs are to be launched in interactive mode. It can be `true` or `false`. The default is `false`.

KeepCommandTraces

Set to `true` to store the traces of the method invocation for actions performed on a job definition, for example, when selecting from a picklist. These files are stored in the path `/opt/IBM/TWA_<TWS_user>/TWS/stdlist/JM/r3batch_cmd_exec`. The default setting is `false`.

KeepJobCommandTraces

Set to `true` to store the traces of the method invocation for actions performed on a job instance, for example, viewing a spool list. These files are stored in the `.zip` file of the job instance. The default setting is `true`.

LoadProfile

Applies to agents on Windows servers only. Specifies if the user profile is to be loaded. It can be `true` or `false`. The default is `true`.

MonitorQueueName

Specifies the name of the queue where the IBM i jobs are monitored. If you do not specify this property, the default queue (QBATCH) is used.

PortMax

The maximum range of the port numbers used by the task launcher to communicate with the Job Manager. The default is 0, meaning that the operating system assigns the port automatically.

PortMin

The minimum range of the port numbers used by the task launcher to communicate with the Job Manager. The default is 0, meaning that the operating system assigns the port automatically.

PostJobExecScriptPathName

The fully qualified path of the script file that you want to run when the job completes. By default, this property is not present in the `JobManager.ini` file. If you do not specify any file path or the script file doesn't exist, no action is taken.

This property applies to dynamic agent and z/OS agent. For details about running a script when a job completes, see *User's Guide and Reference*.

PromotedNice

Used in workload service assurance. This property is not supported on the Agent for z/OS.

For UNIX and Linux operating systems only, assigns the priority value to a critical job that needs to be promoted so that the operating system processes it before others. Applies to critical jobs or predecessors that need to be promoted so that they can start at their critical start time.

Boundary values vary depending upon each specific platform, but generally lower values correspond to higher priority levels and vice versa. The default is -1.

Be aware that:

- The promotion process is effective with negative values only. If you set a positive value, the system runs it with the -1 default value.
- An out of range value (for example -200), prompts the operating system to automatically promote the jobs with the lowest allowed nice value.
- Overusing the promotion mechanism (that is, defining an exceedingly high number of jobs as mission critical and setting the highest priority value here) might overload the operating system, negatively impacting the overall performance of the workstation.

PromotedPriority

Used in workload service assurance. This property is not supported on the Agent for z/OS.

For Windows operating systems only, sets to this value the priority by which the operating system processes a critical job when it is promoted. Applies to critical jobs or predecessors that need to be promoted so that they can start at their critical start time. Valid values are:

- High
- AboveNormal (the default)
- Normal
- BelowNormal
- Low Or Idle

Note that if you set a lower priority value than the one non-critical jobs might be assigned, no warning is given.

RequireUserName

When `true`, requires that you add the user name in the JSDL job definition.

When `false`, runs with the user name used by job manager, that is:

- `TWS_user` on UNIX™ and Linux™ systems
- The local system account on Windows™ systems

The default is `false`.

RunExecutablesAsIBMiJobs

If you set this property to `true`, you can define IBM i jobs as generic jobs without using the XML definition. Generic jobs are automatically converted to IBM i jobs. As a side effect, generic jobs cannot be run when this parameter is enabled (`RunExecutablesAsIBMiJobs=true`). There is no default value because this property is not listed in the `JobManager.ini` file after the agent installation.

If you set this property to `true`, ensure that the user you used to install the agent has been granted the `*ALL0BJ` special authority.

RunInteractiveJobOnInvalidSession

Applies only to native and executable jobs starting interactive programs running on dynamic agents installed on Windows operating systems. Interactive programs run only if the job user has an active session open when the job runs. If there is no active session for the job user, the job behavior is defined by this property, as follows. Set the property to `true` to enable jobs to start interactive programs even if there is no active session for the job user. Set the property to `false` to prevent jobs from starting interactive programs if there is no active session for the job user.

ScriptSuffix

The suffix to be used when creating the script files. It is:

`.cmd`

For Windows™

`.sh`

For UNIX™

VerboseTracing

Enables verbose tracing. It is set to `true` by default.

Configuring properties of the Java™ job launcher [JavaJobLauncher]

About this task

In the `JobManager.ini` file, the section containing the properties of the Java™ job launcher is named:

```
[JavaJobLauncher]
```

You can change the following property:

JVMOptions

The options to provide to the Java™ Virtual Machine used to start job types with advanced options. Supported keywords for establishing a secure connection are:

- `https.proxyHost`
- `https.proxyPort`

Supported keywords for establishing a non-secure connection are:

- `Dhttp.proxyHost`
- `Dhttp.proxyPort`

For example, to set job types with advanced options, based on the default JVM http protocol handler, to the unauthenticated proxy server called with name `myproxyserver.mycompany.com`, define the following option:

```
JVMOptions = -Dhttp.proxyHost=myproxyserver.mycompany.com -Dhttp.proxyPort=80
```

Configuring properties of the Resource advisor agent [ResourceAdvisorAgent]

About this task

In the `JobManager.ini` and `JobManagerGW.ini` files, the section containing the properties of the Resource advisor agent is named:

```
[ResourceAdvisorAgent]
```

You can change the following properties:

BackupResourceAdvisorUrls

The list of URLs returned by the IBM Workload Scheduler master in a distributed environment or by the dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment. The agent uses this list to connect to the master or dynamic domain manager.

CPUScannerPeriodSeconds

The time interval that the Resource advisor agent collects resource information about the local CPU. The default value is every 10 seconds.

FullyQualifiedHostname

The fully qualified host name of the agent. It is configured automatically at installation time and is used to connect with the master in a distributed environment or with the dynamic domain manager in a z/OS or in a distributed environment. Edit only if the host name is changed after installation.

NotifyToResourceAdvisorPeriodSeconds

The time interval that the Resource advisor agent forwards the collected resource information to the Resource advisor. The default value is every 119 seconds.

ResourceAdvisorUrl

JobManager.ini

The URL of the master in a distributed environment, or of the dynamic domain manager in a z/OS or in a distributed environment, that is hosting the agent.

This URL is used until the server replies with the list of its URLs. The value is

`https://$(tdwb_server):$(tdwb_port)/JobManagerRESTWeb/JobScheduler/resource`, where:

\$(tdwb_server)

is the fully qualified host name of the master in a distributed environment or of the dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment.

\$(tdwb_port)

is the port number of the master in a distributed environment or of the dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment.

It is configured automatically at installation time. Edit only if the host name or the port number are changed after installation, or if you do not use secure connection (set to `http`). If you set the port number to zero, the resource advisor agent does not start. The port is set to zero if at installation time you specify that you will not be using the master in a distributed environment or the dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment.

In a distributed environment, if **-gateway** is set to either `local` or `remote`, then this is the URL of the dynamic agent workstation where the gateway resides and through which the dynamic agents communicate. The value is

```
https://$(tdwb_server):$(tdwb_port)/ita/JobManagerGW/JobManagerRESTWeb/JobScheduler/resource, where:
```

`$(tdwb_server)`

The fully qualified host name of the dynamic agent workstation where the gateway resides and through which the dynamic agent communicates with the dynamic workload broker.

`$(tdwb_port)`

The port number of the dynamic agent workstation where the gateway resides and through which the dynamic agent communicates with the dynamic workload broker.

JobManagerGW.ini

In a distributed environment, if **-gateway** is set to `local`, then **ResourceAdvisorUrl** is the URL of the master or dynamic domain manager. The value is

```
https://$(tdwb_server):$(tdwb_port)/JobManagerRESTWeb/JobScheduler/resource, where:
```

`$(tdwb_server)`

The fully qualified host name of the master or dynamic domain manager.

`$(tdwb_port)`

The port number of the master or dynamic domain manager.

ScannerPeriodSeconds

The time interval that the Resource advisor agent collects information about all the resources in the local system other than CPU resources. The default value is every 120 seconds.

The resource advisor agent, intermittently scans the resources of the machine (computer system, operating system, file systems and networks) and periodically sends an update of their status to the master or dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment.

The CPU is scanned every `CPUScannerPeriodSeconds` seconds, while all the other resources are scanned every `ScannerPeriodSeconds` seconds. As soon as one of the scans shows a significant change in the status of a resource, the resources are synchronized with the master in a distributed environment or the dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or

in a distributed environment. The following is the policy followed by the agent to tell if a resource attribute has significantly changed:

- A resource is added or deleted
- A string attribute changes its value
- A CPU value changes by more than `DeltaForCPU`
- A file system value changes by more than `DeltaForDiskMB` megabytes
- A Memory value changes by more than `DeltaForMemoryMB` megabytes

If there are no significant changes, the resources are synchronized with the IBM Workload Scheduler master in a distributed environment or with the dynamic domain manager either in a z/OS or in a distributed environment every `NotifyToResourceAdvisorPeriodSeconds` seconds.

Configuring properties of the System scanner [SystemScanner]

About this task

In the `JobManager.ini` file, the section containing the properties of the System scanner is named:

```
[SystemScanner]
```

You can change the following properties:

CPUSamples

The number of samples used to calculate the average CPU usage. The default value is 3.

DeltaForCPU

The change in CPU usage considered to be significant when it becomes higher than this percentage (for example, `DeltaForCPU` is 20 if the CPU usage changes from 10 percent to 30 percent). The default value is 20 percent.

DeltaForDiskMB

The change in use of all file system resources that is considered significant when it becomes higher than this value. The default value is 100 MB.

DeltaForMemoryMB

The change in use of all system memory that is considered significant when it becomes higher than this value. The default value is 100 MB.

Configuring to schedule job types with advanced options

About this task

You can define job types with advanced options by using the related configuration files. The options you define in the configuration files apply to all job types with advanced options of the same type. You can override these options when defining the job by using the Dynamic Workload Console or, if you are in a distributed environment, the **composer** command.

Configuration files are available on each dynamic agent in TWA_home/TWS/JavaExt/cfg for the following job types with advanced options:

Table 114. Configuration files for job types with advanced options

Job type	File name	Keyword
- Database job type - MSSQL Job	DatabaseJobExecutor.properties	Use the <code>jdbcDriversPath</code> keyword to specify the path to the JDBC drivers. Define the keyword so that it points to the JDBC jar files directory, for example: <pre>jdbcDriversPath=c:\mydir\jars\jdbc</pre> The JDBC jar files must be located in the specified directory or its subdirectories. Ensure you have list permissions on the directory and its sub subdirectories.  Note: For the MSSQL database, use version 4 of the JDBC drivers.
Java™ job type	JavaJobExecutor.properties	Use the <code>jarPath</code> keyword to specify the path to the directory where the jar files are stored. This includes all jar files stored in the specified directory and all sub directories.
J2EE job type	J2EEJobExecutorConfig.properties	For more information about the J2EE job type, see the topic about configuring to schedule J2EE jobs in the <i>IBM Workload Scheduler: Administration Guide</i>.

Chapter 10. Performance

This chapter provides information about issues that impact performance. Use this information both to prevent problems occurring and to help resolve problems that occur.

Network traffic

A full description of how a IBM Workload Scheduler network is structured, and how the different nodes communicate, is provided at the beginning of [Network administration on page 276](#). In particular, see [Optimizing the network on page 292](#), which explains how to design and operate your IBM Workload Scheduler network to maximize performance.

Tracing

The performance of any workstation can be impacted by the level of tracing it has to perform.

The *Troubleshooting Guide* has a chapter which explains the diagnostic tools that are available.

The performance might also be impacted by the tracing activities on WebSphere Application Server Liberty.

Logging

The performance of any workstation can be impacted by the way the IBM Workload Scheduler logging mechanism uses memory. The default settings applied in this version are designed to ensure the maximum performance. However, because these defaults are different from the defaults in earlier versions, if you are experiencing performance problems, it is advisable to check that these settings have not been in some way overwritten by the previous values. In the diagnostic tools chapter of *IBM Workload Scheduler: Troubleshooting Guide*, there is a section about CCLog, which, apart from discussing how to customize CCLog, also describes how to check the CCLog processing defaults.

Symphony file sizing

To calculate the size of the Symphony file and understand its impact on performance, see [Avoiding full file systems on page 563](#).

Tuning a UNIX™ domain manager to handle large numbers of fault-tolerant agents

The performance of domain managers on UNIX™ is impacted if they are overloaded with jobs. Improvements can be obtained by modifying the kernel parameters. The precise settings differ according to operating system, and you might need to test different settings to obtain optimum performance.

The following is an example of the kernel settings for Linux (kernel t3.10.0-514.e17.x86_64) to handle 500000 jobs per day workload:

```
data seg size=unlimited
scheduling priority=0
file size=unlimited
```

```
pending signals=124946
max locked memory=64
max memory size=unlimited
open files=105000
pipe size=8
POSIX message queues=819200
real-time priority=0
stack size=10240
cpu time=unlimited
max user processes=16384
virtual memory=unlimited
file locks=unlimited
```

Tuning job processing on a workstation

This section explains how to tune selected options in the IBM Workload Scheduler `localopts` file to improve IBM Workload Scheduler performance. These options control the period between successive instances of an activity. [Table 115: Options for tuning job processing on a workstation on page 678](#) shows the activities to be tuned, the corresponding option that can be set in the `localopts` file, and how the changed value impacts performance.

Table 115. Options for tuning job processing on a workstation

Activity	Option	Impact on performance
batchman periodically scans the <code>Symphony</code> file for jobs ready to be processed.	<i>bm look</i>	In all these cases, a shorter time means more frequent scans, using more cpu resources, and impacting other processes that are running. However, it also means that for all activities waiting time is kept to a minimum. If throughput is important and the workstation has plenty of memory, try shortening the times.
jobman accesses the <code>Courier.msg</code> file to see if there are jobs that need to be launched.	<i>jm read</i>	
After having launched a job jobman checks periodically for job completion status.	<i>jm look</i>	
mailman looks periodically in the <code>Mailbox.msg</code> for completed jobs.	<i>mm read</i>	A longer period between successive activities means jobs take longer to run, because there are longer waits for each activity. However, the reduced frequency of the scans means that more memory is available for jobs because less is being used by these monitoring activities.
batchman checks periodically in <code>Intercom.msg</code> for jobs that are complete so that it can update the <code>Symphony</code> file.	<i>bm read</i>	
Consider the meaning of the various options. If your objective is to run the jobs as quickly as possible, but you are not concerned about how quickly the information about completed jobs is distributed, you could reduce the wait periods for <i>bm look</i> and <i>jm read</i> , but increase the periods for the others.		
Alternatively, to speed up the overall job processing time (from initial job launch to the update with the		

Table 115. Options for tuning job processing on a workstation (continued)

Activity	Option	Impact on performance
		completion status), you can tune <i>bm look</i> , <i>jm look</i> , and <i>mm read</i> .

If you decide to tune these setting do the following:

- Test the result in a test system before applying changes in your production environment. To get worthwhile results, the test environment must have the same characteristics as the production environment.
- Modify only the parameters that are necessary. It is better to modify one at a time and thoroughly test the change in performance, rather than changing all at once.
- Make a backup copy of the `localopts` file to ensure you can revert to the default options if necessary.

Stop and start the agent to activate changes applied to the `localopts` file.

Tuning plan replication

Tuning plan replication involves configuring specific settings to optimize the process of replicating plan data into the database. Plan replication ensures quick and reliable access to plan data stored in the database. Its main objective is to provide quick response times and increased overall performance. Sometimes, if this synchronization process is not configured appropriately for the size of your workload, you might notice some discrepancies in your environment, such as job status misalignment between the command line (conman) and the monitoring results obtained in the Dynamic Workload Console.

There are a few simple settings you can configure to optimize performance:

Configure the cache size

Add the following properties to the `TWSConfig.properties` file located in the following paths:

Windows On Windows operating systems

`<TWA_home>\usr\servers\engineServer\resources\properties`

On UNIX operating systems

`<TWA_DATA_DIR>/usr/servers/engineServer/resources/properties`

```
#Custom property which defines the number of threads and queues needed to
handle the plan updates
com.ibm.tws.planner.monitor.subProcessors=10
```

```
#Custom property which optimizes the DB access for file
dependency status update
com.ibm.tws.planner.monitor.filecachesize=40000
```

```
#Customer property which optimizes the DB access for
job and job stream status update
com.ibm.tws.planner.monitor.cachesize=40000
```

In addition, follow the steps to increase the heap size settings (initialHeapSize = 2048 and maximumHeapSize = 4096) of the application server on the master domain manager as documented in the *Administration Guide*.

Tuning the database

Tuning the database requires specific steps which vary depending on the database. To find detailed and specific information consult the relevant product documentation.

Optimizing the replication of the Symphony file in the database

Tuning DB2 database configuration parameters to improve performance when the Symphony file is replicated in the database.

In a IBM Workload Scheduler environment where more than 200,000 jobs are scheduled to be submitted, there are several DB2 database configuration parameters that can be tuned to improve performance when the Symphony plan is replicated in the IBM Workload Scheduler database.

The following are the suggested values for a plan with more than 200,000 jobs:

```
LOGBUFSZ = 2150
DBHEAP = AUTOMATIC (or greater than LOGBUFSZ)

LOGFILSIZ = 3000
LOGPRIMARY = 200
LOGSECOND = 40

PAGE_AGE_TRGT_MCR = 120
```

In addition, increase the number of pages (NPAGES) of the **TWS_PLN_BUFFPOOL** parameter to 182000 and the **TWS_BUFFPOOL** parameter to 50000 by using the ALTER BUFFERPOOL command.

Before changing any of these values, refer to the information about tuning a DB2 database in the relevant product documentation in IBM Documentation.

Too many manual job submissions

IBM Workload Scheduler is designed for maximum efficiency when handling jobs submitted using a scheduled plan. Consequently, it is less adapted to processing manually submitted jobs. Thus, performance can be improved by reducing the number of manually submitted jobs.

Too many file dependency checks

Each file dependency check has an impact on performance. If you design a plan that is constantly checking many file dependencies, you reduce the performance of the workstation where these jobs are being run.

If multiple “opens” files are being used as a dependency, use the “-a” (and) option. For example, to check if three home directories /tom, /dick, and /harry exist, before launching myjob issue the following:

```
job2 opens "/users" (-d %p/tom -a -d %p/dick -a -d %p/harry)
```

This checks for all three directories at the same time, instead of looking for each directory separately.

Other factors that impact performance when evaluating file dependencies are the `bm` check parameters in the `localopts` file. These are documented in the Localopts summary section in the Administration Guide.



Note: In case of file dependencies applied to dynamic agent, it is suggested to keep ratio *number of file dependencies/bm check file* less than 0.7

Network configuration availability

After a system reboot, network services might be slow to start and if the agent starts when network services are not yet ready, the agent cannot work properly.

To prevent this problem, the agent waits sixty seconds and then retries to retrieve the network configuration. The agent repeats this operation for 5 times, that is, it waits for a total of 5 minutes for the network configuration to become available. If all attempts fail, the agent stops working.

You can configure the number of times the agent waits for network configuration availability in the **ITA** section of the `ita.ini` file, as follows:

1. Browse to the path where the `ita.ini` file is located:

UNIX

On UNIX™ operating systems

`TWA_DATA_DIR/ITA/cpa/ita/ita.ini`

Windows

On Windows™ operating systems

`TWA_homeTWS\ITA\cpa\config\ita.ini`

2. Edit the setting for the **net_conf_wait** parameter defining the number of times the agent retries to retrieve the network configuration, waiting sixty seconds between each attempt. If the number of attempts you have defined expires without the agent being able to retrieve the network configuration, the agent stops working.

Workload spreading

Whatever jobs you have to schedule, try and spread them out through the production period so that there is no concentration in any one moment. Try also to avoid scheduling activities during times when normal user traffic in the network is very heavy, for example during the morning when users commence working and deal with accumulated emails.

Failure to do this might cause a bottleneck at the Mailbox.msg queue, which causes delays in updating the Symphony file, which in turn creates delays in the availability of job statuses to conman, the Dynamic Workload Console.

Improving job-processing performance

The processing and monitoring of jobs on a workstation is controlled primarily by various parameters in the `localopts` file and the global options maintained by `optman`. These parameters are described in the *IBM Workload Scheduler: Planning and Installation Guide*.

If you are experiencing problems of performance when processing and monitoring jobs, contact IBM Software Support for advice about how to tune these parameters in your particular environment to improve performance.

Mailbox caching - advantages and disadvantages

Mailman uses a parameter in the `localopts` file to decide whether to cache mailbox messages: *mm cache mailbox*. This section explains the advantages and disadvantages of the on and off settings of this parameter.

Setting the *mm cache mailbox* parameter to *no*

This means that mailman has to make a separate read action for each message before processing it, and then a separate delete action after successfully processing the message. The I/O activity in performing these activities one message at a time is proportionally high for the amount of data being read. This has an impact on performance. On the other hand, the processing is simple, in that each message is read, processed, and then removed from the mailbox. Any failure of the system at any point means that at most one message is replayed and no data is lost.

Setting the *mm cache mailbox* parameter to *yes* (default)

This means that mailman reads a block of messages into cache memory, processes all of the messages, and then deletes all of them from the mailbox. The advantage in I/O time is clear; reading and deleting a sequential set of messages in one action is a much more efficient use of I/O time, than reading and deleting them one-by-one, meaning improved performance.

However, if there is a failure of mailman or the operating system, the cache is lost. On restarting, mailman rereads the set of messages that were previously in cache, some of which might already have been processed. For example, if mailman reads a block of 32 messages into cache and has processed 30 of them when a problem occurs, when mailman is restarted it rereads those 32 records and has to process 30 duplicates before being able to continue where it stopped.

Most events deal with job state changes, and these events can be repeated without creating any problems, and the critical events mechanism is able to deal with the others. However, there is an impact on performance while this recovery processing is going on, and if the in-built mechanisms cannot handle the message duplication, a more serious error might occur, ultimately involving the full or partial loss of the mailbox contents.

The number of messages being read in one action is configurable, using the parameter *mm cache size*. The default value for this parameter is 32 messages, and the maximum is 512. Setting this parameter to a value higher than the default increases performance during correct working, but decreases the performance in the event of a failure, for the reasons stated above. In addition, the additional cache means that the memory required by the IBM Workload Scheduler engine also increases. If you have a workstation with limited memory,

or memory-heavy applications running, it might be counterproductive to increase the mailbox cache because the operating system might have to start paging the cache memory.

In conclusion, the default setting maximizes performance; only if you start losing events should you set it to *no*.

Setting the synch level parameter

This section describes the impact of the different settings of the *synch level* parameter in the `localopts` file. The *synch level* parameter only impacts UNIX™ environments.

The I/O activity performed by the IBM Workload Scheduler engine in managing plans, job streams, and jobs, consists in reading from and writing to the Symphony file and the event files (`Mailbox.msg`, `Intercom.msg`, and `Courier.msg`). When IBM Workload Scheduler writes to these files it has more than a straightforward *write* operation to perform. For example, when it writes to the `Mailbox.msg` file it performs the actions described in the following pseudo code:

```
TWS_write_event_lock {
    Lock Mailbox to write
}

TWS_write_event_update {
    Check Available Space
    Write Header
    Write Record
    Update Write Pointer
    Unlock Mailbox
}
```

Each action requires one or more write accesses to the disk. The way these actions are performed with the different *synch level* options is as follows:

synch level = high

Each write operation on the event files is immediately physically written to disk. This has a heavy impact on performance caused by the high I/O dependency.

synch level = medium

Each write event is considered as a single operation. For example, while `TWS_write_event_lock` contains only one action, `TWS_write_event_update` comprises five actions. With *synch level* at *medium*, the five actions in this write event would be completed in one physical disk access, thus drastically reducing the I/O overhead.

synch level = low (default)

The operating system decides how and when to synchronize the data to disk. The impact of this option is more difficult to assess, because the rules are different for each operating system and file system.

The fault-tolerant switch manager - impact on performance

This section describes the impact that the enablement of the fault-tolerant switch manager feature has on the performance of the general architecture and the individual system. The fault-tolerant switch manager is enabled by setting the `enSwfaulTol` global option to `yes`. When it is set, the master domain manager distributes messages to all fault-tolerant agents with *FullStatus* set to `yes`. This option has not dynamic capabilities and is not designed to work with broker agents.

Enabling this option impacts the following:

- Network traffic
- Disk space



Note: The fault-tolerant switch manager facility is only available if all of the workstations in the domain are at version 8.2, fix pack level 4, or higher.

Network Traffic

Network traffic is unchanged under normal conditions, but is increased during the replay phase, according to your choice and only under special conditions.

The replay phase is an essential part of the processing performed by the `switchmgr` command. It occurs when the new domain manager processes its Symphony file against its copies of the messages received, as it attempts to update its copy of the Symphony file.

Under normal conditions, the outbound reliability does not create any additional network traffic, because the messages are only stored for an eventual replay operation. The multiple inbound connections do not generate additional traffic because the traffic that was previously copied by the domain manager to the *FullStatus* member is now copied to the *FullStatus* members directly by the fault-tolerant agents.

During the replay phase, the connection protocol initiated by mailman on the backup domain manager includes a new phase for the replay of messages not sent by the failed domain manager. The impact of the message replay might be important, depending on the number of messages "trapped" in the old domain manager.

Disk Space

There are two places within the network where disk space use increases following the activation of the additional fault tolerance.

These places are as follows:

- On the single fault-tolerant agent. Here, in addition to the `tomaster.msg` queue, new queues are created for the other *FullStatus* fault-tolerant agents. These queues need not be considered, because the impact on a single agent is small.
- On the *FullStatus* fault-tolerant agents acting as backup domain managers. Here new `ftbox` message files are created. Upward traffic to the upper domain manager is in `ftbox/ftup.msg` and downward traffic to the lower domain manager is in `ftbox/ftdown.msg`.

Scalability

In an environment with large numbers of scheduling objects, the following impacts are felt:

- [Impact on JnextPlan on page 685](#)
- [Impact on reporting on page 686](#)
- [Impact on event rule deployment on page 686](#)

The resolution for these problems often includes making the following changes:

- [Increasing application server heap size on page 686](#)
- [Increasing maximum DB2 log capacity on page 687](#)

Impact on JnextPlan

The main impact on performance caused by a large network of workstations running many jobs over a production period of many days, is on JnextPlan. The key factor is the number of job stream instances that JnextPlan needs to handle. JnextPlan has to process each of these instances, and the time it takes to do so is a factor that can only be reduced by ensuring that the master domain manager and the database are on the most powerful computers possible, and that the communication, whether in local or remote, between the master domain manager and the database is maximized.

However, there are some specific measures that need to be taken as the number of jobs or job stream instances increases:

Number of jobs in the plan exceeds 40 000

In this event you need to increase the Java™ heap size used by the application server. The default is 512 MB, and you should at least double the heap size when job numbers exceed this level. Follow the procedure in [Increasing application server heap size on page 686](#).

You have a large number of job stream instances in the plan

DB2®

The default DB2® transaction log files cannot handle more than the transactions generated by about 180 000 job stream instances. You need to change the parameters that control the log file sizes or the numbers of log files that can be created, or both. Follow the procedure in [Increasing maximum DB2 log capacity on page 687](#).

Oracle

The number of transactions that can be managed by the Oracle log files depends on the way the Oracle database is configured. See the Oracle documentation for more details.



Note: If circumstances change and the number of job stream instances handled by JnextPlan falls below about 180 000, consider resetting the log and application server heap size settings to their default values, to avoid performance problems.

Impact on reporting

When a report is being processed, extra memory is required to handle large numbers of scheduling objects. The critical point is approximately 70 000 objects. This problem can be handled by increasing the Java™ heap size used by the application server. Follow the procedure in [Increasing application server heap size on page 686](#).

Impact on event rule deployment

When deploying large numbers of event rules, extra memory is required. The critical point is approximately 8 000 rules. This problem can be handled by increasing the Java™ heap size used by the application server. Follow the procedure in [Increasing application server heap size on page 686](#).

Increasing application server heap size

Follow this procedure to increase the Java™ heap size:

1. Log on to the computer where IBM Workload Scheduler is installed as the following user:

Windows On Windows™ operating systems:

Any user in the *Administrators* group.

UNIX On UNIX™ operating systems:

root

2. Stop the WebSphere Application Server Liberty either by using the conman stopappserver command (see [Starting and stopping the application server and appservman on page 656](#)) or by running:

Windows On Windows™ operating systems:

```
<TWA_home>\server_wauser\appservertools\stopAppServer.bat
```

UNIX On UNIX™ operating systems:

```
<TWA_home>/server_wauser/appservertools/stopAppServer.sh
```

3. Open the following file:

Windows On Windows™ operating systems:

```
<TWA_home>\server_wauser\usr\servers\engineServer\configDropins\overrides\jvm.options
```

UNIX**On UNIX™ operating systems:**

```
<TWA_DATA_DIR>/server_wauser/usr/servers/engineServer/configDropins/overrides/jvm.options
```

4. Edit it as follows:

```
-Xms4096m
-Xmx4096m
-Xgcpolicy:gencon
#nursery mem size
-Xmn1024m
```



Note: In case of high workload (more than 200000 jobs/day) use 6144 as heap size and 1536 as nursery mem size. The above suggested settings must be applied when the RAM configuration value twice the value of the heap size.

5. Save the file `jvm.option`

6. Start the WebSphere Application Server Liberty, either by using the `conman startappserver` command (see [Starting and stopping the application server and appservman on page 656](#)) or by running

Windows operating systems:

```
<TWA_home>\server_wauser\appservertools\stopAppServer.bat
```

UNIX operating systems:

```
<TWA_home>/server_wauser/appservertools/stopAppServer.sh
```

Increasing maximum DB2® log capacity

The IBM Workload Scheduler DB2® database uses a transaction log the maximum size of which is fundamentally important for the successful running of JnextPlan on very large databases.

The default log consists of 40 primary log files, which are always present, and 20 secondary log files, created on demand. Each file is about 4 MB in size, so the maximum log capacity using all of the "secondary" log files as well as the primary files is $(40 + 20) \times 4 \text{ MB} = 240 \text{ MB}$.

The log space used by JnextPlan is dependent on the size of the preproduction plan. Approximately every 1000 job stream instances generate transactions that occupy 1 MB of space in the log file. Thus, the log files by default have a maximum theoretical capacity of 240 000 job stream instances. However, in practice, you should allow for at least 25% more space than this algorithm indicates, so the capacity of the default log files is around 180 000 job stream instances.

If JnextPlan has neared or exceeded that level, you must make more log space available to DB2®.

In addition to performing the above calculation, you can also determine the log space actually used by a specific instance of JnextPlan and base your log size requirement on that figure.

Determining actual DB2® log file usage

The following is the procedure to verify how much space was used by a successful instance of the JnextPlan command:

1. After JnextPlan has run, log on to the computer where the IBM Workload Scheduler DB2® server is installed, as the DB2® instance owner (UNIX™) or DB2® Administrator (Windows™).
2. Open a DB2® command line window or shell, as follows:

UNIX™

Follow these steps:

- a. Issue the command `su - db2inst1`, or change to the subdirectory `sql1lib` of the home directory of the owner of the DB2® instance (by default `db2inst1`)
- b. Launch the command `./db2profile`

Windows™

Select from the **Start** menu, **Programs** → **IBM DB2** → **Command Line Tools** → **Command Window**

3. Run the following command:

```
db2 "get snapshot for database on TWS" > snapdb.txt
```

where "TWS" must be changed to the actual database name if different

4. Open the `snapdb.txt` file and look for a section like this:

```
Log space available to the database (Bytes)= 244315359
Log space used by the database (Bytes)      = 484641
Maximum secondary log space used (Bytes)    = 0
Maximum total log space used (Bytes)        = 581636
Secondary logs allocated currently          = 0
```

The value shown in "Maximum total log space used" is the actual space used for the DB2® logs. This space should be allocated to DB2® using primary log files only; therefore, you should change the number of primary log files and their size as necessary to meet this requirement as a minimum.

In addition, you are recommended to allocate a secondary log space to DB2®. A good choice for the secondary log files is half the number allocated for the primary files.

The snapshot command described in [step 3 on page 688](#) can be run at any time to keep track of the current usage of the DB2® log space, without a noticeable impact on performance. All metrics shown are useful to monitor the current allocation of DB2® primary and secondary logs at any time, and to determine any required changes.

Procedure for changing the maximum DB2® log capacity

Do this as follows:

1. Log on to the computer where the IBM Workload Scheduler DB2® server is installed, as the DB2® instance owner (UNIX™) or DB2® Administrator (Windows™).
2. Open a DB2® command line window or shell, as follows:

UNIX™

Follow these steps:

- a. Issue the command `su - db2inst1`, or change to the subdirectory `sql1lib` of the home directory of the owner of the DB2® instance (by default *db2inst1*)
- b. Launch the command `./db2profile`

Windows™

Select from the **Start** menu, **Programs** → **IBM DB2** → **Command Line Tools** → **Command Window**

3. Run the following commands:

```
db2 update db cfg for <database_name> using LOGFILSIZ <log_file_size>
db2 update db cfg for <database_name> using LOGPRIMARY <primary_log_files>
db2 update db cfg for <database_name> using LOGSECOND <secondary_log_files>
```

where:

<database_name>

The name of the database:

- If you are running this from the computer where the DB2® server is installed, the installed default name is *TWS*. Supply this value unless you have changed it.
- You are not recommended to run this procedure from the computer where the DB2® client is installed, but if you do so, the installed default name is *TWS_DB*. Supply this value unless you have changed it.

<log_file_size>

The log file size in 4 KB pages. The default is 1000 (hence the default log file size of 4MB). Look in the DB2® documentation for details of the implications of choosing a larger or a smaller log file size. The maximum value is 262 144 (making the maximum log file size about 1 GB).

<primary_log_files>

The number of primary log files. The default is 40. The total maximum number of log files that DB2® can handle (primary and secondary) is 256. Thus, there is a maximum limit of 256 GB for the log, or approximately 256 million Job Scheduler instances! (maximum 256 files x 1 GB maximum file size)

<secondary_log_files>

The number of secondary log files. The default is 20. If there is enough free space on the file system, these additional log files are dynamically allocated by DB2® as needed (with a small impact on the performance of JnextPlan). Because these are only created if required, it is preferable to increase the number of secondary files, rather than the primary files. Typically, you allocate 50% of the primary log file value.

In making the calculation to allocate the log files, allow at least 25% more space than you think you require, to avoid that any slight miscalculation causes JnextPlan to fail.

Example: if you have determined from the procedure described in [Determining actual DB2 log file usage on page 688](#) that JnextPlan has a current use of 320 MB, you could calculate as follows:

- a. Increase 320 MB by 25%, giving 400 MB
 - b. Determine if you want more log files, or bigger log files, or both, by reference to the DB2® documentation. For example, you could choose to allocate 40 files with a size of 10 MB, 80 files with a size of 5 MB, or 100 files with a size of 4 MB. For the sake of this example, assume you have chosen 80 files with a size of 5 MB, so your LOGPRIMARY value will be 80.
 - c. Determine the log file size in 4 KB pages to give a log file size of 5 MB - your LOGFILSIZ value will thus be 1250.
 - d. Determine how many secondary log files are required. If you follow the 50% guideline you will need a LOGSECOND value of 40.
4. Log on to the computer where IBM Workload Scheduler is installed as the following user:

UNIX™

root

Windows™

Any user in the *Administrators* group.

5. Access the directory: <TWS_INSTALLATION_PATH>\server_<wauser>\appservertools
6. Stop the WebSphere Application Server Liberty using the conman stopappserver command (see [Starting and stopping the application server and appservman on page 656](#))
7. On the computer where the DB2® server is installed, stop and start DB2®, as follows:
 - a. Ensure that no other applications are using this instance of DB2®, or if they are that they can be stopped.
 - b. Issue the following command:

```
db2stop
```

- c. Issue the following command:

```
db2start
```



Note: It is strongly recommended that you stop and start DB2®. If this is a problem for you, you must at least disconnect all applications from the DB2® instance and reconnect them. DB2® will apply the new parameters when you reconnect. If necessary, use the following command to force the disconnection of all open connections:

```
db2 "force application all"
```

8. Start the WebSphere Application Server Liberty using the conman startappserver command (see [Starting and stopping the application server and appservman on page 656](#))

Oracle tablespace size

Oracle (RDBMS) is divided in tablespaces which are an allocation of space where datafiles are stored.

The number of transactions that can be managed by the Oracle log files depends on the way the Oracle database is configured, thus it is important to allocate an appropriate table size to avoid issues on performance.

For example, considering a workload of 500000 jobs per day, 80GB of .dbf file size is recommended.

Multiple Dynamic Workload Console production plan reports

From the Dynamic Workload Console you can launch production plan reports. These are heavy users of CPU time, and if they are requested for the entire plan, they can also take some considerable time to produce. If several are running at once, they can have a noticeable impact on the performance of the master domain manager.

If you notice a degradation of performance, you can determine if there are any reports running by checking for the report work files, as follows;

1. Navigate to the operating system's temporary directory
2. Look for files that have the following file name template:

```
TWS-sequential_number-extr
```

Each report currently in progress has one of these work files open. The files are removed when the report is completed.

3. Check the dates of these files, and consider only recent files (if a report fails during production at any time, its file remains in the temporary directory until the next reboot of the master domain manager or you run an operating system cleanup process that discards all files in the temporary directory).

There is no direct action to take, as you must wait until the report completes for the performance to recover.

However, if you note that large numbers of reports are being issued, it might indicate the following scenario:

1. A user issues a report request, expecting it to be available immediately
2. When the report does not appear immediately, the user thinks it has hung, closes and reopens the browser, and reissues the report. The closing of the browser does not stop the report production.
3. The user might repeat this action several times.

In this case, you can take action to remind the user that the production of large reports can be time-consuming, and that it is always better to wait.

Dynamic Workload Console - adjusting session timeout settings

About this task

The value assigned to the session timeout settings defines after how many minutes a user is automatically logged out from the WebSphere Application Server Liberty. If you plan to perform long running operations, or to have many users connected concurrently to the Dynamic Workload Console, or expect to have low performance on the system where the Dynamic Workload Console is installed, you might want to edit these values: `httpSession invalidationTimeout="5h"` and `ltpa expiration="1440"`.

Perform these steps to change the values assigned to the timeout settings:

1. Stop WebSphere Application Server Liberty:

UNIX UNIX™

```
./stopAppServer.sh [-direct]
```

Windows Windows™

```
stopAppServer.bat [-direct]
```

For more information about stopping WebSphere Application Server Liberty, see [Application server - starting and stopping on page 652](#).

2. Create a .xml file with this content (i.e. timeout_config.xml):

```
<server description="http_timeout_config">
  <httpSession invalidationTimeout="5h" invalidateOnUnauthorizedSessionRequestException="false"/>
  <ltpa expiration="1440"/>
</server>
```

3. Save the file in the following path: <DATA_DIR>/usr/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides
4. Start WebSphere Application Server Liberty:

UNIX UNIX™

```
./startAppServer.sh [-direct]
```

Windows Windows™

```
startAppServer.bat [-direct]
```



Note: The desired time must be indicated in minutes

For more information, please refer to the WebSphere Application Server Liberty documentation at the following links https://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/en/SSEQTP_liberty/com.ibm.websphere.liberty.autogen.base.doc/ae/rwlp_config_httpSession.html. and https://www.ibm.com/support/knowledgecenter/en/SSEQTP_liberty/com.ibm.websphere.liberty.autogen.base.doc/ae/rwlp_config_ltpa.html

Dynamic Workload Console - Increasing application server heap size

Follow this procedure to increase the Java™ heap size:

1. Log on to the computer where Dynamic Workload Console is installed as the following user:

Windows Windows™ operating systems:

Any user in the *Administrators* group.

UNIX UNIX™ operating systems:

root

2. Stop the WebSphere Application Server Liberty by running:

Windows Windows™ operating systems:

```
DWC_home\appservertools\stopAppServer.bat
```

UNIX UNIX™ operating systems:

```
DWC_home/appservertools/stopAppServer.sh
```

3. Open the following file:

Windows operating systems:

```
DWC_DATA_dir\usr\servers\dwcServer\configDropins\overrides\jvm.options
```

UNIX operating systems:

```
DWC_DATA_dir/usr/servers/dwcServer/configDropins/overrides/jvm.options
```

4. Here is an example:

```
-Xms4096m
-Xmx4096m
-Xgcpolicy:gencon
#nursery mem size
-Xmn1024m
```



Note: In case of high workload (more than 50 concurrent users) use 6144 as heap size and 1536 as nursery mem size. The above suggested settings must be applied when the RAM configuration value twice the value of the heap size.

5. Save the file `jvm.option`
6. Start the WebSphere Application Server Liberty, by running

Windows Windows operating systems:

```
DWC_home\appservertools\startAppServer.bat
```

UNIX UNIX operating systems:

```
DWC_homeWindows/appservertools/startAppServer.sh
```

Dynamic Workload Console graphical views

When viewing graphical views in a supported web browser, especially when there are hundreds of objects, including dependencies, it is recommended that you use either Google Chrome or Mozilla Firefox to guarantee the best possible performance. This applies to the following graphical views:

- Job Stream Graphical View (both model and plan)
- Plan View
- Preproduction Plan View

Using Google Chrome might reduce the Dynamic Workload Console performance

Due to Google Chrome cache static resources restrictions, when using the Dynamic Workload Console with default certificates, the performance could be reduced.

To avoid impact on the performance, use custom certificates or a different browser.

Chapter 11. Availability

This section describes factors that might affect the availability of IBM Workload Scheduler on a workstation. It covers the following topics:

- [Resolving user ID account on Windows operating systems on page 695](#)
- [Using a temporary directory on UNIX on page 696](#)

Resolving user ID account on Windows® operating systems

About this task

IBM Workload Scheduler needs to resolve the user ID account on Windows® operating systems to verify the security information.

Windows® users can be classified as domain users or local users. Domain users are defined in the domain controller, while local users are defined in the workstations of the network.

For a domain user, IBM Workload Scheduler requests the primary domain controller (or any domain controller for Windows® 2000 or 2003 Active Directory), to identify an available domain controller. It then uses this domain controller identity to type out the structure for the user.

For a local user, IBM Workload Scheduler makes a request to the local workstation. Generally, IBM Workload Scheduler specifies two cases: one for the IBM Workload Scheduler user and one for the streamlogon user.

The following is a list of steps that IBM Workload Scheduler performs to authenticate Windows® users, and the APIs involved:

1. IBM Workload Scheduler looks up the user in the reference domain. For the domain user, the reference domain is the name of the Windows® network. For the local user, it is the name of the local workstation.

API: LookupAccountName.

2. If the user is a domain user, IBM Workload Scheduler asks the primary domain controller for any domain controller that is available to resolve the account for the user in the reference domain.

API: NetGetAnyDCName for Windows® or DsGetDcName for Windows® 2000 or 2003.

3. IBM Workload Scheduler requests the domain controller (or the local workstation if the user is local) for information about the user.

API: NetUserGetInfo.



Note: On Windows® 2000 and 2003, the permissions for this API are contained in the BUILTIN\ "Pre-Windows 2000 compatible access" group.

Using a temporary directory on UNIX™

When performing IBM Workload Scheduler operations on UNIX™, temporary files are written to the temporary directory on the local workstation. Ensure that the `<TWS_user>` running operations has *read* and *write* access to this directory.

Chapter 12. License Management in IBM License Metric Tool

According to your IBM Workload Scheduler license, IBM® License Metric Tool helps you maintain your license compliance. By using License Metric Tool, you can generate reports that summarize your license consumption. The generated reports are maintained on the License Metric Tool server and should be periodically reviewed and signed, creating a history for audit purposes in the process. If you are contacted by a third-party software compliance auditor who plans to visit your enterprise to carry out a software audit, ensure that all reports are up-to-date and signed, and then supply copies of reports that cover the time periods that the auditor requests.

The following IBM Workload Scheduler license models are available to customers:

- [Processor Value Unit license model on page 697](#)
- [Per Job license model on page 701](#)
- [Using per job queries when upgrading from a version earlier than 9.4 Fix Pack 2 on page 708](#)

To install and configure IBM® License Metric Tool, see the product documentation at <https://www.ibm.com/docs/en/license-metric-tool>

Processor Value Unit license model

About this task

IBM® License Metric Tool generates reports to help you maintain compliance with your Processor Value Unit (PVU) sub-capacity license terms. License Metric Tool can calculate PVU consumption only when **software identification tags** exist and are activated by the customer. The optman global option **licenseType** must be set to **perServer** (default value) to activate **Processor Value Unit** consumption tracking. You can also set the optman global option **licenseType** to **byWorkstation** to specify that the licensing type (either **perServer** or **perJob**) is specified at creation time for each workstation.

License Metric Tool automatically detects the following IBM Workload Scheduler 10.2.6 chargeable components that are part of the product:

Table 116. Chargeable software components automatically detected by License Metric Tool

Chargeable Software Components
IBM Z Workload Scheduler Agent V10.2.6

To detect and count remote nodes that are managed by IBM Workload Scheduler chargeable components, you must manually deploy software tags because no product code is present on those nodes.

The following IBM Workload Scheduler Version 10.2.6 chargeable components require manual deployment of software tags:

Table 117. Chargeable software components that require software tag deployment on managed nodes

Chargeable Software Components	Assigned Software tags
IBM Workload Scheduler for IBM Applications 10.2.6	ibm.com_IBM_Workload_Scheduler_for_IBM_Applications-10.2.6.swidtag



Note: The IBM Workload Scheduler for IBM Applications license can be used for all the IBM Workload Scheduler access methods and application plug-ins available on the Automation Hub, except a list of plug-ins that support only the Per Job license model, see table [Table 3 on page 700](#) for the complete list.

Complete the following procedure to manually deploy dedicated software tags **on each managed node** and calculate PVU consumption:

1. Identify the remote nodes that are managed by each of your chargeable components. For example, the remote nodes that are managed by the application server that you are connecting to, with IBM Workload Scheduler plug-in for IBM InfoSphere DataStage.
2. Extract assigned software tags from the `ILMT_IWS_for_Applications_and_agentless.zip` file that is included in your Agent installation media.
3. Place the assigned software tag anywhere on the managed node.
4. Wait for the next software scan in License Metric Tool to have the chargeable software components reported.
5. It is recommended that you check whether License Metric Tool reporting matches with currently managed nodes before signing each License Metric Tool report.



Note: if you cannot deploy the `ibm.com_IBM_Workload_Scheduler_for_IBM_Applications-10.2.6.swidtag` license tag on the node, then this license metric cannot be used, and you need to use the Per job license model.

Each single agent, which contributes to the license usage of the product, is installed with multiple tags, as follows:

- IWS Agent
- IWS Dynamic agent
- IWS Fault Tolerant Agent

All these three tags represent an IBM® Workload Scheduler agent and need to be bundled to IBM® Workload Scheduler in IBM License Metric Tool. For more information about bundling to a product, see the related documentation, for example [Automatic bundling](#).

The master domain manager centrally maintains the history of the plug-in jobs that you run in your environment. The history can be used:

- During audits to verify which systems are actually managed by IBM Workload Scheduler.
- To check periodically the result of your License Metric Tool reporting.
- To verify your PVU license entitlement.

An SQL query is provided to access the history in the database. You can run the query either from the command-line interface of your database or by creating your custom SQL report tasks from the Dynamic Workload Console as described in *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

For each job definition in the database, the SQL query returns the:

1. Type of the plug-in job.
2. Name of the workstation on which the job is defined.
3. Name of the job.
4. XML file containing the name of the remote server on which the job ran. If the XML file does not contain the name of the remote server, you can find it in the plug-in properties file in the TWS/JavaExt/cfg agent folder.

- For DB2, IDS, MSSQL database types:

```
SELECT JOD_TASK_TYPE as Job_type, WF.FOL_PATH as Workstation_folder_name,
WKC_NAME as Workstation_name, JF.FOL_PATH as Job_folder_name, JOD_NAME as
Job_name,
JOD_TASK_STRING as Job_definition
FROM ((MDL.JOD_JOB_DEFINITIONS J inner join MDL.FOL_FOLDERS JF on
J.FOL_ID=JF.FOL_ID)
inner join MDL.WKC_WORKSTATION_CLASSES W on J.WKC_ID=W.WKC_ID)
inner join MDL.FOL_FOLDERS WF on W.FOL_ID=WF.FOL_ID)
WHERE JOD_BY_JSDDL='Y' and UPPER(JOD_TASK_TYPE) NOT IN ('EXECUTABLE',
'DISTRIBUTEDSHADOWJOB', 'ZSHADOWJOB')
ORDER BY JOD_TASK_TYPE, WKC_NAME, JOD_NAME
```

- For Oracle database type:

```
SELECT JOD_TASK_TYPE as Job_type, WF.FOL_PATH as Workstation_folder_name,
WKC_NAME as Workstation_name, JF.FOL_PATH as Job_folder_name, JOD_NAME as
Job_name,
JOD_TASK_STRING as Job_definition
FROM ((twuser.JOD_JOB_DEFINITIONS J inner join twuser.FOL_FOLDERS JF on J.FOL_ID=JF.FOL_ID)
inner join twuser.WKC_WORKSTATION_CLASSES W on J.WKC_ID=W.WKC_ID)
inner join twuser.FOL_FOLDERS WF on W.FOL_ID=WF.FOL_ID)
WHERE JOD_BY_JSDDL='Y' and UPPER(JOD_TASK_TYPE) NOT IN ('EXECUTABLE',
'DISTRIBUTEDSHADOWJOB', 'ZSHADOWJOB')
ORDER BY JOD_TASK_TYPE, WKC_NAME, JOD_NAME
```

where **twuser** is the name of the IBM Workload Scheduler schema.

The following example shows the query output for a **Datastage** job type:

```
datastage NY_1 DS_JOB <?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>
<jsdl:jobDefinition xmlns:jsdl="http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/scheduling/1.0/jsdl"
xmlns:jsdldatastage="http://www.ibm.com/xmlns/prod/scheduling/1.0/jsdldatastage"
name="DATASTAGE">
  <jsdl:application name="datastage">
    <jsdldatastage:datastage>
      <jsdldatastage:DataStageParameters>
        <jsdldatastage:DataStagePanel>
```

```
<jsdldatastage:Logon>
<jsdldatastage:Domain>ncxx4175.romelab.it.ibm.com:9080</jsdldatastage:Domain>
<jsdldatastage:Server>ncxx4175</jsdldatastage:Server>
<jsdldatastage:UserName>isadmin</jsdldatastage:UserName>
<jsdldatastage:password>{aes}ScWNLDaHuN9X5sbtvAVky3RVd7gOkJqNerDbFbpwrDg=
</jsdldatastage:password>
</jsdldatastage:Logon>
<jsdldatastage:JobDefinitionGroup>
<jsdldatastage:ProjectNameGroup>
<jsdldatastage:ProjectName>twS4apps</jsdldatastage:ProjectName>
</jsdldatastage:ProjectNameGroup>
<jsdldatastage:JobNameButtonGroup>
<jsdldatastage:JobNameRadioButton>
<jsdldatastage:JobName>dsj01_succ</jsdldatastage:JobName>
</jsdldatastage:JobNameRadioButton>
</jsdldatastage:JobNameButtonGroup>
<jsdldatastage:FileRemotePath/>
</jsdldatastage:JobDefinitionGroup>
<jsdldatastage:JobExecutionGroup/>
</jsdldatastage:DataStagePanel>
<jsdldatastage:OptionsPanel>
<jsdldatastage:JobOptionsGroup>
<jsdldatastage:WarningLimitButtonGroup>
<jsdldatastage:NoWarningLimitButton/>
</jsdldatastage:WarningLimitButtonGroup>
<jsdldatastage:RowLimitButtonGroup>
<jsdldatastage:NoRowLimitButton/>
</jsdldatastage:RowLimitButtonGroup>
<jsdldatastage:OperationalMetadataGroup>
<jsdldatastage:UseDefault/>
</jsdldatastage:OperationalMetadataGroup>
</jsdldatastage:JobOptionsGroup>
</jsdldatastage:OptionsPanel>
<jsdldatastage:DataStageParameters>
</jsdldatastage:datastage>
</jsdl:application>
</jsdl:jobDefinition>
```

Table 118. IBM Workload Scheduler chargeable access methods and application plug-ins

IBM Workload Scheduler access methods and application plug-ins
Salesforce
SAP Hana cloud platform Application lifecycle
SAP Hana Extended Application Services (XS)
Provisioning
IBM Cloud
Microsoft Azure
Amazon EC2
Google Deployment Manager

Table 118. IBM Workload Scheduler chargeable access methods and application plug-ins

(continued)

IBM Workload Scheduler access methods and application plug-ins
Azure Resource Manager
AWS Cloud formation
Kubernetes Batch Jobs
AWS SNS
AWS SQS
AWS Lambda
Google Cloud Storage
Google Dataflow
Google Cloud Functions
Azure DataLake Storage
Azure Data Bricks
Automation Anywhere Bot Runner
Automation Anywhere Bot Trader
Blue Prism
Chef Bootstrap
Chef Runlist
Ansible
UDeploy Code
HCL Launch
Hadoop Distributed File system
Apache Spark
Oracle UCM
Hadoop MapReduce
Oozie
Cloudant

Per Job license model

About this task

To generate a report that summarizes your monthly per-job license usage, you can generate a license metric tag file (SLMTag). The SLM tag that is generated applies the **10 monthly jobs** pricing method where, the job count increments by 1 for every 10 successfully executed jobs you run and 1 job is counted when you run anywhere from 1 to 10 jobs. For example, if you run 34 jobs, 4 licenses are counted.

In the **optman** global options, use the **licenseType** keyword to define the pricing model. If you set the **licenseType** keyword to **byWorkstation**, you can then define the pricing model to be applied for each single workstation at creation time, specifying either **perServer** or **perJob**. If you select the **perServer** setting in **optman**, see [Processor Value Unit license model on page 697](#) for more information about tracking license consumption.

The queries listed below apply when you select either the **byWorkstation** or **perJob** pricing models in **optman** to return the license consumption tracking. If you select the **byWorkstation** value, the queries listed below return the number of records with **license type=J** generated by successful jobs on workstations which are set to **license type=perJob**.

You can optionally retrieve consumption information for a subset of workstations. To obtain this information, remove the comment before the lines:

```
-- "((Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME1' AND
-- ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN = '/FOL_WKS1/') OR
-- (Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME2' AND
-- ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN = '/FOL_WKS2/')) and "
```

remove the double dashes (--), and replace the **'/FOL_WKS1/', 'WKS_NAME1', '/FOL_WKS2/', 'WKS_NAME2'** strings with your folder and workstation couples.

The master domain manager centrally maintains the history of the jobs that you run in your environment. By using the **optman** global option, **statsHistory**, you can set the number of days for which you maintain the history of the jobs. To track your monthly per-job license usage, set the value of **statsHistory** to 400 (which is the default value). For more information about **statsHistory**, see [Global options - detailed description on page 27](#).

For the SQL statement to generate the SLMTag file, see the following samples:

- For **DB2** database type:

```
SELECT '<SchemaVersion>2.1.1</SchemaVersion>'
<SoftwareIdentity>
<Name>IBM Workload Automation</Name>
<PersistentId>3303c35cbc08435080502d621d5cdbff</PersistentId>
<InstanceId>/opt/IBM/TWA</InstanceId>
</SoftwareIdentity>' as xml from sysibm.sysdummy1
UNION
SELECT xml_metrics as xml
FROM (SELECT CONCAT ('<Metric logTime="',CONCAT(current_date,CONCAT
('T',CONCAT(replace(current_time, '.', ':'),CONCAT('+00:00">
<Type>10_MONTHLY_JOBS</Type>
<Value>',CONCAT(JobNbr,CONCAT('</Value>
<Period><StartTime>',CONCAT(Year,CONCAT('-',CONCAT
(trim(VARCHAR_FORMAT(Month,'00')),CONCAT('-01T00:00:01+00:00</StartTime>
<EndTime>',CONCAT(Year,CONCAT('-',CONCAT(trim(VARCHAR_FORMAT(
Month,'00')),CONCAT('-',CONCAT(LAST_DAY,'T23:59:00+00:00</EndTime>
</Period></Metric>')))))))))))) as xml_metrics
```

```

FROM (SELECT Year, Month,
CASE
when Month = 2 then '28'
when Month = 4 then '30'
when Month = 6 then '30'
when Month = 9 then '30'
when Month = 11 then '30'
else '31'
end as LAST_DAY,
(COUNT(*)+9)/10 AS JobNbr,
current date as current_date,
current time as current_time
from (SELECT unique year(Job_run_date_time) AS Year,
month(Job_run_date_time)AS Month, day(Job_run_date_time) AS day,
JOB_STREAM_WKS_FOL_NAME, JOB_STREAM_WKS_NAME_IN_RUN, JOB_STREAM_FOLDER_NAME, JOB_STREAM_NAME_IN_RUN,
JOB_NAME_IN_RUN FROM MDL.JOB_HISTORY_V
WHERE Job_status='S' and Workstation_license_type='J' and
-- ((Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME1' AND
-- ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN = '/FOL_WKS1/') OR
-- (Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME2' AND
-- ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN = '/FOL_WKS2/')) and
(Actual_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN, Actual_workstation_name_in_run) not in
(select FOL_PATH, WKS_NAME from MDL.WKS_WORKSTATIONS W JOIN MDL.FOL_FOLDERS
F ON W.FOL_ID=f.FOL_ID where W.WKS_AGENT_TYPE='E'))
GROUP BY Year, Month))
ORDER BY xml desc

```

- For **Oracle** database type:

```

SELECT '<SchemaVersion>2.1.1</SchemaVersion>'
<SoftwareIdentity>
<Name>IBM Workload Automation</Name>
<PersistentId>3303c35cbc08435080502d621d5cdbff</PersistentId>
<InstanceId>/opt/IBM/TWA</InstanceId>
</SoftwareIdentity>' as xml from dual
UNION
SELECT xml_metrics as xml
FROM (SELECT '<Metric logTime="' || cdate || 'T' || ctime || '+00:00"'
<Type>10_MONTHLY_JOBS</Type>
<Value>' || JobNbr || '</Value>'
<Period>
<StartTime>' || Year || '-' || trim(TO_CHAR(Month,'00')) ||
'-01T00:00:01+00:00</StartTime>
<EndTime>' || Year || '-' || trim(TO_CHAR(Month,'00')) || '-'
|| LAST_DAY || 'T23:59:00+00:00
</EndTime></Period></Metric>' as xml_metrics
FROM (SELECT Year, Month,
CASE
when Month = 2 then '28'
when Month = 4 then '30'
when Month = 6 then '30'
when Month = 9 then '30'
when Month = 11 then '30'
else '31'
end as LAST_DAY,
CAST((COUNT(*)+9)/10 AS INT) AS JobNbr,
TO_CHAR(SYSDATE, 'YYYY-MM-DD') as cdate,
TO_CHAR(SYSDATE, 'HH24:MI:SS') as ctime
from (
SELECT unique EXTRACT(year FROM Job_run_date_time) AS Year,

```

```

EXTRACT(month FROM Job_run_date_time) AS Month,
EXTRACT(day FROM Job_run_date_time) AS Day,
JOB_STREAM_WKS_FOL_NAME,
JOB_STREAM_WKS_NAME_IN_RUN,
JOB_STREAM_FOLDER_NAME,
JOB_STREAM_NAME_IN_RUN,
JOB_NAME_IN_RUN
FROM JOB_HISTORY_V
WHERE Job_status='S' and Workstation_license_type='J' and
-- ((Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME1' AND
-- ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN = '/FOL_WKS1/') OR
-- (Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME2' AND ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN = '/FOL_WKS2/')) and
  (Actual_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN, Actual_workstation_name_in_run) not in
  (select FOL_PATH, WKS_NAME from WKS_WORKSTATIONS W JOIN FOL_FOLDERS F ON
W.FOL_ID=f.FOL_ID where W.WKS_AGENT_TYPE='E'))
GROUP BY Year, Month))
ORDER BY xml desc

```

- For IDS database type:

```

SELECT '<SchemaVersion>2.1.1</SchemaVersion><SoftwareIdentity><Name>IBM
Workload
Automation</Name><PersistentId>3303c35cbc08435080502d621d5cdbff</Persistent
Id><InstanceId>/opt/IBM/TWA</InstanceId></SoftwareIdentity>' as xml FROM
SYSTABLES
UNION
SELECT xml_metrics as xml FROM (SELECT CONCAT ('<Metric
logTime=""',CONCAT(current_date,CONCAT('T',CONCAT
(current_time,CONCAT('+00:00"><Type>10_MONTHLY_JOBS</Type><Value>',CONCAT(r
ound(JobNbr,0),CONCAT('</Value><Period><StartTime>',CONCAT(Year,CONCAT ('-
',CONCAT(Month,CONCAT('-01T00:00:01+00:00</StartTime><EndTime>
',CONCAT(Year,CONCAT('- ',CONCAT(Month,CONCAT('- ',CONCAT(LAST_DAY, 'T23:59:00+00:00</EndTime>
</Period></Metric>'))))))))))))))) as xml_metrics
FROM (SELECT Year,
replace(TO_CHAR(Month, "**"),'*','0') AS Month,
CASE
when Month = 2 then '28'
when Month = 4 then '30'
when Month = 6 then '30'
when Month = 9 then '30'
when Month = 11 then '30'
else '31'
end as LAST_DAY,
(COUNT(*)+9)/10 AS JobNbr,
TO_CHAR(today,'%Y-%m-%d') as current_date,
TO_CHAR(extend(current, hour to second),'%H:%M:%S') as current_time
FROM (SELECT unique year(Job_run_date_time) AS Year,
month(Job_run_date_time) AS Month, day(Job_run_date_time) AS day,
JOB_STREAM_WKS_FOL_NAME, JOB_STREAM_WKS_NAME_IN_RUN,
JOB_STREAM_FOLDER_NAME, JOB_STREAM_NAME_IN_RUN,
JOB_NAME_IN_RUN
FROM MDL.JOB_HISTORY_V
WHERE Job_status='S' and Workstation_license_type='J' and
-- ((Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME1' AND
-- ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN = '/FOL_WKS1/') OR
-- (Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME2' AND ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN = '/FOL_WKS2/')) and
not exists (select 1 from MDL.WKS_WORKSTATIONS W JOIN MDL.FOL_FOLDERS F ON
W.FOL_ID=F.FOL_ID where W.WKS_AGENT_TYPE='E' AND
Actual_wks_folder_name_in_run = F.FOL_PATH AND
Actual_workstation_name_in_run = W.WKS_NAME))
GROUP BY Year, Month))
ORDER BY xml desc

```

- For **MSSQL** database type:

```

SELECT '<SchemaVersion>2.1.1</SchemaVersion>'
<SoftwareIdentity>
<Name>IBM Workload Automation</Name>
<PersistentId>3303c35cbc08435080502d621d5cdbff</PersistentId>
<InstanceId>/opt/IBM/TWA</InstanceId>
</SoftwareIdentity>' as xml
UNION
SELECT b.xml_metrics as xml
FROM (SELECT 'Metric logTime=' + CONVERT(nvarchar(19), a.datetime, 126)
+ '+00:00'>
<Type>10_MONTHLY_JOBS</Type>
<Value>' + CONVERT(varchar(10), a.JobNbr) + '</Value><Period>
<StartTime>' + CONVERT(varchar(10), a.Year) + '-' + RIGHT('00' +
CONVERT(varchar(2),
a.Month), 2) + '-01T00:00:01+00:00</StartTime>
<EndTime>' + CONVERT(varchar(10), a.Year) + '-' + RIGHT('00' + CONVERT(varchar(2),
a.Month), 2) + '-' + a.LAST_DAY + 'T23:59:00+00:00</EndTime>
</Period></Metric>' as xml_metrics
FROM (SELECT Year, Month,
CASE
when Month = 2 then '28'
when Month = 4 then '30'
when Month = 6 then '30'
when Month = 9 then '30'
when Month = 11 then '30'
else '31'
end as LAST_DAY,
(COUNT(*)+9)/10 AS JobNbr, SYSDATETIME() as datetime,
CONVERT (date, SYSDATETIME()) as cdate,
CONVERT (time, SYSDATETIME()) as ctime
FROM (SELECT distinct year(Job_run_date_time) AS Year,
month(Job_run_date_time) AS Month, day(Job_run_date_time) AS day,
Job_stream_wks_fol_name, Job_stream_wks_name_in_run,
Job_stream_folder_name, Job_stream_name_in_run,
Job_name_in_run
FROM MDL.JOB_HISTORY_V
WHERE Job_status='S' and Workstation_license_type='J' and
--((Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME1' AND
-- Actual_wks_folder_name_in_run = '/FOL_WKS1/') OR
-- (Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME2' AND Actual_wks_folder_name_in_run = '/FOL_WKS2/')) AND
not exists (select 1 from MDL.WKS_WORKSTATIONS W JOIN MDL.FOL_FOLDERS F ON
W.FOL_ID=F.FOL_ID where W.WKS_AGENT_TYPE='E' AND
Actual_wks_folder_name_in_run = F.FOL_PATH AND
Actual_workstation_name_in_run = W.WKS_NAME)) r
GROUP BY Year, Month) a) b
ORDER BY xml desc

```

The following example shows a license metric tag file with the **10 monthly jobs** that ran in your environment:

```

<SchemaVersion>2.1.1</SchemaVersion>
<SoftwareIdentity>
<Name>IBM Workload Scheduler</Name>
<PersistentId>3303c35cbc08435080502d621d5cdbff</PersistentId>
<InstanceId>/opt/IBM/TWA</InstanceId>
</SoftwareIdentity>
<Metric logTime="2019-04-09T16:07:20+00:00">
<Type>10_MONTHLY_JOBS</Type>
<Value>2</Value>
<Period><StartTime>2019-03-01T00:00:01+00:00</StartTime>

```

```
<EndTime>2019-03-31T23:59:00+00:00</EndTime></Period>
</Metric>
<Metric logTime="2019-04-09T16:07:20+00:00">
<Type>10_MONTHLY_JOBS</Type>
<Value>22</Value>
<Period><StartTime>2019-02-01T00:00:01+00:00</StartTime>
<EndTime>2019-02-28T23:59:00+00:00</EndTime></Period>
</Metric>
```

Queries to verify the number of jobs you run every month

About this task

An SQL query is provided that accesses the job history in the database to verify the number of jobs that you run every month in your environment. The job runs calculated with this query are not grouped in groups of 10 as with the previous queries, but are instead, the total number of jobs that ran.

You can run the SQL query either from the command-line interface of your database, or by creating your custom SQL report tasks from the Dynamic Workload Console, as described in the related section in *Dynamic Workload Console User's Guide*.

- For **DB2** database type:

```
SELECT Year, Month, count(*) AS JobNbr from
(SELECT unique year(Job_run_date_time) AS Year,
month(Job_run_date_time) AS Month, day(Job_run_date_time) AS day,
JOB_STREAM_WKS_FOL_NAME, JOB_STREAM_WKS_NAME_IN_RUN,
JOB_STREAM_FOLDER_NAME, JOB_STREAM_NAME_IN_RUN,
JOB_NAME_IN_RUN
FROM MDL.JOB_HISTORY_V
WHERE Job_status='S' and Workstation_license_type='J' and
-- ((Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME1' AND
-- ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN = '/FOL_WKS1/') OR
-- (Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME2' AND
-- ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN = '/FOL_WKS2/')) and
(ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN, Actual_workstation_name_in_run) not in
(select FOL_PATH, WKS_NAME from MDL.WKS_WORKSTATIONS W JOIN MDL.FOL_FOLDERS
F ON W.FOL_ID=f.FOL_ID where W.WKS_AGENT_TYPE='E'))
GROUP BY Year, Month
```

- For **ORACLE** database type:

```
SELECT Year, Month, cast (count(*) AS INT) AS JobNbr from
(SELECT unique EXTRACT(year FROM Job_run_date_time) AS Year,
EXTRACT(month FROM Job_run_date_time) AS Month,
EXTRACT(day FROM Job_run_date_time) AS Day,
JOB_STREAM_WKS_FOL_NAME,
JOB_STREAM_WKS_NAME_IN_RUN,
JOB_STREAM_FOLDER_NAME,
JOB_STREAM_NAME_IN_RUN,
JOB_NAME_IN_RUN
FROM JOB_HISTORY_V
WHERE Job_status='S' and Workstation_license_type='J' and
-- ((Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME1' AND
-- ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN = '/FOL_WKS1/') OR
-- (Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME2' AND
```

```
-- ACTUAL_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN = '/FOL_WKS2/') and
(Actual_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN, Actual_workstation_name_in_run) not in
(select FOL_PATH, WKS_NAME from WKS_WORKSTATIONS W JOIN FOL_FOLDERS F ON
W.FOL_ID=F.FOL_ID where W.WKS_AGENT_TYPE='E'))
GROUP BY Year, Month
```

- For **MSSQL, Azure SQL, and Google Cloud SQL for SQL server** database types:

```
SELECT Year, Month, count(*) AS JobNbr from
(SELECT distinct year(Job_run_date_time) AS Year, month(Job_run_date_time) AS Month,
day(Job_run_date_time) AS day, Job_stream_wks_fol_name,
Job_stream_wks_name_in_run, Job_stream_folder_name,
Job_stream_name_in_run, Job_name_in_run
FROM MDL.JOB_HISTORY_V
WHERE Job_status='S' and Workstation_license_type='J' and
--((Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME1' AND
-- Actual_wks_folder_name_in_run = '/FOL_WKS1/') OR
-- (Actual_workstation_name_in_run = 'WKS_NAME2' AND
-- Actual_wks_folder_name_in_run = '/FOL_WKS2/') AND
not exists (select 1 from MDL.WKS_WORKSTATIONS W JOIN MDL.FOL_FOLDERS F ON
W.FOL_ID=F.FOL_ID where W.WKS_AGENT_TYPE='E' AND
Actual_wks_folder_name_in_run = F.FOL_PATH AND
Actual_workstation_name_in_run = W.WKS_NAME)) r
GROUP BY Year, Month
```

- For **PostgreSQL** database type:

```
SELECT Year, Month, COUNT(*) AS JobNbr
FROM (
  SELECT DISTINCT
    CAST(EXTRACT(YEAR FROM Job_run_date_time) AS INTEGER) AS Year,
    CAST(EXTRACT(MONTH FROM Job_run_date_time) AS INTEGER) AS Month,
    CAST(EXTRACT(DAY FROM Job_run_date_time) AS INTEGER) AS Day,
    JOB_STREAM_WKS_FOL_NAME,
    JOB_STREAM_WKS_NAME_IN_RUN,
    JOB_STREAM_FOLDER_NAME,
    JOB_STREAM_NAME_IN_RUN,
    JOB_NAME_IN_RUN
  FROM MDL.JOB_HISTORY_V
  WHERE
    Job_status = 'S'
    AND (Actual_WKS_FOLDER_NAME_IN_RUN, Actual_workstation_name_in_run) NOT IN (
      SELECT
        F.FOL_PATH,
        W.WKS_NAME
      FROM MDL.WKS_WORKSTATIONS W
      JOIN MDL.FOL_FOLDERS F ON W.FOL_ID = F.FOL_ID
      WHERE W.WKS_AGENT_TYPE = 'E'
    )
) sub
GROUP BY Year, Month;
```



Note:



- All jobs processed or managed by IBM® Workload Scheduler are counted, but the same job counts once if repeated more than once during the same day. To meet this requirement and be considered as the same job, jobs must contain the same *jobstream_workstation_name*, *jobstream_name* and *job_name* strings and not run on a remote engine.
- The SQL queries select only jobs that run successfully. The SQL queries do not count shadow jobs, jobs that run on agent for z/OS, and rerun jobs.

Using per job queries when upgrading from a version earlier than 9.4 Fix Pack 2

About this task

If you are upgrading from a version earlier than 9.4 FP2, then follow the steps listed below before you run the queries listed in [Per Job license model on page 701](#):

1. Upgrade all components in your environment to version 9.4, Fix Pack 2 or later.
2. Depending on your database, run one of the statements listed below as many times as necessary until the **History** table is entirely updated. Several runs might be necessary.
3. Run the queries listed in [Per Job license model on page 701](#).

If you are using a DB2 database, run the following statement:

```
UPDATE ( SELECT * FROM MDL.JHR_JOB_HISTORY_RUNS
WHERE WKC_LICENSE_TYPE = '-' FETCH FIRST 10000 ROWS ONLY )
SET WKC_LICENSE_TYPE = 'J'
```

If you are using an Oracle database, run the following statement:

```
UPDATE JHR_JOB_HISTORY_RUNS
  set WKC_LICENSE_TYPE = 'J'
 where WKC_LICENSE_TYPE = '-' and rownum <= 10000
```

If you are using an IDS database, run the following statement:

```
UPDATE MDL.JHR_JOB_HISTORY_RUNS SET WKC_LICENSE_TYPE = 'J' WHERE JOB_ID IN
(SELECT JOB_ID FROM
  (SELECT FIRST 10000 JOB_ID FROM MDL.JHR_JOB_HISTORY_RUNS WHERE
    WKC_LICENSE_TYPE = '-')
)
```

If you are using an MSSQL database, run the following statement:

```
UPDATE TOP (10000) MDL.JHR_JOB_HISTORY_RUNS set WKC_LICENSE_TYPE = 'J'
  where WKC_LICENSE_TYPE = '-'
```


Notices

This document provides information about copyright, trademarks, terms and conditions for product documentation.

© Copyright IBM Corporation 1993, 2016 / © Copyright HCL Technologies Limited 2016, 2025

This information was developed for products and services offered in the US. This material might be available from IBM in other languages. However, you may be required to own a copy of the product or product version in that language in order to access it.

IBM may not offer the products, services, or features discussed in this document in other countries. Consult your local IBM representative for information on the products and services currently available in your area. Any reference to an IBM product, program, or service is not intended to state or imply that only that IBM product, program, or service may be used. Any functionally equivalent product, program, or service that does not infringe any IBM intellectual property right may be used instead. However, it is the user's responsibility to evaluate and verify the operation of any non-IBM product, program, or service.

IBM may have patents or pending patent applications covering subject matter described in this document. The furnishing of this document does not grant you any license to these patents. You can send license inquiries, in writing, to:

*IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive, MD-NC119
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
US*

For license inquiries regarding double-byte character set (DBCS) information, contact the IBM Intellectual Property Department in your country or send inquiries, in writing, to:

*Intellectual Property Licensing
Legal and Intellectual Property Law
IBM Japan Ltd.
19-21, Nihonbashi-Hakozakicho, Chuo-ku
Tokyo 103-8510, Japan*

INTERNATIONAL BUSINESS MACHINES CORPORATION PROVIDES THIS PUBLICATION "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Some jurisdictions do not allow disclaimer of express or implied warranties in certain transactions, therefore, this statement may not apply to you.

This information could include technical inaccuracies or typographical errors. Changes are periodically made to the information herein; these changes will be incorporated in new editions of the publication. IBM may make improvements and/or changes in the product(s) and/or the program(s) described in this publication at any time without notice.

Any references in this information to non-IBM websites are provided for convenience only and do not in any manner serve as an endorsement of those websites. The materials at those websites are not part of the materials for this IBM product and use of those websites is at your own risk.

IBM may use or distribute any of the information you provide in any way it believes appropriate without incurring any obligation to you.

Licensees of this program who wish to have information about it for the purpose of enabling: (i) the exchange of information between independently created programs and other programs (including this one) and (ii) the mutual use of the information which has been exchanged, should contact:

IBM Director of Licensing
IBM Corporation
North Castle Drive, MD-NC119
Armonk, NY 10504-1785
US

Such information may be available, subject to appropriate terms and conditions, including in some cases, payment of a fee.

The licensed program described in this document and all licensed material available for it are provided by IBM under terms of the IBM Customer Agreement, IBM International Program License Agreement or any equivalent agreement between us.

The performance data discussed herein is presented as derived under specific operating conditions. Actual results may vary.

Information concerning non-IBM products was obtained from the suppliers of those products, their published announcements or other publicly available sources. IBM has not tested those products and cannot confirm the accuracy of performance, compatibility or any other claims related to non-IBM products. Questions on the capabilities of non-IBM products should be addressed to the suppliers of those products.

This information is for planning purposes only. The information herein is subject to change before the products described become available.

This information contains examples of data and reports used in daily business operations. To illustrate them as completely as possible, the examples include the names of individuals, companies, brands, and products. All of these names are fictitious and any similarity to actual people or business enterprises is entirely coincidental.

COPYRIGHT LICENSE:

This information contains sample application programs in source language, which illustrate programming techniques on various operating platforms. You may copy, modify, and distribute these sample programs in any form without payment to IBM, for the purposes of developing, using, marketing or distributing application programs conforming to the application programming interface for the operating platform for which the sample programs are written. These examples have not been thoroughly tested under all conditions. IBM, therefore, cannot guarantee or imply reliability, serviceability, or function of these programs. The sample programs are provided "AS IS", without warranty of any kind. IBM shall not be liable for any damages arising out of your use of the sample programs.

© (HCL Technologies Limited) (2025).

Portions of this code are derived from IBM Corp. Sample Programs.

© Copyright IBM Corp. 2016

Trademarks

IBM, the IBM logo, and ibm.com are trademarks or registered trademarks of International Business Machines Corp., registered in many jurisdictions worldwide. Other product and service names might be trademarks of IBM® or other companies. A current list of IBM® trademarks is available on the web at "Copyright and trademark information" at www.ibm.com/legal/copytrade.shtml.

Adobe™, the Adobe™ logo, PostScript™, and the PostScript™ logo are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe™ Systems Incorporated in the United States, and/or other countries.

IT Infrastructure Library™ is a Registered Trade Mark of AXELOS Limited.

Linear Tape-Open™, LTO™, the LTO™ Logo, Ultrium™, and the Ultrium™ logo are trademarks of HP, IBM® Corp. and Quantum in the U.S. and other countries.

Intel™, Intel™ logo, Intel Inside™, Intel Inside™ logo, Intel Centrino™, Intel Centrino™ logo, Celeron™, Intel Xeon™, Intel SpeedStep™, Itanium™, and Pentium™ are trademarks or registered trademarks of Intel™ Corporation or its subsidiaries in the United States and other countries.

Linux™ is a registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the United States, other countries, or both.

Microsoft™, Windows™, Windows NT™, and the Windows™ logo are trademarks of Microsoft™ Corporation in the United States, other countries, or both.



Java™ and all Java-based trademarks and logos are trademarks or registered trademarks of Oracle and/or its affiliates.

Cell Broadband Engine™ is a trademark of Sony Computer Entertainment, Inc. in the United States, other countries, or both and is used under license therefrom.

ITIL™ is a Registered Trade Mark of AXELOS Limited.

UNIX™ is a registered trademark of The Open Group in the United States and other countries.

Terms and conditions for product documentation

Permissions for the use of these publications are granted subject to the following terms and conditions.

Applicability

These terms and conditions are in addition to any terms of use for the IBM website.

Personal use

You may reproduce these publications for your personal, noncommercial use provided that all proprietary notices are preserved. You may not distribute, display or make derivative work of these publications, or any portion thereof, without the express consent of IBM.

Commercial use

You may reproduce, distribute and display these publications solely within your enterprise provided that all proprietary notices are preserved. You may not make derivative works of these publications, or reproduce, distribute or display these publications or any portion thereof outside your enterprise, without the express consent of IBM.

Rights

Except as expressly granted in this permission, no other permissions, licenses or rights are granted, either express or implied, to the publications or any information, data, software or other intellectual property contained therein.

IBM reserves the right to withdraw the permissions granted herein whenever, in its discretion, the use of the publications is detrimental to its interest or, as determined by IBM, the above instructions are not being properly followed.

You may not download, export or re-export this information except in full compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including all United States export laws and regulations.

IBM MAKES NO GUARANTEE ABOUT THE CONTENT OF THESE PUBLICATIONS. THE PUBLICATIONS ARE PROVIDED "AS-IS" AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, NON-INFRINGEMENT, AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE.

Index

Special Characters

- .jobmanrc 307
- .rhost, file 307
- <TWS_user>
 - changing password 631
 - owning processes 288
 - required security access for workload service assurance 253
- \$MASTER variable, resolve in mailman, local option 59

Numerics

- 2001, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2002, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2003, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2004, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2005, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2006, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2007, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2008, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2009, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2010, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2011, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2012, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2013, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2014, service in NetConf

- file 303
- 2015, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2016, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2017, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2018, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2021, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2022, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2023, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2501, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2502, service in NetConf
 - file 303
- 2503, service in NetConf
 - file 303

A

- aa, global option 32
- ABAP step definition
 - attribute 428
- ABAP/4 modules
 - SAP
 - importing 358
- accepted license
 - Processor Value Unit license model 697
- access control list
 - security 182
- access control list definition
 - security access control list 189
- access method
 - PeopleSoft
 - options 324
 - SAP
 - 350
 - SAP
 - common options 374
 - SAP
 - global configuration options 368

- SAP
 - local configuration options 371
- access method for
 - dynamic agent
 - overview 305
 - extended agent
 - overview 305
 - fault-tolerant agent, UNIX
 - local 307
 - UNIX
 - remote 307
- access, remote, for command-line, configuring 124
- action, object type, defining access 235
- actions on security objects
 - specifying actions on security objects 196
- activating
 - criteria profile 439
 - job interception 449
- Active directory
 - LDAP configuration 271
- Active Directory, authentication 264
- active-active
 - configuration 128
- Add User, global option 31, 31
- adding
 - security role 187
- Administering agents on AS/400 660
- Administering agents on i5/OS 660
- Administering agents on IBM i 660, 660
- Administering IBMi agents 660
- Administering IBMi jobs 660
- Administering jobs on AS/400 660
- Administering jobs on i5/OS 660
- administrative tasks 609
 - DB2 575
 - Oracle 581
- af, global option 31
- agent 617
- agent configuration
 - JobManager.ini file 71
 - maintenance 102
- agent log and trace files
 - twstrace syntax 78, 664
- agent logs encoding 75, 661
- agent logs setting 75, 661
- agent network configuration 681
- agent process
 - monitoring 290
- agent traces
 - modifying 78, 664
 - viewing settings 78, 664
- agent working directory
 - JobManager.ini file 71
- agents
 - critical, positioning 292
- ah, global option 28
- al, global option 27
- altpass, command 631
- APAR IJ35597 681
- APARs
 - IY92806 384, 452, 508
 - IY97424 447, 448
 - IZ03505 369, 369, 369, 369, 372, 372, 372, 372, 372
 - IZ12321 346

- IZ26839 510
- IZ33555 382
- IZ37273 406, 424
- IZ42262 409, 421, 427, 432
- application server 657
 - administrative tasks 609
 - automatic restart 654
 - configuration backup and restore 657
 - configuration files: backup and restore 657
 - encrypting profile properties 657
 - host name, modify 657
 - increase heap size 686, 692
 - monitor 654
 - SAP
 - 387
 - security settings, modify 644
 - TCP/IP ports, modify 657
 - trace settings 529
- application servers
 - multiple,
 - PeopleSoft
 - 327
- ApplicationServerStatusChanged event 657
- approachingLateOffset, global option 27
- appserver
 - auto restart, local option 53
 - check interval, local option 53
 - count reset interval, local option 53
 - max restarts, local option 53
 - min restart time, local option 53
- appserverbox
 - monitoring 296
- appservman 654
 - local options 655
 - not stopping while stopping the
 - WebSphere Application Server Liberty
 - 652
 - run from conman, process 304
- appservman process
 - monitoring 290
- archive settings for job data
 - configuring 108
- archived files 568
- archived plans list
 - modifying number 170
- archived plans number
 - displayed in Monitor Workload view 170
- as, global option 28
- at dependency, job streams without,
 - preventing from starting, global option 37
- attributes 227
- au, global option 31, 31
- auditing
 - empty. behavior, global option 33
- audit
 - database and plan 593
 - directory
 - as log file location 572
 - header format 595
 - log format 596
 - overview 592
 - plan, enabling, global option 36
- audit management
 - audit history maintenance, global option 28
 - audit store type, global option 28
 - database, enabling, global option 33
 - specify cleanup frequency, global option 41
- audit trails
 - maintaining 592, 593
- auditHistory, global option 28
- auditing

- enabling 593
- Self-Service Catalog 169
- Self-Service Dashboards 169
- storing info in a file 593
- storing info in both db and file 593
- storing info in db 593
- auditing data permanence
 - auditHistory global option 593
- auditing db info
 - enDbAudit 593
- auditing enabling
 - auditStore global option 593
- auditing facilities 592
- auditing plan info
 - enPlanAudit 593
- auditStore, global option 28
- authentication
 - Active Directory 264
 - basic user registry 264
 - IBM Directory Server 264
 - IBM Tivoli Directory Server 267
 - LDAP 264
 - Microsoft Active Directory 270
 - OpenID Connect 274
- authentication on SMTP connection, use,
 - global option 45
- authentication, configuring 264
- authorization profile
 - SAP
 - 354
 - transaction PFCG 355
 - transaction su02 354
- auto link flag 278
- auto restart, appservman 655
- automatic failover
 - enabling 621
- automatic failover actions, global option 32
- automatic failover, global option 31
- automatic maintenance, DB2
 - running manually 577
- automatic restart of application server 654
- automatically grant logon as batch, global
 - option 36
- autostart monman, local option 53
- availability 695
- average run time calculation, weighting factor,
 - global option 42

B

- backing up
 - log files 562
- backup
 - application server configuration 657, 657
 - backup
 - master domain manager
 - 560
 - log files 560
 - to offline storage 560
 - backup domain manager
 - definition 277
 - domain manager
 - backup definition 277
 - performance 684
 - switching 611, 612
 - backup event manager, global option 34
 - backup master domain manager
 - backing up files to 560
 - configuring 618
 - copying files to 618
 - definition 277
 - extended loss of 626
- from an agent 617
- permanent change 626
- selecting 617
- setting up 618
- switching 626
- backup master domain manager
 - configuration
 - 110
 - backup master, global option 34
 - backupConfig, used to backup application
 - server configuration 657
 - balancing
 - SAP
 - workload using server groups
 - 411
 - baseRecPrompt, global option 29
 - baseRecPropmt, additional prompts global
 - option 39
 - basic URL 137
 - basic user registry 264
 - configuration 150
 - batch processing ID
 - PeopleSoft
 - 328
 - batchman
 - deadline, minimum wait to check , local
 - option 53
 - dependency status, wait to check, local
 - option 53
 - file, minimum wait to check , local option 53
 - intercom.msg file, maximum wait to read,
 - local option 54
 - processes 287
 - production control file, minimum wait to
 - update, local option 54
 - starting 288
 - statistics reporting, enable, local option 54
 - status messages, send to standard list,
 - local option 54
 - tuning 678
 - until time, maximum wait to report expiry
 - of, local option 54
 - batchman process
 - monitoring 290
 - BDC wait
 - R/3 439
 - beacon 161
 - behind firewall
 - extended agent 280
 - behindfirewall option 279
 - bindUser, global option 29
 - bm check deadline, local option 53
 - bm check file, local option 53
 - bm check status, local option 53
 - bm check until, local option 54
 - bm look, local option 54
 - bm read, local option 54
 - bm status, local option 54
 - bm verbose, local option 54
 - bp, global option 29
 - broker backup configuration 627
 - broker configuration
 - modifying 110
 - broker configuration data 627
 - broker failover 627
 - broker server configuration
 - modifying 110
 - broker switch 627
 - BrokerWorkstation.properties
 - dynamic workload broker
 - workstation configuration

- 110
- bu, global option 29
- building
 - criteria hierarchy 438
- Business Information Warehouse support
 - SAP
 - 450
- Business Warehouse components
 - InfoPackage 450
 - process chain 450
 - SAP
 - 450
- Business Warehouse InfoPackage
 - displaying details 457
- Business Warehouse InfoPackage and
 - process chain
 - managing 451

C

- CA 546
- cache.dat, increasing size of 645
- caching mailbox 682
- calendar, object type, defining access 232, 236, 237
- calendars, enabling the copying of into Symphony, global option 40
- can be event processor, local option 54
- caonly, SSL auth mode, local option 62
- carry forward internetwork dependencies, global option 33
- carry forward resource quantities, global option 33
- carry forward, global option 32
- carryStates, global option 29
- CCLog
 - shared memory management 677
- CCMS
 - sending data from job throttler 471
- CCMS event
 - committing MTE alert 505
 - defining event rule, business scenario 495, 496
 - getting CCMS alert status 504
- cd, global option 47
- centralized security 212
- centralized security, global option 32
- Certificate Authority 536, 539
- certificate renewal 550
- certificate rotation 550
- certificates 536, 536, 536, 539, 541, 545, 546, 549
 - renewing 550
 - rotating 550
- Certman
 - 536, 536, 539, 541, 545, 546, 549
- cf, global option 32
- change default directory
 - change default directory when using the centralized agent update, local option 56
- changeHostProperties script 657
- changeSecurityProperties script 644
- changing
 - IP address or host name on the dynamic agent
 - 644
 - IP address or host name on the dynamic workload broker
 - server
 - 643
 - WebSphere Application Server Liberty file

- 641
 - workstation definition 642
 - workstation host name or IP address 640
- changing an agent to backup
- master domain manager
- 617
- changing password, RFC user
 - SAP
 - 362
- check interval, appservman 655
- check status of remote job, process start 304
- checkvtproc, run from conman on a client, process 304
- CHECKINTERVAL, PeopleSoft
 - option
 - 324
- checks, file dependency, impacting performance 680
- ci, global option 33
- clbox
 - monitoring 296
- CLI
 - default workstation when using, local option 56
 - host name when connecting from, local option 57
 - is installed as, local option 57
 - OpenSSL certificate file when using SSL with server, local option 55
 - OpenSSL cipher class, local option 54
 - OpenSSL trusted certificate directory when using SSL with server, local option 55
 - OpenSSL, enabling SSL server authentication, local option 55
 - port, local option 61
 - protocol, local option 61
 - proxy port, local option 61
 - proxy, local option 61
 - timeout, local option 66
 - useropts file, local option 66
- CLI SSL cipher suites, local option 55
- cli ssl cipher, local option 54
- cli ssl server auth, local option 55
- cli ssl server certificate, local option 55
- cli ssl trusted dir, local option 55
- cn, global option 30
- collecting job interception 442, 443
- command line
 - committing
 - SAP
 - event
 - 479, 505
 - defining extended agent job 319
 - defining extended agent workstation 315
 - getting CCMS alert status 504
 - monitoring
 - SAP
 - event
 - 390
- command line client
 - configuring remote access 124
- command line reporting
 - configuration 603
 - Oracle database configuration 603
 - Oracle JDBC drivers 603
- command-line prompt
 - composer 56
 - conman 56
- commands
 - console 133

- dumpsec 210
- evtsize 300
- makesec 211
- StartUp 289
- commands and scripts
 - .jobmanrc 307
 - altpass 631
 - appservman 654
 - backupConfig 657
 - changeHostProperties 657
 - changeSecurityProperties 644
 - dbexpand, impact on audit log file 598
 - dbreorg 578
 - dbrunstats 577
 - fault-tolerant agent access method on UNIX local 307
 - jobmanrc 307
 - link 278
 - makesec, impact on audit log file 598
 - restoreConfig 657
 - rmstdlist 569
 - startappserver 654, 656
 - startAppServer 652
 - StartUp 288
 - stopappserver 654, 656
 - stopAppServer 652
 - UNIX local
 - fault-tolerant agent access method on 307
 - unlink
 - usage 278
- common options, SAP
 - 374
- communications in the network 278
- companyName, global option 30
- composer
 - defining access for working with objects 232
 - prompt, local option 56
- composer program
 - defining extended agent job 319
 - defining extended agent workstation 315
- configuration
 - basic user registry 150
 - Dynamic Workload Console
 - 146
 - for LDAP 150
 - for single sign-on 150
 - ldap user registry 147
 - templates 648
 - user 147
 - user's portfolio 147
- configuration file
 - example, R/3
 - 346
- configuration file, netman 303
- configuration files
 - application server, backup and restore 657
 - backing up 560
- configuration options
 - PeopleSoft
 - 324
 - SAP
 - , common
 - 374
 - SAP
 - , global
 - 368

- , local
 - 371
- SAP
 - , usage
 - 386
- configuring 536
 - archive settings for job data 108
 - authentication 264
 - gateway 280
 - global resource matching 106
 - heartbeat signal 106
 - high availability 128
 - J2EE communication channel 114
 - J2EE jobs 114
 - job class inheritance for job throttling 469
 - job interception for job throttling 468
 - maximum number of results for global resource matching 106
 - parent-child for job throttling 450
 - SAP
 - 353
 - SAP
 - access method
 - 366
 - SAP
 - environment
 - 353
 - time interval for job allocation to resources 106
 - time interval for notifications on resources 106
 - time interval for retrying failed operations 108
 - tracing utility 344
 - WebSphere
 - Application Server
 - 114
 - configuring reports
 - Oracle database 177
 - configuring role-based security
 - role-based security 182, 188
- conman
 - defining access for working with objects 232
 - log type 596
 - prompt, local option 56
 - running appservman 304
 - running checkevtptrc on a client 304
 - running deployconf 304
 - running startappserver 304
 - running startevtptrc 304
 - running stopappserver 304
 - running stopevtptrc 304
 - running stopevtptrc on a client 304
 - running stopmon 304
 - running switchevtptrc 304
 - starting the find and return of a stdlist file 303
- connecting
 - SAP
 - 387
- connecting to SAP 394
- connection failed, wait to retry in netman, local option 60
- connection parameters
 - configuring 124
- connection to SAP
 - troubleshooting 509
- connectivity, impact on network 292

- considerations about return code mapping 339, 531
- console command 133
- console manager, start process 304
- console messages and prompts 133
- continue keyword 259
- control file
 - SAP
 - 357
- copying files to backup master domain manager 618
- correction and transport files
 - SAP
 - 357
- count reset interval, appservman 655
- courier
 - monitoring 296
- courier.msg file, wait to read in jobman, local option 59
- CPU optimization
 - job plugins 82, 668
- cpu, object type, defining access 232
- cpu, SSL auth mode, local option 62
- CPUREC statement
 - creating 316
- create
 - security domains 186
- create an SAP connection 156
- creating
 - action parameters for CCMS event rules 502
 - correlation rules for CCMS events 502
 - CPUREC statement 316
 - criteria profile 437
 - DOMREC statement 316
 - event rule based on CCMS alerts 497
 - event rule based on CCMS alerts, business scenario 495, 496
 - event rule based on IDocs 486
 - event rule based on IDocs, business scenario 485
 - event rule based on
 - SAP
 - event
 - 480
 - internetwork dependency based on SAP
 - event
 - 477, 480
 - job containing InfoPackage 451
 - job containing process chains 451
 - PeopleSoft
 - job
 - 332
 - RFC user,
 - SAP
 - 354
 - SAP jobs 391
 - criteria hierarchy
 - building 438
 - description 435
 - Criteria Manager 435
 - criteria profile
 - activating 439
 - creating 437
 - description 435
 - critical agents, positioning 292
 - critical job
 - riskConfidence, global option 44

- critical path processing, enabling, global option 39
- cross dependencies notification
 - timeout 43
- cs, global option 29
- current folder
 - local option 56
 - setting 56
- CUSTOM keyword, to filter SAP events 484
- customization 13
- customization procedure
 - SAP
 - 353
- customizing
 - news notification beacon 161
 - properties file 344, 344, 345
- customizing certificates MDM and dynamic agent 550
- CyberArk
 - certificate management 97
 - p12 certificates 97
 - pem certificates 97
 - secure communication 97
 - using CyberArk certificates 97
 - using your certificates 97
- CyberArk integration
 - agent configuration 91
 - configuration 71
 - profile configuration 91
- CyberArk parameters
 - configuration 92
- CyberArk setup 92
- CyberArk.ini
 - configuration 92

D

- DA certificates
 - rotating 550
- da, global option 33
- data file
 - SAP
 - 357
- data flows, planning for 294
- data maintenance 560
- data volumes, impact on network 292
- database
 - back up
 - to backup
 - master domain manager
 - 560
 - to offline storage 560
 - changing instance owner 582
 - collecting job metrics 607
 - log type 596
 - moving 584
 - plan replication 679
 - relocating to a different host 582
 - reorganization 562
 - upgrading version 582
 - database and plan audit 593
 - database audit enabling, global option 33
 - database change
 - configuring with
 - master domain manager
 - 584
 - configuring with
 - master domain manager

- with pools
 - 587
- database customization 582
- database driver
 - changing 638
- database host name
 - changing 638
- database instance owner
 - changing 638
- database job
 - configuring 121, 675
- database migration 584
- database migration procedure
 - master domain manager
 - 584
 - master domain manager
 - with pools
 - 587
- database migration with pools 587
- database name
 - changing 638
- database objects
 - Security access control list definition 189
 - Security domain definition 190
 - Security role definition 193
- database password
 - changing 638
- database port
 - changing 638
- database properties
 - changing 638
- database SSL connection
 - changing 638
- database with pools
 - moving 587
- date format, local option 56
- DB2
 - administrative tasks 575
 - automatic maintenance
 - running manually 577
 - changing database user password 631
 - collecting job metrics 607
 - increase maximum log capacity 687, 690
 - monitoring the lock list memory 579
 - passwords not used by TWS, changing 576
 - reorganization 562
 - reorganize database 578
 - tools, locating 576
 - tuning 680
 - user permissions for running the tools 576
- DB2 for zOS
 - collecting job metrics 608
- DB2 tools
 - dbgrant 575
 - dbreorg 575
 - dbrunstats 575
- dbexpand, command, impact on audit log
 - file 598
- dbreorg, DB2 tool 578
- dbrunstats, DB2 tool 577
- deadline, minimum wait to check , local
 - batchman option 53
- deadlineOffset, global option 30
- default ws, local option 56
- defining
 - ABAP step attribute 428
 - action parameters for CCMS event
 - rules 502
 - correlation rules for CCMS events 502
 - database objects
 - Security access control list 189

- Security domain 190
- Security role 193
- event rule based on CCMS alerts 497
- event rule based on CCMS alerts, business
 - scenario 495, 496
- event rule based on IDocs 486
- event rule based on IDocs, business
 - scenario 485
- event rule based on
 - SAP
 - event
 - 480
 - external command step attribute 431
 - external program step attribute 431
 - global options file 310
 - local options file 310
 - PeopleSoft
 - job
 - 332
 - SAP
 - event as internetwork dependency
 - 477, 480
 - job
 - 399, 453
 - SAP
 - job dynamically
 - 417
 - SAP jobs 391
 - variant
 - 394
 - supported agents
 - job
 - 318
 - supported agents
 - workstation
 - 313
- defining job
 - SAP
 - 399
 - SAP
 - , dynamically
 - 417
- definition
 - workstation changing 642
- delete 549
- delete folder
 - global option 40
- delete prompt
 - global option 40
- delete resource
 - global option 40
- deleting
 - ITWS for Apps 472
- SAP
 - job
 - 411
 - SAP
 - variant
 - 394
- dependency
 - based on
 - SAP
 - event, defining
 - 477, 480
 - based on
 - SAP
 - event, limitation with XBP 2.0
 - 477
 - committing

- SAP
 - event by external task
 - 479
 - mapping between definition and resolution,
 - SAP
 - 478
- dependency checks, file, impacting
 - performance 680
- dependency status, batchman wait to check,
 - local option 53
- deploymentFrequency, global option 31
- deplyconf, run from conman, process 304
- df, global option 31
- direct scheduling
 - J2EE jobs 113
- directories
 - audit 572
 - logs 569
 - methods 574
 - schedForecast 572
 - schedlog 570
 - schedTrial 572
 - tmp, as location for temporary files 574
 - traces 569
- directory
 - change default when using the centralized
 - agent update, local option 56
- disabling
 - news notification beacon 161
- disk full
 - monitoring 564
- disk space
 - maintaining enough available space 563
 - monitoring 564
 - used by backup
 - domain manager
 - impacting performance
 - 684
- disk usage
 - monitoring 564
- displaying details
 - Business Warehouse InfoPackage 457
 - Business Warehouse InfoPackage job 457
 - process chain job 457
 - SAP
 - job
 - 409
- do, global option 30
- domain
 - definition 277
 - master, definition 277
 - parent, definition 277
 - structure of, impact on critical agents 292
- domain manager
 - data flows 294
 - definition 277
 - failure 610
 - IP address validation 534
 - log file maintenance 568
 - loss of 610
 - mitigating loss of 610
 - network planning, role of 292
 - optimizing for critical activities 292
 - positioning for critical activities 292
 - role of in network planning 292
 - running without 610
 - switching 611, 612
 - temporary files 574
 - without 610
- domain user, resolving account in
 - Windows 695

- DOMREC statement
 - creating 316
- download directory, local option 56
- download scripts from z/OS
- master domain manager
- , starting process
 - 303
- DsGetDcName, API used to resolve Windows user ID account 695
- dumpsec command 210
- duplicate security domains 187
- duplicate security role 188
- duration, job, long, threshold, global option 42
- dynamic agent 277
 - changing IP address or host name 644
 - gateway configuration 280
 - overview 305
- dynamic agent certificates
 - rotating 550
- dynamic agent configuration
 - 110, 110
- dynamic agents
 - jobs cannot launch 309
- dynamic domain manager
 - configuring the
 - dynamic workload broker
 - server
 - 103
 - maintaining the
 - dynamic workload broker
 - server
 - 104
- dynamic domain manager configuration
 - 110
- dynamic job definition parameter description
 - SAP
 - 419
- dynamic job definition syntax
 - ABAP step definition attribute 428
 - external command step definition attribute 431
 - external program step definition attribute 431
 - SAP
 - 418
- dynamic scheduling 277
- dynamic workload broker security
 - dynamic workload broker
 - security roles and users and groups
 - 122, 122
- dynamic workload broker server
 - changing IP address or host name 643
 - changing URI data 104
 - configuring 103
 - exportserverdata 104
 - http communication 105
 - https communication 105
 - importserverdata 104
 - maintaining 104
 - unsecure communication 105
- dynamic workload broker server on
 - dynamic domain manager
 - configuring 103
 - maintaining 104
 - dynamic workload broker
 - server on
 - master domain manager

- configuring 103
- maintaining 104
- dynamic workload broker
 - users and roles
 - mapping security roles in
 - WebSphere Application Server Liberty
 - 122
 - modifying 122
 - dynamic workload broker workstation configuration
 - modifying 110
- Dynamic Workload Console
 - 137
 - authentication method 146
 - best browser to view graphical views 693
 - Chrome 694
 - configuration 137, 137, 146
 - configure to view reports 176
 - defining access for working with objects 232
 - defining
 - supported agents
 - job
 - 319
 - defining workstation for agent with access method 313
 - launch in context 137
 - local OS method 146
 - modifying 146
 - multiple production plan reports, affecting performance 691
 - PAM authentication method 146
 - Dynamic Workload Console configuration
 - templates 648
- Dynamic Workload Console
 - global settings
 - 156
- Dynamic Workload Console
 - customizing
 - 156
- dynamic workstations 277
- dynamically
 - defining
 - SAP
 - jobs
 - 418
 - dynamically, defining
 - SAP
 - job
 - 417

E

- ed, global option 34, 35
- ee, global option 39
- ef, global option 39
- eh, global option 35
- EIF event queue, increasing size of 645
- empty auditing, global option 33
- empty job streams, global option 34
- enable list security check 35
- enable support for objects in folders
 - folder support 37
 - security file 37
- enable the role based security model 37
- enabling
 - SSL communication 554
- enAddUser, global option 31, 31
- enAutomaticFailover
 - global option 23
- enAutomaticFailover, global option 31
- enAutomaticFailoverActions

- global option 23
- enAutomaticFailoverActions, global option 32
- enCarryForward, global option 32
- enCentSec, global option 32
- enCFinterNetworkDeps, global option 33
- enCFResourceQuantity, global option 33
- encrypting 657
- encrypting application server profile properties 657
- encrypting passwords 327, 362, 386
- encrypting user password
 - PeopleSoft
 - 327
 - SAP
 - 386
- encryption in motion 110
- encryption settings 135
- encryption, strong, enabling, global option 38
- end-to-end scheduling
 - defining extended agent job 320
 - defining supported agent workstation 316
- enDbAudit, global option 33
- enDbGetOpsAudit, global option 33
- enEmptySchedsAreSucc, global option 34
- enEventDrivenWorkloadAutomation, global option 34
- enEventDrivenWorkloadAutomationProxy, global option 35
- enEventProcessorHttpsProtocol, global option 35
- enForecastStartTime, global option 35
- engine
 - administrative tasks 609
- enigma program
 - encrypting user password 386
- enLegacyStartOfDayEvaluation, global option 35
- enListSecChk, global option 35
- enLogonBatch, global option 36
- enPlanAudit, global option 36
- enPreventStart, global option 37
- enRetainNameOnRerunFrom, global option 37
- enRoleBasedSecurityFileCreation, global option 37
- enSecFileExtendedFields 37
- enSSLFullConnection, global option 38
- enStartCondSuccOnDeadline, global option 38
- enStrEncrypt, global option 38
- enSwfaultTol, global option 38
- Enterprise Workload Manager
 - resource assignment 108
 - resource optimization 108
 - resource weight 108
 - retry on failure 108
- enTimeZone, global option 38
- enWhatIfAnalysis, global option 39
- enWorkloadServiceAssurance, global option 39
- error messages
 - IP address validation 533
- es, global option 33, 34
- event processor
 - managing 645
- event processor HTTPS protocol, global option 35
- event processor, enabling workstation to be, local option 54
- event rule
 - action parameters for CCMS event rules 502
 - based on CCMS alerts 496

- based on CCMS alerts, business scenario 495, 496
- based on IDocs 486
- based on IDocs, business scenario 485
- based on IDocs, matching criteria 487
- correlation rules for CCMS alerts 502
- definition 480
- monitoring
- SAP
- event
 - 390
 - SAP
 - , defining
 - 480
 - SAP
 - , filtering events
 - 484
 - SAP
 - , prerequisite to define
 - 389
- event rule management
 - IBM Z Workload Scheduler
 - connector remote server name
 - , global option 48
 - IBM Z Workload Scheduler
 - connector server name
 - , global option 48
 - IBM Z Workload Scheduler
 - connector server port
 - , global option 48
 - IBM Z Workload Scheduler
 - connector user name
 - , global option 48
 - IBM Z Workload Scheduler
 - connector user password
 - , global option 48
 - log history maintenance, global option 28, 41
 - mail sender name, global option 42
 - SMTP
 - port, global option 45
 - server name, global option 45
 - use authentication, global option 45
 - use SSL, global option 45
 - use TLS, global option 46
 - user name, global option 45
 - user password, global option 45
 - specify cleanup frequency, global option 41
 - event-driven workload automation
 - enablement, global option 34
 - event-driven workload automation proxy
 - enablement, global option 35
 - event, ApplicationServerStatusChanged 657
 - event, object type, defining access 239
 - eventProcessorEIFPort, global option 39
 - eventProcessorEIFSslPort, global option 39
 - eventrule, object type, defining access 232
 - events, logging 437
 - events, raising SAP 414
 - evtsize command 300
 - example
 - dynamic
 - SAP
 - job definition
 - 433
 - return code mapping 338
 - exporting SAP calendars
 - business scenario 473
 - exporting SAP R/3 calendars
 - r3batch export function 474
 - exportserverdata 104

- extended agent
 - behind firewall 280
 - definition 277
 - jobs cannot launch 309
 - overview 305
- extended agent job
 - SAP
 - 390
- extended agent job defining with
 - command line 319
- extended agent workstation, defining with
 - command line 315
 - ISPF 317
- extended and dynamic agent workstation
 - defining with
 - end-to-end scheduling 316
- external command step definition
 - attribute 431
- external program step definition
 - attribute 431
- extract 541
- extract certificates 541
- extRecPrompt, global option 39

F

- failover
 - automatic 621
- failure of
 - domain manager
 - 610
 - master domain manager
 - 616
- fault tolerant switch manager, enabling, global option 38
- fault-tolerant agent
 - backing up to, when used as backup
 - master domain manager
 - 560
 - changing to
 - backup master domain manager
 - 617
 - definition 277
 - fault-tolerant agent instances
 - automatic initialization 646
 - fault-tolerant switch manager
 - , impact on performance
 - 684
 - fc, global option 40
 - fd, global option 40
 - feature
 - job interception, setting
 - SAP
 - 444, 444
 - features
 - job interception and parent-child,
 - SAP
 - 440
 - job interception, activating
 - SAP
 - 449
 - job interception, collecting
 - SAP
 - 442, 443
 - job interception, implementing
 - SAP
 - 440
 - job interception, SAP 440
 - job interception, setting
 - SAP
 - 444
 - job throttling,
 - SAP
 - 467
 - parent-child R/3 450
 - PeopleSoft
 - 322
 - return code mapping 337
 - SAP
 - 347
 - feed 161
 - file 344
 - configuration for
 - R/3
 - 346
 - psagent.properties 344
 - r3batch.properties 344
 - return code mapping 338
 - file dependency checks impacting performance 680
 - file name
 - return code mapping 342
 - file proxy
 - high availability 111
 - load balancer 111
 - file start condition, defining job name, global option 40
 - file trigger, defining job name, global option 40
 - file, object type, defining access 239
 - files
 - .rhost 307
 - avoiding full file systems 563
 - batchman minimum wait to check , local option 53
 - configuration
 - backing up 560
 - forecast plan logs 572
 - host.equiv 307
 - job output, archived 571
 - JobManager.ini 280
 - JobManagerGW.ini 87, 673
 - localopts 48
 - log files
 - backing up 560
 - maintaining file system 563
 - NetConf
 - 303
 - Security
 - backing up 560
 - Symphony
 - archived 570
 - IP address validation 532
 - maximum number of records 305
 - overview 278
 - scanning by batchman 287
 - trial plan logs 572
 - useropts 70
 - fileStartConditionJobName, global option 40
 - filling mailboxes
 - monitoring 296
 - filling message queues
 - monitoring 296
 - filtering
 - SAP
 - events in security file
 - 484
 - final job stream, launch time, global option 46
 - FIPS
 - local option 63
 - FIPS compliance, local option 63
 - firewall bypass, starting 303
 - firewall support 279
 - flows, data, planning for 294

- folder
 - access 241
 - setting the current 56
- folder delete
 - global option 40
- folder, object type, defining access 232, 240
- folderDays
 - global option 40
- forecast plan logs 572
- forecast start time enablement, global options 35
- format, audit log files 596
- ftdown message queue, in backup domain manager 684
- ftup message queue, in backup domain manager 684
- full file systems, avoiding 563
- FullStatus
- mode, setting 287

G

- gateway
 - configuration 280
 - configure 87, 673
- generate 536, 539
- generate certificates 536, 539
- getaddrinfo() system call 532, 532
- Give access
 - Give access to user or group 182
- global option descriptions
 - approachingLateOffset 27
 - auditHistory 28
 - auditStore 28
 - automatic failover 31
 - automatic failover actions 32
 - baseRecPrompt 29
 - bindUser 29
 - carryforward 31, 31, 32
 - carryStates 29
 - companyName 30
 - deadlineOffset 30
 - deploymentFrequency 31
 - enCentSec 32
 - enCFinterNetworkDeps 33
 - enCFResourceQuantity 33
 - enDbAudit 33
 - enDbGetOpsAudit 33
 - enEmptySchedsAreSucc 34
 - enEventDrivenWorkloadAutomation 34
 - enEventDrivenWorkloadAutomationProxy 35
 - enEventProcessorHttpsProtocol 35
 - enForecastStartTime 35
 - enLegacyStartOfDayEvaluation 35
 - enListSecChk 35
 - enLogonBatch 36
 - enPlanAudit 36
 - enPreventStart 37
 - enRetainNameOnRerunFrom 37
 - enRoleBasedSecurityFileCreation 37
 - enSecFileExtendedFields 37
 - enSSLFullConnection 38
 - enStartCondSuccOnDeadline 38
 - enStrEncrypt 38
 - enSwfaultTol 38
 - enTimeZone 38
 - enWhatIfAnalysis 39

- enWorkloadServiceAssurance 39
- event manager backup 34
- eventProcessorEIFPort 39
- eventProcessorEIFSslPort 39
- extRecPrompt 39
- fileStartConditionJobName 40
- folderDays 40
- ignoreCals 40
- licenseType 40
- logCleanupFrequency 41
- logHistory 41
- logmanMinMaxPolicy 41
- logmanSmoothPolicy 42
- longDurationThreshold 42
- mailSenderName 42
- master backups 34
- maxLen 43
- minLen 43
- nn 44
- np 45
- nt 43
- nu 44
- promotionOffset 43
- resubmitJobName 44
- resubmitJobUserName 44
- riskConfidence 44
- smtpServerName 45
- smtpServerPort 45
- smtpUserName 45
- smtpUserPassword 45
- smtpUseSSL 45
- smtpUseTLS 46
- startConditionDeadlineOffset 47
- startOfDay 46
- statsHistory 47
- untilDays 47
- useAuthentication 45
- workstationLimit 47
- zOSRemoteServerName 48
- zOSServerName 48
- zOSServerPort 48
- zOSUserName 48
- zOSUserPassword 48
- global options
 - enAutomaticFailover 23
 - enAutomaticFailoverActions 23
 - workstationEventMgrListInAutomaticFailover 23
 - workstationMasterListInAutomaticFailover 24
- global options file
 - defining 310
 - mvsjes.opts 310, 312
 - mvsopc.opts 310, 312
 - name 310, 312
 - psagent.opts 310, 312
 - r3batch.opts 310, 312
- global options,
 - SAP 368
- global resource matching
 - configuring 106
- global settings
 - customizing 156
- graphical views, browser 693

H

- header format, audit log records 595
- header, log type 596
- heap size, application server, increase 686, 692
- heartbeat signal
 - configuring 106

- high availability
 - configuration 128
 - file proxy 111
- history, job statistics, global option 47
- host name
 - application server, modify 657
 - changing on the dynamic agent 644
 - changing on the dynamic workload broker server 643
 - impact of changing 534
- host name or IP address
 - changing 640
 - changing WebSphere Application Server Liberty 641
- host, for extended agents, definition 278
- host, when connecting from
 - command line client , local option 57
- host.equiv, file 307
- HTTPS protocol for event processor, global option 35

I

- IBM Directory Server, authentication 264
- IBM Tivoli Directory Server 267
- IBM Workload Scheduler
 - roles 147
- IBM Workload Scheduler agent
 - log configuration 75, 661
 - trace configuration 77, 662
- IBM Workload Scheduler instances
 - automatic initialization 646
 - IBM Workload Scheduler service 646
- IBM WAS61Service 655
- ic, global option 40
- IDoc
 - defining event rule 486
 - defining event rule, business scenario 485
 - defining event rule, matching criteria 487
- ignoreCals, global option 40
- ILMT
 - IBM License Metric Tool 697, 697
- implementing
 - job interception 440
- import 546
- import certificates 546
- importserverdata 104
- incoming message cache
 - enable in mailman, local option 59
 - resize in mailman, local option 59
- indirect scheduling
 - J2EE jobs 113
- InfoPackage
 - managing 451
 - user authorization 451
- InfoPackage schedule options
 - SAP 451
- inheritance r3batch
 - definition 313
- installing
 - ABAP modules,

- SAP
 - 353
- instance initialization 646
- instances
 - automatic initialization 646
- intercepted job
 - return code mapping 343
- interception criteria
 - setting,
 - SAP
 - feature
 - 444
- intercom
 - monitoring 296
- intercom.msg file, batchman maximum wait to read, local option 54
- internal Symphony table, determining the size of 305
- internetwork dependency
 - based on
 - SAP
 - event, defining
 - 477, 480
 - based on
 - SAP
 - event, limitation with XBP 2.0
 - 477
 - based on
 - SAP
 - event, limitation with XBP 3.0
 - 477
 - based on SAP R/3 event, prerequisites 476
 - committing
 - SAP
 - event by external task
 - 479
 - mapping between definition and resolution,
 - SAP
 - 478
 - placeholder
 - SAP
 - job
 - 477
- introduction
 - IBM Workload Scheduler
 - for
 - SAP
 - 347
 - PeopleSoft
 - 322
 - SAP
 - 350
- IP address
 - changing on the
 - dynamic agent
 - 644
 - changing on the
 - dynamic workload broker
 - server
 - 643
 - impact of changing 534
 - support for V6 532
 - validation 532
- is remote cli, local option 57
- ISPF
 - defining extended agent workstation 317
- ITWS_PSXA project
 - PeopleSoft
 - 328

J

- J2EE communication channel
 - configuring 114
- J2EE job
 - configuring 121, 675
- J2EE jobs
 - configuration for 113
 - configuring 114
 - direct scheduling 113
 - enabling 114
 - indirect scheduling 113
 - JMS 113
 - security settings 113
 - supported operations 113
 - WebSphere
 - Application Server
 - settings
 - 113
- J2EE jobs on agent
 - configuration 114, 116, 117
- J2EEJobExecutorConfig.properties
 - configuring 114
- Java heap size, application server,
 - increase 686, 692
- Java job
 - configuring 121, 675
- Java job configuration
 - JobManager.ini file 71
- Java Virtual Machine options 86, 672
- jm file no root, local option 56
- jm job table size, local option 57
- jm load user profile, local option 57
- jm look, local option 57
- jm nice, local option 57
- jm no root, local option 58
- jm promoted nice, local option 58
- jm promoted priority, local option 58
- jm read, local option 59
- JMS
 - J2EE jobs 113
- JnextPlan
 - when setting up a domain manager 618
- JnextPlan
 - , avoiding lock list memory problems
 - 579
- job
 - assigning a server group 411
 - PeopleSoft
 - 332
 - SAP
 - job state
 - 412
 - submitting for supported agent 321
- job definition
 - PeopleSoft
 - 332
 - SAP
 - 399
 - SAP
 - , dynamically
 - 417
- job definition parameter description
 - SAP
 - dynamic
 - 419
- job executors
 - configuring 121, 675
 - Java options 86, 672
- job
 - IBM Workload Scheduler
 - creating job containing InfoPackage 451
 - creating job containing process chain 451

- job interception
 - activating,
 - SAP
 - feature
 - 449
 - collecting,
 - SAP
 - feature
 - 442, 443
 - enabling and configuring for job
 - throttling 468
 - implementing,
 - SAP
 - feature
 - 440
 - setting placeholders in template file 449
 - setting,
 - SAP
 - feature
 - 440
- job management tasks wait in jobman, local option 57
- job metrics
 - collecting 607
 - SQL queries 607
- job output files, archived 571
- job plug-ins
 - configuring 121, 675
 - Java options 86, 672
- job state
 - SAP
 - 412
- job status change notification
 - timeout 43
- job status mapping
 - PeopleSoft
 - 334
- job streams
 - empty, behavior, global option 34
 - more than 180 000, impacting DB2 log files 685
 - without at dependency, preventing from starting, global option 37
 - without jobs, behavior, global option 33, 34
- job submissions, manual, impacting performance 680
- job table, size of in jobman, local option 57
- job throttling
 - business scenario 467
 - configuring logging properties 469
 - deleting ITWS for Apps 472
 - enabling and configuring job interception 468
 - enabling job class inheritance 469
 - options in options file 468
 - SAP
 - feature
 - 467
 - sending data to CCMS 471
 - starting 470
 - stopping 471
 - throttling_send_ccms_data 471
 - throttling_send_ccms_rate 471
- job times, minimum and maximum, logging and reporting, global option 41
- job tracking
 - PeopleSoft
 - 323

- job types with advanced options
 - authorization for running 232
 - configuration files 121, 675
 - configuring 121, 675
 - cpu access 232
 - customizing 121, 675
 - defining access 232
 - defining authorization 232
 - Java options 86, 672
- job types with advanced options
 - configuration files
 - location 121, 675
- job, object type, defining access 232, 243
- JobDispatcherConfig.properties
 - job age in archive database 108
 - job age in database 108
- jobman
 - tuning 678
- jobman and JOBMAN 56
 - courier.msg file, wait to read, local option 59
 - job management tasks wait, local option 57
 - launching by batchman 287
 - nice value to apply to critical UNIX or Linux jobs, local option 58
 - nice value to apply to UNIX or Linux jobs, local option 57
 - priority value to apply to critical Windows jobs, local option 58
 - root jobs, enabling the launch of, local option 58
 - size of job table, local option 57
 - starting 288
 - user profile to apply on a fault-tolerant agent, local option 57
- jobman process
 - monitoring 290
- JobManager.ini
 - files 280
- jobmanrc 307
- jobs
 - failing to launch on
 - dynamic agents
 - 309
 - failing to launch on extended agent 309
 - improving processing performance 682
 - late, when becoming, global option 27
 - long duration threshold, global option 42
 - more than 40 000, impacting Java heap size 685
 - new SAP 391
 - promotion of critical, eligibility for, global option 43
 - retaining name on rerun, global option 37
 - statistics history, global option 47
- jobs dynamic definition
 - SAP
 - 418
- jobthrottling.bat, usage parameter 471
- jobthrottling.sh, usage parameter 471
- JVM options 86, 672

K

- Kerberos
 - configuring 98
- Kerberos Authentication Protocol 98
- key rotation 135
- keystore 541
- killing
 - SAP
 - job

- 413
- L**
- late jobs, when becoming, global option 27
- launch in context 137
 - Dynamic Workload Console 137
- lb, global option 36
- lc, global option 41
- ld, global option 42
- LDAP
 - authentication 264
 - configuration 150
- LDAP servers
 - IBM Tivoli Directory Server (IDS) 268
 - Microsoft Active Directory 271
- ldap user registry
 - configuration 147
- le, global option 35
- lh, global option 41
- license
 - license management 697
 - per Job license model 701, 708
 - Per Job pricing 701
 - Processor Value Unit license model 697
 - Processor Value Unit pricing 697
 - version 9.4, Fix pack 2 708
 - license management
 - per Job license model 701
 - per Job statements 708
 - license metric tool
 - specify ln, global option 40
 - license metrics
 - license metric tool 697
 - license type
 - specify license type, global option 40
 - licenseType, global option 40
 - link command, using 278
 - link flag, auto 278
 - link to non-responding workstation, wait to retry in mailman, local option 59
- linking
 - concept 278
- Linux
 - jobs, nice value to apply when critical, local option 58
 - jobs, nice value to apply, local option 57
- list permission
 - enable option 35
- LJUSER,
- PeopleSoft
 - option
 - 324
 - lm, global option 41
 - ln, global option 40
 - load balancer
 - configuration 128
 - local option
 - current folder setting 56
- local option descriptions
 - appserver auto restart 53
 - appserver check interval 53
 - appserver count reset interval 53
 - appserver max restarts 53
 - appserver min restart time 53
 - autostart monman 53
 - bm check file 53, 53
 - bm check status 53
 - bm check until 54
 - bm look 54
 - bm read 54
 - bm stats 54
- bm verbose 54
- can be event processor 54
- caonly 62
- change default directory 56
- cli ssl cipher 54
- CLI SSL cipher suites 55
- cli ssl server auth 55
- cli ssl server certificate 55
- cli ssl trusted dir 55
- composer prompt 56
- conman prompt 56
- cpu 62
- date format 56
- default ws 56
- fips compliance 63
- host 57
- is remote cli 57
- jm file no root 56
- jm job table size 57
- jm load user profile 57
- jm look 57
- jm nice 57
- jm no root 58
- jm promoted nice 58
- jm promoted priority 58
- jm read 59
- merge stdlists 59
- mm cache mailbox 59
- mm cache size 59
- mm resolve master 59
- mm response 59
- mm retry link 59
- mm sound off 60
- mm symphony download timeout 60
- mm unlink 60
- nm mortal 60
- nm port 60
- nm read 60
- nm retry 60
- nm SSL full port 60
- nm SSL port 61
- port 61
- protocol 61
- proxy 61
- proxy port 61
- restricted stdlists 61
- SSL auth mode 62
- SSL auth string 62
- SSL CA certificate 62
- SSL certificate 63
- SSL certificate type 63
- SSL cipher suites 63, 95
- SSL config file 63, 95
- SSL encryption cipher 63, 95
- SSL key 63
- SSL key pwd 63
- SSL random seed 64
- SSL version 55, 64, 94
- stdlist width 64
- string 62
- switch sym prompt 65
- sync level 65
- syslog local 65
- tcp connect timeout 65
- tcp timeout 65
- this cpu 65
- timeout 66
- unison network directory 66
- useropts 66
- wr enable compression 66
- wr read 66

- wr unlink 66
- local options
 - file example 48
 - file template 48
 - setting 48
 - setting sysloglocal 133
 - syntax 48
- local options file
 - defining 310
 - name 310, 312
- local options, SAP
 - 371
- local security 208
- local UNIX
 - access method 306
- local user, resolving account in Windows 695
- localopts
 - nm ipvalidate 532
 - option for setting synch level 683
 - options for caching mailbox messages 682
 - options used for tuning 678
 - parameters for tuning mailman servers 302, 302
 - tuning for job-processing performance 682
 - used for appservman 655
- localopts file 48
- lock list memory, DB2, monitoring 579
- LOCKLIST, DB2 configuration parameter 579
- log capacity, DB2, increase 687, 690
- log configuration
 - IBM Workload Scheduler agent
 - 75, 661
- log files
 - audit
 - format 596
 - backing up 562
 - backup 560
 - improving performance 568
 - maintenance 102, 568
 - reducing space 568
- logCleanupFrequency, global option 41
- LOGFILSIZ, DB2 parameter 688
- logging raised events 437
- logging, impact on performance 677
- logging.properties
 - configuring 116
- logHistory, global option 41
- logmanMinMaxPolicy, global option 41
- logmanSmoothPolicy, global option 42
- logon as batch, granting automatically, global option 36
- logon group
 - SAP
 - 388
- LOGPRIMARY, DB2 parameter 688
- logs
 - agent encoding 75, 661
- logs directory, as log file location 569
- LOGSECOND, DB2 parameter 688
- longDurationThreshold, global option 42
- LookupAccountName, API used to resolve Windows user ID account 695
- loss of
 - domain manager
 - 610
 - master domain manager
 - 616
- lt, global option 42
- LTPA keys
 - sharing 150

M

- mailbox
 - monitoring 296
- mailbox caching 682
- mailbox files
 - setting size 300
- mailbox full
 - monitoring 296
- mailboxes
 - monitoring 296
- mailman
 - \$MASTER variable, resolve, local option 59
 - caching 682
 - determining the size of its internal Symphony table 305
 - incoming message cache
 - enable, local option 59
 - resize, local option 59
 - link to non-responding workstation, wait to retry, local option 59
 - processes timing out 278
 - servers
 - configuring to maximize critical activities 292
 - tuning 302
 - starting 288, 303
 - starting with demgr parameter 303
 - tellop command, respond to, local option 60, 60
 - tuning 678
 - unlink non-responding workstation, wait to, local option 60
 - workstation not responding, wait to report, local option 59
- mailman process
 - monitoring 290
- mailSenderName, global option 42
- maintenance
 - agent configuration 102
 - DB2, automatic
 - running manually 577
- makesec
 - impact on audit log file 598
 - log type 597
- makesec command 211
- manage access 184
- Manage access control list
 - access control list 184
- manage sap connections 156
- managing
 - Business Warehouse InfoPackage and process chain 451
 - SAP
 - extended agent job running
 - 390
 - settings repository 176
- manual job submissions impacting performance 680
- mapping
 - IBM Workload Scheduler
 - and SAP
 - job states
 - 412
 - mapping job status
 - PeopleSoft
 - 334
- master domain manager
 - backing up to backup
 - master domain manager
 - 560
 - configuring the
 - dynamic workload broker
 - server
 - 103
 - connecting to new database 584
 - database migration 584
 - definition 277
 - extended loss of 626
 - failure 616
 - loss of 616
 - maintaining the
 - dynamic workload broker
 - server
 - 104
 - mitigating loss of 616
 - new database 584
 - permanent change 626
 - running without 616
 - switching 626
 - without 616
- master domain manager configuration
 - 110
- master domain manager with pools
 - connecting to new database 587
 - database migration 587
 - new database 587
- master domain, definition 277
- master instances
 - automatic initialization 646
- max restarts, appservman 655
- max_jobs_to_release_for_user 369
- maximum and minimum job times, logging and reporting, global option 41
- maximum number of concurrent job log requests
 - Broker.jobLog.corePoolSize 110
- maximum number of results for global resource matching
 - configuring 106
- maximum records in Symphony file 305
- maxLen, global option 43
- MAXLOCKS, DB2 configuration parameter 579
- MDM certificates
 - rotating 550
- mdm configuration
 - templates 648
- members
 - workstation class definition 191, 193
- memory
 - management by logging processes
 - impacting performance 677
- merge stdlists, local option 59
- message boxes encryption 135
- message caching 682
- message level 133
- message queues
 - dm.msg 294
 - ftdown, in backup
 - domain manager
 - 684
 - ftup, in backup
 - domain manager
 - 684
 - in backup
 - domain manager
 - 684
 - monitoring 296
- methods directory, as log file location 574

- Microsoft Active Directory 270
- min restart time, appservman 655
- minimum and maximum job times, logging and reporting, global option 41
- minLen, global option 43
- mitigating loss of
 - domain manager
 - 610
 - master domain manager
 - 616
- ml, global option 43
- mm cache mailbox, local option 59
- mm cache size, local option 59
- mm resolve master, local option 59
- mm response, local option 59
- mm retry link, local option 59
- mm sound off, local option 60
- mm symphony download timeout, local option 60
- mm unlink, local option 60
- Mm_unlink, localopts parameter 302
- modifying
 - agent traces 78, 664
- monbox
 - monitoring 296
- moncmd
 - monitoring 296
- monitoring
 - MTEs 496
 - SAP
 - event defined as event rule
 - 390
 - SAP
 - event defined as internetwork dependency, XBP 2.0
 - 477
- monman
 - autostart, local option 53
 - starting process 304
- monman process
 - monitoring 290
- moving databases with pools 587
- moving from Db2 to PostgreSQL 587
- ms, global option 42
- MTE alert
 - action parameters for CCMS event rules 502
 - committing by external task 505
 - correlation rules 502
 - defining event rule 497
 - defining event rule, business scenario 495, 496
 - getting CCMS alert status 504
- mapping
 - attribute MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields
 - 501
 - context MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields
 - 500
 - object MTE name and IBM Workload Scheduler fields
 - 501
- multiple application servers, PeopleSoft 327
- mvsjes.opts file
 - definition 310, 312
- mvsopc.opts file
 - definition 310, 312

N

- name
 - global options file 310, 312
 - local options file 310, 312
- National Language support
 - SAP 507
- native job configuration
 - JobManager.ini file 71
- NetConf
 - , file
 - 303
- NetGetAnyDCName, API used to resolve Windows user ID account 695
- netman
 - configuration file 303
 - connection failed, wait to retry, local option 60
 - IP address validation 532
 - port, local option 60
 - quit when child processes stopped, local option 60
 - SSL full port, local option 60
 - SSL port, local option 61
 - starting 288
 - stop and start commands, wait to check for, local option 60
 - support for Internet Protocol version 6 532
- netman process
 - monitoring 290
- NetUserGetInfo, API used to resolve Windows user ID account 695
- network
 - capacity 292
 - changes, impact of 534
 - communications 278
 - gateway configuration 280
 - impact of changes 534
 - IP address validation 532
 - linking 278
 - message queues, planning for 294
 - monitoring for unlinked workstations 278
 - operation 287
 - optimizing 292
 - overview 276
 - processes 288
 - structure, impact on critical agents 292
 - support for Internet Protocol version 6 532
 - traffic caused by backup
 - domain manager
 - impacting performance
 - 684
 - unlinking 278
 - network traffic 677
- new copy
 - re-running jobs
 - SAP
 - 417
- new database
 - connecting to
 - master domain manager
 - 584
 - connecting to
 - master domain manager
 - with pools
 - 587
- new executors
 - authorization for running 232
 - defining access 232
 - defining authorization 232
- news notification beacon

- customize 161
 - disabling 161
- nice value to apply to critical UNIX or Linux jobs in jobman, local option 58
- nice value to apply to UNIX or Linux jobs in jobman, local option 57
- nm ipvalidate, localopts parameter 532
- nm mortal, local option 60
- nm port, local option 60
- nm read, local option 60
- nm retry, local option 60
- nm SSL full port, local option 60
- nm SSL port, local option 61
- nn, global option 44
- nodename validation 532
- normal run time calculation, weighting factor, global option 42
- notification
 - news
 - disabling 161
 - enabling 161
- notificationTimeout, global option 43
- np, global option 45
- nt, global option 43
- nu, global option 44

O

- object attribute values 227
 - specifying object attribute values 203
- object attributes
 - attributes for object types 202
- object types, defining access to composer actions 232
- od, global option 38
- offline storage, used for backup and restore 560
- old copy
 - re-running jobs
 - SAP
 - 417
- OpenID Connect 274
- opens, file dependency 306
- OpenSSL
 - ca certificate file, local option 62
 - certificate file, local option 63
 - certificate type, local option 63
 - cipher class, local option 54
 - cipher suites, local option 63, 63, 95, 95
 - CLI cipher suites, local option 55, 55
 - enabling SSL server authentication, local option 55
 - server certificate when using command-line client, local option 55
 - SSL config file, local option 63, 95
 - SSL encryption cipher, local option 63, 95
 - SSL key file, local option 63
 - SSL key password file, local option 63
 - SSL random seed, local option 64
 - trusted directory when using command-line client, local option 55
- operator password
 - encrypting on
 - PeopleSoft
 - 327
- option inheritance r3batch
 - definition 313
- options
 - R/3 National Language support 508
- options file 323
 - global 310
 - local 310

- PeopleSoft
 - 324, 326
- SAP
 - 350, 366
- SAP
 - example
 - 386
 - setting job throttling options, SAP
 - 468, 469
- Oracle
 - administrative tasks 581
 - changing user password 631
 - collecting job metrics 608
 - reorganization 562
 - tuning 680
- Oracle database
 - configuring reports 177
- Oracle JDBC drivers
 - URL configuration 177
- overview
 - access method for
 - dynamic agent
 - 305
 - access method for extended agent 305
 - dynamic agent
 - 305
 - extended agent 305
 - IBM Workload Scheduler
 - for
 - SAP
 - 347
 - PeopleSoft
 - 322
 - SAP
 - 350

- P**
- pa, global option 36
- parameter
 - enable trace utility 346
 - max trace files 346
 - properties file 344, 345
 - ResourceAdvisorURL 280
 - return code mapping 337
 - SAP
 - dynamic job definition
 - 419
 - SAP
 - job definition
 - 399
 - trace file path 345
 - trace file size 346
 - trace level 344
 - parameter, object type, defining access 247
 - parent domain, definition 277
 - parent-child feature
 - R/3 450
 - parms, log type 597
 - password for SMTP connection, global option 45
 - password management
 - agent configuration 90, 91
 - profile configuration 90, 91
 - password resolver
 - agent configuration 90, 91
 - profile configuration 90, 91
 - password solver
 - agent configuration 90, 91
 - profile configuration 90, 91
 - password storage

- agent configuration 90, 91
- profile configuration 90, 91
- password vault
 - agent configuration 90, 91
 - profile configuration 90, 91
- password vault integration
 - configuration 71
- passwords
 - other DB2, changing 576
 - TWS_user, changing 631
- PeopleSoft
 - access method options 324
 - batch processing ID 328
 - configuration tasks 323
 - connecting to multiple application servers 327
 - creating job 332
 - defining job 332
 - encrypting operator password 327
 - functional overview 323
 - introduction 322
 - ITWS_PsXA project 328
 - job definition 332
 - job status mapping 334
 - job tracking 323
 - options file 324, 326
 - overview 322
 - parameters to define job 333
 - return code mapping 339
 - roles and responsibilities 322
 - security 323
 - task string parameters 333
- PeopleSoft
 - operator password
 - changing 327
 - encrypting 327
- performance 677
 - browser 694
 - fault-tolerant switch manager
 - 684
 - file dependency checks, too many 680
 - graphical views in browser 693
 - impacted by multiple TDWC production plan reports 691
 - job submissions, manual, too many 680
 - job-processing, improving 682
 - network 292
 - too many file dependency checks 680
 - too many manual job submissions 680
 - tuning database configuration
 - parameters 680
 - tuning job processing on a workstation 678
 - tuning on UNIX 677
 - workload spreading 681
- permissions, user
 - for running DB2 tools 576
- placeholder
 - for job interception in template file 449
- SAP
 - job
 - 477
- plan auditing, enabling, global option 36
- plan replication
 - tuning 679
- Plan View
 - auto refresh
 - Plan View 160
 - Show Plan View
 - auto refresh 160
- plan, log type 597

- plan, preproduction, maximum length, global option 43
- plan, preproduction, minimum length, global option 43
- planning to minimize network message queues 294
- po, global option 43
- pobox
 - monitoring 296
- port
 - SMTP server, global option 45
 - SSL full , used by netman, local option 60
 - SSL, used by netman, local option 61
- port for
 - command line client
 - , local option
 - 61
 - port number, event processor, global option 39, 39
 - port, for netman, local option 60
- predecessors, hide
 - What-if Analysis view 170
- preproduction plan, maximum length, global option 43
- preproduction plan, minimum length, global option 43
- preventing job streams without at dependency from starting, global option 37
- pricing
 - license metrics 697, 701
- priority value to apply to critical Windows jobs in jobman, local option 58
- process chain
 - creating
 - IBM Workload Scheduler
 - job
 - 451
 - managing 451
 - rerunning job 464
 - restarting 464
 - schedule options 451
 - user authorization 451
- process chain job
 - displaying details 457
 - rerunning 460
- process messages 133
- process prompts 133
- processes status
 - monitoring 290
- production control file, batchman minimum wait to update, local option 54
- production plan reports, TDWC, affecting performance 691
- production, managing on extended agents 309
- profile properties 657
- program
 - composer 315, 319
- project
 - ITWS_PsXA
 - PeopleSoft
 - 328
- promoting to
 - backup master domain manager
 - 617
- promotion of critical jobs, eligibility for, global option 43
- promotionOffset, global option 43
- prompt, object type, defining access 232, 247
- prompts, additional, global option 39
- properties file
 - customizing 344

- DEBUG_MAX 344
- DEBUG_MID 344
- DEBUG_MIN 344
- parameter 344, 345
- trace file path 345
- trace level 344
- protocol, local option 61
- proxy port, local option 61
- proxy, local option 61
- PS_DISTSTATUS, PeopleSoft
- option
 - 324
- ps, global option 37
- psagent 323, 327
- psagent.opts file
 - definition 310, 312
- psagent.properties
 - file 344
- PSFT_DOMAIN_PWD, PeopleSoft
- option
 - 325
- PSFT_OPERATOR_ID, PeopleSoft
- option
 - 325
- PSFT_OPERATOR_PWD, PeopleSoft
- option
 - 325
- PSJOAPATH, PeopleSoft
- option
 - 325
- pwdcrypt program
 - encrypting user password 327

Q

- quit netman when child processes stopped, local option 60

R

- R/3
 - BDC wait 439
 - configuration file 346
 - parent-child feature 450
 - return code mapping 340
 - Unicode support 364
- r3batch
 - export function 474
 - option inheritance 313
- r3batch extended agent, interaction process start 304
- r3batch.opts
 - definition 310, 312
 - options file 366
 - SAP
 - 366
- r3batch.properties 344
- r3evman command 390
- r3evmon event configuration file 512
- raised events 437
- raising
 - SAP
 - event
 - 414
- rc, global option 44
- re-running job
 - new copy, SAP
 - 417

- old copy, SAP
 - 417
- refreshing
 - SAP
 - variant
 - 394
- release_all_intercepted_jobs_for_request 369
- release, log type 597
- remote access for command-line, configuring 124
- Remote Function Call
 - RFC 362
- remote job, check status of, process start 304
- remote UNIX
 - access method 306
- remove alias from certificates 549
- remove security domains
 - edit security domains 187
- remove security role
 - edit security role 188
- reorganize DB2 database 578
- reorganizing database 562
- replicate plan data
 - database 679
 - tuning 679
- report, object type, defining access 248
- reports configuring
 - Oracle database 177
- reports, configuring
 - Dynamic Workload Console
 - to view
 - 176
- rerun jobs, retaining name, global option 37
- rerunning job
 - process chain 460, 464
 - SAP
 - 415, 460
- resource advisor agent 627
- Resource advisor agent
 - JobManager.ini file 71
- resource quantities carried forward, global option 33
- resource, object type, defining access 232, 248
- ResourceAdvisorURL
 - parameter 280
- restart, automatic, of application server 654
- restarting
 - process chain 464
- restore
 - application server configuration 657
- restore of application server configuration 657
- restore, from offline storage 560
- restoreConfig, used to restore application server configuration 657
- restricted stdlists, local option 61
- resubmitJobName, defining job name, global option 44
- resubmitJobName, global option 44
- resubmitJobUserName, defining job name, global option 44
- resubmitJobUserName, global option 44
- return code mapping 339
 - considerations 339, 531
 - example 338
 - feature 337
 - file name 342
 - file, creating 338
 - intercepted job 343
 - parameter 337
 - PeopleSoft

- 339
- R/3 340
- syntax 338
- RFC
 - Remote Function Call 362
- RFC profile
 - SAP
 - 354
- RFC user
 - SAP
 - 509
- RFC user ID password
 - changing 362
 - encrypting 362
- RFC user password
 - SAP
 - 362
- rights, user
 - for running DB2 tools 576
- riskConfidence, defining job risk, global option 44
- riskConfidence, global option 44
- rj, global option 44
- rmstdlist command
 - used for archiving log files 569
- role based security model
 - enable the role based security model, global option 37
- role-based security model
 - security 181
- roles
 - for Workload Scheduler 148
- roles and tasks
 - PeopleSoft
 - 322
 - SAP
 - 350
- root jobs, enabling the launch of in jobman, local option 58
- root user, changing password 631
- rq, global option 33
- rr, global option 37
- rs, global option 37
- run cycle group, object type, defining access 232, 249
- run time (average) calculation, weighting factor, global option 42
- RUNLOCATION, PeopleSoft
- option
 - 325
- running without
 - domain manager
 - 610
 - master domain manager
 - 616
- rw, global option 44

S

- sample audit log entries 600
- SAP
 - ABAP step definition attribute 428
 - ABAP/4 modules, importing 358
 - access method 350
 - application server 387
 - authorization profile 354
 - Business Information Warehouse support 450
 - Business Warehouse components 450
 - CCMS alerts used in event rule 496
 - changing password, RFC user 362

- committing MTE alert by external task 505
- committing SAP event by external task 479
- common options 374
- configuration 353
- configuration options 368
- configuration options usage 386
- connecting 387
- connection 509
- control file 357
- correction and transport files 357
- creating job containing InfoPackage 451
- creating job containing process chain 451
- creating jobs 391
- creating RFC user 354
- customization procedure 353
- data file 357
- defining event as event rule 480
- defining event as internetwork dependency 477, 480
- defining event rule based on CCMS alerts 497
- defining event rule based on IDocs 486
- defining job 399
- defining job dynamically 417
- defining jobs 391
- defining variant 394
- deleting variant 394
- dynamic job definition example 433
- dynamic job definition parameter description 419
- dynamic job definition syntax 418
- encrypting user password 386
- event defined as event rule 480
- event defined as internetwork dependency 477, 480
- event rule based on CCMS alerts, business scenario 495, 496
- event rule based on IDocs, business scenario 485
- event rule prerequisite 389
- exporting calendars, business scenario 473
- extended agent job 390
- external command step definition attribute 431
- external program step definition attribute 431
- features 347
- filtering events in security file 484
- getting CCMS alert status by external task 504
- global options 368
- IDoc record used in event rule 486
- InfoPackage schedule options 451
- installing ABAP modules 353
- introduction 347, 350
- job interception 440, 442, 443, 449
- job interception and parent-child 440
- job throttling 467
- jobs dynamic definition 418
- local options 371
- logon group 388
- mapping between definition and resolution of internetwork dependency 478
- monitoring event 390
- National Language support 507
- options file 350, 366, 386
- options National Language support 508
- parameters to define job 399
- placeholder job for internetwork dependencies 477
- prerequisite to define event rule 389

- process chain schedule options 451
- r3evman command 390
- r3evmon configuration file 512
- re-running jobs 417
- refreshing variant 394
- rerunning job 415, 460
- RFC user password 362
- roles and responsibilities 350
- security file, filtering events 484
- setting a filter in security file 484
- setting interception criteria 444, 444
- setting variant 394
- supported code pages 509
- task string 399
- task string parameter 453
- task string parameters 399
- transaction PFCG 355
- transaction se38 469
- transaction su02 354
- updating variant 394
- variable substitution 433
- viewing variant 394
- SAP connection 156
- SAP data connection 394
- SAP
 - event
 - committing by external task 479
 - defining as event rule 480
 - defining as internetwork dependency 477, 480
 - filtering in security file 484
 - monitoring 390
 - placeholder job for internetwork dependencies 477
 - prerequisite to define a rule 389
 - prerequisites for defining as internetwork dependency 476
 - r3evman command 390
 - r3evmon configuration file 512
 - raising 414
- SAP
 - job
 - defining dynamically 417
 - deleting 411
 - displaying details 409
 - editing 398
 - example of defining dynamically 433
 - killing 413
 - placeholder 477
 - task string 399
 - variable substitution 433
 - verifying status 410
- SAP R/3
 - calendars, exporting 474
 - exporting factory calendars, command 474
 - r3batch export function 474
- SAP
 - table criteria
 - setting template file 447
 - setting using the Dynamic Workload Console , BC-XBP 2.0 444
 - setting using the Dynamic Workload Console , BC-XBP 3.0 446
- SAP
 - user password
 - changing 386
 - encrypting 386

- sc, global option 35
- scalability 685
- schedlog directory, as log file location 570
- schedule, object type, defining access 232, 250
- scheduling definitions
 - replicating 629
- scheduling events, communications 278
- sd, global option 46
- se, global option 38
- secure 536
- secure communication 536, 536, 536, 539, 541, 545, 546, 549
 - in job definitions 98
- secure network communications 363
- secureaddr
 - workstation definition 554
- security
 - centralized 212
 - information, verifying in Windows 695
 - local 208
 - overview 207
 - PeopleSoft 323
 - specifying accesses 230
 - specifying object types 223
 - specifying objects 225
 - specifying user attributes 216
 - template file 213
- security access control list
 - security access control list definition 189
- Security access control list definition 189
- security check when listing, global option 35
- security domain 183
 - security domain definition 191
- security domain definition
 - security domain 191
- Security domain definition 190
- security domains
 - create 186
- security file
 - enabling centralized security, global option 32
- security file, filtering
- SAP
 - events
 - 484
 - security file, template 213
- security role
 - adding 187
 - security role definition 193
- security role definition
 - security role 193
- Security role definition 193
- security roles
 - security 187
- security SAP
 - SNC 363
- security settings, application server, modify 644
- Security, file
 - backing up 560
- securitylevel 554
 - workstation definition 554
- Self-Service Catalog
 - auditing 169
 - single sign-on 150
- Self-Service Dashboards
 - auditing 169
- Self-Service Monitoring
 - single sign-on 150

- sender name, mail, event rule management, global option 42
- server
 - monitoring 296
- server configuration
 - ResourceAdvisorConfig.properties file 106
- server group
 - balancing
 - SAP
 - workload
 - 411
- SERVER_NAME_LIST,
- PeopleSoft
- option
 - 325
- servers
 - mailman
 - configuring to maximize critical activities 292
 - tuning 302
- servicenowUrl, global option 44
- servicenowUserName, global option 44
- servicenowUserPassword, global option 45
- services
 - IBMWAS61Service 655
 - stopping 636
- services (Windows)
 - changing password 631
 - stopping 637
 - Workload Scheduler, configuring in
- NetConf
- file
 - 303
- setting
 - job interception 444
 - job interception using interception criteria and template files 444
 - job throttling 468
 - SAP
 - table criteria on the workstation
 - 444
 - SAP
 - table criteria using the Dynamic Workload Console
 - 446
 - SAP
 - variant
 - 394
 - template file 447
- setting the local options 48
- setting the user options 70
- setting trace levels for application server 529
- settings
 - agent traces 78, 664
- settings repository
 - managing 176
- sf, global option 38
- sh, global option 47
- single sign-on 267, 270, 274
 - basic registry 150
 - configuration 150
 - Dynamic Workload Console 150
 - LDAP registry 150
 - Self-Service Catalog 150
 - Self-Service Monitoring 150
- Single Sing-On 151, 151, 153, 153
 - configuring 151, 153
 - Dynamic Workload Console
 - 151, 153
 - master domain manager
 - 151, 153

- size of core services and job log requests
 - Broker.jobLog.corePoolSize 110
- sizing the internal Symphony table 305
- SMTP
 - authentication on connection, use, global option 45
 - port, global option 45
 - server name, global option 45
 - SSL on connection, use, global option 45
 - TLS on connection, use, global option 46
 - user name for connection, global option 45
 - user password for connection, global option 45
- smtpServerName, global option 45
- smtpServerPort, global option 45
- smtpUseAuthentication, global option 45
- smtpUserName, global option 45
- smtpUserPassword, global option 45
- smtpUseSSL, global option 45
- smtpUseTLS, global option 46
- sn, global option 45
- SNC 363
- soap.client.props
 - configuring 117
- Solution Manager
 - job scheduling 521, 522, 525
 - direct 526
 - from job documentation 527
 - monitoring jobs 527
 - registering 522
 - SMSE adapter 521, 522, 525, 526, 527, 527
- sp, global option 45
- spool data
 - browsing 413
 - introduction 412
- SQL queries for job metrics 607
 - DB2 607
 - DB2 for zOS 608
 - Oracle 608
- SSL
 - authentication mode, local option 62
 - authentication string, local option 62
 - full connection enablement, global option 38
 - full port, used by netman, local option 60
 - OpenSSL CA certificate file, local option 62
 - OpenSSL certificate file for communications with command-line client, local option 55
 - OpenSSL certificate file, local option 63
 - OpenSSL certificate type, local option 63
 - OpenSSL cipher class when using command-line client, local option 54
 - OpenSSL trusted certificate directory for communications with command-line client, local option 55
 - OpenSSL, enabling server authentication for
 - command line client
 - , local option
 - 55
 - OpenSSL, SSL encryption cipher, local option 63, 95
 - OpenSSL, SSL key file, local option 63
 - OpenSSL, SSL key password file, local option 63
 - OpenSSL, SSL random seed, local option 64
 - port, used by netman, local option 61
 - SSL config file, local option 63, 95
- SSL attributes
 - configuring 554

- SSL auth mode, local option 62
- SSL auth string, local option 62
- SSL CA certificate, local option 62
- SSL certificate type, local option 63
- SSL certificate, local option 63
- SSL cipher suites, local option 63, 95
- SSL communication
 - enabling 554
- SSL config file, local option 63, 95
- SSL encryption cipher, local option 63, 95
- SSL key pwd, local option 63
- SSL key, local option 63
- SSL on SMTP connection, use, global option 45
- SSL random seed, local option 64
- SSL version
 - enabling using local option 55, 64, 94
- SSL version, local option 55, 64, 94
- SSO
 - configuration 150
 - Dynamic Workload Console 150
 - Self-Service Catalog 150
 - Self-Service Monitoring 150
- st, global option 35
- stageman, log type 597
- standard agent instances
 - automatic initialization 646
- standard agent, definition 277
- start condition
 - deadline behavior, global option 38
- start
 - dynamic workload broker
 - 627
 - start-of-plan-period
 - initialization, communications 278
 - startappserver 654, 656
 - run from conman, process 304
 - startAppServer command 652
 - startConditionDeadlineOffset, defining, global option 47
 - startConditionDeadlineOffset, global option 47
 - startevtptroc, run from conman, process 304
 - starting
 - WebSphere Application Server Liberty
 - 652
 - startOfDay, global option 46
 - startOfDay, how evaluated in time zones, global option 35
 - StartUp
 - used for starting netman 288
 - StartUp command 289
 - startZosDDM 628
- state
 - SAP
 - job
 - 412
- statistics reporting by batchman, enable, local option 54
- statsHistory, global option 47
- status
 - application server 656
- status mapping
 - PeopleSoft
 - job
 - 334
- status messages, batchman send to standard list, local option 54
- stdlist directory
 - information about extended agent jobs 306
- stdlist width, local option 64

- stdlist, merge console messages into, local option 59
- stop and start commands, wait to check for in netman, local option 60
- stop
- dynamic workload broker
 - 627
- stopappserver 654, 656
 - run from conman, process 304
- stopAppServer command 652
- stopevtptroc, run from conman on a client, process 304
- stopevtptroc, run from conman, process 304
- stopmon, run from conman, process 304
- stopping
 - services 637
- stopping services 636
- stopping
 - WebSphere Application Server Liberty 652
- stopping workstations hierarchically, starting process 303
- streamlogon, user 695
- string, SSL auth mode, local option 62
- strong encryption, enabling, global option 38
- structure of network, impact on critical agents 292
- submitting
 - supported agent job 321
- submitting too many jobs manually, impact on performance 680
- supported
 - code pages,
 - SAP 509
- supported agent job
 - submitting 321
- supported agent job defining with
 - end-to-end scheduling 320
- supported agents
 - job defining with
 - Dynamic Workload Console 319
- sw, global option 38
- switch
 - dynamic workload broker instances
 - 627
 - switch manager, fault tolerant, enabling, global option 38
 - switch sym prompt, local option 65
 - switchevtptroc, run from conman, process 304
- switching a domain manager
 - planned, unplanned outage 612
 - short-term, long-term outage 612
- switching a domain manager, short-term 611
- switching a
 - master domain manager
 - long-term 626
 - short-term 626
- switching backup dynamic domain manager
 - z controller 628
- switching databases with pools 587
- switching extended agents
 - \$manager keyword 221
 - \$master keyword 221
- switching from Db2 to PostgreSQL 587
- switching standard agents
 - \$manager keyword 221
 - \$master keyword 221
- switching the dynamic domain manager

- broker instance switch 627
- z controller 628
- switching the
 - dynamic workload broker 627
- switching the master domain manager
 - broker instance switch 627
- switching the mdm
 - automatic 621
- switchmgr
 - automatic 621, 621
 - starting normal process 303
 - starting process so that links are not started until event received 303
- symphony encryption 135
- Symphony file
 - archived 570
 - enabling the copying of calendars into, global option 40
 - fileStartConditionJobName, global option 40
 - IP address validation 532
 - maximum number of records 305
 - monitoring space used 563
 - overview 278
 - resubmitJobName, global option 44
 - resubmitJobUserName, global option 44
 - scanning by batchman 287
 - startConditionDeadlineOffset, global option 47
 - support for Internet Protocol version 6 532
- Symphony file download timeout, local option 60
- Symphony table, internal, determining the size of 305
- sync level, local option 65
- synch level option, setting 683
- syntax
 - defining
 - SAP jobs dynamically 418
 - return code mapping 338
- syslog 133
- syslog local, local option 65
- sysloglocal options
 - LOG_ERR 133
 - LOG_INFO 133
 - LOG_NOTICE 133
 - LOG_WARNING 133
- System scanner
 - JobManager.ini file 71

T

- table criteria
 - SAP
 - setting template file 447
 - setting using the Dynamic Workload Console 444, 446
- task executors
 - configuring 121, 675
- task string parameters
 - PeopleSoft
 - job 333
 - SAP
 - job 399, 399, 453
- tcp connect timeout, local option 65
- tcp timeout, local option 65

- tcp timeout, localopts parameter 302
- TCP/IP ports, application server, modify 657
- TdwcGlobalSettings.xml.template file 156
- tellop command, respond to in mailman, local option 60
- template file
 - creating 447
 - description 447
 - setting placeholders for job interception 449
- temporary files 574
- temporary variants, examples 433
- this cpu, local option 65
- threshold, long job duration, global option 42
- throttling, job 467
- time interval for job allocation to resources
 - configuring 106
- time interval for notifications on resources
 - configuring 106
- time interval for retrying failed operations
 - configuring 108
- time zone feature, enabling, global option 38
- time zones
 - evaluating startOfDay, global option 35
- timeout, local option 66
- tl, global option 46
- TLS on SMTP connection, use, global option 46
- tmp directory, as location for temporary files 574
- tomaster
 - monitoring 296
- tomaster.msg message queue
 - in backup domain manager 684
- tools
 - database and plan 593
- trace and log files agent
 - agent 2strace syntax 78, 664
- trace configuration
 - IBM Workload Scheduler agent 77, 662
- trace file
 - trace-psagent.log 345
 - trace-r3batch.log 345
- trace levels
 - application server setting 529
- trace.xml, application server utility 658
- traces directory, as trace file location 569
- tracing 677
- tracing utility
 - configuring 344
- tracking
 - PeopleSoft
 - job 323
- traffic caused by backup domain manager impacting performance 684
- transaction PFCG
 - SAP 355
- transactions,
 - SAP
 - PFCG 355
 - sa38 516
 - se16 444, 469
 - se37 477

- se38 469, 516
- sm69 432, 432
- su02 354
- tree structure, impact on critical agents 292
- trial plan logs 572
- trigger
 - workflow triggering 40, 44, 47
- troubleshooting
 - data flows 294
 - EE00778E 516
 - extended agent
 - job log 520
 - PeopleSoft, job submission fails 520
 - PeopleSoft, local options file rights 520
 - extendend agent
 - Oracle, job submission fails 521
 - job throttling
 - alerts are not generated according to threshold 519
 - does not start 518, 518
 - does not stop 519
 - saving MTE properties generates message 519
 - longlink file 518
 - message queues 294
 - permission denied
 - job log 520
 - r3batch 511
 - does not start 517
 - environment variables 517
 - modifying job step error 517, 517
 - monitoring IDoc events 514, 515, 515
 - monitoring
 - SAP
 - events
 - 510, 512, 512, 512
 - output with unreadable characters 510
 - scheduling
 - SAP
 - jobs
 - 516
 - system cannot intercept jobs 519
 - r3event
 - output with unreadable characters 510
 - r3evmon
 - monitoring events 512
 - monitoring events increases memory consumption 515
 - restarting process of subchain 511
 - SAP
 - connection 509
 - error defining internetwork dependency 516
 - ts, global option 32
 - tuning
 - database 680, 680
 - job processing on a workstation 678
 - localopts file, for job-processing performance 682
 - mailman servers 302
 - plan replication 679
 - UNIX operating systems 677
 - TWS disk space
 - monitoring 564
 - TWS processes status
 - monitoring 290
 - TWS_MAX_WAIT_TIME, PeopleSoft
 - option
 - 326
 - TWS_MIN_WAIT_TIME,

- PeopleSoft
 - option
 - 326
 - TWS_RETRY, PeopleSoft
 - option
 - 326
 - TWSObjectsMonitor events, ApplicationServerStatusChanged 657
 - twstrace syntax
 - agent log and trace files 78, 664
 - TWSXA_INLINE_CI, PeopleSoft
 - option
 - 326
 - TWSXA_SCHED_METH, PeopleSoft
 - option
 - 326
 - tz, global option 38
 - U**
 - u
 - jobthrottling parameter 471
 - ua, global option 45
 - ud, global option 47
 - un, global option 45
 - Unicode support
 - R/3
 - 364
 - unison network directory, local option 66
 - UNIX
 - access method 306
 - changing passwords on 631
 - configuration for IP address validation 532
 - jobs, nice value to apply when critical, local option 58
 - jobs, nice value to apply, local option 57
 - local UNIX access method 306
 - remote UNIX access method 306
 - temporary directory, on UNIX, access rights 696
 - tuning 677
 - unixlock, access method on fault-tolerant agent 307
 - unixrsh, access method 307
 - unixssh, access method 307
 - unlink non-responding workstation, wait to in mailman, local option 60
 - unlink, command
 - usage 278
 - unlinking
 - concept 278
 - workstations 637
 - unlinking workstations 636
 - until time, batchman maximum wait to report expiry of, local option 54
 - untilDays, global option 47, 47
 - up, global option 45
 - updating
 - SAP
 - variant
 - 394
 - us, global option 45
 - used disk space
 - monitoring 564
 - user
 - configuration 147
 - portfolio 147
 - user authentication
 - in job definitions 98

- user authorizations
 - Business Warehouse InfoPackage 451
 - Business Warehouse process chain 451
- user name for SMTP connection, global option 45
- user options
 - setting 70
 - syntax 70
- user password
 - encrypting on
 - PeopleSoft
 - 327
 - encrypting on
 - SAP
 - 386
- user password for SMTP connection, global option 45
- user permissions
 - for running DB2 tools 576
- user profile to apply on a fault-tolerant agent in jobman, local option 57
- user security
 - commands
 - dumpsec 210
 - makesec 211
 - local security 208
 - security file
 - access capabilities 231
 - modifying 209
 - sample 254
 - syntax 213
 - user qualification 220
 - variables 230
 - wildcards 216
 - security files 208
 - setting 180, 352
- userobj, object type, defining access 232, 251
- useropts file 70
- useropts, local option 66
- users
 - domain, resolving account in Windows 695
 - local, resolving account in Windows 695
 - streamlogon 695
- utilities
 - defining access for working with objects 232
 - trace.xml 658
- utility commands
 - setting mailbox file size 300
 - starting up netman 289
- V**
- validating IP address 532
- validity 545
- values 227
- variable substitution
 - SAP
 - 433
- variable table, object type, defining access 232
- variables
 - \$MASTER, resolve, local option 59
- variant
 - SAP
 - defining 394
 - deleting 394
 - refreshing 394
 - setting 394
 - updating 394
 - viewing 394
- variants
 - temporary 433

- variable, object type, defining access 252
- verify 545
- verify certificates 545
- verifying status
 - SAP
 - job
 - 410
- version 9.4, Fix pack 2
 - upgrading 708
- view access 183
- View access for security domain
 - view access 183
- View access for users or groups
 - view access control list 183
- viewing
 - agent traces 78, 664
 - SAP
 - variant
 - 394
 - spool data 413
- volumes, data, impact on network 292

W

- wa, global option 39
- warning messages
 - IP address validation 533
- wastools replacement 648
- we, global option 34
- WebSphere
 - Application Server
 - configuring 114
 - WebSphere Application Server Liberty
 - changing user password 631
 - starting and stopping 652
 - WebSphere Application Server Liberty file
 - changing host name or IP address 641
 - WebSphere Application Server Liberty
 - , starting
 - 656
 - WebSphere Application Server Liberty
 - , stopping
 - 656
- weighting factor for calculating average run time, global option 42
- What-if Analysis
 - hide predecessors 170
- What-if Analysis, enabling, global option 39
- wi, global option 39
- Windows
 - changing passwords on 631
 - jobs, nice value to apply when critical, local option 58
 - resolving user ID account 695
- Windows OS
 - special characters, handling 128
- without
 - domain manager
 - 610
 - master domain manager
 - 616
- wl, global option 47
- wm, global option 34
- working directory
 - folder 56
- workload
 - spreading to improve performance 681
- workload applications, object type, defining access 253
- workload automation, event-driven, enablement, global option 34

- workload automation, event-driven, proxy, enablement, global option 35
- workload service assurance
 - approaching late offset, global option 27
 - deadline offset, global option 30
 - jobs eligible for promotion, global option 43
 - nice value to apply to critical UNIX or Linux jobs in jobman, local option 58
 - priority value to apply to critical Windows jobs in jobman, local option 58
 - required security access for <TWS_user> 253
- workload service assurance, enabling, global option 39
- workload, balancing SAP R/3 411
- workstation
 - application server status 656
 - changing host name or IP address 640
 - dynamic agent 277
 - Tuning job processing on 678
- workstation class definition
 - members 191, 193
- workstation definition 554
 - changing 642
 - secureaddr 554
- workstation for extended agent or dynamic agent, defining with
 - Dynamic Workload Console
 - 313
- workstation for extended agent, defining with
 - ISPF 317
- workstation for supported agent, defining with
 - command line 315
- workstation not responding, wait to report in mailman, local option 59
- workstation, defining with
 - Dynamic Workload Console
 - 313
- workstationEventManagerListInAutomaticFailover
 - global option 23
- workstationEventManagerListInAutomaticFailover, global option 34
- workstationLimit, global option 47
- workstationMasterListInAutomaticFailover
 - global option 24
- workstationMasterListInAutomaticFailover, global option 34
- workstations
 - default when using the command line client
 - , local option
 - 56
 - enabling to be event processor, local option 54
 - unlinking 637
- wr enable compression, local option 66
- wr read, local option 66
- wr unlink, local option 66
- Wr_unlink, localopts parameter 302
- writer
 - starting 288
 - starting, for incoming mailman messages 303
 - stopping, for incoming mailman messages 303

X

- xl, global option 43
- xp, global option 39

Z

- zOSRemoteServerName, global option 48
- zOSServerName, global option 48
- zOSServerPort, global option 48
- zOSUserName, global option 48
- zOSUserPassword, global option 48
- zp, global option 48
- zr, global option 48
- zs, global option 48
- zu, global option 48
- zw, global option 48